JOURNAL
OF THE
NORTH-CHINA BRANCH
OF THE
ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY.

NEW SERIES, NO. XIV.

AGENTS FOR THE SALE OF THE SOCIETY'S PUBLICATIONS:
Shanghai, Yokohama, and Hongkong: Messrs. Kelly & Walsh.
Paris: M. Ernest Leroux, Rue Bonaparte, No. 28.
CONTENTS.

Report of the Council for the year 1879 ........................................ i
List of Members ........................................................................ iii
Treasurer's Report ...................................................................... vii
Librarian's Report ...................................................................... xi

ARTICLE I.—The Intercourse of China with Central and
Western Asia in the Second Century B.C., by T. W.
Kingsmill, Esq. ................................................................. 1

ARTICLE II.—Rock Inscriptions at the North side of Yentai
Hill, by J. Rhein, Esq. ...................................................... 31

ARTICLE III.—Siamese Coinage, by Joseph Haas, Esq....... 35
REPORT
OF THE
COUNCIL OF THE NORTH-CHINA BRANCH
OF THE
Royal Asiatic Society,
FOR THE YEAR 1879.

At the Annual Meeting, held the 3rd of February, the following gentlemen were elected Office Bearers for the year 1879, viz:—
T. W. Kingsmill, Esq., President.
J. McLeavy Brown, Esq.,
P. G. von Mollendorff, Esq.,
G. G. Lowder, Esq., Secretary.
F. Hirth, Esq., Ph.D., Librarian.
A. Stripling, Esq., Treasurer.
A. A. Fauvel, Esq., Curator.
D. J. MacGowan, Esq., M.D.
F. B. Forbes, Esq.,
H. Bailey, Esq.,
A. Krauss, Esq.,
J. Haas, Esq.,
T. G. Smith, Esq.,

\[ \text{Vice-Presidents.} \]
\[ \text{Councillors.} \]

During the year only two meetings have been held, on which occasions the following papers were read:

1.—Ethnology in Eastern Asia, by T. W. Kingsmill, Esq.
2.—Siamese Coins, by Joseph Haas, Esq.

The absence of many members of the Society and the consequent lack of papers were the cause that the meetings have been rather few this year. It is to be hoped, however, that the new year upon which the Society is now about to enter, may be a beneficial one for the increase of science, especially in regard
to this great Empire, the knowledge of which it is the principle object of the Society to promote and cultivate.

Last year the Society had to mourn the loss of three of its members, this year, again, two deaths have occurred: those of Mr. O. D. Crawford and Dr. P. E. Gallé, who for many years were members of the Society.

In the course of the year six resident and two non-resident members have been elected, while six gentlemen have resigned their membership.

The publication of the Society's journal has been entrusted to the hands of Messrs. Kingsmill and Haas, and will appear shortly.

The Curator was not able to publish a Report, owing to his sudden departure from Shanghai. However, with the exception of a very valuable and most carefully arranged collection of stones presented by Dr. Guppy, very few additions have been made to the Museum.

We take this opportunity to offer once more our best thanks to the English and French Municipalities for the most liberal grants extended by them in aid of the Museum, and we hope that they will continue their support for the coming year.

The list of members of the society is herewith subjoined.

The report of the Treasurer is also appended.

The Secretary of the Society having been obliged to leave for Europe through ill-health, his functions have been entrusted by the committee to the undersigned during his temporary stay in Shanghai.

J. RHEIN,
Hon. Secretary, pro tem.
LIST OF MEMBERS.
(MAY 1880.)

HONORARY.

His Majesty LEOPOLD II., King of the Belgians.

Hart, Robert, Esq., C.M.G., Peking.
Pereira, A. F. Marques, Esq., Bangkok.
Seward, His Ex. George F., Peking.
Williams, Rev. S. Wells, L.L.D., Yale, U.S.
Wylie, Alex., Esq., London.

CORRESPONDING.

Bastian, Dr. A., Bremen.
Cox, Rev. Josiah, ——.
Delaplace, Mgr. L.G., Peking.
Fryer, John, Esq.
Gordon, Col., England.
Griffith, Rev. John, Hankow.
Hance, H. F., Esq., Ph. D., Canton.
Happer, Rev. A. P., D.D., Canton.
Hepburn, J. C., Esq., M.D., Yokohama.
Keischke, Dr. Jto, ——.
Lindau, Rudolph, Esq.,
Lockhart W., Esq., m.d., London.
Maegowan, D. J., Esq., m.d.
McCartee, D. B., Esq., m.d., Tokio.
McClatchie, Rev. Thos., m.a.
Moule, Rev. G. E., Hangchow, (absent.)
Muirhead, Rev. W.
Schereschewsky, Rt. Rev. S. i. J., d.d.
Silveira, Lieut. F. da, ———
Williamson, Rev. A., LL.D., Chefoo, (absent.)

RESIDENT.

Boleslawski, Chevalier C. de., Little, A. J., Esq.
Bryner, J., Esq.
Christiernsson, Dr. B.
Dülberg, F. W. E., Esq.
Forbes, F. B., Esq.
Grant, P. V., Esq.
Gubbay, R. A., Esq.
Haas, J., Esq.
Hague, E. P., Esq.
Henderson, Ed., Esq., m.d.
Hippisley, A. E., Esq.
Hosie, Alex., Esq., m.a.
How, A. J., Esq.
Hübbe, P. G., Esq.
Jansen, D. C., Esq.
Johnston, J., Esq., m.d.
Kingsmill, T. W., Esq.
Kleinwächter, G. H. J., Esq.
Knight, F. P., Esq.
Krauss, A., Esq.
Low, E. G., Esq.
Maignan, H., Esq.
Pichon, L., Esq., m.d.
Rivington, Charles, Esq.
Rocher, E., Esq.
Ruegg, E., Esq., Ph. D.
Samson, J., Esq.
Saunders, W., Esq.
Schmidt, C., Esq.
Schultz, Lieut. C. A.
Shinagawa, E., Esq.
Sim, Alexander, Esq.
Slevogt, M., Esq.
Stripling, A. B., Esq.
Tata, D. B., Esq.
Wetmore, W. S., Esq.
Whitty, Chas. D., Esq.
Wood, A. G., Esq.
Youd, F., Esq.
LIST OF MEMBERS OF THE N.-C. B. OF THE R. A. S.

NON-RESIDENT.

Alford, R. G., Esq., Hongkong.
Allen, E. L. B., Esq., Foochow.
Allen, H. J., Esq., Newchwang.
Ayrton, W. S., Esq., Hankow.
Baber, E. C., Esq., Chungking.
Bandinel, J. J. F., Esq., Newchwang.
Bailey, David H., Esq., U. S.
Brenan, B., Esq., Peking.
Bristow, H. B., Esq., Tientsin.
Brown, J. McLeavy, Esq., Shanghai, (absent.)
Bushell, S. W., Esq., M. D., Peking.
Coignet,—Esq., Japan.
Cooper, W. M., Esq., Ningpo.
Cordes, August C., Esq., Hamburg.
Coughtrie, J. B., Esq., Hongkong.
Deighton-Brayshere, C., Esq., Newchwang.
Dennys, H. L., Esq., Hongkong.
Dodd, J., Esq., Amoy.
Eitel, Rev. E. J., Ph. D., Hongkong.
Farago, E., Esq., Ichang.
Fauve, A. A., Esq., Shanghai, (absent.)
Ferguson, His Ex., J. H., Peking, (absent.)
Fergusson, T. T., Esq., Chefoo.
Frater, Alex., Esq., England.
Fritsche, H., Esq., Ph. D., Peking.
Gardner, C. T., Esq., Chefoo.
Glover, G. B., Esq., Kiukiang.
Gottburg, W., Esq., M. D., Berlin.
Hanbury, T., Esq., England.
Henderson, J., Esq., Tientsin.
Hirth, F., Esq., Ph. D., Shanghai, (absent.)
Hobson, H. E., Esq., Amoy, (absent.)
Johnson, F. B., Esq., London.
Kleinwächter, F., Esq., Chinkiang.
Kopsch, H., Esq., Kiukiang, (absent.)
Krey, W., Esq., Ichang, (absent.)
Little, L. S., Esq., M. D., Shanghai, (absent.)
Lowder, G. G., Esq., Shanghai, (absent.)
Mangum, W. P., Esq., Nagasaki.
Möllendorff, O. von, Esq., Ph. D., Tientsin, (absent.)
Möllendorff, P. G. von, Esq., Peking.
Morris, Herbert S., Esq., England.
Owen, Rev. G. S., Peking.
Parker, E. H., Esq., Canton.
Pitman, J., Esq., Tokio.
Plancy, V. Collin de, Esq., Peking.
Reid, David, Esq., England.
Rhein, J., Esq., Peking.
Russell, The Hon. James, Hongkong, (absent.)
Sampson, T., Esq., Canton.
Schulze, Capt. F. W., Coast.
Smith, The Hon. Cecil C., Singapore.
Starkey, Reg. D., Esq., Hongkong,
Stent, G. C., Esq., Wenchow.
Stuhlmann, C. C., Esq., Kiukiang.
Sutherland, H., Esq., Foochow.
Watters, T., Esq., Ichang.
White, F. W., Esq., Hankow.
Wicking, H., Esq., Hongkong.
Wilecox, R. C., Esq., Hongkong.
REPORT OF THE N.-C. B. OF THE R. A. S.

TREASURER REPORT.

To the President and Committee of the
North-China Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society,
Shanghai.

GENTLEMEN,

Although the Statements of Accounts of the North China Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society and Shanghai Museum for the year 1879, which I have now the honour to submit to you, show the details of all receipts and disbursements; a few remarks will perhaps help to a better understanding of the financial position of the Society and Museum.

It will be observed that the gross receipts of the Society for the year just closed amounted to $969.88 and the disbursements to $987.15, including $409.86 for Journal for 1878, and $107.64 due the Hon. Treasurer for same year, in all $517, thus reducing the actual disbursements, for current expenditure for 1879, to $470.15. The deficit, amounting to $17.27, is more than covered by the amount credited to the Shanghai Library and Museum.

Subscriptions for the past year have been collected from forty-eight resident and thirty-three non-resident members. From the latter class there is still due about $160, which have not yet being received. The Society have no outstanding liabilities, and the arrears of subscriptions may be looked upon as a balance in favour of the Society.

As regards the Museum, the income for the past year amounted to $875.91; the disbursements for current expenditure to $686.24. The remainder, amounting to $189.67 shown as transferred to the account of the North China Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society, balances the two sides of the Accounts.

The total outstanding liabilities of the Museum, on the 31st December last, amount to Tls. 273.45, made up as follows:—

To Recreation Fund Interest on Loan of Tls. 1,500, two years at 5 per cent per annum ...............Tls. 150.00
To Shanghai Library Rent of Museum for six months ending 31st December, 1879 ..................Tls. 75.00
To W. B. Pryer, Esq., Sundry Expenses for Museum due since 1875, $51.39 ......................Tls. 37.37
To North China Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society, Balance due on Rent Account, $15.33 ...........Tls. 11.08

Tls. 273.45
These figures are sufficient to prove that the Museum is in want of funds, and it is to be hoped that the annual grant of Tls. 500 given by the Municipal Council North of Yang-king-pang, and Tls 100 by the French Municipal Council, will be continued.

ALFRED B. STRIPLING,

Hon. Treasurer.
## BALANCE SHEET OF THE
North-China Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society,
FOR THE YEAR 1879.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RECEIPTS</th>
<th>$</th>
<th>c.</th>
<th>DISBURSEMENTS</th>
<th>$</th>
<th>c.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Cash from Hon. Treasurer for 1878</td>
<td>645</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>By Amt. paid to Hon. Treasurer for 1878</td>
<td>107</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Subscription for 1879</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>&quot; Amount paid to Printing Account for Journal for 1878</td>
<td>409</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Donation from Dr. Fritsche</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>&quot; Printing Journal for 1878</td>
<td>305</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Kelly &amp; Walsh sales of Journals</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>&quot; Fire Insurance Tls. 44</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Honorary Treasurer Shanghai Library for External Repairs Tls. 19.50</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>&quot; Municipal Taxes Tls. 4.35</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; R. E. Wainwright, Esq., for use of Meeting Room, Tls. 15</td>
<td>779</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>&quot; External Repairs, Tls. 9.75</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Museum Fund (for Rent of Museum from 1st July 1877 to 30th June 1878), on account</td>
<td>189</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>&quot; &quot; Repaid by Hon. Treasurer Shanghai Library, Tls. 19.50</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Hon. Treasurer, Balance due</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>&quot; Municipal Taxes to be repaid by Hon. Treasurer Shanghai Library, Tls. 8.71</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>206</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>&quot; Packing Case for Journals</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; Freight of Journals to England Tls.7</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; Advertisements</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; Stationery</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; Wages, Coolie</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; Shroff</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; Postage</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; Gas</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>470</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td>987</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Audited and found correct,
JOSEPH HAAS,
J. RHEIN.

E. & O. E.
ALFRED B. STRIPLING,
Hon Treasurer.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>$</th>
<th>c.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Balance Sheet of the North-China Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society for the Year 1879.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>$</th>
<th>c.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Receipts</td>
<td>680</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Grant of Municipal Council, North of Yang-King-pung</td>
<td>136</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. 100 Bird Stands</td>
<td>455</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Rent for 12 months ending 30th June 1879</td>
<td>189</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Expenditure for 12 months ending 31st December 1879</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Insurance, Tls. 9.75</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Miscellaneous Expenses</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Total</td>
<td>$875.91</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LIBRARIAN'S REPORT.

The stock of publications added to our Library during the past year again consists entirely of the donations of books received from other societies, public institutions, etc., and presented by private individuals. I subjoin a list of the books so received.

No new books have been purchased, although the Library is now in a somewhat backward state, and threatens to become more and more a collection of books on the most heterogeneous subjects having assembled in the same room by accident, instead of being what is ought to be,—an establishment facilitating reference to the principal literary material, of the past as well as of the present day, relating to China and the Far East.

It has been the practice, it seems, not to make purchases in anticipation of gifts from the authors of the new books. Thus purchases of works of mark were postponed, and, after a number of years had elapsed since their first appearance, lost sight of altogether. The result is a number of important lacunae in our collection, the filling up of which I would recommend to be taken in hand as early and as often as the financial position of the Society will permit, the number of important books not presented, though wanted for the completion of our collection, accumulating year by year.

During the short time I have been in charge of the Library, I have had ample opportunity to observe two important defects. The one is that the Library is a great deal too sparingly used by the members of the Society; the other, that it is, or has been formerly, used in a somewhat disorderly, not to say unconscientious, manner. A thorough overhaul will show that a number of books duly catalogued is missing, without any record of their whereabouts,—the result, no doubt, of the practice of taking out books in the absence of, and without afterwards returning them to, the Librarian.

It seems that the existence of an honorary librarian is no sufficient guarantee against this malpractice. It will be found impossible by almost anyone who may unite this post with the more bulky duties of his daily pursuit, to be always in attendance when books are taken out by members; nor is it always convenient to accompany those who wish to consult books on the premises; moreover, the library room has to be cleaned and aired from time to time by Chinese servants, and is it not often that an honorary librarian will find time to superintend such access to his treasure on the part of irresponsible people in person.
It is chiefly for this reason that the proposal has been made to move the Shanghai Library Committee, if convenient, to take over the administration of the Asiatic Library in consideration of permission being given to the members of the Shanghai Library to use it for purposes of reference or reading on the premises. As the Asiatic Library could easily be kept in a separate room, say, the present lecture room, when meetings might be held upstairs, and would continue to be the sole property of the Asiatic Society, I should say that the acceptance of such a proposal would benefit both the interests of the Society and the Shanghai Library. There can be no doubt that the present librarians of the last-named library, being professionally engaged in that work, would be much better qualified to see that books are easily used and are accessible at regular hours, while keeping their issue to members of the Asiatic Society, and their return in due course in proper order, than a member of our Council, not living on the premises, and not being able to attend to the Society's business at any time he may be called upon to do so.

I avail myself of this opportunity to strongly recommend the adoption of such a plan, the advisability of which may not at once seem plausible to members not immediately connected with the administration of our books; but has forcibly attracted the attention of myself and Mr. Haas, who, having been librarian himself, has paid particular attention to the subject.

F. HIRTH,
Hon. Librarian.
LIST OF WORKS PRESENTED TO THE LIBRARY OF THE
NORTH-CHINA BRANCH OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC
SOCIETY DURING THE YEAR 1879 AND UP TO
DATE, 4TH MARCH, 1880.

1. Complete sets of the publications issued from the Inspectorate General of Customs, Statistical Department, viz:—
   Returns of Trade, 1878, Parts I. and II., English Version.
   Returns of Trade, 1878, Chinese Version.
   Customs Gazette, Nos. 40 to 44.
   Medical Reports, 16th and 17th Issues.
   List of Lights, Buoys, and Beacons for 1879, English Version.
   List of Lights, Buoys, and Beacons for 1879, Chinese Version.


   Vol. XXVII, Nos. 185-189; Vol. XXVIII, Nos. 190-196.

4. Journal of the Royal Geographical Society, Vol. XLVIII,
   1878.

5. Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society, Vol. XXII,
   Nos. 4-6 (1878); New Monthly Series, Vol. I, Nos. 1-10
   (Jan. to Oct., 1879.)

   Parts II., III., and IV. (1878); Vol. XLII., Parts I. and II.


8. Proceedings of the Zoological Society of London, 1878:
   Parts II. and IV.; 1879: Parts I. and II.

   1878; Nos. 135 and 136; 1879: 137-139.


   III (two copies) and IV; Vol. VIII Part T.

15. Geological Survey of Japan: Reports of Progress for 1878
   and 1879; By Benjamin Smith Lymen.
32. H. C. Humme, Abijsa, een Javaansch Tooneelstuk. 's Gravenhage, 1878.
34. Tijdschrift voor Indische Taal—Land-en Volkenkunde, 1878: XXV., 1, 2 en 3 [two copies].
37. Dr. A. Spengel, Ueber die lateinische Komödie. München, 1878.
42. F. W. Schulze, on Periodical Change of Terrestrial Magnetism. Shanghai, 1879.
44. T. Watters, a Guide to the Tablets in a Temple of Confucius. Shanghai, 1879.
45. Sketch of the Life and Contributions to Science of Prof. J. Henry, LL.D. [Secretary of Smithsonian Institution]. Seven copies.
46. N. Sionfli, Catalogue (?): Dynastie des Mogols, etc., Mossoul, October-December, 1879.
50. Trübner's American and Oriental Record, Nos. 138-42.
The period to which the following notes refer is one of considerable historic interest. In the Far East the Emperor Wú-ti, the most enterprising of the Han dynasty, having broken the power of the Turkish Empire of the Hiung-nú, i.e. Kara-Nirus, was engaged in strengthening the internal administration of China, and in extending its influence abroad. In the West the Romans had, B.C. 146, captured and destroyed Carthage and had reduced Greece to a Roman province. The Ptolemies yet ruled in Egypt; and in Asia the Syrian Empire under the house of the Seleucidae still survived, but was showing evident signs of decrepitude. In Asia Minor, Pontus was rising into importance under Mithridates V., who was one of the first of the more important sovereigns of the continent to enter into close relations with Rome. This position of affairs finally resulted in the great war between his son Mithridates VI. and Rome: which afforded that encroaching power the opportunity of firmly establishing the Roman rule in Asia; and eventually overturning the decadent power of Syria, already frictered away by internal dissensions between the members of the royal house of the Selencidae.

To the east of Syria lay the powerful state of Parthia, which
founded by Arsaces I, about the year B.C. 250, had now B.C. 124
descended to the greatest of Parthian monarchs, Mithridates II.
His father Artabanus had lost his life in an attack on the
Tochārī, the Ta-hia of the Chinese narrative, who, having ac-
complished the destruction of the Greek kingdom of Bactria,
were threatening the adjacent kingdom of Parthia. Mithridates
continued the war and was eventually successful; taking possession
of Sarangia, and forcing the Scythian tribes who had poured
down on Bactria to find a vent for their superabundant energy
in Afghanistan and the Punjaub.

To the north-west of Parthia lay Armenia, a country geo-
graphically of importance in the long continued disputes of West
and East; and its peculiar relations with Pontus and Parthia
led to the first contact of Rome with the latter power. Forced
at last to take some side in the quarrel of Rome and Pontus,
Mithridates II. of Parthia despatched an envoy to the Roman
General Sylla; and thus by a curious concatenation of circum-
stances it fell to the lot of one man to open negotiations with
the two great empires of the East and West, China and Rome.

The Chinese embassy preceded, however, that sent to the
Roman General by some thirteen years, and may probably be
referred to the year 105 B.C. The power of Rome was already
making itself felt in Asia, but the absence of any allusion to it
in the pages of Sze-ma T'šien seems to prove that Parthia had
as yet seen no cause to anticipate the struggle for empire which
the events of the next few years forced upon her. For some
years longer she succeeded in holding herself neutral in the great
war between Rome and Mithridates of Pontus; but the great re-
public at last compelled her to declare herself, and we find the
Parthians for a short period in alliance with Pompey,—an alliance
however sufficiently unnatural to lead to a breach a few years
later, and which finally culminated in the total defeat of the
Roman army under Crassus.

The descriptions given in the following pages will serve to
explain many of the allusions to Serica and the Seres in the
pages of the Augustan poets, and enable us the more readily to com-
prehend how Parthia came to be the medium of communication.
A misinterpretation of the embassy of Chang-K'ien has led to
erroneous views on the intercourse of China and the west; and
as the received version of the embassy, taken mainly at second
hand from late Chinese writers, could scarcely be made to tally
with what we knew of Asia from other sources, much needless
doubt has been thrown on the accounts of the embassy extant.
I have in the following notes adhered to the original description given in Sze-ma T'sien's great work, the Shi-ki; and as Sze-ma was almost a contemporary of the events he describes his account is naturally more trustworthy than that of later writers, who simply copied his descriptions, or, if they varied generally did so erroneously.

Two writers from very different stand-points have given us geographical descriptions of Central Asia during the period referred to. In the East we have Sze-ma T'sien; in the West Strabo. The Chinese is somewhat the older in date; having been born B.C. 163, while Strabo's birth is attributed to about B.C. 66. As might be expected the Chinese author is fullest in his descriptions of Eastern Turkestan, while Strabo's recital ends with the lately overthrown Greek Kingdom of Bactria. The Chinese author was acquainted with Parthia, and even with Sarangia, the modern Seistan, while many of the other Central Asian States were known to him by report. Both writers were careful and critical, and hence have arisen many curious and undesigned coincidences, which enable us to gauge the general trustworthiness of both narratives. These coincidences I have remarked on in the notes attached to the text; which is a translation of the CXXIII. Chapter of the Shi-ki or "Historical Memoirs" a work which deservedly holds a high rank amongst histories; and the translation of which in full would add much to our knowledge of the early history of Eastern Asia.

I have preserved the ordinary transliteration of the Chinese names; not that that system is to be considered correct, but that it has for the present become so firmly fixed as to be more familiar to students. The rules for transliteration into the older language, which seems to have partially survived up to the Han dynasty, are stated Journal N. S. Vol. XII. p. 124.
THE INTERCOURSE OF CHINA WITH EASTERN TURKESTAN AND THE ADJACENT COUNTRIES IN THE SECOND CENTURY B.C.

The following is mostly a translation from the 123rd Chapter of the Shi-ki or "Book of History" of Szema Ts'ien. Information divided from other sources is inserted in the form of Notes.

As a portion has already appeared in print (vid. Celestial Empire, May 6th, 1876) I shall only give a summary of the beginning.

Chang K'i'en had been sent by the emperor Wu-ti of the Han dynasty to try and open communication with the Yueh-ti or (Viddals, the Ἐφθαλίται of the Greeks) who, having been dispossessed by the Turks (Hiung-nû or Kara Nirus) had poured down on the decaying Greek Kingdom of Bactria, called by Szema Ts'ien Ta-hia 大夏 i.e. Tochár-ia, from the Tochári (Tóχαρος of Strabo) who had lately overrun it, and whose name survives to the present day in Tokháristan.

Chang-k'i'en on his road outwards was captured by the Turks and held in captivity for ten years. Having made good his escape, and nothing daunted, he determined to carry out the object for which he had been sent. Travelling westwards for ten days he arrived at Ta-yuan 大宛, a country which forms the central feature in the narrative, and regarding which much misapprehension has existed. Ta-yuan has been usually identified with Ferghâna or Kokand, the valley watered by the upper streams of the Sir Daria and recently annexed by Russia, but the narrative will show that it must be placed east of the great Pamir steppe, and most probably near the site of the modern Yarkand.

Chang K'i'en tried to induce the people of Ta-yuan to enter into a league under the Chinese suzerainty, with the object of driving back the Turks, then encamped along the slopes of the T'ien-shan. In this although received with civility he was unsuccessful; and he went on to K'ang Ku 康居, apparently Riang Kul on the Pamir. Passing through K'ang Ku Chang K'i'en came to the Yueh-ti, who dwelt then on the banks of the Tu-kwai Shui 都窪水 or Surkh-ab of to-day; their southern boundary being formed by the Kwai 窪 Shui (the Wakh or
Oxus). Though animated with a burning hatred towards the Turks, who had expelled them from their ancient seats in what is now Kan-suh, they could not be brought to agree to the proposition of the Chinese ambassador; who thereupon went on to the Tahia (Tochári) with the object of returning to China through Thibet. After a detention of more than a year he was a second time captured by the Turks; but taking advantage of the confusion caused by the death of the Shen-yu, he finally escaped back to China (B.C. 126) after an absence of thirteen years. He was honourably received and promoted to high office.

Szama T'sien then proceeds to a geographical description of the countries visited. Ta-yuan lay to the southwest of the Hiung-nú territory and about 10,000 li due west from China. The country was for the most part settled, and the land cultivated, producing both rice and wheat. The inhabitants made use of wine made from grapes, and possessed many Shen善 horses. These were described as sweating blood; and being descended from a celestial breed 天馬子. There were some seventy cities large and small in the country, and its population was calculated at about 100,000. Its troops used the bow and spear, and shot from horse-back.

North-west of Ta-yuen lay K'ang-ku; west the greater Yueh-ti (Εφθαλίται); south-west Ta-hia (Σχαραῖ); north-east the Wu-sun 烏孫 (Ασιανόι). To the east were Kan-mi 扶桑 or Kan-mao and Yu-tien 于窲 (Khoten). West of this latter place the rivers flowed to the Western sea. East of it into the Im-chak (the Salt marsh, later on called the Salt Water 鹽水 i.e. Lake Lob) which was said to have an underground communication with the sources of the Yellow River. Adjoining the Im-chak were the States of Low-lan 楼蘭 (apparently originally called Dardan) and Ku-sze 師姑 (also called Kiu-sze or Ch'e-

1 P'u-tao-tze 蒲陶子 the grape, is apparently connected with the Greek βότρυς. Strabo XI. X., speaking of Margiana calls it ενάμπελος, and says of the grapes that they grow in bunches two cubits in size τὸν de
βότρυν διπηκοι.
2 I have left Shen have translated, as in the sequel it will be found to bear a technical meaning.
3 扶 Han or Kan is probably an error for 扶 Yu; Ch. Recorder VII. and the characters, written also 扶, represented apparently Khori-a, Kirtia of the maps.
4 Lob is apparently a corruption of Lavápa i.e., Salt Water.
5 See Chinese Recorder VII. 342.
sze 車師 i.e. Akshi*), the plains outside the cities of which reached to the waters of the lake.

Of Wu-sun we are told that it lay some 2,000 li to the north; its people were herdsmen, and similar in their customs to the Hiung-nù. They could produce some ten thousand bowmen, brave in fight. Formerly subject to the Hiung-nù they had attained independence. They married their near relations, and refused to pay homage at court. 7

North-east of Ta-yuan lay K'ang-ku; 8 whose inhabitants were similar in their customs to the Yueh-ti, and which could produce some 80,000 or 90,000 bowmen. On its south lay the Yueh-ti, on the east the Hiung-nù.

Some two thousand li to the northwest of Kiang-ku lay Im-

6 In the Shui-king called 且末 Che-möt i.e. Aksh-marda; by Yuen-chuang 折摩駱那 Che-mo-t'o-na, Aksamardana, which he identifies with 涅末 evidently an error for 淖末 Chek-möt, agreeing in sound with the name in the Shui-king.

7 The Wu-sun 烏孫 are apparently to be identified with the Asii or Asiian who according to Strabo occupied the upper waters of the Jaxartes, and who are classed as nomades with the Pasian, To-chári and Sakaraun, the latter possibly transposed from Sarakauni, i.e. the Sarikoolies of Shaw. Strabo's description would agree perfectly with Sze-ma's both as to locality and manners.

8 K'ang-ku 康居 I am disposed to identify with the Rañgha of the 1st Fargard of the Vendidad, which Sir H. Rawlinson (notes to Monograph on the Oxus, Journal R. G. S. Vol. XLII, p.p. 494,501) places in the position I have marked out for K'ang-ku, Etymologically K'ang, in Cantonese hong; repose, joy, and Zend rañh, to sound, praise, seem to be connected with Sanscrit ras, 1st gustare, amare; 2nd sonare, clamare; Greek εὐφῶ, ε" ρῶ. The old pronunciation therefore of the Chinese word would thus have approached nearer than the modern the Zend rañh; in which case the Chinese K'ang-ku would have represented sufficiently well the Rañgha of the Vendidad. The verse in which the name occurs has been translated so very differently by Spiegel and Hang that it may seem presumptuous to offer an opinion, but it may be rendered "As the sixteenth best of regions and countries, I, who am Ahuramazda produced Rañha upon the waters, governed without supreme chiefs." The phrase upon the waters may refer to its position surrounding the lakes of the Pamir; or taken in connexion with the next verse which speaks of the subsequent creation of frost and snow, to the legend of the upheaval of Pamir from the primeval waters, and the consequent increase in the severity of its winters as the land grew more elevated. This legend is given at greater length in the 2nd Fargard. The statement that it was governed without supreme rulers agrees with the description of the inhabitants as semi-nomades similar to the Yueh-ti. That they were not Turks we may gather from the text which always connects them with the Aryans of Yuan and Im-t'asi.
9—Im-t’sai-li-kan 契蔡黎軒. It seems most likely here that the two first characters are inverted and that we should read T’sai-im-li-kan in the old pronunciation Sal-im-ar-kand for Salmarkanda, modern Samarkand, the Marakanda of Strabo and Ptolemy.

10—The great marsh communicating with the Northern Sea is to be placed to the east of the present Aral. Strabo describes the Polytimæus or river of Sogdiana as flowing through cultivated grounds and ending like the Ario (the Herirn) in the desert. The name Polytimæus was not original, but was conferred by the Macedonians. Ptolemy speaks of several unnamed rivers flowing from the Sogdian mountains, one of which he says formed the Ocean marsh. Two others which rose in the mountainous region of the Komede, where the Jaxartes itself had its rise, joined it in either side, one of which was the Dëmus, the other the Baskatis. Ammianus Marcellinus, while generally following Ptolemy, is more explicit. He tells us that two navigable rivers the Araxates and Dyimas, which descend into the plain through gorges and precipitous valleys, form at the foot of the Sogdian mountains a long and wide marsh known as the "Oxia palus." Strabo too speaks of extensive marshes east of the Hyrkanian sea. A slight alteration in the level of the Aral and an increased flow of water in the upper Zarafshan would restore this condition of affairs. The upper valley of the Zarafshan is still called Macha, whence not improbably is derived Ptolemy’s Baskatis, and the Demus in this case would be the present Kishka, which after flowing past Karshi loses itself in desert. There seem to be still remains of the ancient bed of the Jaxartes across Kizilkum from Khojent along the northern flanks of the Sogdian mountains. When Alexander the Great was at Samarkand he determined to advance as far as the river Tanaïs, and on it at the furthest limit of his territory, found a city to be called Alexandria. On the Tanaïs was the city of Kyra called by Arrian Kyropolis. In two days he captured the five intermediate cities, and on the third appeared before Kyra. He found the water in the river so low that a portion of the bank beyond the extremity of the wall was dry, and by this means introduced a portion of his troops into the city, who opened the gates for their comrades. After a severe fight, the garrison retired to the citadel which they defended a day longer, but were compelled for want of water to surrender. Strabo waxes wrath over the account of the Macedonian, whom he accuses of falsehood for calling the river the Tanaïs. As however, Dâmú in Zend signifies river, it is not unlikely that the lower course of the Jaxartes may have been known by some such name to the Persians who accompanied Alexander. Kyra was destroyed, and on the site was erected Alexandria Eschaté. The present town and citadel of Jizakh probably occupy its site. The marsh described by Sze-na would thus have stretched from the neighbourhood of Bokhara, across the Kyzil-kum, and northeasterly in the direction of the present Otrar near the junction of the Arys with the present Syr-darya. This river is not improbably the Araxes of Strabo (XI, VIII, 6) which he says was the principal cause of the inundation of the land; it divided at its mouth into several branches, some of which flowed to the "other sea" towards the north, and one into the Hyrkanian gulf.

The statements of the old geographers, all point to the former con-
out defined banks, covered with reeds and (communicating with) the northern sea.

West of Ta-yuan at a distance of two or three thousand li lay the Yueh-ti who dwelt north of the Oxus. Their country was bounded in the south by the districts lately conquered by the Ta-hia (Tochāri), and on the west by An-sik or Parthia. The Yueh-ti were herdsmen and nomads, and in manners and customs resembled the Hiung-nû. They could muster some 100,000, or 200,000 bowmen. After their defeat at the hands of the Hiung-nû they had removed to a distance; and passing Ta-yuan had attacked the Tahia from the west and defeated them. The Yueh-ti followed the course of the Tu-kwai (Surkh-āb) and fixed their royal residence on its northern bank. A portion of the tribe not being able to get away with the others took refuge in the Nan-shan amongst the Thibetans, and became known as the lesser Yueh-ti.

About 1,000 li to the west of Ta-hia, lay Parthia, a very powerful state about 1,000 li square, and which had dependant on it about one hundred cities large and small. It was well cultivated, and had marts where the people and merchants trafficked. Both carriages and ships were used for the conveyance of merchandise, and it had a silver coinage bearing the image of the king, changed with each successive reign.

To its west was Tiaou-chi (Sarangia or Drangia); to its north Im-t'sai-li-kan (Samarkand).

Tiaou-chi was on the sea coast. It was an agricultural coun-

nection of the Aral and Caspian. Pliny says that an expedition sent by Pompey travelled in seven days from India to the river Icarus, the river of Balkh, which then flowed into the Oxus; and that thence Indian merchandise could be conveyed by way of the Caspian to the Kyrus, from which a portage of not more than five days was sufficient for their carriage to the Phasis. Strabo makes on the authority of Aristobulus the same statement, which however must be received cum grano salis. In this case either the levels taken by the Russian engineers must be erroneous, or the basin of the Aral has undergone an elevation of at least two hundred feet, as the Russian surveys place the dividing ridge between the two seas at that height above the water-shed of the Manych between the Caspian and Black sea.

11 安息 Ngan-sik. The old pronunciation of 安 seems to have been ar., cfr. Gr. ἀνέκος; Sans, ram. Parthia was apparently known to the Chinese as Anasak after the title of its kings.
12 條枝 Tiaou-chi. Tiaou is to be compared with Gr. στειρά showing that the initial was ι. 
try, producing rice. There were large birds there, with eggs as big as water jars. It was inhabited by a turbulent people, who were continually changing their sovereigns, and hence fell an easy prey to Parthia. Old men in the latter country said that in Sarangia was the Yok-shui and the Si-wang-mu, but they had not seen them.

Ta-hia (Tokharia) was situated about two thousand li southwest of Ta-yuan, to the south of the Kwai-shui (Oxus). It was a settled country with towns and villages; the people very similar to those of Ta-yuan. There was no supreme ruler, each city and town electing its own chief. Its soldiers were weak and cowards in battle, fit only for traders. The Yueh-ti attacked it from the west, defeated its forces and established their superiority. Its population was reckoned at upwards of a million; its capital was Lam-shi-c'heng\(^{13}\) (Darapsa of Strabo). It has marts for the sale and purchase of merchandise. To its southeast lay Shen-tu (India).

When Chang-kien was in Ta-hia he noticed some goods which had come from Szechuen, and asking how they had come, he learnt that they had come by way of India.

Of India we learn that it was situated some thousand li to the southeast of Ta-hia. The country was cultivated, and the manners and customs of its inhabitants were very similar to those of the Tochári. The climate was damp and hot, and the people made use of elephants in war. It lay near a great river (the

13 Ostriches, whose former range seems to have extended to these regions.

14 The Yok-shui, weak, or rather dead-water, is evidently here applied to the Hamun or lake of Seistan. The Yok-shui of Chinese legend referred apparently to an ancient lake once occupying the greater part of Eastern Turkestan, and of which lakes Lob and Gash are the decaying representatives. It is associated with the Kwen-lun shan i.e. Mts. of Gandhara and the Si-wang-mu. The latter name seems to be a corruption of Sumeru, the character used for in Cantonesemong, and connected with the root mar or mor to die. W. F. Mayers in his Chinese Readers' Manual sub. voc. gives a sketch of the wonderful legends which have grown up round these two names. They are evidently connected with the Hindoo stories of the Gandharvas. Finding as their knowledge of Eastern Turkestan extended that they could not apply the legends to Lake Lob in its then condition, and hearing of the similar situation of the Hamen, the stories were readily transferred to the new site.

15 Lam-shi Ch'eng the Da-rapsa, Δάραψα of Strabo. The phonetic as seen in lam i.e. λαμβ-άνω seems to point to an original lamb. Darapsssa was probably the original form of the name.
Indus). Chang-k’ien calculated the distance from Ta-hia to
China at twelve thousand ′. It was situated to the southwest
of the latter country.

India lay upwards of a thousand ′ to the south of Tahia.
There were commercial relations between Szechuen and India,
the two countries not being very distant from one another. At
present intercourse with Ta-hia is carried with difficulty through
Thibet 光; the Thibetans not being friendly. Some few on the
north, on account of what they can gain from the Hsiung-nü,
prefer the shorter road by Szechuen, which is besides free from
robbers.

The emperor heard that Ta-yuan had entered into relations
with Tochâria and Parthia, all being important countries with
large commerce, well settled land, and arts yielding only to the
Chinese. Their military power was but small, and they valued
highly the productions and wares of China. To their north lay
the Yueh-ti and K’ang-ku fierce in war. They might be induced
by the hope of profit to enter into relations with China. This
was as reasonable a connexion as could be hoped for, since the
countries extended some ten thousand ′, and nine interpreters
were needed to reach the different tribes, their authority extend-
ing as far as the Western Sea (the Arabian Gulf).

The emperor was much pleased and gave his assent to what
Chang-k’ien had suggested, and directed him to despatch from
Kien-wei 徹瓊 16 in Szechuen expeditions along the four roads
leading outwards from that place, viz., by Mang 肉, by Yen 舉,
by T’u 徒 and by Kuang-pak 仏茶. Each advanced one or
two thousand ′. That taking the northern road was stopped
by the Tai-tsook 氏翟, that going south by the Kwen-ming 昆
明 of Sui 荪. 17 The Kwen-ming tribes acknowledge no
supreme ruler. They were a set of robbers, and seized and killed
the Chinese travellers, so that this route had to be given up. They
however heard that some thousand ′ or so to their west lay a
country where elephant carriages were used named T’ien-yüt, 18
the people of which carried on a clandestine trade with Sze-
chuen.

As the Chinese were now seeking to establish a route to To-
châria, they commenced by endeavouring to communicate with

16 Kien-wei, now K’ia-ting-fu.
17 Sui, now Li-kiang-fu in Yunnan.
18 T’ien-yüt: apparently the ancient Sthâneswara now Oude and
Rohilkund (See Cunningham’s Ancient Geog. of India, i. 328) but here ap-
plicated to north-eastern India generally.
T'ìn-yût. They first tried to open a road to the southwestern I and spent much money on it. They did not however succeed, and discontinued it. Chang-k'ien affirmed that it was possible by this route to reach Tochâria, and a second time tried negotiation with the I. He was however appointed to join the commander-in-chief in an attack on the Hiung-nû, as he was well acquainted with the localities where water and provisions were to be found, so that the army should not suffer from their want. He was also invested as marquis of Po-wang. This was in the sixth year of the term Yuen-so (B.C. 129).

The next year he was appointed escort officer 衛尉, and ordered in conjunction with General Li, to lead the right wing in an attack on the Hiung-nû. The Hiung-nû surrounded General Li, whose forces suffered severe loss; Chang-k'ien came, however, to his aid and succeeded in rescuing many of his troops.

This was the year in which the Chinese despatched the Light-horse General (Ho Kû-ping) with ten thousand troops to attack the western settlements of the Hiung-nû. He succeeded in advancing as far as the K'i-lien Shan. 19

The next year the King of Hwan-ya 淵邪 induced his people to submit to the Chinese, and in consequence Kam-ch'eng 金城 Ho-sì 河西, Si-ping 西喦 and Nan-shan 南山 as far as the Im-châk (Lake Lob) were cleared of the Hiung-nû, 20 and for the time their chiefs ceased their encroachments. Two years after this the Chinese routed I 走 Shen-yu to the north of the Gobi.

After this the Emperor bethought himself of asking Chang-k'ien as to the condition of Taynan. Chang-k'ien had been deprived of his marquisate (on account of the defeat mentioned above 21). He replied "When your servant lived amongst the Hiung-nû he heard that the King of the Wu-sun was called K'wen-mo 昆莫. His father had ruled over a small state lying immediately to the west of the Hiung-nû, which was attacked by the latter, who killed K'wen-mo's father (his name according to the Han-shu was Nan-tow-mi 難兜靡) K'wen-mo was deserted

19 禹連山 K'i-lien is said by the Chinese commentator to have been the Hiung-nû title for heaven. If this is correct the characters are inverted and should read 连祁 i.e. Dhan-grí. The How-Han-shu gives Chang-ì i.e. Tangri as the equivalent, vide A. Wylie, Journal of the Anthropological Ins. Vol. II. No. III.

20 These positions, were in the prefectures of Lan-chow and Si-ning in the present Kansu. For a detailed account of these operation vide Shi-ki Ch. 110 also A. Wylie i.e.c.

21 A. Wylie i.e.c.
in the wilderness. The ravens brought him meat in their mouths and hovered over him, and a wolf came and gave him suck. The Shen-yu astonished at the prodigy took him and brought him up, and when he grew up to manhood gave him a body of troops to command.

Finding he was a man of ability, the Shen-yu restored to him his father's people, and gave him the protection of the western cities. K'wen-mo carefully looked after the interests of his people. He raised a corps of ten thousand bowmen, and accustomed them to battle. The Shen-yu dying, K'wen-mo led his people to more distant quarters, and established himself as an independent prince, as he did not wish to continue subject to the Hiung-nū. The Hiung-nū thereupon sent a force to attack him, but were unsuccessful, on account of the supernatural protection afforded him, as well as the distance. Without any important fight they entered into a compact with him. At the same time the Shen-yu was much distressed at the progress of the Chinese.

The territory of Hwan-ya had been almost depopulated, and the barbarian tribes were willing to accept presents from the Chinese, and the present was a favourable time for holding out inducements to the Wu-sun. They might incite them therefore to move eastward and take up their abode in the former territory of Hwan-ya, where they and the Chinese would be as brothers. If they accepted the invitation, it would be equivalent to cutting off the right arm of the Hiung-nū. The Wu-sun placed in close contact with China, and a connexion formed through them with Tochāria in the west, all might then become outer tributary states to the empire.

22 This tale of suckling by a wolf, familiar in the cases of Romulus and Cyrus, is matched by at least two more tales from Chinese sources. In the Tso-chuen VII. V. is given the story of Tsze-wan of T'sū suckled by a tiger Ch. Class. V. 297. Klaproth Tableau de l'Asie relates from Chinese sources, the similar story of Assena, founder of the northern Turks, p. 114. The addition of the raven (wu) above is a play on the name of the tribe (Wu-sun). With regard to the attack on the Wu-sun, Mr. Wylie's translation (L.c.) may be quoted. In the year 176 B.C. the Shen-yu wrote to the Emperor: "Now in consequence of a slight breach of the treaty by some petty officials you pursued the Right Sage Prince, till he was driven westward into the territories of the Yueh-ti. There, however, Heaven favoured our cause; our officers and troops were loyal and true; our horses strong and spirited; and by slaughter, decapitation, subjugation and pacification our army effected the complete reduction of the Yueh-ti; while Low-lan, Wu-sun, Hu-ki and the adjacent kingdoms, to the number of twenty-six in all, without exception submitted to the Hiung-nū; and thus all the bowmen natives are united as one family."
The Emperor gave his assent to the scheme and appointed Chang-k'ien leader with the rank of Chung-lang 中壙. He took three hundred men, each provided with two horses. The mission was supplied with about ten thousand sheep and oxen, and gold and silk for presents in almost unlimited quantities. Everything was done to expedite it; along the road it has to traverse presents were sent to the neighbouring districts.

On his arrival amongst the Wu-sun, Chang-k'ien was received with ceremonies similar to those made use of by the Shen-yu. He was much mortified at this. Knowing, however, the avarice of the barbarians, he told them that he was the bearer of gifts from the Emperor. If the king were not willing to acknowledge the Emperor as his superior lord, then he would take them back with him. If he agreed to acknowledge him then he would present them; they might take their choice. Chang-k'ien then explained the object of his visit. The people of Wu-sun had the opportunity of moving eastward and occupying the territory of Hwan-ya; in case they did so, the emperor would bestow a princess of his own immediate family on the king. The people of Wu-sun (it was urged in reply) would be divided; their King was old, and they dwelt so far from China that they did not know whether it was a large or small state. They were long accustomed to the ways of the Hiung-nu; they were their neighbours, and their leaders feared the power of the Hu. They did not desire to change their quarters, nor had their King power to compel them. Chang-k'ien could not prevail them to accept his propositions.

K'wen-mo had some ten sons; the second of whom was called Ta-luk 太祿: he was brave and skilled in leading troops. He moved his quarters with about ten thousand horsemen. Ta-luk's eldest brother was Tai-tsze and had a son named Sham-t'su. This brother died young. As his death approached he expressed to his father his desire that Sham-t'su should become Tai-tsze in order to preserve the succession. K'wen-mo willingly assented, and after his death Sham-t'su 學士 became Tai-tsze. Ta-luk was irritated that he had not been appointed; he plotted with his younger brothers, and raised a rebellion with the object of compelling his father to set aside Sham-t'su, K'wen-mo was now old, he was apprehensive that Ta-luk would kill his nephew, and sent away the latter to new quarters with ten thousand horsemen. K'wen-mo had still ten thousand horsemen left which he kept about his own person. The forces of the state were thus divided into three bodies, of which those adhering to K'wen-
mo were, however, the most powerful; but K'wen-mo under the circumstances did not dare to enter alone into a compact with Chang-K'ien.

Chang-k'ien in consequence divided his embassy, and sent his lieutenants to Ta-yuan, K'ang-ku, the greater Yueh-ti, Ta-hia, An-sik, Shen-tuh, Yu-t'ien, Yu-mui and the contiguous countries, Wu-sun supplying escorts and interpreters.

When Chang-k'ien returned he arranged with Wu-sun that they should send ten envoys, with ten horses, to return thanks (for the proposals that had been made) and that they should be able to see the extent and power of China. On Chang-k'ien's arrival he was promoted to the dignity of ta-hing and made one of the nine grandees, but died the following year.

The Wu-sun envoys having seen China, its great population, its wealth and liberality, returned to their own country and reported how great in comparison was China. For many years after Chang-k'ien's mission, intercourse with Ta-hia continued and men passed freely. It was thus that communications commenced between China and the countries to the north-west, the way to which had been opened by Chang-k'ien. All succeeding envoys spoke of the honesty and straight-forwardness of his dealings with foreign states, and the latter agreed in their appreciation of his character.

After the death of the Marquis of Po-wang (Chang-k'ien) the Hsiung-nu, hearing of the arrangements between China and the Wu-sun, were irritated, and wished to make an attack on the latter; the Chinese, they said, had opened communication with the Wu-sun, and there were nothing to prevent them going southward and forming a league with Ta-hia and the greater Yueh-ti. The Wu-sun were alarmed; they sent envoys to China with a present of horses, and asked a Chinese princess in marriage, so that they and the Chinese should be brothers. The Emperor laid the request before his Ministers in Council. They all said, "let them first send the wedding presents, afterwards we will send the bride." The Emperor wrote a letter in reply "Shen horses come from the north-west; those to be obtained in Wu-sun are good, notably those known as Tien horses. There are also Han-hiueh (blood-sweating) horses of Ta-yuan full of spirit. Besides there are the celebrated Wu-sun horses called Western Paragons and the noted horses of Ta-yuan called the Tien horses etc. When China first desired to establish settlements in the West, it founded the principality of Tsin-t'sien to facilitate intercourse with the North-west. Since China is now sending missions to
Parthia, Samarkand, Sarangia, and India, and the Emperor is desirous of having a supply of Yuan horses he sends this letter in the hopes that his wishes will be attended to."

As to the Envoys sent by China to foreign countries, one pei complete consisted of one hundred. Few however, numbered as many. Those who had been trained under the Marquis of Po-wang and afterwards had increased experience, had dwindled to a few. The Chinese despatched yearly missions, of which the larger consisted of ten or more pei; the smaller of five or six. Those to the more distant countries were absent eight or nine years, to the nearer, a year or so.

It was about this time that China effected the conquest of Yuen, and made an impression on the south-western in Sze-chuen, so that these requested permission to send envoys to do homage to the Emperor. At the same time the departments were formed of Yik-chow 益州, Yü-t-sui 越巖, Yang-ho 祥珂, Sham-lai 沈黎, and Wan-shan 沃山. The desire being to amalgamate with the Empire all the countries between it and Tochâria.

The same year Peh-shi-ch'ang, 柏始昌, a man of Lu-yü 吕越, was sent with ten companies through the newly appointed departments to proceed to Tochâria. They were stopped by the K'wen-ming, who murdered the escort and plundered the presents, and put an end to the expedition. In consequence of this outrage the Chinese raised three battalions from amongst the criminals of the Empire, and about ten thousand troops of Sz-chuen 巴蜀 soldiery, and sent them under the command of the two generals Kwoh-ch'ang and Wei-kwang-tang to punish the K'wen-ming for the outrage on the mission. They executed or imprisoned about ten thousand individuals, and an expedition was again despatched. The K'wen-ming again plundered it, so that eventually attempts at intercourse were given up, and all communications with Tochâria passed along the northern route by way of Tsun-t'siin.

As the number of expeditions increased, a distaste for the

23. The whole of this passage is written in a peculiar style. The text is probably corrupt.
24 Near the present Ch'eng-tu-foo in Sze-chuen.
25 See above p. 10.
26 Tse-lung says (in his account of the intercourse of the Hans with the western States. "The southern route led through Sze-chuen 伐, the northern by way of Kam-ch'eng 金城 and Tsun-t'siin 金泉. The southern route not being open, they made use of the northern, which they were enabled to do owing to the retreat of the Hsiung-nu. The southern route was rougher, and altogether more difficult to travel than the other.
Chinese commodities arose amongst the outer states, and their goods were not valued. When the Marquis of Po-wang opened up the road to the outer world they were highly esteemed. Succeeding missions, however, were hasty and got involved in disputes. The Emperor published a notification stating that foreign countries were strange, and dangerous to be traversed, he therefore invited volunteers. Should none be found willing to serve he would have to give up the more distant expeditions. This words were heard with indifference and the people did not respond to his invitation for officers. He made ample provisions for numbers of men, in order to expedite them along the road but they returned; not being able to prevent robbery and plunder of the goods, and the missions proved an utter failure. The Emperor still persevered; he enquired judicially into the heavier offences, and insisted on restitution.

When he again sought for envoys he did his best to select good men, not poor, nor given to breaking the laws, but the officials suddenly recommenced to shrink having anything to say to foreign affairs. They said that the majority looked upon them with indifference, and but few favoured these expeditions. Idle reports without foundation were circulated, and much unpleasantness ensued. The envoys sent were all the sons of poor men; the officials provided private stores of goods, and with a view to private pelf procured them of the thickest description. The foreigners in consequence grew suspicious of the Chinese caravans, the more especially, as the words of the leaders could not be depended on. Thinking that the Chinese forces were at too great a distance ever to get at them, they stopped supplies of food and goods in order to distress the expeditions. The caravans were well nigh starved, and ill-feeling ran so high that blows were exchanged.

Low-lan and Ku-shi were but small states and the road lay through their territories; they attacked and plundered the envoy of Wang-k'uei and his escort. The Hiung-nü at the time were very hostile and thought an opportunity had arrived for striking a blow at these missions to the west. They sent envoys all round to remonstrate at the danger to foreign interests; on all sides were cities and forts, and their soldiers though not strong might strike a blow. The Emperor thereupon sent the Marquis of Piao and the Po-nü General with the cavalry of the allied states and about 10,000 infantry. They in due course arrived at the Hiung river, and determined to attack the enemy, but the latter had retired.
The next year he attacked Ku-shi; and P'o-nû with seven hundred of his light cavalry having arrived first, he captured the King of Low-lan. Having reduced Ku-shi to terms he disposed his troops so as to overawe Wu-sun and Ta-yuan, and returned, when P'o-nû was made Marquis of Chuk-ye (B.C. 108).

Wang-k'wei was frequently employed as an envoy, and what he did with reference to the difficulty at Low-lan was reported to the Emperor. The Emperor accordingly having raised an army placed Wang-k'wei in command with orders to assist P'o-nû, and invested him as Marquis of Ho. At this time Tsu-t'sien was separated from Ting-chang as far as Yuh-men.

Wu-sun having sent a thousand horses as a betrothal gift, the Emperor sent Kiang-tu, a princess of the Imperial house, as a bride to Wu-sun. K'wen-mo, King of Wu-sun made her right Foo-jen. The Hiung-nû having also sent a lady to marry K'wen-mo he made her left Foo-jen. K'wen-mo being old, he ordered his grandson Sham-t'su to marry the princesses.

Wu-sun was rich in horses; rich man had as many as four or five thousand. When the first Chinese envoy arrived in Parthia the King despatched a general with twenty thousand horses to meet him on the western frontier, from which to the capital was about a thousand li. On the way they passed some ten cities. The inhabitants were all of the same race and very numerous. On the return of the mission he sent envoys with it that they might see the extent and power of China. He sent with them as presents to the Emperor eggs of the great bird of the country, and a curiously deformed man from Samarkand.

Adjoining Wan on the west were the small states of Hwan-

27 Apparently Mithridates II. who ascended the throne cir B.C. 124.
28 Such gifts were evidently customary in these countries. When Pandion (King of the Indo-Scyths?) who, a little later reigned over the north-west of India, sent an Embassy to Augustus at Samos, the mission brought as presents a partridge larger than a vulture περδικά, τε μειξω γυναικό, and a hermes, a man without arms who shot from a bow with his feet, as well as tigers, snakes and a large river tortoise: see Strabo lib. XV. The bird was apparently one of the struthionidae; the description points to the ostrich, but the ostrich was well known to the Romans, who ought certainly to have known better than to call it a partridge. There is no physical difficulty involved in the supposition that the range of the ostrich formerly extended across the Persian gulf to the deserts of Kermania and Sarangia. Its eastern limit would thus coincide with that of the lion. It is possible of course that a second species of struthio, now extinct, inhabited these districts at the time in question, and that it was sufficiently distinct to justify the description of Strabo.
To the east of Wan were Ku-shi, Yu-mi and Su-huai. All complied with the desires of the Chinese envoys, and sent tribute to the Emperor. The Emperor was much pleased and took the opportunity of sending an expedition to explore the sources of the Ho, (Yellow River). The Ho rises in Khoten; the mountains about its sources produce large quantities of jade. The Emperor examined the ancient charis and books, and learnt that the name of the mountain in which the Ho has its rise is the K'wen-lun (i.e. Mts. of Gandhāra, see note to p. 9).

About this time the Emperor was in the habit of making pleasure excursions by sea, when he was accompanied by all the foreign visitors at court, and great numbers of people took part in them. Gifts and largesses were bestowed on them and a liberal store of provision, so that they might see how rich and liberal was China. There were every means of enjoyment afforded, plays and sleight of hand tricks; numbers collected to see them, and those who took part in them were well repaid. Wine was there in lakes; flesh as if forests. The Emperor gave orders to show the foreign visitors over the granaries and treasuries, where all manner of things were piled up, so that they might have some idea of the great resources of the empire. They were especially struck at the mechanism by which the plays and other representations were produced, and their astonishment was kept continually on the stretch.

At this time caravans regularly passed and repassed between China and the countries lying to the north-west, and even from places far to the west of Yuan, from Kiao-t'ze and An-jen but they had not yet established binding rules with respect to the treatment of envoys. From Wu-sun westwards as

29 Hwan-t'sim is Kharism; the Zend Qairizem; Gr. Χωράσμα.
Ta-yik the Δέρβικες of Strabo, Δορικοὶ of Herodotus.

30 An-yun. As in the similar case of Parthia we must pronounce the initial syllable δτ.; the Aria or Arian-a of Strabo and Herodotus, the Haraevā of the Avesta. It lay S.W. of Bactria, and its name survives in the Herat of to-day. Strabo says of it that it is partly composed of valleys enclosed by mountains, and partly of inhabited plains. The plains are watered by the Rivers Arian (Herd Rud) and by the Margus (Murgab). . . . Its length is about 2,000 stadia, and the breadth of the plain 300 stadia" XI, X. Kiao-t'ze is probably the Arachôsia of Strabo situated in the banks of the Arachotus, the Haradoti of the Avesta, the 終羅 T'o-k'i-ti of the Shui-king.
far as Parthia they complied with the practice of the Hiung-nû. When the Hiung-nû had conquered the Yueh-ti they had sent envoys hearing a letter from the Shen-yu; the neighbouring countries had passed them on, and had supplied them with provisions, not daring to detain or inconvenience them. On the arrival of the Chinese caravans, unless they were prepared with presents, and rich stuffs they could not obtain food, nor could they purchase beasts of burden or horses. These people concluded that as China was a long way off, and was rich, they could compel the caravans to purchase what they needed at any price they wished. They moreover feared the Hiung-nû more than they did the Chinese envoys.

In all parts of Wan and adjacent countries the people used grape wine. Rich men stored as much as ten thousand shih in their cellars. They did not value it till it was at least ten years old; they relished their wines and their horses relished lucerne crop. The envoys having brought home specimens of both the Emperor introduced the culture of the wine and lucerne in the fertile districts of the Empire. Tien horses were now abundant. Foreign nations sent them in numbers, and they were distributed amongst the royal residences. The cultivation of grapes and lucerne succeeded to their best hopes.

From Ta-yan westerly as far as Parthia although the languages spoken differed slightly, they yet had a general resemblance (大同俗) and were mutually intelligible. The men had all deep blue eyes (深眼) and large beards and whiskers. They were astute traders and would wrangle over a farthing. They held their women in high estimation, and the husband commonly took his wife's advice before coming to a decision. Their country pro-

31 The Chinese name for the grape 艷 or as it is here written 普陶 p'u-tao is not native. As the grape itself was introduced from the neighbourhood of Yarkand we have to look to that locality for the origin of the name. Strabo speaks in many places of the exuberant growth of the grape in Central Asia. The wines of Asia he said might be kept for three generations in unpitched vessels εἰς τρειον παραμένει ἐν ἄπτωτοις ἄγγελοι. So in his account of Margiana he speaks of bunches of grapes two cubits in size. It seems not unlikely that in the Chinese word therefore, which regularly represents the Greek βότρυς (see note p. 5) we have a vestige of the Greek occupation of Bactria. It is possible too that the 首者 Muh-suk of the Chinese may have some connection with the 美dates βοτάνη of Strabo XI., XII.
duced every thing except silk and varnish. They did not understand the art of casting cash or metal vessels (some copies for 錢 read 鐘 i.e. they did not understand the art of casting iron vessels, a more probable supposition, as Sze-ma previously, see p. 6, speaks of the Parthians using silver coins.) They induced some of the attendants attached to the Chinese mission to desert for the purpose of teaching them the art of casting weapons and vessels. They obtained from China gold and silver for the purpose of making various utensils. They made little use of gems, and when the envoys were going away they took a quantity with them: of these a few were ordinary but the greater part were fit for imperial presents.

It was reported that there were concealed in Urh-shi 動師城 a number of shen horses, which the people were not willing to hand over to the Chinese envoys. The Emperor wished much to have a stock of Yuan horses and was pleased at the information. He sent officers skilled in the management of carriages, with a thousand pieces of gold and a golden horse to ask of the King of Yuan the shen horses at Urh-shi.

Yuan had had enough of Chinese commodities and readily entered into a plot. China, they said is far distant, and between us lies the salt lake (Lob) subject to sudden disturbances. Should they go to the north they will encounter the Hu (Turkish) robbers; if to the south there is a dearth of water and fodder. Whichever road they take there is an absence of towns, and scarcity of provisions. The Chinese envoys travel in companies of a hundred men or so: if they try to cross without provisions

82. A curious coincidence with Strabo's description of Bactria XI, XI, πολλή δ' ἐστὶ καὶ πάμφορος, πλήν ἐλαιον. "It is an extensive country, producing everything except oil."

83. Ursh-ch'eng the capital of Ta-yuan has not been identified; it was probably not far from the site of the modern Yarkand. On page 23, supra, we are told that the Royal city of Yuan had no wells within the walls, and was altogether dependent on streams without the city for its supply of water." This perfectly tallies with the description of Yarkand given by Hayward, (Journal of R. G. S. XI. 84). "Both the city and fort are supplied with water from several tanks, into which it is conveyed by canals cut from the river. These are frozen in the winter, and the supply is then stopped, but the tanks contain sufficient water for the consumption of the inhabitants until the regular supply is renewed in the spring." Urh-shi 動師 was apparently pronounced Ur-du, a corruption of Sanscrit Urdhva high. Its employment here as to the name of the chief city and citadel of Yuan was probably the origin of the modern Turkish use of the word to signify a citadel or royal city, and finally a camp.
they will die before they are half over. It would be easy to stop a large army without any effort on our part. As for the Urh-shi horses the people of Yuan value them and do not wish to hand them over to the Chinese envoys. The envoys were annoyed at their opprobrious words; they broke up the golden horse and took their departure.

The chief men of the city were vexed at their departure, and bethought themselves, the Chinese envoys will think but little of us, now that we have let them go; let us suggest to our eastern neighbours in Yuk-ch'eng 成 to intercept and murder them, and plunder their goods.

The Emperor was greatly enraged at hearing this, and consulted privately respecting the mission with Yao Ting-han. The latter told him that the military sources of Yuan were weak, and that though the Chinese troops did not exceed three thousand men, still they were brave and well trained in the use of the bow, and could at any time capture and destroy Yuan. The Emperor had himself had experience of his troops when he despatched the Marquis of Chuk-ye to Lowlan, the result of which was the capture of the King by the seven hundred cavalry before-mentioned. The Emperor expressed his assent to Ting's suggestion, and as he had a fancy for the Marquis on account of his favourite concubine the Lady Li, he appointed Li Kwang-li 李廣利 to command the force against Urh-shi. Six thousand cavalry were despatched from the dependent states, and in the provinces they enlisted about ten thousand youths for the expedition against Yuan. Li was given a fixed period to proceed to Urh-shi and capture the shen horses, and in consequence got the name of the Urh-shi General.

Li lost no time in making his forces effective, and for that purpose selected the Marquis of Ho and Wang-K'wei to guide the army, and Li-ch'i his Lieutenant to look after the affairs of the force. This was in the first year of the term of T'ai-ch'ō (37th year of Wu-ti, B.C. 104.) At the same time there was a great plague of locusts in Kwan-tung, their ravages extending westward as far as Tun-hwang.

The Urh-shi General advanced with his troops to the west of Lake Lob: as he went along the road the small states were suspicious and closed the gates of their cities, nor would they supply him with provisions. He was placed in a dilemma. An attack on them would delay his advance. It was necessary to move, otherwise in a few days his stores would be exhausted.
Under the circumstances he turned North to Yuk-ch'eng. The soldiers who were with him scarcely exceeded a thousand men, all exhausted by hunger. They attacked Yuk-ch'eng, but met with a severe defeat, losing in killed and wounded the greater portion of the force.

The Urh-shi general consulted with Li-ch'i and Chao Shih-cheng respecting the condition of affairs. They had got as far as Yuk-ch'eng, but could not take it; still worse would be their condition if they went onto the royal city (Urh-shi.) They determined accordingly to retire to Tun-hwang. The expedition had occupied three years, and on its arrival at the frontier not more than one or two tenths of those who had set out remained.

The General sent a despatch to the Emperor stating that the distance to be traversed was great, and they had suffered much from hunger. The soldiers had died of hunger not in battle, and were too few in number to reach Yuan. As for the troops they were much exhausted: still if a larger force were raised they were willing to start again.

On hearing this the Emperor was much enraged and sent a messenger to intercept the army at Yuh-men, and enquire how it was that the army had dared to re-enter China without permission. Fearing the consequences the Urh-shi General detained his troops at Tun-hwang.

In the summer of the same year the Chinese lost some twenty thousand men of Tsok-yi's army at the hands of the Hiung-nu. The chief officers of the state were unanimous in wishing to give up the war against Yuan and concentrating their forces in an attack on the Turks. The Emperor was however, determined in punishing Yuan. Yuan, he represented, was but a small country, if they failed to reduce it the Tochari would think but lightly of China, and the supply of shen horses cease. Wu-san and Lun-t'ow would find it easy

34 Yuk-cheng  niên. The position is doubtful. It lay north of the road to Urb-shi. The first syllable probably represents the Turkish Ak.
35 B.C. 103. The Marquis of Tsok-yi had left Sub-fang in the spring of the year with 20,000 cavalry. The left Commandant General of the Turks had offered to transfer his allegiance in China, and the Marquis set out to join his forces. The plot had been discovered before his arrival and the commandant been put to death. The Turks fell on the Chinese but were defeated. The latter however retired, but before their arrival at the frontier were set on by the Turks, their leader killed and his army cut to pieces. Wylie in T of Antropological J. l.c.
to annoy the Chinese caravans, and they would become the laughing stock of foreign nations.

It was resolved to punish Yuan at any cost; prisoners in jail and ruffians of every description were impressed, and the younger culprits were sent to join the border cavalry. In little more than a year there marched out of Tun-hwang a force of sixty thousand men, not including army followers, accompanied by one hundred thousand cattle and upwards of thirty thousand horses, besides some ten thousand mules, asses and camels, all well supplied with fodder. The troops were well provided with cross bows, and the whole empire was moved to provide means for the attack in Yuan. More than fifty generals were appointed to the force.

The royal city of Yuan had no wells within the walls, and was altogether dependent on streams outside the city for its supply of water. The Chinese took with them men skilled in waterworks to divert the streams and so deprive the inhabitants of water. In addition to these preparations 180,000 men were sent to the north of Tsin-t'sien and Chang-yih and depots of provisions were established for the protection of Tsin-t'sien. From China they despatched the seven classes of criminals to act as provision carriers to the Urh-shi's army; men used to the management of vehicles were sent to join it at Tun-hwang, and two cavalry officers well skilled in the management of horses were attached as instructors in horsemanship, to take back the shen horses after the capture of Yuan.

When all was ready the Urh-shi General again set out with a numerous army. As they marched through the border states they were everywhere well received. On their arrival at Lün-t'ow, however, the people would not submit; the army attacked the place, and in a few days destroyed it. From thence westwards as far as the chief town of Yuan the road was level.

On its arrival at Yuan, the Chinese force numbered thirty thousand men; the Yuan troops marched out to attack it, but were defeated and forced to retire within the city for shelter. The Urh-shi's troops had wished to go and attack Yuk-ch'eng;

36 We are as yet too ignorant of geography of Eastern Turkestan to be able to fix position of Lün-t'ow. It lay west of lake Lob, and the indication that thence to Ta-wan the road was level would seem to place it at the W. extremity of the mountains known to lie S.W. of the lake. Lün-t'ow 亜頭 possibly represents Darsila i.e. Cleft-rock; compare K'wen-hun for Gandhara.
he was apprehensive of the consequences of interrupting their march, and only succeeded in getting them to Yuan by a ruse.

On their arrival they set to to divert the water courses, so that the inhabitants shut up lost heart. The siege was pressed for forty days when the outer city was stormed. The chief men and the officers in command were much harrassed at the loss, and the people in great trepidation retired within the inner city, where the chief men had a consultation. They represented that the reason of the Chinese attack on the city was that the King Mu-kwa had refused to give up the shen horses, and (had instigated) the murder of the envoys. If therefore they killed the King and sent out the shen horses, the Chinese troops could scarcely refuse to accept their submission. If on the other hand they did not come to terms the contest would be carried on to the death.

Before evening the principal inhabitants all expressed their assent; they killed their King Mu-kwa, took his head and sent it with their chief men to the Urh-shi General. They told him that if he would spare the lives and properties of the citizens they would send out as many of the shen horses as were required, and would supply the Chinese troops with provisions. If on the other hand he would not agree to their proposal they would then kill the shen horses, and request the people of K'ang-ku to come to their assistance. They then with their own forces inside the city, and those of K'ang-ku without, would be well able to meet the Chinese in battle.

The Chinese generals consulted together as to what course to pursue. Meanwhile the Prince 侯 of K'ang-ku had come to reconnoitre the Chinese force, but it being still in good condition he had not dared to enter the city. The Urh-shi General took counsel of Chao Shi-ch'eng and Li-chi. They learnt that within the city they had recently obtained the services of some men from T'sin, who knew how to sink wells, while provisions were still abundant. Come what might they had cut off the head of the obnoxious Mu-kwa, and it had arrived in camp. If they did not agree to the terms proposed, they would have to take measures for their own defence, as the prince of K'ang-ku as soon as the Chinese soldiers were exhausted, was ready to come to the assistance of Yuan, in which case their army must be exterminated.

The various generals accordingly agreed to accept the terms proposed, and a convention was entered into with Yuan that
the latter should send out the _shen_ horses, which the Chinese should have the right of selecting, and that they should in addition fully provision the army.

The Chinese General took of the _shen_ horses some ten individuals, besides of medium and inferior qualities about three thousand horses and mares. They likewise selected from among the grandees of Yuan, one who had in previous time entertained in a friendly manner the Chinese envoys, by name Mui-t'sai and set him up as King of Yuan.

On their side the Chinese stipulated that they would withdraw the troops without entering the inner city; and would cease hostilities and lead them back to China.

As the army was numerous, and no provisions were to be had for so many along the road from Urh-shi to the districts immediately west of Tun-hwang, the army was divided into several sections, which followed respectively the northern and southern routes. Wang Shen-sang with about a thousand retired through the districts of Hung-lu and Wu-chung to Yuk-ch'eng; they found the city closed, and the inhabitants unwilling to provide supplies. Wang Shen-sang went on some two hundred li in advance of the main army with a body of light horse in order to reconnoitre. He made a requisition on the town for provisions but was refused. The people in the town knew through their spies that the troops with Wang were but few; at daylight they march out 3,000 strong and cut to pieces his escort. A few only escaped to the Urh-shi General. The General ordered the troops under the command of San-suh and Kih to destroy Yuk-ch'eng; the King fled to K'ang-ku whither he was pursued by Kih. The people of K'ang-ku hearing that the Chinese had taken Yuan, and had driven out the King of Yuk-ch'eng delivered him up to Kih.

Kih ordered four cavalry officers to take him bound to the general-in-chief. The four consulted altogether. "This" they said "is the King of Yuk-ch'eng who has inflicted so much loss

37 _Shen_ horses 孫馬. Is it possible that these are connected with the celebrated Nessaen horses of Strabo and the other Greek writers? Strabo XI, XIII, says:—_Τοὺς δὲ Νησαίους ἄπως, οικ ἔχοντο ὕν καὶ βασιλεῖς ἄριστος καὶ μεγίστος_; See also Herod VII. 40. Possibly like grapes the race was introduced through Bactria from W. of the Pamir.

38 彼客 Mu-t'sai apparently Malsalya i.e. Bolophoros, Sagittarius; so Mu-kwa is possibly Mahavira.

39 Apparently representing some such forms as _Hariurva, terra gilva_, and Ugrașāra, _male dura_.

AND THE ADJACENT COUNTRIES IN THE SECOND CENTURY B.C. 25
in our troops. So long as he lives he will be a source of trouble, let us kill him and finish the affair." They wished to kill him but each feared to be the first to strike. The Shang-kwei cavalry officer, Chao's younger brother was a young man; he draw his sword killed him and cut off his head. He was sent on by Kih to communicate the fact to the general-in-chief.

After the Urh-shi General had set out the Emperor sent an envoy to Wu-sun requesting it to assist him in the attack on Yuan; Wu-sun in response sent 2,000 cavalry. They were now placed in a dilemma, and did not wish to proceed as the Urh-shi General had retired to the east. The smaller states through which the the army passed when they heard that China had conquered Yuan all sent the sons or younger brothers of their ruling chiefs along with army to pay tribute to the Emperor and remain as hostages at the court.

Great rewards were bestowed on the Urh-shi General for his success at Yuan, and on the Kiun-ching, Chao Shi-ching, for his bravery on battle; as well as on Kih for the courage he displayed in entering K'ang-ku, and on Li-ch'i for his wise counsel. The army entered the Yuh-men about ten thousand strong with a thousand horses; the Urh-shi General bringing up the rear.

The army had been abundantly provisioned, and those who died in battle could not be many. The generals were, however, avaricious, and many of the troops cared very little for their officers and fell to plundering, and this caused some disturbance. The Emperor, as it had marched ten thousand li to the capture of Yuan and had returned successful, took no further notice of the irregularity. He invested Kwang-li as Marquis of Hai-si, and the younger brother of Chao, the cavalry officer who had killed the King of Yuk-ch'eng, he made Marquis of Sin-c'hi. The Kiun-ching Chao Shi-ch'eng was made Kwang-luh Ta-foo, and the Shang-kwan Kih, Siao-foo. Li-chi was made Shang-tang T'ai-show, and three of the other generals made high officers of the ninth grade.

To each of the Marquises who had an income of 2,000 shih 100 hundred men were allotted, and a thousand were distributed amongst those with less than 1,000 shih. In view of their strenuous exertions all were rewarded beyond their hopes and fully contented were permitted to retire. 40,000 pieces of gold were distributed amongst the troops, and those who had taken active part in the operations against Yuan received four years furlough. After the victory at Yuan the Chinese general had set up Mui-t'sai as King, and immediately after departed. Scarcely a
year had elapsed when the principal men of the city finding that Mui-t'sai was nothing but a feeble tool, sent an envoy to China asking permission to kill him. This being accorded they put him to death, and raised to the vacant throne a brother of Mukwa named Shen-fung, and sent his son to China as an hostage. To preserve the good understanding, an envoy was despatched in return with costly presents, and more than ten caravans were sent to the countries lying west of Yuan to seek for articles of vertu.

In order to keep Yuan under control Fung-lan was appointed Tu-wei of Tun-hwang and T'siu-tsien. Westwards as far as the Im-shui (salt water i.e. Lake Lob) rest houses were established. At Lun-t'ow a hundred agricultural officers were appointed, for the purpose of encouraging the cultivation of millet and corn to supply the caravans on their way to or from foreign countries.
INDEX OF LOCALITIES MENTIONED IN PRECEEDING PAPER.

An-jen ........................................... 18
An-Sik ........................................... 8
Ho-si ........................................... 11
Hung-lu ........................................... 25
Hwan-t’aim ...................................... 18
Hwan-ya ........................................... 11
Im-shui ........................................... 5
Im-t’sai ........................................... 7, 8
or Im-t’sai-li-kan ........................................... 7, 8
Joh (Yok) shui ......................................... 9
Kan-mi, see also Yu-mi ................................ 5
K’ang-ku ........................................... 6
K’i-lien-shan ........................................... 11
Kiao-t’sze ........................................... 18
Kien-wei ........................................... 10
taok-peing ........................................... 10
du ........................................... id
Kam-ch’eng ......................................... 11
Ku-sze ........................................... 5
K’wen-lun ........................................... 6
Kwai-shui ........................................... 4
K’wen-mings ......................................... 15
Lam-shi-ch’eng ....................................... 9
Lu-yü’t ........................................... 23
Lun-tow ........................................... 16
Low-lan ........................................... 10
Mang ........................................... 11
Nam-shan ........................................... 9
Sham-lai ........................................... 9
Shen-tuh ........................................... 2
Shuk ........................................... 11
Si-ping ........................................... 9
Si-wang-mu ......................................... 9
Su-hiai ........................................... 18
Sui ........................................... 4, &c.
Ta-hia ........................................... 18
Ta-yik ........................................... 10

Aria........................................... 18
Parthia ........................................... 8
Shen-si &c. ........................................... 11
see Wu-chung ...................................... 18
Kharism ........................................... 11
In present pro. Kansuh ................................ 5
Lake Lob ........................................... 7, 8
Lake of Hamun ....................................... 9
A kingdom s.e. of Lake Lob .............................. 5
Riang-kul ........................................... 6
T’ien shan (part) ...................................... 11
Arachosia ........................................... 18
A town in Szechuen ..................................... 10
A town in Kansuh ..................................... 11
A kingdom near Lake Lob .............................. 5, 6
Mts. of Gandhára ..................................... 9, 18
River Oxus .......................................... 4
A Tribe in Szechuen ................................... 10, 15
Capital of Bactria ..................................... 9

A place s.w. of Lake Lob ................................ 23
A kingdom s.e. of Lake Lob .............................. 16
A locality in Szechuen ................................... 10
A locality in Kansuh ..................................... 11
See Yang-ho .......................................... 18
Scinde ........................................... 9
Ancient name for Szechuen ................................ 9
A place in Kansuh ..................................... 11
A fabulous being ......................................... 9
A small state lying E of Yarkand .......................... 18
Now Lukiang-fuin Yunnan ................................ 10
Tocharistan ........................................... 18
Derbices ........................................... 18
T'ai-tsoks
T'iao-chi
T'ìn-yùt
T'siu-t'siuén
Tu-kwai-shui
T'ù
Ur-h-shí-ch'eng
Wan-shan
Wu-chung
Wu-suns
Yang-ho

Yen
Yik-chow
Yu-mi

Yü-t'ien
Yuan or Ta-yuan

Yueh-ti
Yuk-ch'eng
Yùt-suí

氏

A Tribe in Yunnan

A district in Kansuh

A locality in Szechuen

A district in Szechuen

A district near Yukh'eng

The Asiani

A newly founded district in Szechuen

A place on the borders of Szechuen

The more correct form of Kan-mi, q.v.

The Kingdom lying E. of the Pamir, of which Yarkand was the capital...

A city of Turkestan

See Yang-ho

See Yang-ho
(ROCKS WITH INSCRIPTIONS, AT THE NORTH SIDE OF YENTAI-HILL SHANTUNG.)
ARTICLE II.

ROCK INSCRIPTIONS AT THE NORTH SIDE OF YENTAI HILL.

(By J. Rhein, Esq.)

On the North slope of Yentai Hill lies,—often unheeded by passers by,—one of those curious acts of Nature, not seldom seen in mountainous countries where volcanic eruptions, coupled with influence of rain and weather, have shaped the aspect of hills and dale. It is simply an obelisk-shape granite standing perpendicular in the hill-side and in its front another horizontal—lying broad flat stone in the form of a table. The latter seems like a piece sliced off from the top of the standing Rock and deposited at its foot on another mass of granite, keeping balancing on them like the loose board of a huge table. This rock is known by the Chinese under the name of Shih-Chu'an 石船.

On these two stones are chiseled the following characters, dating from the 36 year of K'ang-hi (1697).

CHARACTERS ON THE TABLE ROCK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>畈将石壁劈成舟</th>
<th>屹立山腰海上头</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>嘉熙丁丑秋</td>
<td>珠滨涛声能悠</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>彭芝啸簧船遊梵永</td>
<td>難供利客奔南北</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>同王安自面向齊侯</td>
<td>止許高人宴夏秋</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>交虹劉九標題幃書</td>
<td>•①有風波驚不到</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following are the characters of later date chiseled under the preceding on the Obeliscal Rock:

造化奇观

康熙丁丑仲夏之吉

一帆来乘长风壮志雄添海

同治壬申年冬月由京返棹之景观石船题句

上杭翁应丁锦堂题

同治五年正月十七日

吴县陶怀崇

洪　城

THE NORTH SIDE OF YENTAI HILL.
ROCK INSCRIPTIONS AT THE NORTH SIDE OF YENTAI HILL.

Translation of the Inscriptions on the Obeliscal Rock.

"A Phenomenon of Creation wonderful to behold."

"On an auspicious day of the fifth month of the 36th year of Kang-hi (1697), composed and written by Ch'i-kwoh-tsu surnamed Ho-yen from Kwan-chung (Shensi)."

Inscriptions of Later Date, under the Preceding.

"A said for 10,000 li driven by wind, firm and brave to the utmost amidst the waves of the sea (meaning the vessel in which the composer of this verse returned from Peking; speaking of the stone at the North side of Yentai Hill called the stone-junk, he says): 'A stone so high and lofty may be considered creation; it is Heaven's work, whereby the work of man has not been invoked.'"

"In 10 month of the 11 year of T'ung-chi (November 1872) on his return with a vessel from Peking to Chefoo and seeing the 'Stone Junk' this verse was composed by Ting Chin-tang surnamed Hu-chu from Shang-hang-hsien (Ting-chow-fu in Fuhkien); and written by Chiang Chang-keng surnamed Hsuen-chun from T'ung-an-hsien, (Chuen-chow-fu in Fuhkien)."

Names of Visitors to the Rock, although of Earlier Date, Written to the Left of the Preceding.

"On the 17th day of 1st month of the 5th year of T'ung-Chi, (3rd March, 1866). Shen Ping-ying; Hsü-Chaû and Hsü Li-yen from Kwei-an-hsien (Hu-chow-fu in Cheh-kiang). Li-ching, from T'ung-cheng-hsien (An-ching in An-hwei). Pan Chang-heng from Wu-hsien (Soo-chow-fu in Kiang-su). Li Chang-yang from Ta-hsing-hsien, (Shün-tien-fu in Chihli) and Ch'en Kwang-shou from Hai-ning-hsien (Hang-chow-fu in Cheh-kiang) have together visited this place."

"T'au Hwai-kao, Hsueh Ying-chen and Hung ch'un, from Wu-hsien (Soo-chow-fu in Kiang-su) have visited it afterwards."
Translation of the Transcription on the Side of the Table-Rock or "Stone Junk," Written in the Autumn of the same Year as the Large Characters on the Obeliskal Rock.

"Who took this stone wall and tore it asunder making this vessel and depositing it in the slope of the hill above the sea? Although wind and waves may roar she cannot be terrified; although without oars or rudder she can keep her course for ever. Although gain seeking merchants cannot travel in her from North to South, yet the Poet can feast on her in Summer and in Autumn, and forsooth laugh at the glued ship which wandered in the waters of Tsu, where the Marquis of Ts'i made in vain enquiries for his King."

"In the Autumn of the 36th year of Kang-hi (1697), composed and written by Liu Chiu-Piao, surnamed Chiao-hung."

* This has reference to the glued vessel which the Prince of Ts'u (at present the provinces Hu-nan and Hu-peh) treacherously provided for Chao-Wang, the fourth King of the Chow dynasty (who reigned from 1052-1001 B.C.), when he came over to the Kingdom of Tsu for a pleasure-trip, and was drowned by the foundering of the glued vessel. This was kept secret for the Princes of the different feudal Kingdoms, but the Marquis of Ts'i (now the Northern port of Shantung and Southern port of Chihli), made enquiries after the King and accused the people of Tsu of that treacherous act. (Annals of Confucius, commentary of Tso Ch'iu-ming, 4th year of Lu Hsi-kung, 春秋左氏傳魯僖公四年昭王南征句註.)

ARTICLE III.

SIAMESE COINAGE.
BY JOSEPH HAAS.

The country known to us as Siam is by the natives called Muang Thai (Kingdom of the free). Its ancient name was Sajam (tawny race), whence that of Siam has been derived.

Beyond the scanty and somewhat mythical information which is to be found in the collection of the sacred books of the Thai, called Trai-pidok i.e. the three vehicles by which we have to traverse the great Ocean of this world, little is known of the ancient history of Siam.

The collection above referred to is divided into three series: viz., p'ra-vinai (rules), p'ra-sut (sermons and histories) and p'ra baramat (philosophy). It forms a total of 402 works in 3683 volumes. These are written in the Pali language, but a great many of them were translated into Siamese.

Some contribution to the knowledge of the ancient history of Siam may also be gained in searching the Annals of the country which are divided into two parts: the first, in 3 volumes, entitled Phongsavada-Muangnua, or History of the Northern Kingdom, gives the origin of the Thai, but is also full of fables and myths. The second part Phongsavada-Muang Thai, History of the Kingdom of Thai, or as it is called officially Phongsavada-Sajuma Rahcha, History of the Siamese Kings, in 40 volumes, begins with the foundation of Ayuthia, and carries us down to the present time.

When we consider that Siam is almost the equal of China on the scale of civilisation and that she even boasts of a more perfect system of coinage than her sister country, this paucity of numismatic records is remarkable.

Some time ago our Honorary Member, Marques A. Pereira, Consul General of Portugal in Siam, in a pamphlet*, produced some valuable, but unfortunately incomplete, notes upon the subject; and to this source I am indebted for information regarding the stamps on the former Siamese coins. I have also consulted with advantage the "Siam Directory," compiled by Mr.

* Moedas de Siam por Marques A. Pereira—1879—Lisboa—8vo. 30 pag.
Samuel J. Smith, for the chronological table of the Kings of Siam.

With the knowledge obtained from these various sources, together with the results of personal investigations during my recent visit at Bangkok, which I may remark have not been entirely fruitless, I make bold to appear before you with this essay on Siamese coins.

As in the numismatics of every country, so also in that of Siam the knowledge of her history is essential. Unfortunately, however, the earlier history of Siam is shrouded in an almost impenetrable mythical veil, and only from the time that Ayuthia was built we step into real historical facts.—We are informed that the original capital of Siam was Sangkalok, then Picheluk, and at last Ayuthia, which was built in the Chula Era 712, corresponding with A.D. 1350. With this era we commence our chronological tables—extending over the last 600 years.

The Siamese distinguish two eras, either of which is mentioned when quoting dates,—namely, the sacred and the civil era. The former is called Phut‘a-sakaraht (or Buddha’s era), and is reckoned from the reported death of Buddha. At the full moon of the sixth Siamese lunation, i.e. April 23rd, 1880, the era will have closed its 2423rd year. It antedates the Christian era 548 years, and as the term given it implies, its application is entirely confined to religious matters. Every time a Siamese priest reads or recites one of his homilies, he is very particular to state the number of year Buddhism has existed up to date, and how long it will continue to exist, which Buddhists believe will be 2577 years after the date above mentioned.

The other is the Civil era, or the Chula-sakaraht. It begins from the time when King P‘ra Ruang established it in A.D. 638. On the last day of the fourth Siamese lunation, i.e. March 10th, 1880, it will close its 1241st year, thus corresponding with the 638th year of Christian era.

Some events in Siam’s history before Ayuthia was built, say about 500 B.C.—Bathamarat a grand son of Sachanalai and Sithimongkhon built the city of Savan-thevalok, or Sangkalok, and thereupon he was proclaimed King. In short succession three more cities sprang up under his creation: viz., Haripunchai, Kamphochana, and Phetchabun, and each received as King one of his sons, of whom he had Sokha-kuman, Thama-kuman, and Singha-kuman.

This dynasty flourished for about 500 years, during which period no mention is made of troubles or wars in the country.
About the year 950 of the era of P'ra-khodom there reigned at Haripunchai the King Ap'ajakha Muni whose son Arunnarat by marriage was elevated to the throne of Sangkalok under the name of P'ra Ruang.

At this time the country of the Sajam was under the rule of the King of Kamphocha-Nakhon who gradually drifted into the vasallage of P'ra Ruang. When the latter monarch attained the fiftieth year of his age he established the Civil era or Chula-sakaraht.—His reign is also marked by the first clash of arms with China; and here also we hear of the first settlement of Chinese in Siam.—

The succession fell to his son P'raja Sucharat, during his reign great wars were raging between the Thai and the Lao.

Then Thama Trai Pidok builds the city Phitsanulok, makes Chao Kraison, one of his sons, King of Lopahuri, and the other one Chai Sakhon, King of Chieng-mai.

Khota Thevarat takes refuge at the borders of the Menam, and P'raja Krek ascends the throne.

P'ra-Chao-Uthong builds on an island the city Krung-Thep-Maha-Nakhon-Si-Ajuthaya which becomes afterwards famous under the name of Ayuthia.

### THE KINGS OF SIAM.

**FROM THE TIME THE OLD CAPITAL AYUTHIA WAS BUILT.**

**1st Dynasty.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Chula Era</th>
<th>A.D.</th>
<th>Length of Reign</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Years</td>
<td>Ms.</td>
<td>Days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sömôtch P'ra Rahmah Ti-baudee 1st</td>
<td>712</td>
<td>1850</td>
<td>20 — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.—Sömôtch P'ra Râhme-sûan</td>
<td>783</td>
<td>1870</td>
<td>1 — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.—Sömôtch P'ra Boroma-Rah-ch'ah T'irhaht, brother of the 2nd</td>
<td>782</td>
<td>1871</td>
<td>13 — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.—Chou Oó, Tuang-lûn, son of the 3rd</td>
<td>744</td>
<td>1883</td>
<td>— — 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name.</td>
<td>Chula Er.</td>
<td>Ascension A.D.</td>
<td>Length of Reign.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Sómdéth P’sra Rahme-súan, the 2nd, assassinated the 4th, his brother</td>
<td>744</td>
<td>8183</td>
<td>16 Years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Sómdéth P’rayah P’sra Ráhm, son of the 5th</td>
<td>759</td>
<td>1398</td>
<td>5 Years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Sómdéth P’sra Nak’aun In...</td>
<td>763</td>
<td>1402</td>
<td>18 Years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Sómdéth P’sra Boroma Rahch’ah Tirah, son of the 7th</td>
<td>780</td>
<td>1419</td>
<td>17 Years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Sómdéth P’sra Boroma Trai Lohkanáht, son of the 8th.</td>
<td>796</td>
<td>1435</td>
<td>16 Years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Sómdéth P’sra Boroma Rahch’ah, son of the 9th</td>
<td>811</td>
<td>1450</td>
<td>22 Years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Sómdéth P’sra Rahmah Ti-baudée, the 2nd, son of the 10th</td>
<td>832</td>
<td>1471</td>
<td>40 Years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Sómdéth P’sra Boroma Rahch’ah Maháh P’ut-t’ang, son of the 11th</td>
<td>871</td>
<td>1510</td>
<td>5 Years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. P’sra Ratsat’a Tirath, son of the 12th, 5 years old</td>
<td>875</td>
<td>1514</td>
<td>5 Months.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Sómdéth P’sra Ch’ai Rahch’ah Tirah, son of the 12th</td>
<td>875</td>
<td>1514</td>
<td>15 Years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. P’sra Yaut Fah, son of the 14th, aged 11 years.</td>
<td>889</td>
<td>1528</td>
<td>21½ Years.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

His mother Si-Suda-Shan, was Regent of the kingdom. Her lover K’un Wara-wongeáh Tirahత slew the 15th king and usurped the throne, reigning only 5 months. Being an usurper, his name is not allowed to appear in the annals of the Siamese Kings. He was assassinated by K’un P’i-rena-t’ep. The high dignitaries of the kingdom then
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Chula Era</th>
<th>Ascension A.D.</th>
<th>Length of Reign</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>placed on the throne P'ra T’seen Rahch'ah, an uncle of the late king. His name was</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.—Sómdéetch Maháh Chakra- p’atdi Rahch’ah T’irahht...</td>
<td>891</td>
<td>1530</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.—Sómdéetch P’ra Mahint’a Rahch’ah T’irahht, son of the 16th</td>
<td>917</td>
<td>1556</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The capital of the kingdom was taken in 918 by the King of Kongsah-wades or Pegu.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.—Sómdéetch P’ra Maháh T’ama Rahch’ah T’irahht....</td>
<td>918</td>
<td>1557</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.—Sómdéetch P’ra Nare-súan, son of the 18th</td>
<td>940</td>
<td>1579</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.—Sómdéetch P’ra-Ekah-Totsarot, a younger brother of the 19th</td>
<td>945</td>
<td>1584</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.—Chóu Fah Sri-sáwa-p’akh, son of the 20th, called the “one-eyed,” succumbed to a conspiracy. Here closes the dynasty of Sómdéetch P’ra Rahmah T’ibatudee, comprising 21 different kings and one usurper.</td>
<td>964</td>
<td>1603</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2nd Dynasty.

22.—P’ra Chóu Song T’am, uncle of the 21st acquired a great name by his pretended discovery of Buddha’s footprint at P’ra-baht.
23.—P'ra Ch'etáh T'iraht Otarot, an elder brother of the 22nd.

The Prime Minister Chôn P'raya Kalahôme Sri-suriwong assassinated the 23rd and placed on the throne.

24.—P'ra Aht'itaya-wong, a brother of the 23rd, 9 years old.

Here ends this dynasty of 3 reigns, the 2nd and 3rd of which, however, were merely nominal, the power being actually held by P'raya Suriwong, the Prime Minister.

3rd Dynasty.

The former king was driven from the throne by the Siamese Nobles and Lords, and his place filled by the Prime Minister above-mentioned, who assumed the title of

25.—P'ra Chôn Prasáht Taung...

26.—Chôn Fah Ch'ai, son of the 25th.

27.—P'ra Sri-sut'ama Rahch'ah, killed his nephew, the 26th.

28.—Sómóójítch P'ra Narai, son of the 25th, killed the 27th under his reign Constantin Falcon, a native of the Ionian island Cephalonia, originally a sailor, becomes Prime Minister. Christianity makes rapid spread.
and foreign factories are established in Siam; a great development of trade between Siam and foreign countries takes place and several embassies between France and Siam are sent and received.

29.—P'ra P'et Rahch'ah 1050 1688 9 — —
is called an usurper, and is not allowed to rank with the legitimate kings.—Constantin Falcon becomes the victim of his murderous designs, and all the seeds of civilisation introduced by his predecessor are rooted out. Notwithstanding, this sovereign sends an embassy to France.

30.—P'ra P'ut'a Chou Tu'a, son of the 28th 1059 1697 10 — —

31.—P'ra Chou Yu Hua Tai Sai, son of the 30th 1069 1707 26 — —

32.—P'ra Chou Yu Hua Boroma-Koht, brother of the 31st 1094 1732 26 — —

33.—Chou Fah Dauk-Madu'a, son of the 32nd 1120 1758 — — 10

Taking to the vocation of Buddhist priest abdicates in favour of his brother

34.—P'ra Chou Tinang Suriya Marintara with him ends the dynasty of Prasâht Tu'ang, represented by 9 kings, the usurper being excluded.

The reigns of the above named
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Chula Era</th>
<th>Ascension A.D.</th>
<th>Length of Reign</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Years</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

34 kings extend in the aggregate over a period of 417 years, so that on an average 123 may be counted to each.

In 1767 the Burmese plundered and looted the capital, after a siege of two years, and carried away many captives. The king succeeded to escape from Ayuthia, but, finally abandoned by everyone, he lost himself in the forests, and there died of hunger and misery.

The chief of the Siamese army Prayah Takh rallied the Siamese at Tonaburee (now the site of H. R. H. Toon Kramium Ong Yai's place), where he built the city of Bangkok, and reigned as the

35.—King Prayah Takh-sin ...... 1129 1767 15 — —

This is one of Siam's most glorious reigns on record.—Towards its end, however, the king became insane—through poison, it is supposed, administered to him by jealous statesmen. He spent the eve of his life in a Buddhistic monastery and there ended, assassinated by his successor.
### The 4th and present Dynasty.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Chula Era</th>
<th>Ascension A.D.</th>
<th>Length of Reign</th>
<th>Years</th>
<th>Ms.</th>
<th>Days</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>36.—Somdet P'ra Boroma Rahch'ah P'ra P'utt'a Yaut Fah</td>
<td>1144</td>
<td>1782</td>
<td></td>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.—P'ra P'utt'a Lo't-lah, son of the 36th</td>
<td>1171</td>
<td>1809</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.—Prabaht Somdet P'ra Nang Klów, son of the 37th</td>
<td>1186</td>
<td>1824</td>
<td></td>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.—Prabaht Somdet P'ra Paramendr Mahah-mongkut, brother of the 38th</td>
<td>1213</td>
<td>1851</td>
<td></td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.—Prabaht Somdet P'ra Paramendr Mahah Chulah-long-korn Klów, the present king, son of the 89th</td>
<td>1230</td>
<td>1868</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
These chronological tables, with the addition of some of the most important events, may be said to give us a fair general outline of the history of the country, in which we are thus enabled to distinguish two prominent and important Epochs: viz., one from the time the old city Ayuthia was built, A.D. 1850, up to the time of its destruction by the Burmese, A.D. 1767, and the second, or new epoch, beginning with the rise of the city of Bangkok, as the Capital of Siam, or say A.D. 1782, to the present time.

Proceeding to the next and important subject, that relating to the description of Siamese money, I append the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of Money</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>make</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bi'ah</strong></td>
<td>Sea shells, known as the cowry, — existed previous to and during the reign of the 38th king, 1824-50. Their value varied according to the supply in the market, sometimes there would be 1,500 Bi'ah to a Fu'ang, and at other times more or less. The legal value fixed by the Government was 800 Bi'ah for one Fu'ang. 50 Bi'ah = 1 Solot.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Solot</strong></td>
<td>Copper</td>
<td>2 Solots = 1 At</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>At</strong></td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>2 At = 1 See-o or Pai 200-450 Bi'ah = ditto.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>See-o or Pai</strong></td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>2 See-o or Pai = 1 Seek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Seek</strong></td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>2 Seek = 1 Fu'ang 1 Seek = 32 Saga or red beans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fu'ang</strong></td>
<td>= $0.075, Silver</td>
<td>2 Fu'ang = 1 Salu'ng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of Money</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Make</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salu'ng</td>
<td>= $0.15, do. — the equivalent of one Chinese Tael, so that 5 Siamese equal 8 Chinese Taels.</td>
<td>4 Salu'ng, 1 Baht or Tical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tical</td>
<td>Since the last reign = $0.60, or 5 Ticals are equivalent to 3 Mexican Dollars — Silver.</td>
<td>4 Baht or Tical, 1 Tamlu'ng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tamlu'ng</td>
<td>= $2.40, Silver</td>
<td>20 Tamlu'ng, 80 Baht, 1 Chang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chang</td>
<td>= $48, but this denomination only represents a weight; the same with the two following. The Chang is equivalent to two Chinese Catties, or 2½ English pounds</td>
<td>50 Chang, 1 Hahp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hahp</td>
<td>= $2,400</td>
<td>100 Hahp, 1 Pahrah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parah</td>
<td>= $240,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The above table condensed gives the following schedule, viz:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 Chiang</th>
<th>1 Tual</th>
<th>30 Pai</th>
<th>1 Shing</th>
<th>1 Fuang</th>
<th>64 Songpei</th>
<th>128 Pai</th>
<th>256 At</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>80 Tai</td>
<td>4 Tai</td>
<td>16 Tai</td>
<td>32 Tai</td>
<td>64 Tai</td>
<td>128 Tai</td>
<td>256 Tai</td>
<td>512 At</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64 Tai</td>
<td>32 Tai</td>
<td>64 Tai</td>
<td>32 Tai</td>
<td>64 Tai</td>
<td>128 Tai</td>
<td>256 Tai</td>
<td>512 At</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32 Tai</td>
<td>16 Tai</td>
<td>32 Tai</td>
<td>16 Tai</td>
<td>32 Tai</td>
<td>64 Tai</td>
<td>128 Tai</td>
<td>256 At</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 Tai</td>
<td>8 Tai</td>
<td>16 Tai</td>
<td>8 Tai</td>
<td>16 Tai</td>
<td>32 Tai</td>
<td>64 Tai</td>
<td>128 At</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Tai</td>
<td>4 Tai</td>
<td>8 Tai</td>
<td>4 Tai</td>
<td>8 Tai</td>
<td>16 Tai</td>
<td>32 Tai</td>
<td>64 At</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Tai</td>
<td>2 Tai</td>
<td>4 Tai</td>
<td>2 Tai</td>
<td>4 Tai</td>
<td>8 Tai</td>
<td>16 Tai</td>
<td>32 At</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Tai</td>
<td>1 Pai</td>
<td>2 Tai</td>
<td>1 Pai</td>
<td>2 Tai</td>
<td>4 Pai</td>
<td>8 Pai</td>
<td>1 At</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Pai</td>
<td>0.5 Pai</td>
<td>1 Pai</td>
<td>0.5 Pai</td>
<td>1 Pai</td>
<td>2 Pai</td>
<td>4 Pai</td>
<td>0.5 At</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
It will be seen from the foregoing tables that the denomination of the coin determining the weight thereby indicates the value, and such is the case with most coins of East Asiatic countries.

The Siamese standard of weight is double that of the Chinese. The equivalents of Siamese weights are:

4 Ticals make 1 Tael,
20 Tael = 1 Catty = 2 lbs. 9 oz. 44 dwts. av.
50 Catties or 80 Tical make 1 Picul = 129 lbs. av.

I have been unable to trace any coins from the first and second dynasty, and it still remains an open question whether such existed.

The oldest coins, of which specimens remain, date from the 3rd dynasty (1630-1780) and were made at Ayuthia, then the capital of the kingdom.

Until the reign of the 4th king of the present dynasty, silver coins, with but one exception to which I shall refer latter on, had the shape of bullets or that of a Buddhist wooden fish (木魚 Mu-yü.) It is not at all unlikely that the Cowry Shell, the original medium of exchange in the country, suggested the adoption of that odd shape.

The black appearance of some of the oldest coins is caused by the frequent practice that prevailed among the people in times of war,—especially so during the invasion of the Burmese in 1787—of burying their treasures in the earth which is said to be impregnated with sulphur.

The exception above mentioned occurred during the reign of the 2nd king of the present dynasty, when the Fu'angs were made flat and round.

The former or bullet-shaped coins bear two impressions (Kra, stamps), the upper one represents a "wheel" or a "star" and is the stamp of the mint, while the lower one represents the stamp of the reigning king.

Although the names of some of these stamps are known, it is impossible to deduce therefrom the year of their mintage.

The stamps (Kra) indicating the reign of the different kings are classified as follows:

I. COINS OF AYUTHIA.

[Symbol] Kra-Chang, the "Elephant" Stamp;

[Symbol] Kra-Bet, the "Fish-hook" Stamp;
Kra-Dockmi, the "Flower" (Lotus) Stamp;

Kra-Kri, the "Three-pronged Spear" Stamp, called also Kra-Son, "Fork" Stamp, which originates from the reign of Prajayah Tahk-sin the regenerator of Siam and the founder of Bangkok.

II. PRESENT DYNASTY.

1st King.

Kra-Bua, the "Lotus Flower" Stamp;

Kra-Chak, the "Sling" Stamp.

2nd King.

Kra-Krut ok-san, the "Large King of Birds" Stamp;

Kra-Krut ok-yau, the "Small King of Birds" Stamp.

3rd King.

Kra-Keng, the "Royal Pavilion" Stamp;

Kra?

4th King.

Kra-Kunto, the "Gobblet" Stamp;

Kra-Mongkut, the "Crown" Stamp.

Besides the above mentioned flat silver-coins, made during the reign of the second king, others of the same shape, for general circulation, were issued for the first time by order of the 4th
king of the present dynasty in two different coinages; on the first the avers shows the Royal crown between two Parassols, (Seal of the First King, representing the Royal crown and the Parassols), and the reverse bears an elephant within the crest; the second coinage is of the same design, but is of a superior workmanship. These coins were made also at the beginning of the reign of the present (5th) king, while under the tutelage of the Regent.

I have next to review the present coinage which is superior to anything of the kind yet produced in Siam. This marked progress, however, is principally due to the dies having been
made in London. With the silver coin the obverse bears the portrait of the young king, the reverse the Siamese Arms, and for the first time we see a Siamese coin with an inscription and a properly milled border.

For general use minting is at present confined to silver and copper coins; of the former there are pieces of the value of 1 Tical, 1 Salu'ng, and 1 Fu'ang; of copper coins: pieces of 4, 2, 1, and ½ At.

Gold is only coined for the King, who on great state occasions, such as cremation-ceremonies, coronation etc., distributes gold coins together with silver coins of 4 and 2 Tical, 2 Salu'ng, Songpei, Pei and At;—the former are therefore rare and highly prized by the people. In other respects the gold coin does not differ from that of silver and copper, it bears the same stamp and is named after its weight.

The value of coined gold is fixed at 16 times its weight in silver.

The Kingdom of Siam has at present one Mint where coins of precious metals are made, namely at Bangkok. Siam has a number of gold mines, those at Bang-tapah, "are said to contain the very purest gold of the country. Most of the native gold of Siam is used in manufacturing those gold vases, water goblets, teapots, cigar boxes, and other costly utensils, which the Kings of Siam usually present to the distinguished men whom they honour with high official positions. A considerable amount of gold leaf is imported from China mostly to be manufactured into jewelry."

"Heretofore the Siamese have not known that silver could be obtained from their many and varied mines in the country. They depended entirely on Foreign silver or silver money which the Siamese Government remelted and then manufactured into Ticals, Salu'ngs and Fu'angs."

The export trade of the country is greatly in excess of the import trade, and foreign merchants must import foreign coin to
effect their purchases. To this drawback was added the unwillingness of the people to accept foreign coins in payment for their commodities; hence the importer of such coin had to apply to the Government to effect an exchange for native money. Supposing Dollars were presented at the Mint, they were passed over the fire sufficiently to obliterate all marks of their origin and then a Siamese Mint officer placed 80 Ticals of a given weight on the scales and received in exchange the same weight of defaced Dollars—less 4½ Ticals Mintage money. When the Siamese mint people remelted these Dollars, they added lead enough to make up for any loss that might result from remelting.

This was the usual method for exchanging Dollars for Ticals till the reign of H. M. Sömđētch P'ra Chaun Klōw, the late King. He established the standard of 5 Ticals to 3 Mexican Dollars, and ever since importers exchange their “Mexicans” without difficulty. The mint officers fire the dollars, and if found genuine, five silver Ticals are given for every three Dollars without any further loss of time.

The fineness of the precious metals is expressed as in China by toques or touches, 100 denoting purity. They are weighed by the Tical of 236 grs. troy. The new Tical is to be of the standard purity. Its intrinsic value is about 57 cents or from 29d to 30d; formerly its purity was from 11 oz. 4 dwts. to 11 oz. 12 dwts. fineness.

As already mentioned the small sea-shells, known as the Cowry, were formerly used as Small-Currency, and still are in some provinces of the Kingdom, generally 800 of them go to a Fu'āng. Owing to the total want of a governmental small coinage of suitable shape, they grew into great demand, which was further enhanced by the special requirement of the gambling class.

In the same way as opium, salt, and several other mercantile articles form Government monopolies, which are yearly given over to the highest bidders, so are the public lotteries and the establishing of gambling houses farmed out by the authorities.

The farmer of these houses devides the region over which he holds the monopoly, into districts, and subsarms these again to others. These sub-farmers, called “Akuins,” are mostly owners of one or two more houses specially adapted to their business, and are also entitled to sublet such houses or parts therein ad libitum for gambling purposes. Consequently gambling in Siam is confined to licensed houses, except when a general permission
to gamble is in force during the first three days of the Chinese and Siamese new year.

The method of gambling in Siam is the same as in China—Archdeacon S. H. Gray in his excellent and learned work "China" describes the gambling as follows:

"Gaming houses are of various kinds. Those which are called Tan-koon are conducted by a joint-stock company, consisting either of ten or twenty partners. Such houses consist of two apartments. In the first of these is a high table, on the centre of which is placed a small square board. The four sides of the board are marked respectively one, two, three and four. For the game played in this apartment the presence of three of the partners is necessary, The first is called Tan-koon or the croupier; the second the Tai-ngan, or shroff, who sits by the side of the former, with his tables, scales, and money drawers, to examine and weigh the money which may be staked; and the third, the Ho-koon, who stands by the table, keeps account of the game, and pays over the stakes to the rightful winners. The gamblers stand round the high table, and the Tan-koon or croupier, places a handful of cash on it before him. Over the heap he immediately places a tin cover, so that the gamblers cannot calculate the exact number of the cash. They are now called upon to place their stakes at any of the sides of the square board in the centre. When this has been done, the Tan-koon removes the cover, and using a thin ivory rod a foot long, proceeds to lessen his heap by drawing away four cash at a time. Should one cash remain, the gambler who placed his stake on the side of the small square board which is marked one, is declared the winner. If two cash remain, he saves his stake; and in the case of three remaining he is allowed the same privilege. If, however, four cash remain, he loses his stake. The game is called Ching-tow, and the gambler, as the reader will perceive, has one chance of winning, two of retaining his stake, and one of losing it."

"A second game played at the same table is called Nim. At this game the gambler has one chance of winning double the amount of his stake; two chances of losing it, and one of retaining it. Should he place his stake on the side of the board marked two, and two cash remains, upon the Tan-koon removing his heap by four at a time, his winnings are double the amount of his stake. If three cash remain of the Tan-koon's heap, the gambler retains his stake; if either one or four remain, he loses.
A third game played at this table is called Fun. In it the gambler has one chance of winning three times the amount of his stake, and three chances of losing it. A fourth game at this table is called Kok. The rule observed in it, is to place the stake at one of the corners of the board, that is, between any two of the numbers. Should the croupier's remainder correspond to either of the number between which the stake is placed, the gambler wins a sum equal to his stake. Should the remainder correspond to one of the other two numbers, he loses."

In Siam gambling is practised on a large scale; not only is it sanctioned by the authorities, but it actually forms a source of revenue to the Government.

As gambling became more and more a recognised institution the bullet-shaped small coins—Salu'ng and Fu'ang—were found inconvenient to handle; namely, the gambler squatting down on an oblong mat, at one end of which the cashier or croupier was seated in a kneeling attitude, the coin had often to be thrown to a considerable distance to reach the croupier, and it was very apt to roll off into a wrong direction. To remedy this inconvenience the owners of gambling establishments introduced special Counters, made of porcelain, glass, or lead, and representing various shapes, such as stars, cash, butterflies, door-tablets, etc., and on which were inscribed, in Chinese characters, the name of the Hong, the value, and some favorite motto or classical quotation, and also in Siamese characters, again, the value which the counter is supposed to represent. With very few exceptions these gambling houses are farmed by Chinese and the majority of the customers are of the same nationality.

Among the names of the gambling Hongs we find such as:—

Examples of mottos are:—惠來, 其 安, 順 財, etc., of other inscriptions:—同治 通寶, 萬利 欽 記 etc.

As designations of value there appear:—

For 1 Salu'ng 錢 or 錢, in Siamese

" 1 Fu'ang 方 in Do.

" 1 Songpei 宋 派

" 1 Pai 一 派
For 1 At 百文
= 排百文 or 公, in Siamese ๐๕

These counters being issued under authority granted in the
gambling licence or concession, they rapidly became a favorite
medium of exchange, and were found to fill a long-felt want of
small money so well, that the circulation went much beyond its
legal sphere.

Such a facile field for foreigners was, however, not long to be
left unexplored by the enterprising Celestials. Gradually a large
quantity of imitations were thrown into circulation, and in self-
defence, the gambling Hongs were compelled to call in and
exchange for money their counters, which they continually
substituted by new ones of varied colours and shapes.

In this way originated the great variety of counters consisting,
as far as I can ascertain, of about 890 different kinds. The con-
trol by the Government became naturally more and more
difficult, and at last in 1871, it became necessary to prohibit and
stop completely all circulation of these counters. They are how-
er still to be seen in some parts of the country.

Even since the counters made their first appearance—about
in 1760—there existed in circulation some bronze coins of the
value of 1 Salu'ng and of 1 Fu'ang. They were made by hand,
and some of them are remarkable for the extremely artificial and
tasteful formed workmanship displayed thereon. But the quanti-
ty issued was very limited and inadequate to the requirements.

During the reign of the 4th King of the present dynasty
small coins were made of copper, bronze, and tin, representing a
value of ¼, ⅓, ⅛, ⅛, and ⅟⅔ Fu'ang. They were coined in the
same manner as the second issue of the flat silver coins. The
circulation of both the copper and bronze money was never very
large, while the tin coins, issued considerably below their
nominal value, were in consequence of the numerous forgeries
soon put out of circulation. Chinese residing in Siam ordered of
such coins from Hongkong, where they were manufactured on
an extensive scale, and thence exported to Siam.

Hereupon, in substitution of the tin coin, a great improve-
ment was introduced. Copper money was ordered to be minted
in England, first issue of which came in circulation under the
reign of the present King, in February, 1875.

It consisted of four different sizes:—viz 4, 2, 1, and ¼ At.—
The obverse of the coin bears the Siamese Crown with the King's signature and the reverse in Siamese characters the value.

There is also to be mentioned here an issue of paper money, which, however, remained but a short time in circulation. Its value was one At.

To recapitulate:—During the first period, when Ayuthia was the Capital of the Kingdom, there were only silver coins with the first mentioned stamps, while during the second period, with Bangkok as Capital, the flat coin took the place of the bullet-shaped one, and after various trials, a small currency was successfully introduced.

II. TRIBUTARY STATES OF SIAM.

Siam is bounded in the North by the many principalities of the Laos, all tributaries to Ava and China; on the East by Annam; on the West by the sea and by the British Possessions on the Malay Peninsula, and in the South by the small states of Pahang and Perak.

The Tributary States of Siam are:—1, in the South: the Kingdom of Ligor; 2, on the Malayan Peninsula: Tringano, Kalantan, Patani and Quedah, 3, Cambodja and Korat, and 4., the principalities of Laos, viz., Chiang-mai, Laphun, Lakhon, Muang-P'ra, Muang-Nan, Luang-p'ra-bang and Muang-long.

The first, Ligor, called by the Siamese Muang-Lakhon, but the correct name of which is Nakhon-si Thamarat, is a Kingdom, founded by one of the Kings of Ayuthia, 450 years ago. It is situated between the parallels of latitude 7° and 9°, and is fifty leagues long and over thirty wide, Thalung and Song-khla are two provinces forming part of the Kingdom, and are governed by two princes, relations of the King of Ligor. The populations of Ligor may be estimated at 150,000 inhabitants, of which three
fourths are of the Siamese race, and the remaining portion is composed of Chinese, Malays, and aborigines, which latter live in the forests.

1.—COINS OF LIGOR (LAKHON).

1.—Fu‘ang of old origin, now only used as talisman, in the globular shape, bears only one stamp, which is, however, indistinct.

2.—Pewter Pichi (1256=1840/1) with the Arabian inscription: Khalifa el mumineen (Ruler of the believers), the Reverse bears also in Arabian: Shehr Ligur derba (?) sene 1184 (City of Ligor, in the year 1256 ?)–28½ mml.—on both sides it has a walled border and a hole.

3.—Pewter Cash of which about 40 are equal to $1,—of the former Governor,—the Obverse bears: 六蜈通宝, the Reverse; 源利公司—40 mml.—both sides have a walled border and a hole.

4.—Pewter Cash, of which about 40 equal to $1—of the present Governor; the Obverse same as above, the Reverse: 廣利合其—40 mml.—both sides have a walled border and a hole.

Song-khla (Singgora, Sangura.)

Pewter Cash, of which 400 are equal to $1—½ Fu‘ang—bears a Chinese inscription: 振興通寶, coin of the epoch Chenhsing.—Its Reverse bears in Arabian, above: Nagri (Kingdom), below: Sangcura, and in Siamese 4/3, Song-khla,—39-41 mml; it has a round hole and a walled border and hole.

2.—THE OTHER STATES OF THE MALAY PENINSULA.

Before the Portuguese took possession of Malacca the sovereignty of Siam extended over the whole Malay Peninsula, as
far as Singapore. The states of Johore, Pahang and Perah, were subsequently severed from the dominions of the legitimate sovereign, and placed under British Protectorate, so that the Kingdom of Siam, properly speaking, only begins from Tringano — being situated between the parallels of 4° and 22° of north latitude.

These provinces are administered by native governors, who are nominated by the King of Siam, and who hold the power to coin small money and to fix its value within their respective province over which they rule. This prerogative is exercised by all provincial administrators of Tringano. But further south the chief currency is the copper coin of the Straits Settlements. On the West coast, whereas formerly the governors issued their own money, we find at the present day Indian money (Rupees, Annas) circulating freely. The currency differs in every province and its denomination is fixed by the prerogative of the Governor. The larger coins found on the Eastern part of the Peninsula are the Mexican Dollars and the Dutch 2½ Gilders-pieces, which both pass at the same value. In the interior of the province of Kalantan the only means of effecting payment is in gold-dust.

The state of Tringano, situated in latitude 14 North, is a mountainous, but fertile country, wherein vast forests abound. Its population is placed at about 50,000, not including 10 or 12,000 Chinese. The river beds are said to be rich in gold and tin, which is mostly exploited by the Malays in the most primitive way, but the yield is sufficient to make it an important article of commerce in the country.

The city of Tringano, the residence of the Rajah, consists of some 1,500 houses, including Chinese quarters, is situated at the mouth of a small river, and an unpretending fort commands the approaches to it from a neighbouring hill.

Coins:
1. —Silver—¼ Real—bears an Arabian inscription: Soltha—
   the Reverse is also inscribed in Arabian: Adil (Shah)—13 mm.
   both sides bear a dotted circle.
2. —Pewter—Pichi—has an Arabian inscription: Melik jet
   adil/...../ (the just king) 24 mm.
3. —Copper—Kepeng (1/400 Peso, 1251 = 1885/6).—Arabian:
   Nagri /Tringganu/ ; the reverse bears also Arabian inscription:
   /Satu Kepeng/ $\n\ndi$ (I/one Kepeng/1251) 21 mm.

The state of Kalantan is situated in the north-east of Tringano, from which it is separated by the small river Batut, and extends to another river called Banara on the confines of Pa-ta-ni.
The population, including the Chinese, consists of 65,000 souls. The country is divided into fifty districts.

Pewter Cash of which there are 980 to $1 bears an Arabian inscription which, however, is so effaced as to render its deciphering on all the specimens in my collection next to impossible—25 mlm., has a round hole, and a walled border.

Thani or Patani, situated to the North-west of Kalantac, is a rich and flourishing state, more fertile, has had more intercourse with the outside world than any other Malay state. It is celebrated in the annals of ancient navigators for having been the emporium of commerce between Siam, Cambodjia, and China. The population is computed to 100,000 souls, principally Siamese, and the country is divided into five provinces.

Under this heading there is, as far as my knowledge goes, only one coin, viz.

Pewter-Pichi (1261 = 1845) with Arabian inscription: Ajin Pittis Belancha Rach Patani (this is a current Pittis of the Racha of Patani.)—Reverse also in Arab. Khalifâ el-mumenin sene ١٧٤١ (of the ruler of believers, year 1261)—30 mlm.—with a round hole.

Quedah, which the Siamese call Muang-Sai, lies between the parallels of latitudes 5 and 7. A high range of mountains of a granite formation, varying in height from 4,000 to 6,000 feet, and said to be rich in tin, separates it from Songkhla and Patani. Gold is also found here but in small quantities.—The country is irrigated by thirty rivers of which six are navigable, and, it is divided into 105 districts containing a population of some 60,000 souls, chiefly Malays.

Sultan: Mohammed Chiva Zeinal Aladin Ma Alem Shah. (1192 1778 A.D.)

Silver Real—1154 = 1741/2—Arabian inscription; Face: Solthan Mohammed (١٨٩٠) Chiva (?) Khalifa er-nahmen (Sultan Mohammed Chiwa, representative of Clemency). Reverse: Bibelad Qedah /dar el man/ sene ١١٣٠ (in the country of Kedah, the seat of peace, year 1154) 21mlm.

Sultan: Tach ed-din Alem Shah. (1219-1237 Hj. 1804-1821 A.D.)

(last Malay ruler, was dethroned by the Siamese in 1821, and his kingdom incorporated to Siam, himself died 1846.)

Pewter Trak. Arabian inscription; Obverse: Belad Kedah dar al-man (country of Kedah, the seat of peace)—Reverse:
Takin alif \( \text{KM} \) year, (of the cycle, Alif, 1224); 22½ mml.; round hole.

\textit{Tuanku Anum}, Malay Governor of the Siamese.

Pewter \textit{Trah}. Arabian inscription: \textit{Belad Kedah} (dar) el-man (country of Kedah, the seat of peace)—Reverse: large six-rayed star; 22 mml.; round hole.

Pewter \textit{Trah}. Arabian inscription: \textit{Belangshah belad kedah dar el-man} (current in the country of Kedah, the seat of peace.)—Reverse: large 12 rayed star; 18 mml.; round hole.

Pewter \textit{Trah} (1262-1846). Arabian inscription: \textit{Belangshah belad el-Perlis Kedah sene} \( \text{M\text{M}} \) (current, [in the capital] Perlis, of the Kingdom of Kedah, year 1262.)—Reverse: Lotus flower; 24 mml., round hole.

Pewter \textit{Timma}. Cock standing on two rings. 43 mml.

3.—\textit{SIAMESE CAMBODJIA}.

\textit{Cambodjia}, ancietly known as \textit{Kamphuxa}, whence it derived the name of Cambodjia, is now called \textit{Khmer}.

Not later than 300 years ago this was a great kingdom, as compared with its present condition, then extending from 8° 30' to 20° N. lat. Its dominions comprised a great portion of the territory now forming part of Laos and even Siam.

Harassed on all sides, by Siam and Cochinchina, Cambodjia gradually lost one province after the other, and with them vanished her grandeur and splendour. The kingdom now embraces but few provinces which cover an area of only some 40 leagues, viz., \textit{Photsisat} or \textit{Poursat}, Kampong-suai, Kampong-som, and Kampot; the last two of which border on the sea.

\textit{Korat}, a small state, was in olden times but a city serving as boundary between Siam and Cambodjia, whence it became the name of \textit{Nakon-raha-sema} (frontier city.)

From the province of Battamboug (13° N. Lat., North of \textit{Photsisat}) we possess an oval shaped copper coin, of small size, covered with a poor silver coating; the face shows a cock stepping to the right, and over it the Chinese character \( \text{G} \) [or \( \text{S} \), to strengthen]; the reverse is blank; 15 mml.—1,15 gr.—Value: 64 to 1 Tical.

In the Northern provinces there is the \textit{Tical}, being the largest coin in circulation, while in the Southern provinces extensive payments are effected in silver bars which bear a stamp as proof of having been examined and of the touch;—and brass bars in the value of 2 \textit{At} take the place of small money.
Other Cambodjian coins are:
1. Silver *Fu'ang*—cock stepping to the right, 13-16 mln, 23, 70 gr.
2. Copper *At* below cock turned to the right, 14 mln.
3. Pewter—Pagoda with one tower: Cambodjian inscription in two lines; Reverse: on branches *Noo* (100) 20 mln.
4. Silver *Tical* (1208–1846) 3-towered Pagoda with Cambodjian inscription in 3 lines. Reverse: Cambodjian inscription; cock turned to the right—*N & T* (1208) — 35½ mln. 14, 70 gr.
5. Pewter (Ounce = 3 Tical, 1208–1846) 5-towered Pagoda with Cambodjian inscription in 3 lines. Reverse: cock turned to the right, inscription, at its feet (1208), — 35½ mln. 14, 70 gr.

6. Silver *Tical* (1208–1846) 3 towered Pagoda with Cambodjian inscription in 3 lines. Reverse: cock turned to the right, inscription, and (1208) — 30 mln. 15 gr.
7. Silver ¼ *Tical* (1208–1846) Pagoda with 1 tower. Reverse: Cambodjian inscription in 3 lines, cock turned to the right and (1208) — 20 mln. 3, 60 gr.

I shall not treat here the 22 different coins of Cambodjia issued since her protection under France.

4. THE LAOS STATES.

The city of Chiang-mai lies in a fertile and picturesque plain to the east of a lofty mountain. In the annals of Siam we can
trace its age back to the fifth century of the Christian era. At the time of Pra-Ruang, the king of Siam married a Princess of Chieng-mai to his brother, whom he then placed as ruler over that country.

Laphun is a petty state, governed by a prince of its own and stands under the vassalage of its neighbour, the ruler of Chieng-mai.

Lakkon—not to be confounded with the kingdom of Lakkon (Ligor)—a city of about 25,000 inhabitants, is situated in a rich and fertile plain, through which flows a great river.

Muang-P'ire.—The capital of this small kingdom is described as being situated in a well cultivated, small valley between two chains of mountains; a river which below the capital precipitates its waters in many cascades over a rocky bed, provides for ample irrigation. The population of this city does not exceed 15,000.

The kingdom of Nan, both as regards population and size, ranks above the three foregoing states, its capital alone containing at least 60,000 inhabitants. This country is bounded on the north by the territory of the Laos tribe called the Lu.

Luang-P'ira-Bang.—Not very long ago there flourished along Cambodjia's largest river, the Mekong, three Laos kingdoms, viz., Yen-shan, in the south, Muang-P'uen in the north, and between these two Luang-P'ira-Bang. The Siamese after completely devastating it annexed the first to their kingdom, and carried into captivity the greatest part of the population of Muang-P'uen. But Luang-P'ira-Bang was considerably extended to the north and gradually grew to what it is to-day a flourishing country, having an extensive commerce with the Siamese, the Laos and the Chinese. The population of the capital is estimated at about 60,000 souls.

Muang-Long.—A month's journeying down a river which flows into the Menam in Ayuthia, that petty state, called Muang-Long, is reached. It is completely incased in a system of mountains and has a capital of scarcely more than 9,000 to 10,000 inhabitants.

In the South of the Laos States the ordinary Siamese money is in circulation, in the north, however, that of British India (Rupees, Anas etc.), whilst at the frontier of Burmah we meet also with coins of that country. In all the Laos States, besides, the so-called "Sapeques," the tin cash of Anam and Cochinchina, serves as a medium of exchange.
For numismatists these States are of a certain interest on account of the particular coin with which the *fines* are paid. This is in the shape of a shell, made of silver alloy. Each one of these coins bears three stamps, viz., two of the maker, the third in Laos-letters is the name of the temple, nearest to which the mint issuing the coin is situated.—Each piece, which according to law must contain a Rupee in silver, is issued at the value of three Rupees, and is paid—as above stated—only for certain purposes, such as fines, court-fees, and tributes to temples. In cases of smaller fines, as those of breach of discipline, the peasant pays 6, the lower official 12, the higher 24, and a chieftain 38 pieces. The benefit accruing to the Government from these peculiar coins amounts to the difference between the contents of silver to the value at which they are issued.

Older silver coins of the Laos are in the shape of bars, lobsters, and two clumsy horse-shoes joined together, with stamps in *Pati*, not yet deciphered.

Not to be omitted here are Medals lately coined, of which there are six, viz.

1.—A gold medal in memory of the sixtieth birthday of the late (4th) King,—weight 4 Ticals;
2.—the same medal in silver;
3.—A large silver medal, coined in memory of the coronation of the present King,—weight 8 Ticals;
4.—Copper medal in commemoration of the same event;
5.—Copper medals coined on the 17th birthday of the present King;
6.—A large silver medal in memory to the festival of the inauguration of the royal palace at Bang-paling,—weight 8 Ticals.

Although coined in France, but issued in commemoration of an event in Siam's history, the following medal is the most interesting.

The medal is of copper; the Obverse bears: LUDOVICUS. MAGNUS. REX. CHRISTIANISS. with King Louis XIV.'s profile looking towards the right, clothed in Roman toga (below an R.—On the reverse we read: FAMA. VIRTUTIS. and see the Siamese Ambassadors before the King sitting on his Throne) and below the inscription: ORATORES. REGIS. SIAM. [M.D.C. LXXXVI.] MAUGER. F.
The history of this Siamese Mission is briefly as follows:—
Under the reign of King Sömèdetch P'ra Narai (1657-1688) Constantin Falcon through the favour of his sovereign rose to the office of Prime Minister of the Kingdom. Upon his instigation the king sent an embassy to France, which were, however, shipwrecked near the Cape of Good Hope. Meanwhile, by the exertions of Falcon, trade with the outer world flourished more and more in Siam. The Dutch, French, English, and Portuguese had their commercial factories there. Falcon persuaded the king to send another embassy to France. His Majesty appointed Nai Pahn as first Ambassador, and two others, one as 2nd and the other as 3d Ambassador. This embassy reached happily its destination. King Louis XIV. gave audience to the Ambassadors on several occasions and was offered the cession of Sangora in consideration of his sending a small army of French soldiers to Siam.—In memory to their visit to France, and more especially to the first audience obtained from the King the above medal was coined, but in a very limited number. Two of these medals are kept in the Musé du Louvre; the hereto annexed impression I was fortunate enough to obtain from the original one, now preserved at Bangkok; it has a radius of 73 Millimeter and 172 gramms of weight; a small one had a radius of 41 Millimeter.
Although the description of Siamese coins given in this essay has been well considered and is based upon most careful enquiries, it lays, as little as the author himself, no claim to infallibility—nor must it be considered as perfectly complete.—All I hope is that the notes above given may prove a useful guide and lead to further knowledge, and may they assist future collectors in entering upon profounder researches of the numismatics of that most interesting part of the Far East.
JOURNAL
OF THE
NORTH-CHINA BRANCH
OF THE
ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY.
1880.
NEW SERIES, No. XV.

Agents for the Sale of the Society's Publications:

SHANGHAI AND HONGKONG.—MESSRS. KELLY & WALSH.
YOKOHAMA.—MESSRS. KELLY & CO.
LONDON.—MESSRS. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.
PARIS.—M. ERNEST LEROUX, RUE BONAPARTE, 28.

AMERICAN PRESBYTERIAN MISSION PRESS.
CONTENTS.

Report of the Council for the year 1880 ... ... ... i
List of Members... ... ... ... ... ... iv
Treasurer's Report ... ... ... ... ... ... viii
Librarian's Report ... ... ... ... ... ... xii
Report of the Curator of the Shanghai Museum for the year 1880... ... ... ... ... ... xxii

ARTICLE I.—Early European Researches into the Flora of China, by E. Bretschneider, M.D. ... ... 1

ARTICLE II.—Coins of the present Dynasty of China, by S. W. Bushell, M.D. ... ... ... ... 195

ARTICLE III.—The "Naturalistic" Philosophy of China, by Frederic H. Balfour. ... ... ... ... 311
REPORT
OF THE
COUNCIL OF THE NORTH-CHINA BRANCH
OF THE
Royal Asiatic Society,
FOR THE YEAR 1880.

At the Annual Meeting, held on the 8th of March, 1880, the following gentlemen were elected Office Bearers for the year:

Very Rev. Dean Butcher, D.D., President.
A. J. Little, Esq., A. E. Hippisley, Esq., Vice-Presidents.
Chas. D. Whitty, Esq., Secretary.
Max Slevogt, Esq., Treasurer.
Joseph Haas, Esq., Librarian.
D. C. Jansen, Esq., Curator.
John Fryer, Esq.,
T. W. Kingsmill, Esq.,
D. J. Macgowan, Esq., M.D.,
J. Rhein, Esq.,
C. Schmidt, Esq.,
A. B. Stripling, Esq.,

Councilors.

Early in the year, the Very Rev. Dean Butcher, President, left Shanghai, and the Council have since been indebted to Mr. A. E. Hippisley, Vice-President, who presided in his place. Five meetings have been held during the year, and the following papers have been read:
1.—27th January, "On Siamese Coinage,"—by Joseph Haas, Esq.*
2.—8th March, "Remarks on the Middle Yangtsze,"—by D. J. Macgowan, Esq., M.D.
3.—7th June, "Coins of the present Dynasty of China,"—by S. W. Bushell, Esq., M.D., Physician to H. B. M. Legation, Peking.
4.—21st September, "On the Naturalistic Philosophy of China,"—by Frederic H. Balfour, Esq., Professor of English at the Imperial Japanese Legation, Peking.
5.—"On the Geology of Takow, Formosa,"
6.—"On the Geology of the Pescadores,"
7.—"On the Hydrology of the Yangtsze, the Yellow River, and the Peihó,"—by H. B. Guppy, Esq., M.B., Surgeon to H. M. S. Hornet.
8.—19th November, "Early European Researches into the Flora of China,"—by E. Bretschneider, Esq., M.D., Imperial Russian Legation, Peking.

Baron Ferdinand von Richthofen and Colonel N. Prejevalsky have been elected Honorary Members of the Society, in recognition of the eminent services rendered by them to the geography of Central Asia and China. Count Bela Széchenyi, the head of the Austro-Hungarian Expedition to Western China, and Mr. Herbert A. Giles, of H.B.M. Consular Service, have been nominated Corresponding Members.

The death of the Rev. S. R. Brown, D.D., formerly a resident of Yokohama, has deprived the Society of an old and distinguished Corresponding Member, and the Council also regret to record the death of three ordinary members, one of whom, Mr. G. G. Lowder, for some time acted as Hon. Secretary to the Society. Five members have resigned during the year, and eleven new members have been elected; the following shows the numerical strength of the Society at the end of the year:—Honorary Members, 16; Corresponding do., 23; Resident do., 38; Non-Resident do., 73. Total, 150.

* Published in the Society's Journal, Vol. XIV. 1879.
These figures go far to prove that the object of the Society and the benefits it offers to all cultured and thoughtful men are not sufficiently recognised by our resident community. It is true that during the year under review the meetings of the Society have been far better attended then during preceding years, but to be really prosperous we need the support of a wider circle of friends than are now found on the list of resident members.

Under the superintendence of Mr. Haas, the Honorary Librarian, the collection of books forming the Society's Library has been transferred to the present Lecture-hall, the circulation of the books being now under the control of the Committee of the Shanghai Library, and it speaks well for the new arrangement that the collection is now more generally used than has been the case formerly.

A new catalogue of the Library has been issued, and the Society's Journal for 1880 is in course of publication, under the editorship of Messrs. Hippisley and Haas.

The usual reports of the Librarian, Treasurer, and Curator of the Museum are appended.

31st December, 1880.
LIST OF MEMBERS.

(JULY 1881.)

HONORARY.

—20—

His Majesty Leopold II., King of the Belgians.

Hart, Robert, Esq., C.M.G., Peking.
Pereira, Marquis, A.F., Esq., Bombay.
Prejevalsky, Col. N., St. Petersburg.
Richthofen, Baron Ferdinand von, Bonn.
Seward, George F., Esq., U.S.
Williams, Rev. S. Wells, L.L.D., Yale, U.S.
Wylie, Alex, Esq., London.

CORRESPONDING.

—20—

Bastian, Prof. Dr. A., Berlin.
Cox, Rev. Josiah,—
Delaplace, Mgr. L. G., Peking.
Fritsche, H., Esq., Ph. D., Peking.
Fryer, John, Esq.
Giles, Herbert A., Esq.
Hance, H. F., Esq., Ph. D., Whampoa.
Happer, Rev. A. P., D.D., Canton.
Hepburn, J. C., Esq., M.D., Yokohama.
John, Rev. Griffith, Hankow.
Keischke, Dr. Ito, Tokio.
Kreitner, Lieut. G., Vienna.
Lindau, Rudolph, Esq., Berlin.
Lockhart W., Esq., M.D., London.
Macgowan, D. J., Esq., M.D., Wenchow.
McCartee, D. B., Esq., M.D., Tokio.
McClatchie, Rev. Thos., M.A., Shanghai.
Muirhead, Rev. W., Shanghai.
Schereschewsky, Right Rev. S. I. J., D.D.
Széchenyi, Count Bela, Zinkendorf, Hungary.
Williamson, Rev. A., L.L.D., Chefoo.

RESIDENT.

Acheson, James, Esq.
Carles, W. R., Esq.
Cooverjee, P., Esq.
Dülberg, F. W. E., Esq.
Forbes, F. B., Esq.
Grant, P. V., Esq.
Gubbay, R. A., Esq.
Haas, J., Esq.
Hague, E. P., Esq.
Henderson, Ed., Esq., M.D.
Hjousbery, E., Esq.
Holt, Rev. W. S.
Hosie, Alex., Esq., M.A.
How, A. J., Esq.
Jansen, D. C., Esq.
Kingsmill, T. W., Esq.
Kleinwächter, G. H. J., Esq.
Krauss, A., Esq.
Little, A. J., Esq.
Little, L. S. Esq., M.D.

Low, E. G., Esq.
Maignan, H., Esq.
Morris, Herbert S., Esq.
Morrison, G. J., Esq.
Pichon, L., Esq., M.D.
Reeks, A. J., Esq.
Rivington, Charles, Esq.
Samson, J., Esq.
Saunders, W., Esq.
Schmidt, C., Esq.
Shinagawa, E., Esq.
Slevogt, M., Esq.
Southey, T. S., Esq.
Starkey, Reg. D., Esq.
Stripley, A. B., Esq.
Toda, E., Esq.
Vissière, A., Esq.
Wetmore, W. S., Esq.
Wood, A. G., Esq.
Yound, F., Esq.
NON-RESIDENT.

Alford, R. G., Esq., Hongkong.
Allen, E. L. B., Esq., Foochow.
Anderson, G. C., Esq., —.
Ayrton, W. S., Esq., Newchwang.
Baber, E. C., Esq., Peking.
Bandinel, J. J. F., Esq., Newchwang.
Boleslawski, Chevalier C. de, Cairo.
Brenan, B., Esq., —.
Bretschneider, E., Esq., M.D., Peking.
Bristow, H. B., Esq., Tientsin.
Buskell, S. W., Esq., M.D., England.
Coignet, F., Esq., France.
Cooper, W. M., Esq., England.
Cordes, August C., Esq., Hamburg.
Coughtrie, J. B., Esq., England.
Dodd, J., Esq., Tamsui.
Eitel, Rev. E. J., Ph. D., Hongkong.
Farago, E., Esq., Peking.
Fauvel, A. A., Esq., Cherbourg.
Ferguson, His Ex., J. H., Peking.
Fergusson, T. T., Esq., Chefoo.
Frater, Alex., Esq., England.
Glover, G. B., Esq., Kiukiang.
Gunpy, H. B., Esq., M.B., Falmouth.
Hanbury, T., Esq., England.
Henderson, J., Esq., Tientsin.
Hippisley A. E., Esq., Tamsui.
Hirth, F., Esq., Ph. D., Germany.
Hübbe, P. G., Esq., Hamburg.
Imbault-Huart C., Esq., Peking.
Jamieson, G., Esq., Kiuikiang.
Johnson, F. B., Esq., Hongkong.
Johnston, J., Esq., M. D.
Kleinwächter, F., Esq., Ningpo.
Kopsch, H., Esq., Pakhói.
Krey, W., Esq., Germany.
Macintyre, Rev. John, Newchwang.
Maclay, R. H., Esq., Tientsin.
McClatchie, H. P., Esq., Chefoo.
Möllendorff, O. von, Esq., Ph. D., Canton.
Möllendorff, P. G. von, Esq., Tientsin.
Owen, Rev. G. S., Peking.
Paae, C., Esq., Peking.
Parker, F. H., Esq., Chungking.
Pitman, J., Esq., Tokio.
Plancy, V. Collin de, Esq., Peking.
Reid, David, Esq., England.
Rhein, J., Esq., Peking.
Rocher, E., Esq., France.
Ruegg, E., Esq., Switzerland.
Russell, The Hon. James, Hongkong.
Sampson, T., Esq., Canton.
Schultz, Capt. C. A., Tientsin.
Schulze, F. W., Esq.
Seckendorff, Baron von, Peking.
Sim, Alexander, Esq., England.
Smith, The Hon. Cecil C., Singapore.
Stent, G. C., Esq., Swatow.
Streich, K. A., Esq., Peking.
Stuhmann, C. C., Esq., Foochow.
Sutherland, H., Esq., Foochow.
Tata, D. B., Esq.
Watters, T., Esq., Tamsui.
White, F. W., Esq., Hankow.
Wicking, H., Esq., Hongkong.
Wilcox, R. C., Esq., Hongkong.
TREASURER’S REPORT.

To the President and Council of

THE NORTH-CHINA BRANCH OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY,

SHANGHAI.

GENTLEMEN,

In submitting to you the Accounts of the North-China Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society for the year 1880, I have much pleasure in being able to report favorably on the financial position of the Society. From the enclosed Balance Sheet it will be seen that the total income of the Society during 1880 amounted to Mex. $ 864.13, the current expenses to Mex. $ 455.32, leaving a Credit Balance of Mex. $ 408.81 in the hands of your Treasurer. During the year 98 Subscriptions, producing Mex. $ 710, have been collected, as against Mex. $ 645 received in 1879. 28 Subscriptions are still due from Non-Resident Members, but I do not anticipate that these arrears will bring in more than about Mex. $ 80. An amount of Mex. $ 136.90 has likewise been received for copies of Journals sold by Messrs. Trübner & Co., London, and it is hoped that the arrangement recently concluded with our local Agents will help to increase the Society’s income from this source.

The reduced cost of the Journal for 1879 is the principal cause of last year’s disbursements contrasting favorably with the expenditure of former years; on the other hand our expenses for Fire-Insurance, repairs to the building, advertisements and book-binding have been somewhat heavier than usual. The Society have no outstanding liabilities at present but early in the year about Mex. $ 90 will become due for printing the new Catalogue of the Library and the cost of the Journal for 1880 will form a very conspicuous item in the expenditure of the current year.
As regards the Museum, its existence is dependent upon the liberal contributions received from the English and French Municipal Councils, and it is to be hoped that our two Municipalities will continue to assist an Institution so deserving of support and which is a source of pleasure and instruction to a large part of our community. During the year the receipts of the Museum amounted to Mex. $ 851.37, the expenditure to Mex. $ 709.24, of which Mex. $ 102.46 properly belong to the previous year, being amount of rent due to the Shanghai Library for the 6 Months ending 31st December, 1879. A Credit Balance is thus shown amounting to Mex. $ 142.13 = Tls. 103.09, which are duly lodged with the Hongkong and Shanghai Banking Corporation. In the matter of outstanding liabilities the Museum is less fortunately situated than the parent Institution, its indebtedness on 31st December, 1880 being as follows:—

To Recreation Fund: Interest on Loan of Tls. 1500, three years at 5 per cent per annum, ... Tls. 225.
To W. B. Pryer, Esq., Sundry Expenses for Museum, due since 1875, $ 51.39, ... ... Tls. 37.37

Tls. 262.37

MAX SLEVOGT,
Hon. Treasurer.

SHANGHAI, 1st February, 1881.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Receipts:</td>
<td>80,640</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subscriptions collected for 1879 (Annually)</td>
<td>710</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subscription for 1879 (Annually) for Hon. Treasurer</td>
<td>640</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disbursements:</td>
<td>130,90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st Payment for Printing Journal for 1879</td>
<td>138,60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd Payment for Printing Journal for 1879</td>
<td>45,53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Woodcuts for Do.</td>
<td>15,53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tree for Fire-Insurance and Printing</td>
<td>12,80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insurances</td>
<td>77,90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For 1879, on Building and Contents</td>
<td>27,63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For 1879, on Journalas</td>
<td>32,75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Building Insurances for 1879</td>
<td>17,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repair to Building</td>
<td>36,60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Municipal Taxes and Chinese Government</td>
<td>34,45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postage and Freight on Journals</td>
<td>33,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gas and Coal</td>
<td>15,75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wages to Shroff, Coolies and sundry Expenses</td>
<td>15,75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balance in hand</td>
<td>40,81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>134,311</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Shanghai, 31st December, 1880.

Max Slevogt,
Hon. Treasurer.
# BALANCE SHEET
OF THE
MUSEUM FUND OF THE NORTH-CHINA BRANCH OF THE
ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY,
FOR THE YEAR 1880.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Receipts</th>
<th>$</th>
<th>cts</th>
<th>$</th>
<th>cts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Grant of English Municipal</td>
<td>681</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>819</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Council, ... ... Tls. 500.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Grant of French Municipal</td>
<td>137</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Council, ... ... Tls. 100.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Sale of Duplicates from</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>07</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Museum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Interest on Current Account</td>
<td>851</td>
<td>37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with H. &amp; S. Bank, ... ... Tls. 3.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disbursements</th>
<th>$</th>
<th>cts</th>
<th>$</th>
<th>cts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>By Rent of Museum for 6 Months</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>204</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ending 31st Decbr., 1879, Tls. 75.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Rent of Museum for 12 Months</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ending 31st Decbr., 1880, Tls. 150.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Wages to Chinese Taxidermist,</td>
<td>240</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 Months at $2.20 p.m.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; do., to Coolie, 12 Months at $6 p.m.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Repairs to Building Tls. 25.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Fire-Insurance on Contents of</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Museum: Tls. 1000,—Tls. 8.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Municipal Taxes ... ... ...</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>53</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; N.-C.B. of the R. A. Society: Balance of Loan Tls. 160.— $205.20.</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>81</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Incidental Expenses ... ... ...</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Balance deposited with Hong-</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kong and Shanghai Banking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corporation, Tls. 103.09.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Shanghai, 31st December, 1880.

E. & O. E.

Max Slevogt,
Hon. Treasurer.

Audited and found correct.
Jos. Haan
G. Kleinwachter.
The most important event of the year, as regards the Library, has been the transfer of its collection of books to the custody of the Committee of the Shanghai Library, the latter Institution undertaking to superintend the circulation of the books in consideration of the members of the Shanghai Library being allowed the free use of the Society's Library. Although this arrangement may at first sight appear to be one-sided, it is really in favour of the Society, as from want of a Librarian residing on the premises, the collection of books has been practically inaccessible in the past. If in future the number of readers should not increase, it will be due to lack of interest rather than owing to defects in the management of the Library.

To facilitate the supervision of the books, the collection has been removed to the Lecture-hall on the ground-floor of the Society's building and the Library itself has been put into better order.

In accordance with the terms of the agreement entered into with the Shanghai Library a hand-list of works contained in the Society's collection has been prepared, corrected up to 31st December 1880, and the same shows 991 Nos. to which must be added the 1023 Chinese volumes of the Wylie Library and the collections of works on Natural History which remain under the charge of the Museum authorities.

As will be seen from the annexed list of additions received at the Library during the past year, the Society has again not been able to acquire any works by purchase, which is to be regretted, as the collection, although rich in early works on China and the Far East, shows some important lacunae as regards publications of a more modern date. The names of Ritter, 'Lassen, Yule, Koeppen, Beal, Palladius and Prejevalsky will be looked for in vain on the pages of our Catalogue, not to mention numerous other works which are indispensable to every scientific Library in the East.
On the other hand the accessions to the Library, received in the way of exchanges or as donations from Governments, Publishers and private individuals, have been neither few nor unimportant, as a glance at the appended list will show.

Foremost in rank, both as regards the donor and the value of the donation, stands the magnificent work on Boro-Boudour, presented to the Society by H. E. the Netherlands' Minister for the Colonies, the full title of which is as follows:

**Buddhist Architectural Remains in Java:**


2 vols. 8vo of text (French and Dutch), with 17 plates and 8 royal folio volumes of 393 large plates, containing about 1000 separate designs.—Leide, 1874.

Bernard Quaritch says in relation to this work (Book List No. 47):

"This grand work, published by order of the Dutch Colonial Office, illustrates the ruins of an ancient temple first discovered in 1814, which forms a splendid monument of Buddhist architecture in Java in the eighth or ninth century of our era. It attests the magnificent civilisation of the ancient Indo-Javanese dynasties that ruled the island before the arrival of Mahommedan conquerors, and adds an important contribution to the history of Buddhism and its developments in Art. The sculptures are treated in detail in the text, so that the latter has grown into an extensive work on the historical and traditional life of Buddha, the ancient history of India, and the history of Java during the sixth to the fourteenth century."

The number of Scientific Institutions with whom the Society exchanges publications has been further extended during the year, and the list now comprises some 30 Societies in Europe, America and Asia.
To Dr. E. Behm, the Editor of Dr. A. Petermann’s Geographische Mittheilungen, Guido Corà, the well-known Italian Geographer, Dr. Sourindro Mohun Tagore of Calcutta, who presented the Society with 26 of his works on Hindu Poetry and Music, to the Inspector General of the Imp. Chinese Maritime Customs, to the Rev. Father M. Dechevrens, S. J., the learned Director of the Zi-Ka-Wei observatory, and to several other valued authors, whose names will be found in the annexed list, the Library is indebted for many important contributions, and while it is hoped that the interest thus shown in the welfare of the Society will be maintained, I trust that others will come forward and help us to fill up the blanks which at present somewhat detract from the value of the Library.

JOSEPH HAAS,
Hon. Librarian.

SHANGHAI, January, 1881.


925. Harmonium Sutra, or a Treatise on Harmonium by Sourindro Mohun Tagore. Calcutta, 1874, 8vo.


927. Hindu Music from various authors compiled by Sourindro Mohun Tagore. Calcutta, 1874, sm. 8vo.


from Rajah Sourindro Mohun Tagore.

934. Occasional Papers on Chinese Philosophy, by Chaloner Alabaster.—No. VI. The Chinese Bible, ppto. 8vo.

from the Author.


from the U. S. Department of Agriculture.


from the Author.


from the U. S. Department of Coast Survey.


from the Author.


from the Publishers.


960. Fifty Tunes composed and set into music by Sourindro Mohun Tagore, 1878, 8vo.


970. *Veni Sanhara Nataka*, or the Binding of the Braid, a Sanskrit drama, by Bhatta-Narayâna. *Calcutta*, 1880, 8vo.

971. *Muktahali Natika*, a Bengali Drama, 12mo.


Presented.
S'Gravenhage, Martinus Nijhoff, 1879, 8vo.
from the Author.

975. Reisen in China von Peking zur Mongolischen Grenze und Rückkehr nach Europa, von Dr. Adolf Bastian. 
Jena, Costenoble, 1871, 8vo.
from Joseph Haas Esq.

976. The Missionary Enterprise, its success in other lands, the assurance of its success in China, by a Missionary. 
Shanghai, 1880, ppt. 8vo, 23 pag.
from Presbyterian Mission Press.

978. Bôrô-Boedoer up het Eiland Java, door Dr. C. Leemans. 
Leiden, E. J. Brill, 1873, 8vo.

979. Bôrô-Boudour dans l'île de Java, dessiné sous la direction de Mr. F. C. Wilsen avec texte descriptif et explicatif, 
redigé d'après les mémoires manuscrits et imprimés de 
Leide, E. J. Brill, 1874, 8vo.

980. Bôrô-Boudour sur l'île de Java. Leide, E. J. Brill, folio, 
1er–8e Livraison.
from H. Exc. the Netherlands' Minister of Colonies.

987. La Province Chinoise du Yûn-nan, par Emile Rocher. 
from the Statistical Department Imp. Maritime Customs.

Shanghai, 1880, 12mo.
from the Author.

989. The Province of Shing-king (by Julius Bryner). Shanghai, 1880, 4o.
from the Author.

from the Author.

145/6 (Vol. XII, Nos. 9–12); New Series, Vol. I, 
Nos. 1, 3–8.
from the Publishers.
991. Bibliothèque de feu M. Jules Thomeiller, Orientaliste etc.

from F. B. Forbes, Esq.


from the Society.


from the Society.


from the Society.


from the Society.


from the Society.

849. Mémoires de la *Société des Etudes Japonaises, Chinoises, Tartares et Indo-Chinoises*.—Session de 1878–79.

from the Society.


from the Society.

852. XVI. Jahresbericht des *Vereins für Erdkunde zu Dresden*. Wissenschaftlicher Theil.

from the Society.


from the Editor.


from the Academy.

871. Sitzungsberichte der *K. B. Akademie der Wissenschaften zu München*. 
1. Philosophisch-philologisch and historische Classe: 1878, Band II, Heft I-III; 1879, Band III, Heft I-III.
2. Mathematisch-physikalische Classe: 1878, Heft IV; 1879, Heft I & II.

from the Academy.

892. Bataviaasch Genootschap von Kunsten en Wetenschappen: 2. Notulen, Deel XVII, 1879, Nos. 2-4; Deel XVIII. 1880, No. 1. 3. Verhandelingen, Deel XXIX, 2° Stuk; Deel XLI, 1° Stuk. Register op de Notulen der Vergaderingen over de Jaren 1867-1878.

from the Society.

873. Oesterreichische Monatsschrift für den Orient: 1880, Februar-August.

from the Oriental Museum in Vienna.


from the Society.


from the Academy.


from the Society.


from the Institution.


from the Society.


from the Society.

917. Reports on Trade at the Treaty Ports in China for the year 1878.—14th Issue.
918. Returns of Trade at the Treaty Ports for the year 1879. Part II, Statistics of the Trade at each Port.

919. Imperial Maritime Customs.—Medical Reports for the half year ended 31st March 1880.—19th Issue. from the Statistical Department Imp. Maritime Customs.

NOT INCLUDED IN CATALOGUE, 1881.

Boletin del Ministerio de Fomento de la Republica Mexicana : Tom. IV, 116-137; Tom. V, 1-6, 18-170.


Zweiter Jahresbericht des Vereins für Erdkunde zu Metz pro 1879. from the Society.

Dr. A. Petermann’s Mittheilungen aus Justus Perthes’ Geographischer Anstalt, herausgegeben von Dr. E. Behn. 26. Band, 1880, I-X; Ergänzungsheft No. 12. from the Publisher.

Revue critique d’Histoire et de Littérature. No. 19, 10th May 1880.

Thirty first annual Report of the Trustees of the Astor Library for the year ending December 31st, 1879. from the Library.


Customs’ Gazette, No. XLVII, July-September 1880.


Museum Library:
The Natural History and Scientific Book Circular, by William Wesley, bookseller and publisher. from the Publisher.
Bulletin of the Minnesota Academy of Natural Sciences for 1877.
from the Academy.

XXVI. und XXVII. Bericht des Vereins für Naturkunde zu Kassel über die Vereinsjahre vom 18. April 1878 bis dahin 1880.
from the Society.

Jahresbericht des Vereins für Naturwissenschaft zu Braunschweig für das Geschäftsjahr 1879-1880.
from the Society.

from the Curator.

Proceedings of the Scientific Meetings of the Zoological Society of London for the year 1879. Parts III & IV.

List of the Vertebrated Animals in the Gardens of the Zoological Society. 1879, and first supplement.
from the Society.


List of the Geological Society of London. 1st Nov. 1879.
from the Society.

from the Institution.

from the Author.

Notes on the Geology of the Iron and Copper Districts of Lake Superior by M. E. Wadsworth.
from Harvard College, U.S.A.
SHANGHAI MUSEUM.

REPORT OF THE CURATOR FOR THE YEAR 1880.

It will be gratifying to the members of the Society to learn that throughout the year, notwithstanding the absence of my scientific predecessor, the public has continued to exhibit its usual interest in the Museum. The book kept there shows that more than three hundred persons visited it during the year; but this, I must mention, very inadequately represents the total number who have done so, few indeed regarding the request of entering their names. The donations, which have been made during that period, more than equal, both in point of number and scientific interest, those of the preceding year. A detailed list of them is attached to this report, and I venture to suggest, that in the interest of the Society, it is desirable that this should be published in extenso, together with the contributors’ names, in its Annual Report; so that an official recognition may be given which will probably be more generally esteemed than the simple announcement hitherto limited to the daily journals.

I think it only right to specially call the attention of the Society to the extensive and valuable collection of specimens illustrative of the geology of China presented to the Museum during the year, and for which we are indebted to Dr. H. B. Guppy, of H.B.M.’s ship Hornet. This forms by far the most complete series which has hitherto been received; and its intrinsic value is enhanced by the locality being attached to each specimen, and by the nomenclature being given in most cases, upon the authority of the contributor. If a transient visitor has been able to make so valuable a collection with such slight opportunities, how great a field is open to resident and corresponding members of the Society, either personally or through the medium of their friends at the out-ports, to largely aid in acquiring a knowledge of this neglected but most important branch of the scientific history of this immense empire.
Some highly interesting geological specimens from Corea and Russian Siberia have also been presented by Capt. G. C. Anderson, of the s.s. Appin, and we are indebted to the same gentleman for specimens of seaweed, shells, and other objects of scientific interest.

Many other gentlemen whose names appear in the list have given us assistance with regard to Ornithology, Entomology, &c., and in addition to the thanks which will I feel sure be cordially voted by the members to the various contributors, I would suggest that a special letter of acknowledgement be forwarded by the President to each of them, and that this course should be adopted in future, immediately on the receipt of any donation; and, also, that when possible, the conventional and scientific names of any specimen received should be specially included in the letter acknowledging it.

A great opportunity for expansion has been afforded us by the acquisition of another room placed at the disposal of the Museum by the removal of the Society's Library, consequent on its transfer to the custody of the Shanghai Library. We have, however, refrained from utilizing the extra space thus afforded us until our financial position for the coming year had been determined; considerable expenditure having become necessary for converting some of the old show cases and the purchase of new ones.

With the re-arrangement and enlargement which we are now in a position to commence, I think new spirit might be infused and a greater impetus given to the affairs of the Museum by the assumption of the functions of Curator by several members, in place of by one individual as heretofore; each taking that province with which he is most familiar, or in which he is most interested. Let, for example, Zoology and Botany be undertaken by one, Geology by another, and Technology by a third. By such an arrangement a kind of committee would be constituted, each member of which would be able to call upon his friends for assistance in procuring specimens and information relating to his particular department; which would, consequently, be beneitted by the closer and more competent attention he could devote to its interests, and that, too, without any great tax on his leisure.

I cannot too strongly urge upon your attention the value which a good Technological collection would possess, or the easy and inexpensive manner in which it might be acquired. Specimens of all the products of Chinese labour, whether in agriculture, arts, or manufactures, would form a most interest-
ing and suggestive collection; and I have no doubt that these could be procured through the medium of the several Consuls, and especially of the Custom House officials, in the different open ports; and that we might confidently rely—if proper application were made him—on the cordial co-operation of the Inspector-General of Customs, whose love of science and interest in the advancement of Chinese affairs would enlist his sympathies in our scheme. The formation of such a collection would impart new life to the institution and give interest and variety to its now somewhat monotonous exhibit, composed mostly of specimens of the Zoology of this province. The labour of arranging the specimens in cases would be but a small part of the work required in collecting each exhibit. The history, description, uses, and methods of preparation of its many interesting products should be gleaned—studious examination made—and the resulting information published for the public benefit. The collection would embrace the direct products of Chinese labour in their marketable state; that is, as they are produced and offered for sale by the farmer, artisan, or manufacturer. In arranging such a collection a classification should be adopted that is simple and at the same time comprehensive, and as we are limited both in means and space, it would be as well, perhaps, for us to confine ourselves to obtaining specimens for the three following simple divisions:

1st.—All food substances.

2nd.—Substances used in the arts and manufactures.

3rd.—Natural History in relation to the production of the above.

For instance, in the 1st Dept. we might arrange cereals and legumes, fruits and vegetables, farinaceous substances, sugar, beverages, liquors, narcotics, spices, and condiments.

In the 2nd Dept. we could place all animal fibres, vegetable fibres, paper materials, dyes, colouring and painting materials, tanning materials, gums and resins, fats, oils and wax, medicines, etc.

The 3rd Dept. would embrace natural History in relation to or in any way connected with the production of the above, such as farm animals, animals found upon the farm in a wild state, animals denominated as "farm pests," and those useful as furnishing food, or from their destroying insects, domestic poultry, game birds, hybrids. Birds—beneficial or injurious—insects injurious to vegetation, arranged in regard to the plants on
which they feed, together with artificial means of destruction, etc., etc.

I am aware that the utilitarian character of such a collection will strike some of the members of the Society as being foreign to the original design of the Museum. Still I venture to hope that before throwing the suggestion aside as useless or impracticable, it will receive due consideration from the officers and members. We receive Tls. 600 a year from the Ratepayers of the English and French Settlements of Shanghai under the idea of the Museum being a public benefit. But the accumulated contributions of the few years it has been in existence are nearly all so purely scientific that, while presenting points of interest to a few lovers of science, they possess but little else to recommend them to the general public. The Technological department suggested would, however, be of a more practical turn, and while but slightly interfering with the present routine of the institution would, I feel sure, be a benefit to the public at large; and while interesting to all, an honorable addition to our little Museum.

D. C. Jansen,
Hon. Curator.

Shanghai, 10th March, 1881.
<p>| LIST OF CONTRIBUTIONS RECEIVED AT THE SHANGHAI MUSEUM DURING THE YEARS 1879 AND 1880. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| SCIENTIFIC NAME | CONVENTIONAL NAME | WHERE FOUND | NAME OF CONTRIBUTOR |
| Ephebera bittern | Bittern | Shanghai | A. Warrice. |
| Boletus stellaris | Japanese Ibis | Shanghai | T. Howell. |
| Hakea nippon | Chinese Jay | Shanghai | T. M. Young. |
| Dendrocitta himalaica | Himalayan Magpie | | |
| Mergus abellus | Stur | | |
| Arlica cinnamomea | Grey Sandpiper | | |
| Numenius phaeopus | Whimbrel | | |
| Falco pergerius croceus | Peregrine Falcon | | |
| Querquetula crecca | Teal | | |
| Parus major | Red breasted Rail | | |
| Cygnus olor | Bohemian Chaferer | | |
| Anser indicus | Hawfinch | | |
| Tannahina indicus | Eastern Bullfinch | | |
| Euphrasianus passerinedus | Paradise Flycatcher | Yangtze entrance | Capt. C. H. McClain. |
| Pipraeus maculatus | Large Reed Warbler | | |
| Calandria orientalis | Black Albatross | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DATE</th>
<th>NO.</th>
<th>CONVENTIONAL NAME</th>
<th>SCIENTIFIC NAME</th>
<th>WHERE FOUND</th>
<th>NAME OF CONTRIBUTOR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1879.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Great horned Owl</td>
<td>Bubo maximus</td>
<td></td>
<td>A. M. Gary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Falcated Teal</td>
<td>Eunetta falcata</td>
<td></td>
<td>G. C. Anderson s.s. “Apin”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pintail Duck</td>
<td>Dafila acuta</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr. F. Burge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Avocet</td>
<td>Recurvirostra avo-cetta.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr. F. Burge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cormorant</td>
<td>Phalacrocorax carbo</td>
<td></td>
<td>E. H. Keney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Snake</td>
<td>Elaphis tessinurus</td>
<td></td>
<td>E. M. d’ Almeida</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Golden Eagle</td>
<td>Aquila chrysaetos</td>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Egret</td>
<td>Garzetta egretta</td>
<td></td>
<td>E. A. Deacon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hoopoo</td>
<td>Upupa epops</td>
<td>Wuhu</td>
<td>Spence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yellow necked Heron</td>
<td>Ardeeta flavigollis</td>
<td></td>
<td>Vict. Knott</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Little Crake</td>
<td>Porzana minuta</td>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Swallows</td>
<td>Cercopsis arcticolla</td>
<td></td>
<td>Alfred Dent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Siberian Jack-daw</td>
<td>Lycos dauricus</td>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A set of bow arrows, and arrows from South Sea Islands</td>
<td>Archibuteo strophatus</td>
<td></td>
<td>J. J. Tucker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Buzzard</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Chinese fox</td>
<td>Canis vulpes</td>
<td></td>
<td>O. Braud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Little spotted Civet</td>
<td>Viverra malaccensis</td>
<td></td>
<td>M. C. Adams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Great horned Owl</td>
<td>Bubo maximus</td>
<td></td>
<td>J. F. Rodewald</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Wild cat</td>
<td>Felis sinensis</td>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Wasps nest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A. M. Gray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Frog spawn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>John Rennie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cuckoo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Jones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Long eared Owl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sparrow hawk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Common Heron</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATE</td>
<td>NO.</td>
<td>CONVENTIONAL NAME</td>
<td>SCIENTIFIC NAME</td>
<td>WHERE FOUND</td>
<td>NAME OF CONTRIBUTOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1879</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Red start</strong></td>
<td>Rhynoceros leuocoscephala</td>
<td>Shan</td>
<td>L. le Breton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jan. 26</td>
<td></td>
<td>White capped Red start.</td>
<td>Rhynocerus leuocoscephala</td>
<td>Chinkiang</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dec. 19</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hoopoe</td>
<td>Rhynocerus leuocoscephala</td>
<td>Interior of Race-course, Shanghai</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Grey wood pecker</td>
<td>Rhynocerus leuocoscephala</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>E. J. Davies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Arsenic Paste (1 Pot)</td>
<td>Rhynocerus leuocoscephala</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>W. R. Kahler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Chinese Otter</td>
<td>Rhynocerus leuocoscephala</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>C. Beurmann</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sparrow hawk</td>
<td>Rhynocerus leuocoscephala</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>M. Buchanan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Indian Rail</td>
<td>Rhynocerus leuocoscephala</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Long-eared Owl</td>
<td>Rhynocerus leuocoscephala</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Capt. Orsted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 Small fish</td>
<td>Rhynocerus leuocoscephala</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>W. S. Cox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Snake Skin</td>
<td>Rhynocerus leuocoscephala</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>H. Sylva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 Mandarin Ducks</td>
<td>Rhynocerus leuocoscephala</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Geo W. Conner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 Thrush</td>
<td>Rhynocerus leuocoscephala</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>W. Mesney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 Lot Butter flies</td>
<td>Rhynocerus leuocoscephala</td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Bittern</strong></td>
<td>Botaurus stellaris</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>Henry Morris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jan. 14</td>
<td></td>
<td>Rufous-backed Shrike</td>
<td>Botaurus stellaris</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>D. C. Jansen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jan. 20</td>
<td></td>
<td>Long-eared Owl</td>
<td>Otus vulgaris</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>F. H. Mawhood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 Box Sea Shells</td>
<td>Otus vulgaris</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>H. E. Hobson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Eastern Pelican</td>
<td>Otus vulgaris</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>A. Lewis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Goosander</td>
<td>Otus vulgaris</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>W. Harrison, R.N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Baer’s Duck</td>
<td>Otus vulgaris</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>J. F. Rodewald</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 Pair</td>
<td>Otus vulgaris</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>Dr. Irwin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Nest of Weaver bird</strong></td>
<td>Bucephala clangula</td>
<td>Tientsin</td>
<td>Dr. O’Grady, R.N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>March</td>
<td>Pair Golden eyed Ducks (or Carrot)</td>
<td>Bucephala clangula</td>
<td>Tientsin</td>
<td>Dr. Irwin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Conventional Name</td>
<td>Scientific Name</td>
<td>Where Found</td>
<td>Name of Contributor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Black-crested Kite</td>
<td>Milvus melanotis</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>F. J. Williams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Redstart</td>
<td>Phoenicura leucocephala</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Eastern Crane</td>
<td>Grus monacha</td>
<td>Woosung</td>
<td>G. G. Hopkins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Goosander</td>
<td>Mergus castor</td>
<td>Chinkiang</td>
<td>Paym: Harrison &quot;Modeste&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tortoise shell Turtle</td>
<td>Chelonia umbricata</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mr. Chin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Green Woodpecker</td>
<td>Ge cinus guerini</td>
<td></td>
<td>R. H. Arindale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Sea Turtle</td>
<td>Chelonia mydas</td>
<td></td>
<td>Capt. Cutting, ship &quot;Boyne&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Common Heron</td>
<td>Ardea cinerea</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>Augustus Broom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Hoopoe</td>
<td>Upupa epops</td>
<td>Java Sea</td>
<td>W. Buchanan s.s. &quot;Eldorado&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Beetle</td>
<td>Scarabaeus mollius</td>
<td>Shaweishan</td>
<td>S. D. Veitch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Lesser Tern</td>
<td>Sterna minuta</td>
<td>Ningpo</td>
<td>H. B. Meyer, Ningpo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Sea Eagle</td>
<td>Halliactes albicilla</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>Capt. Anderson &quot;Appin&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Golden eyed Duck</td>
<td>Bucephala clangula</td>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Water cock</td>
<td>Gallirrex cristata</td>
<td></td>
<td>J. M. Fabris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Equinacus Curlew</td>
<td>Numenius borealis</td>
<td></td>
<td>W. T. Phipps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Japanese Single-torn</td>
<td>Monocotis japonicus</td>
<td></td>
<td>R. Knott</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Snake</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>P. Adams s.s. &quot;Tansin&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Eastern Pelican</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>R. W. H. Wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Wandering Albatross</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>R. Knott</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Oyster Catchers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Painted Snipe</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>C. J. Dudgeon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Black naped Ind.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>J. H. dos Rosarios</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Orriole</td>
<td></td>
<td>Oriolus sinensis</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lieut. Leslie, R.N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Collection of Snakes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(6)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATE</td>
<td>NO.</td>
<td>CONVENTIONAL NAME</td>
<td>SCIENTIFIC NAME</td>
<td>WHERE FOUND</td>
<td>NAME OF CONTRIBUTOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td></td>
<td>An arrangement of</td>
<td>Sterna hirundo</td>
<td>Russian Tartary, Sakhalien</td>
<td>A. Gordon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>silk cocoons in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr. Burge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pendants from a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>T. Ramsey.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>circular top</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>J. M. Young.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>covered with red</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>T. M. Irwin s.s. &quot;Appin&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>and green paper</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>made and offered</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>by women to the</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>goddess Kwan-yin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>at the temple in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aug.</td>
<td>Hsi-yuen, in the</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>hope of having</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>good silks crops.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sea swallow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 Beetle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 Baer's Duck</td>
<td>Fuligula baeri</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 Crab</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 Birch bark water</td>
<td>Russian Tartary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bucket made by</td>
<td>Sakhalien</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>the Ghilao of the</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amoor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oct.</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 Butterfly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>H. Bolland.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Common snake</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>W. Lamont.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 Land rail</td>
<td>Ortigometra crex</td>
<td></td>
<td>J. T. Cheetham.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 Blue Rock Thrush</td>
<td>Petrocinela manilla</td>
<td></td>
<td>W. T. Phipps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Common snake</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>E. J. Davis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>shark.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>R. Knott.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A 4 legged chicken</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>J. A. Primrose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA NO.</td>
<td>SCIENTIFIC NAME</td>
<td>COMMON NAME</td>
<td>WHERE FOUND</td>
<td>NAME OF CONTRIBUTOR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880.</td>
<td>Palaearcticus</td>
<td>1 Pair Pheasants</td>
<td>Japan (Seabird)</td>
<td>W. Guibbuni</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Seaweed</td>
<td>2 Bottle Seaweed</td>
<td>Vladivostock</td>
<td>Capt. Anderson, s.a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Small fish</td>
<td>3 Small fish</td>
<td>Saghalien</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Star fish</td>
<td>4 Star fish</td>
<td>Saghalien</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Slow shrimp</td>
<td>1 Slow shrimp</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Beetle</td>
<td>1 Beetle</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Wax</td>
<td>1 Cacao wax</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Hornet's nest</td>
<td>1 Hornet's nest</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Specimens</td>
<td>1 Specimens</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Geological</td>
<td>A few geological</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Edible seaweed</td>
<td>1 Edible seaweed</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Seaweed</td>
<td>Specimen of Larch</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Resin</td>
<td>Specimen of Larch</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Fern with seed</td>
<td>Edible seaweed</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Beach sand</td>
<td>Edible seaweed</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Pebble &amp; Pebble</td>
<td>Edible seaweed</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td>Nanking</td>
<td>Capt. N.P. Anderson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The table continues with similar entries for different years.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DATE</th>
<th>NO.</th>
<th>CONVENTIONAL NAME</th>
<th>SCIENTIFIC NAME</th>
<th>WHERE FOUND</th>
<th>NAME OF CONTRIBUTOR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td></td>
<td>ditto (2)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Vladivostock</td>
<td>do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ditto (1)</td>
<td></td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feb. 3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Scutella sp.</td>
<td>Apes' Hill, Takow, Formosa, very abundant, some individuals were raised up on their edge while others were embedded as they would have lain in life on sea bottom.</td>
<td>Dr. H. B. Guppy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Barnacles</td>
<td></td>
<td>Apes' Hill, Takow, Formosa, mostly small &amp; evidently embedded in situ.</td>
<td>H. M. S. &quot;Hornet&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td>Balanidea</td>
<td>do. A species of the genus of corals resembling cyclolites.</td>
<td>do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td>Corals</td>
<td>do. Often of considerable size; was only able to find one sea urchin and that a small one.</td>
<td>do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td>Spines of Echinoidea</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sp. of Pecten Ostrea and other bivalves</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td>Casts of Spiral Univalves.</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Polyzoa, Scutella etc on shells.</td>
<td>do. The lime stone in which these fossils abound.</td>
<td>do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Conventional Name</td>
<td>Scientific Name</td>
<td>Where Found</td>
<td>Name of Contributor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feb. 3</td>
<td>904</td>
<td>Fossils.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>907</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>908</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>911</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>912</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>913</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>914</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>918</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>920</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>926</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>928</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>929</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>930</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>931</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>932</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>933</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>934</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>935</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>936</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>937</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>938</td>
<td>Fossil</td>
<td>Scutella</td>
<td>Ape's Hill, Takow.</td>
<td>Dr. H. B. Guppy, H. M. S. &quot;Hornet&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>943</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lower part of Ape's Hill, exemplifying the cracked condition of some of the fossils.</td>
<td>do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATE</td>
<td>NO.</td>
<td>CONVENTIONAL NAME.</td>
<td>SCIENTIFIC NAME.</td>
<td>WHERE FOUND.</td>
<td>NAME OF CONTRIBUTOR.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>944</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>945</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>952</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>953</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>961</td>
<td></td>
<td>Limestone</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>962</td>
<td></td>
<td>Compact Limestone</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>967</td>
<td>Fossils</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>969</td>
<td>Fossil Crab</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>972</td>
<td></td>
<td>Fossil Scutella</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>975</td>
<td></td>
<td>Compact Limestone</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>976</td>
<td></td>
<td>Limestone</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>977</td>
<td>Fossil Scutella</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>978</td>
<td>Fossil Crab</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>981</td>
<td></td>
<td>Fossil Scutella</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>982</td>
<td>Fossil Scutella</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>983</td>
<td></td>
<td>Fossil Scutella</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>984</td>
<td></td>
<td>Fossil Scutella</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>986</td>
<td></td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>988</td>
<td></td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>990</td>
<td></td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>531</td>
<td></td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Pescadores, Formosa Channel</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>532</td>
<td></td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>991</td>
<td></td>
<td>Cale-spar and red oxide of Iron</td>
<td>Hæmatite</td>
<td>Lower part of Ape's Hill, Takow.</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>992</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Amygdaloid</td>
<td>Pescadores, Pong-hou Island.</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>993</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Conglomerate composed of</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATE</td>
<td>NO.</td>
<td>CONVENTIONAL NAME</td>
<td>SCIENTIFIC NAME</td>
<td>WHERE FOUND</td>
<td>NAME OF CONTRIBUTOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>994</td>
<td>Trap rock</td>
<td></td>
<td>coral debris, shells and fragments of basalt which is at present forming at high water mark Pong-hou Island.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>995</td>
<td>Basalt</td>
<td>Amygdaloid</td>
<td>Finely cellular Trap rock occurring above the massive basalt Pong-hou Island.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>998</td>
<td>Basalt</td>
<td>Amygdaloid</td>
<td>Pescadores, Pong-hou Island.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>999</td>
<td>Basalt</td>
<td>Amygdaloid</td>
<td>Containing nodules of hematite. Pong-hou Island.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1001</td>
<td>Basalt</td>
<td></td>
<td>Light coloured clayish rocks intervening between the &quot;taterite&quot; and the basalt and forming a layer 3 inches thick. Pong-hou Island.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>524</td>
<td>Granite</td>
<td></td>
<td>Amoy, From the hills behind the city.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>525</td>
<td>Granite</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>527</td>
<td>Granite</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>529</td>
<td>Granite</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>886</td>
<td>Gneiss</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>887</td>
<td>Crystals of quartz and Felspar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>888</td>
<td>Trap rock from some dykes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>889</td>
<td>Gneiss</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>890</td>
<td>Gneiss</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>892</td>
<td>Trap rock from dykes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr. H. B. Guppy, H. M. S. &quot;Hornet&quot;.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

REPORT OF THE N.C. BRANCH OF THE R.A.S.

XXXV
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DATE</th>
<th>NO.</th>
<th>CONVENTIONAL NAME</th>
<th>SCIENTIFIC NAME</th>
<th>WHERE FOUND</th>
<th>NAME OF CONTRIBUTOR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>924</td>
<td>Granite</td>
<td></td>
<td>Swatow.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>922</td>
<td>Coloured Clay</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; From a kind of vein in granite, Chinchu, North of Amoy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>896</td>
<td>Granite</td>
<td></td>
<td>Namoa Island.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>897</td>
<td>Oolitic Granite?</td>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>898</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Namoa Island, Rock intermediate in character between ordinary granite &amp; felsite Pootoo Island.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>809</td>
<td>Granite</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>812</td>
<td>Granite (imperfectly crystallised.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>814</td>
<td>Porphyritic Eurite</td>
<td>Porphyritic rocks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>815</td>
<td>Compact Granite</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>452</td>
<td>Porphyritic rocks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>453</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>454</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>455</td>
<td>Apparently a partly fused Conglomerate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>456</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>457</td>
<td>Dark flinty rocks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>458</td>
<td>Granite</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>461/1</td>
<td>Light coloured porphyritic rocks.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>463</td>
<td>Light coloured flinty rocks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>N. Coast of Chusan</td>
<td>Dr. H. B. Guppy, H. M. S. &quot;Hornet.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATE</td>
<td>NO.</td>
<td>SCIENTIFIC NAME</td>
<td>CONVENTIONAL NAME</td>
<td>WHERE FOUND</td>
<td>NAME OF CONTRIBUTOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1873</td>
<td>464</td>
<td>Dark fynite rock</td>
<td>Granite</td>
<td>Chusan. From the hills near the centre of the Island overlooking Tung-hai. From Bacon hill, N.W. of do.</td>
<td>Dr. H. E. [illegible]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>465</td>
<td>Light fynite rock</td>
<td>Granite</td>
<td>From the hill overlooking the west wall of Tung-hai city. From Tung-hai city, a little to the right of the house hill on the right bank 4 miles below Ningpo.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>471</td>
<td>Undetermined rock</td>
<td>Granite</td>
<td>Yang river from some hills on the right bank 4 miles below Ningpo.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>816</td>
<td>Light fynite rock</td>
<td>Granite</td>
<td>Near the How-yang-tang.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>829</td>
<td>Undetermined rock</td>
<td>Granite</td>
<td>From the highest part of the Moun-kao-tai of Shih-chou.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>821</td>
<td>Undetermined rock</td>
<td>Granite</td>
<td>From near the foot of the How-yang-tang Falls.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>824</td>
<td>Fynite phlytrite rock</td>
<td>Granite</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>834</td>
<td>Undetermined rock</td>
<td>Conglomerate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>309</td>
<td>Undetermined rock</td>
<td>Conglomerate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>301</td>
<td>Dark limestone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATE</td>
<td>NO.</td>
<td>CONVENTIONAL NAME</td>
<td>SCIENTIFIC NAME</td>
<td>WHERE FOUND</td>
<td>NAME OF CONTRIBUTOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>407</td>
<td>Hornblende rock</td>
<td></td>
<td>From the cliffs near the 400 feet Fall. dito.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>408</td>
<td>Light coloured rock</td>
<td></td>
<td>ditto.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>often disintegrated</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>410</td>
<td>Bìheish rock, (undetermined)</td>
<td></td>
<td>From where the 400 feet Fall leaves the cliff.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>411</td>
<td>A white rock apparently of quartz and felspar</td>
<td></td>
<td>From near the Song-ying-tang.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>413</td>
<td>Hornblende rock;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>416</td>
<td>Syenitoid ? Rock</td>
<td></td>
<td>From the cliffs near the 400 feet Fall.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>417</td>
<td>Undetermined dark rock.</td>
<td></td>
<td>From near the How-ying-tang.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>418</td>
<td>Light coloured quartz rock</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>419</td>
<td>White felspathic rock</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>421</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>422</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>423</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>424</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>425</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>426</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>427</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>428</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>429</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>430</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>431</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>432</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>433</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>434</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>435</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dr. H. B. Guppy, H. M. S. "Hermia."
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DATE</th>
<th>NO.</th>
<th>CONVENTIONAL NAME</th>
<th>SCIENTIFIC NAME</th>
<th>WHERE FOUND</th>
<th>NAME OF CONTRIBUTOR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>436</td>
<td>Conglomerate</td>
<td></td>
<td>ditto</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>437</td>
<td>Dark quartz rock</td>
<td></td>
<td>Snowy valley From the Pookoo ling hill</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>438</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>From the top Siang-yang Kong hill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>439</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>From the Pookoo Ling hill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>440</td>
<td>Brown Shale</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tien dong near Ningpo.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>440</td>
<td>Undetermined rock.</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>From the Hill overlooking the Temple at Tien dong on the West.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>445/6</td>
<td>Compact felspathic quartzite.</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>From the valley one mile below the temple.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>447</td>
<td>Quartz rock</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>From hill on the east side of the hills at Shu-bah.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>448/9</td>
<td>Quartz rock, streaked with felspar.</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>From the hills one mile below Tiendong Temple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>Quartz rock</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hankow and neighbourhood, found on the banks of the Yangtze.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>828</td>
<td>Shells</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hankow and neighbourhood, found on the banks of the Yangtze.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>839</td>
<td>Alluvial clay showing the burrows of worms</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hankow and Embedded found on the banks of the Yangtze.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>842</td>
<td>Shells</td>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>843</td>
<td>Small rounded masses found in the worm burrows in the alluvial clay</td>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
<td>which forms the banks of the Yangtze at Hankow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>847</td>
<td>Quartz rock</td>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
<td>From hills about 9 miles N.W. of Hankow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATE</td>
<td>NO.</td>
<td>CONVENTIONAL NAME</td>
<td>SCIENTIFIC NAME</td>
<td>WHERE FOUND</td>
<td>NAME OF CONTRIBUTOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>843</td>
<td>Red clay rock</td>
<td>Argillite</td>
<td>do From hills 405 miles west of Han-yang hill.</td>
<td>Dr. H.B. Guppy, H. M. S. &quot;Hornet&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>850</td>
<td>Shells</td>
<td>Paludinna</td>
<td>do Found embedded in the banks of the Yangtsze.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>852</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>Quartzite</td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>853</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>859</td>
<td>Sandstone</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>856</td>
<td>Quartzite</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>857</td>
<td>Clay slate</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>858</td>
<td>Micaceous sandstone</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>861</td>
<td>Quartzite sandstone</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>873</td>
<td>Conglomerate</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>874</td>
<td>Sandstone</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>875</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>880</td>
<td>Quartz rock</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>882</td>
<td>Compact Limestone</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>884</td>
<td>Coarse sandstone</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>855</td>
<td>Talcose schist</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>861</td>
<td>Sandstone</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>862</td>
<td>Schistose rock</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>864</td>
<td>Undetermined rock</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>872</td>
<td>&quot; grayish rock</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>880</td>
<td>Hornblende slate</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>schist</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>874</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>855</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>872</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>880</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>876</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot; do.   &quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>NO.</td>
<td>CONVENTIONAL NAME</td>
<td>SCIENTIFIC NAME</td>
<td>WHERE FOUND</td>
<td>NAME OF CONTRIBUTOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>476</td>
<td>A greyish heavy rock (undetermined)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Chefoo west of Chefoo harbour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>477</td>
<td>Calcareous concretions</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>do. encrusting the white compact limestone west of Chefoo harbour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>486</td>
<td>Blueish flaky mineral</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>do. do. do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>487</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>do. do. do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>490</td>
<td>Metamorphic limestone</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>do. do. do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>491</td>
<td>Granite rock</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>do. do. do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>492</td>
<td>Calcareous concretions encrusting metamorphic limestone</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>do. do. do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>493</td>
<td>Granite rocks</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>do. do. do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>496</td>
<td>White metamorphic limestone</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>do. do. do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>497</td>
<td>do. do. do.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>do. do. do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>499</td>
<td>Mica schist</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>do. do. do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>500</td>
<td>Crystalline metamorphic limestone</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>do. do. do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>501</td>
<td>Mica schist</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>do. do. do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>538</td>
<td>Mica schist</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Chefoo west of Chefoo Harbour do. do. do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>539</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>do. do. do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>741</td>
<td>Granite Rock</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>do. do. do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>746</td>
<td>Compound Mica schist</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>do. do. do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>747</td>
<td>Granite Rock</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>do. do. do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>748</td>
<td>Mica schist</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>do. do. do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>749</td>
<td>Quartz</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>From the hills south of Chefoo harbour. do. do. do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>756</td>
<td>Mica schist</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>do. do. do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Conventional Name</td>
<td>Scientific Name</td>
<td>Where Found</td>
<td>Name of Contributor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>766</td>
<td>Mica schist</td>
<td></td>
<td>Chefoo from the hills south of Chefoo harbour.</td>
<td>Dr. H. B. Guppy, H. M. S. &quot;Hornet&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>755</td>
<td>* do.</td>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>789</td>
<td>Gneiss</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mackah Island from the cliffs on the Is.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>790</td>
<td>Quartz pebble</td>
<td></td>
<td>Corean archipelago; fits into the hollow of the sandstone (specimen 791).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>791</td>
<td>Sandstone</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mackan Island from the cliffs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>795</td>
<td>Gneiss</td>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>796</td>
<td>Undetermined rock-</td>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>798</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>801</td>
<td>Gneiss</td>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>803</td>
<td>Undetermined rock.</td>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>805</td>
<td>Gneiss</td>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>806</td>
<td>Quartzite sandstone</td>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lepus Sinensis</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>D. C. J.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pelecanus phillipensis</td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anser cygnoides</td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anser segetum</td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Spatula clypeata</td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mergus castor</td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Numenius arquatus</td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Grus monochia</td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Scolopax rusticola</td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Vanellus cristatus</td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Gecinus guerini</td>
<td>Ningpo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Acriotheres cristatellus</td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sturnus sericeus</td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCIENTIFIC NAME</td>
<td>CONVENTIONAL NAME</td>
<td>DATE</td>
<td>NO.</td>
<td>NAME OF CONTRIBUTOR</td>
<td>WHERE FOUND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musia malabarica</td>
<td>Bi-coloured munia</td>
<td>1840</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D. C. L.</td>
<td>Nippoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turdus marzianus</td>
<td>Mandarin thrush</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Geo. L. Skinner.</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syringapalus palessi</td>
<td>Mongolian Sandpiper</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>H. Liddell.</td>
<td>Chefoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gourrix communis</td>
<td>East legged Partridges</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Geo. L. Skinner.</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cacabia olkhar</td>
<td>5 Ring necked Pheasant</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>ditto.</td>
<td>Kwanagoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phasianus torqueas</td>
<td>Silver Pheasant</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ditto.</td>
<td>Admiralty Islands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expomorus Xylophagus</td>
<td>Set of Head ornaments of a chief</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ditto.</td>
<td>Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nipoxyphagus virginianus</td>
<td>Aino's coat &amp; leggs, woven from back</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ditto.</td>
<td>Admiralty Islands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tanagrus fusca</td>
<td>1 Poisoned Spear</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ditto.</td>
<td>do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pteropus poliocephalus</td>
<td>Blow pipe for arrows</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ditto.</td>
<td>do.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
JOURNAL
OF THE
NORTH-CHINA BRANCH
OF THE
ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY.

ARTICLE I.
EARLY EUROPEAN RESEARCHES INTO THE
FLORA OF CHINA.*

BY
E. BRETSCHNEIDER, M.D.

It is proposed in the following pages to give a sketch of early botanical researches in China by European naturalists and at the same time to rescue from oblivion some curious ancient documents showing the early attempts to illustrate the botanical features of the Middle Kingdom. I have thought that a critical review of these accounts in the light of modern science and a republication of some of them, which I found hidden in ancient periodicals, now little known and difficult of access, would prove of some interest and be even practically useful to collectors of Chinese plants and writers on the same subject.

Although many of the celebrated Chinese vegetable productions are mentioned in the book of Marco Polo and by other European mediaeval travellers in China, I do not intend to trace our early acquaintance with Chinese plants back as far as the middle ages. In my investigations I shall start from that period when these regions became first known to us through the learned and hard-working Jesuit missionaries, the illustrious pioneers of Oriental studies in the far East. On the other side, I shall not extend the area of my researches beyond the Linnean period.

* Read before the Society on the 19th November, 1880.
I.—BOTANICAL INFORMATION WITH RESPECT TO CHINA SUPPLIED BY THE JESUITS.

I may premise, although these facts are generally known, that after the Portuguese had made their appearance in Chinese waters in the beginning of the 16th century (Raphael Pestrello in 1516, Ferd. Andrade 1517), they subsequently established factories at Ningpo, carrying on trade also with Amoy. Besides this they settled near Canton and at Macao which latter place on account of its favourable situation soon became the basis and the starting point for the commercial enterprises of the Portuguese in Eastern Asia. It is also well known that Franciscau Xavier was the first Jesuit missionary, who ventured to visit China in 1552, but he died in the same year on an island called Sancian in sight of the Chinese coast. Nearly 30 years elapsed before a new attempt was made by the Jesuits to gain a footing in China. From 1581 to 1588 they sent successively four missionaries to Macao. One of them was Matthaeus Ricci, who holds one of the most conspicuous places in the history of the Chinese missions. By persevering efforts he obtained permission to reside at Peking, where he arrived in A.D. 1600. At the time of Ricci's death, in 1610, the number of Jesuit missionaries in China had already considerably increased and we find them then working in many parts of the Empire, (besides Peking), namely at Canton, at Shao chou fu (Kuang tung province), at Nanking, Shanghai, Su chou fu, Sung kiang fu (all in the province of Kiang nan [Kiang su]), in which they then had altogether 90 churches; at Hang chou fu (Che kiang prov.); at Nan ch'ang fu (Kiang si prov.). In the provinces of Hu kuang and Sze ch'uan they had also built many churches and it appears, that at that time there were missionaries also in Fu chou fu and in some places of the province of Shan si. They were not only assiduously labouring to learn the language and to preach the gospel, but they employed themselves also in acquiring knowledge of the customs of the people and their literary works and they directed their attention likewise to the features of the country and its natural productions etc. The Jesuit missionaries have always had the well-merited reputation of great learning and of a classical and scientific education; and it seems that those, who were sent to convert the Chinese, had been especially trained with the object of convincing the latter, by means of striking experiments,
of the superiority of western science, and of demonstrating to them the accuracy of European in observing natural phenomena, and their ingenuity in making the laws of nature serviceable to the purposes of industry, economy and the arts. The early success enjoyed by the propaganda of the Jesuits in China was principally due to the great authority they had acquired at the Court of Peking on account of their skill in astronomy, physics, chemistry etc. Many of these distinguished scholars used to investigate with a strong inclination objects of natural history, and thus we find in the collections of the letters and memoirs of the Jesuits in China a great number of articles treating of mineralogy, zoology, and botany, supplying a mass of most valuable information. The circumstances, in which they lived among the natives, becoming familiar with the language and adopting the native customs, gave them many more facilities for gathering information than travellers or naturalists of the present time, who are looked upon with suspicion, constantly watched, and often molested by the people. There are still in the interior of China many common Chinese plants, known to us only from the description of the Jesuits, as for example the tree, which yields the varnish for making the well known Chinese lacquered ware, or the *Illicium anisatum* of China (Loureiro). No specimens of these trees have, as far as I can judge from what has been published with respect to Chinese plants, come to the notice of later botanists. I need hardly say, that the accounts left by the early missionaries, concerning Chinese botany, have for the greater part no claim to be considered scientific papers in our modern sense. Their descriptions however of the plants applied by the natives to economic or other useful purposes, and also of wild-growing medicinal and other remarkable plants, are generally quite satisfactory and popularly correct. The Chinese names are often added. In most of the cases there can be no doubt what plant they meant and we are thus enabled to supply the respective scientific names, as far as these plants are known to botanists.

It does not seem, that any botanical collection was sent from China to Europe by the Jesuit missionaries previous to the middle of the 18th century. Father *d'Incarville*, who resided

---

* I shall treat at greater length of these and similar botanical questions relating to China in a more comprehensive treatise on Chinese botany, which is now in course of preparation.
in Peking between 1740 and 1757, appears to have been the first who collected plants and seeds for his instructor Bernh. de Jussieu, as will be shown in a subsequent chapter.

The scope of this paper is not intended to give a full account of all that has been written by the Jesuits in China on botanical matters. That would unduly swell the limits of this chapter. I shall draw up merely a list of their works or scattered minor articles dealing with the vegetable productions of the Middle Kingdom, selecting only a few memoirs, presenting a particular interest for a more detailed review, reproducing occasionally the text in the original.

But before proceeding to a chronological survey of these publications of the ancient Jesuit fathers, one of the earliest works on China, published before their advent, deserves to be noticed here.

**J. GONZALEZ de MENDOZA’s HISTORY OF THE GREAT AND MIGHTY KINGDOM OF CHINA** was first printed in Spanish, in 1585, in Rome. An English version of the book (to which I refer) was published in 1853 by the Hakluyt Soc. Mendoza, an Augustin monk, had himself never seen China. The material for his book has been derived from the reports of some friars of the same order, who had found opportunity to visit China. He depends mainly upon the accounts furnished by the monk Martín de Herrada, who had been taken, in 1575, by a Spanish ship from Manilla to the Chinese port of Ts‘uan chou fu (prov. of Fu kien) where he was allowed to spend three months. The information given in this little book with respect to the vegetable productions of China (1, 14, 15, 82.) are very meagre but not devoid of interest. The excellence of the Chinese Chestnuts is there praised and there is noticed also the great abundance of large Melons. We are further told that “the Chinese have a kind of Plum, that they call lee-chiis, of an excellent gallant taste.” This is, I think, the first mention made by Europeans of Lichis (Nephelium Litchi Camb.). We are further more informed in the same work that the Chinese, besides Wheat, Barley, Millet (panizo), cultivate also the same Maize, which constitutes the principal food of the Indians in Mexico. This latter statement made at so early a date has a peculiar interest for us, for it is now a well established fact that Maize is not indigenous to China but has been introduced since the discovery of America.

One of the earliest accounts given of the Chinese Empire by Jesuit missionaries is that by **ALV. SEMEDO**. He was of Portuguese origin, born 1585, arrived in China in 1619,
and died in Macao in 1658.* As he himself states in the preface to his **RELATIONE DELLA GRANDE MONARCHIA DELLA CINA**, he wrote this work about 1633, but it was first published only in 1643, in Rome. I quote in the following the French translation of it made by Coulon 1645, but translate the quoted passages into English.

The following are the remarks of Semedo concerning Chinese plants:

1. The **Peaches** of the province of Xensi (Shensi) are of prodigious size, some of them of a red color outside as well as inside, others yellow and resembling our peaches. The same province is also famed for its **Grapes**. (p. 8.)

2. The province of Honan produces the best **Apricots**. (p. 22.)

3. The prov. of Xan tung (Shan tung) abounds in large and excellent **Pears** (p. 29.)

These large pears are already mentioned by Marco Polo (Yule ed. 2. II 184).

4. There is a kind of fruit grown everywhere in China, which they call *su zu* in their language. The Portuguese use to term it *red Fig*. It bears however no resemblance to a fig, for it is of a red color outside, contains a gold-colored pulp and seeds resembling almond kernels. Its shape is that of an orange but it varies in size. It has the skin very soft and is of a delicious flavour. The best are grown in the colder parts of China, viz. in the provinces of Honan, Xensi (Shensi), Xian si (Shan si), Xan tung (Shan tung) and especially in the last named, where they use to dry them and send them off to the other provinces of the Empire. When dried this fruit resembles somewhat our figs, but it is superior in flavor. (p. 7.)

This is without doubt the **Diospyros Kaki** L. (D. Schitze. Bgo.) a very common fruit tree all over China, where a great many varieties of it are cultivated. The Chinese name of the fruit is *柿子* *shi tzü*, in the Amoy dialect *su tsu*.

5. The Jesuit Father Ferraris in his *Hesperides* (publ. in 1646) p. 430, describes an *Aurantium sinense olivae magnitudine figurae olivae*, referring to Semedo. This is probably **Citrus japonica** Thb., var. fructu elliptico, of which Semedo seems to have communicated some account to Ferraris.

* The biographical notices given in this paper concerning the Jesuit missionaries are for the greater part derived from the pamphlet published in 1872 by the Jesuits at Shanghai under the title of: *Catalogus Patrum ad Fratrum e Soc. Jesu qui in Sinis adlaboraverunt.*
6. The province of Han ch' u (probably Hang chou fu, the capital of Chekiang, is meant), produces a peculiar fruit called yam mai by the natives. It is of the size of a plum, of a globular shape and resembles in color and taste the mulberry. The tree to which this fruit belongs bears however no resemblance to the mulberry tree. (p. 8.)

The author means the Myrica sapida Wall., a common fruit in Chekiang, in Chinese 楊 梅 yang ma'i.

7. The province of Peking produces Maize, Wheat and some Rice for the use of the Emperor's court, the mandarins and the soldiers. An excellent kind of rice, which they eat boiled in water, without other ingredients, comes from Nan-king. (p. 5. 30.)

This is the rice known under the name of glutinous rice. In Peking it is called 江 米 Kiang mi.

8. The island of Hai nan produces the famous odoriferous Eaglewood and the wood called hua li mo by the natives, Rose-wood by the Portuguese. (p. 13.)

According to Loureiro (Fl. cochin. 327.) the Aloewood (or Eaglewood) of Cochinchina is yielded by Aloexylon Agallochum, but nobody after Loureiro has seen this tree. In India Aquilaria Agallocha Roxb. is said to produce Aloewood.—The wood which the Chinese call 花 梨 木 hua li mu is well known in this country and sold even at Peking, but the tree by which it is produced is unknown to botanists.

9. Belle-Isle (thus Semedo terms Formosa) produces Pepper which grows in the forests. Cinnamon is found there in the mountains. The Camphor trees of this island attain an extraordinary height. China-root and Salsapariglia are also found there. (p. 15.)

Camphortrees (Cinnamomum Camphora. Nees) are indeed a prominent feature of Formosa. Chinese Cinnamon (Cinnamomum Cassia Bl. and other species) is known to grow in the provinces of Kuangsi and Kui chou. I am not aware that modern travellers have noticed it in Formosa. China-root is Simala China, L. and other species.

10. The Rhubarb plant is found in the province of Xensi (Shensi). It grows to a considerable height. Its leaves are larger than those of cabbage. (p. 23.)

At the time of the Ming dynasty the present department of Si ning fu, still famed for its Rhubarb, belonged to the province of Shensi.

11. In the province of Liao tung a root is produced which is sold at the double price of its weight in silver. It is a marvellous medicine, which is able to increase the strength of the frame and to restore the exhausted animal powers. The Chinese call it Gii sem. (p. 31.)
This is it seems the earliest mention made by a European author of the celebrated *Ginseng Panax Ginseng* C. A. Mey., sin. *Ainsen* a.k.a. Liao tung is an ancient name for the present Shin king or Chinese Manchuris.

12. They have a kind of fragrant flowers, called *la mui*, which appear in winter after the leaves have fallen. They are of a yellow color and waxlike appearance.

*Chimonanthus fragrans* Lindl. since *alai* la mei. It puts forth its flowers in December, in Peking. (p. 9.)

13. They have also a kind of lily (*Lys.*.) which they term *tiao hua* and keep it in their houses. For these plants thrive and blossom in the air with their imperishable roots out of the ground (p. 6.)

According to Bridgman's Chin. Chrestom. (resp. Dr. Williams) p. 452 (6). 吊花 *tiao hua* (hanging flower) is the Chinese name for the Airplant. The latter is a general name for several species of *Arisaema* and *Vanda*, possessing the peculiar property of existing many months suspended in air.

14. Large boats loaded with *Lamp-wicks* are frequently met on the rivers in China. These lamp-wicks are made from the pith of a rush, which the Chinese know how to take out.

This rush is, as Dr. Hance has first proved, (Journ. of Botany 1875 p. 106) the *Juncus effusus* L.

15. Semedo is the first of the missionaries who notices the *Tea* plant in China and who gives some account of the preparation of the leaves and their use. He states that *Cha* (茶) is the name of the leaf of a tree, which resembles the Myrtle etc. (p. 27.)

16. Semedo mentions also (p. 7.) among the fruits of Canton and Fukien the *Lichi* (*Nephelium Litchi* see above Mendoza) and first speaks of the *Lum yen* (*Nephelium Lungan* Cam. sin. *龙眼* long yen.)

17. Finally Semedo reports (p. 4.) that the Chinese have an excellent *Varnish*, which they call *charam*, and which is yielded by a tree.

There can be no doubt, that *S.* means the famed Chinese varnish, in *T'ai* produced by a kind of *Rhus*, but I am not prepared to give any explanation, with respect to *charam*, which cannot be a Chinese name. He repeats the same name on p. 12. Constancio in his Dicionario da lingua Portugaluzza states that this term, still in use in Portugal to designate Chinese Varnish, is of Asiatic origin.

We come next to *Martini*'s famous *Atlas Sinensis*. Martinus Martini was born in 1614 at Trent (Southern Tyrol, Austria.). He arrived in China 1643, returned in 1653 to Europe by way of Batavia and landed at Amsterdam, where he made arrangements for publishing his
work. After this he proceeded to China again and died at Hang chou fu (Che kiang) in 1661.

The first edition of Martini's Novus Atlas Sinensis, published in Latin, bears no date but the concession for printing is dated Vienna January 7. 1655. This work is a short geographical description of the provinces of China, translated it seems from a Chinese work, but the author has added also many of his personal observations. I shall extract those passages relating to the vegetable productions of the different provinces.

1. Territorium urbis Peking producit optima Poma, Pyra, Pruna, Frumenti ac Mittii non parum, Leguminum omnia fere genera. Nucex adhaec habet et Castaneas, nec non Ficus et Uvas, ex quibus tamen vinum non coificint. (p. 32.)

2. Provincia Xantung, (Shan tung) producit optima varii generis Pyra, Castaneas, nucsesca alias, Prunorum verum vim tantam, ut siccata ea sicuti et pyra recentia, cum reliquis communicet provinciis: ad haec pomi ibi genus est, su cu vocant incolla, quod licet in alis reperiatur provinciis, illic tamen abundat magis. (I omit the detailed description of the fruit.) (p. 53.)

By Martini's Plums we have probably to understand Jujubes for which the province of Shantung is famed as well as for the shi tas (su tas, comp. above Semedo 4.). The description Martini gives of the Diospyros Kaki is in accordance with Semedo's account of the same fruit.

3. Urbs Tung chuen (Sz' ch'uan prov.). Magnus Castaneum ac Prunorum ubique proventus, sed et Saccari cannas furt. (p 70.)

4. Urbs Quei te (Honan prov.). Granata hic sunt praestantissima a quorum copia ac praestantia ultima civitas Xe ching nomen habet, quasi dicas pomorum granatorium moenia. (p. 60.)

The Chinese name of the Pomegranate is 石榴 shi liu, but the name of the city to which M. evidently alludes is 楚城 che ch'eng hien and this name has nothing to do with the pomegranate.

5. Urbs Tali (prov. Iunnan). In hoc tractu Ficus nascuntur Europae, quas Sinae vu hoa quo dicunt, ex eo indito nomine, quod nullo praevio flore ut reliqui fructus solent crescat. Vu hoa enim "sine flore" significat, "quo" vere fructum. (p. 158.)

The common Fig, Ficus Carica L., sin. 花果 wu hua huo (fruit without previous flower) is cultivated throughout China, but is not indigenous there.

6. Martini speaks of the superior quality of the Grapes in the prov. of Shansi. The natives do not use them for making wine, as the missionaries do, but only dry them in order to sell these raisins all over China. (p. 37.)
7. Urbs Fochu (prov. Fo kien). Maxima est in australibus hujus provinciae partibus et praecipue in hujus urbis territorio copia fructus illius quem Lichii vocant, Lusitani Macenses Lichias dicunt. Nascitur in magnis procerisque arboribus, quorum foliা Lauri imitantur, et ramorum summissibus racemi prodeunt, in his ut in uvis fructus est, sed rarior ac longioribus pedunculis dependet. Fructus figura omnino croculum refert, magnitudine nuclem aequat juglandem, parum strobulum seu nuclem pineam repraesentat, squamoso sed non adeo crasso cortice, nam ad membranae tantum crassitiem accedit, adeoque vel sola manu facile detrahitur. Intus succulentus est nucleus albi coloris saporis ac odoris rosacei suavissimi, cum maturus est fructus purpurei est coloris, videaturque ipsae arbores purpureis circumquaque quasi cordibus ornatae, amoenissimo adspectu astantium oculis arridere. Os seu calculus caro intus ambit, ac circumdata, qui quo mole minor est, eo censetur fructus melior ac praestantior. Recte hunc fructum regem fructum dicemus, saepe ego mecum cogitavi, qui quasi esui et spectantium voluptati natus tantum esset, ita delectat, ut numquam satiet. (p. 122.)

Urbs Ping lo (prov. Quang si). Lichiarum fructus magna ubique copia, cujus arbores Li pu civitati nomen dederunt. (p. 145.)

Alter etiam fructus quidam rotundus est, cortice superiori hand absimilis, lung yen, hoc est dracois oculum, vocant; superiori mole non aequalis est, paulo minor ac rotundior, ut cerasa fere nostra majora, pelle tamen aliquidum lichi duriori magis squamosa constat. Utramque etiam Sinae exsiccant et ex hac provincia (Fo kien) per totum imperium ad delicias etiam succus distrahitur, nullo tamen modo cum recentibus comparari potest, cum suavisissimus ille succus totus fere exhalarit. Ex lichias etiam exprimitur liquor, quem vinum Sinenses vocant, suave satis sed rarius (p. 122.)

Est et fructus in hoc territdio quem Sinae Mui gìn li vocant, i. e. pulchrae mulieris pruna caque magna sunt ac praecellentiae Damascena illa magnitudine ac praestantia superant, figura rotunda magis sunt quam elliptica aut ovali. (p. 122.)

The fruits here mentioned Nephelium Litchi. Camb and Nephelium Langan-Camb. The 美人李 mei jin li is evidently a Plum.

8. Urbs Chang chen (prov. Fo kien). In hujus ac superioris urbibus (Ts'ian chou fu) territorio uberrime proveniunt Poma aurea nobilissima, mole ac magnitudine Europaeis majoribus paria, odore, suavitate atque amoenitate ea omnia longissimo superant intervallo; nec arboris figura aut modus a nostratisius
multum discrepat, sed fere par est, fractus vero in eo differt, quod comestus uvam omnino referat, quam muschatam vocant, ejusdem enim plane odoris ac saporis est, adeo ut suavis quidquid in hoc genere nec Italia haecenus, nec Hispania viderit aut gustari. Ita vero hic fructus a natura est comparatus ut aureum suum densioremque corticem facile dimittat, pulpa vero intra pelliculas, quibis vestitur ac distinguitur, eadem faciliter in particulas suas dividitur. Eundem fructum simul cum cortice inter asseres pressum saccaro conditunt, totoque anno adservant neque Sinas suos tantum, sed et exteriores his deliciis pascunt ac recreant. (p. 125.)

Urbs Chang te (prov. Hu quang). Poma aurea omnis generis profert, inter quae illa sunt quae hyberna a Sinis vocantur. Cum enim jam cessant reliqua, haec primum hyemo maturescunt et suavissimi sunt saporis. (p. 80.)

The first of the Orange here described is that known among European residents in China under the name of Mandarin-orange, the rind of which separates spontaneously from the pulp. The other may be the so-called Coolie-orange known by its closely adhering skin.

9. Provincia Quang tang. Poma aurea hic ac Citria omnis generis sunt, etiam praestantissimam illa quae supra in prov. Fo kien descripsimus. Unum praeteream genus est particularissimum, Yeu ču Sinae vocant, Lusitani Jamboa, Hollandi Pampelmyes. In spinosis arboribus ut liunonia poma solent nascuntur, arbores tamen illis majores sunt, flores etiam similes omnino albosque proferunt suavissimi odoris ex quibus aqua etiam fragrantissima destillatoria arto. elicuit; fractus autem citria omnia etiam illa maxima longe superat magnitudine, quippe qui capitis humani molem aut sequet aut excedat. Cortex reliquis pomis aureis similis est colore, pulpa interna rubescit, dulcedinem aliqua aciditatem permixtam obtinet uvaque sapore refert non omnino maturam, propterque ex eo etiam liquor pro potu exprimi solet, uti in Europa ex cerasis, pyris ac pomis pro sicera: suspensus domi fructus ad annum perdurat. (p. 131.)

This is the Citrus decumana. L. sin: 柚子 yu tai.


Citrus medica, var. chirocarpa. Lour. sin: 佛手 fo shou (Buddha's hand.)
11. Urbs Kiun chen in insula Hai nan. Crescunt hic ubique Nucæs Indicæ majores ac minores, fructusque ille vulgo habitus totius orbis maximus, quem Jaca in India vocare solemus, qui ob eximiam magnitudinem non in ramis arborum, quamvis illi quoque ingentes sint, sed ipsi trunco adnascentur, quasi ex metu, ne tantum onus rami ferre detrectent quantumvis firmi aut robusti fuerint. Fructu cortex adeo durus crassusque est, ut securi aperiendus sit. Innumerae intus domunculae seu folliculi sunt, in quibus pulpa est flavi coloris, quae nucem veluti castaneam ambit; illa ubi maturuit suavisima est; haec igne tostas castaneas nostrates refert. (p. 140)


13. Urbs Gu chen (Martini means Wu chou fu in Kuang si.) Nascitur arbor Quang lang vocata, haec pro medulla mollem pulpam obtinet farinæ simillimam, quin et farinæ usum præstat, saporisque non ingratì est, ad quaevis esculenta adhibetur. (p. 145.)


14. Urbs Kia hing (prov. Che kiang). Nascitur per totam hanc regionem in stagnantibus aquis fructus figura rotundus, Peci Sinæ vocant, cuius magnitudine castaneam nucem haud multum excedit, pollis subtilissima pulli coloris nucleum vestit, cuius intus candidissima caro est plena succi, gratique saporis, durior est quam pomorum vulgarum, ac parumper acida. Si simul cum hoc fructu cupream monetam ori immiseris, dentibus eadem facilitate qua fructum comminues, ac in pulpam conestibilem rediges, mira naturæ vi, mihiquæ alias ipso experimento saepe comperta. (p. 113.)

This is Eleocharis tuberosa. Schult. sin: 苋薯 pi ts’i cultivated throughout China.

15. Urbs Xun te (Shun te fu, prov. Chili). Talo lacus magnus fructu aquatico Lin kio dicto celebris. Hic fructus tribuli fere habet figuram, ad instar triangularis pyramididis undequaque prominens, cortice viridi crassiore est, ad apices rubescente, dum siccatur nigrescit, interior substantia albissima est, sapore castaneæ nucis, magnitudine tres quatuorve castaneas aequat. In stagnantibus aquis per totam Sinam seritur. Planta foliis est exilibus longissimo tractu per aquæ
summam superficiem proserserptibus, fructus multiplices sub aquis latitant. (p. 34.)

_Trapa bispinosa._ Roxb., extensively cultivated in the lakes and rivers of Northern China. Sin: 菱角 ling kio.—The marsh of Ta lu 太陸澤 is situated in the southern part of Chili.

16. Prov. Kiang si. On p. 87 Martini gives a detailed description of the _Lien_, a waterplant found in all parts of China. The roots and the seeds of it are eaten. This is _Nelumbium speciosum_. W. sin: 遇, lien.

17. Prov. Quang tung. _Non tamen hic praetereaund _Rosa sinica_ est, illa nimirum, quae diebus singulis bis colorem mutat, purpureaque modo tota, modo rursus omnino alba evadit. Caret suavitate odoris, in arbores nascitur. (p. 132.)

_Hibiscus mutabilis._ L.

18. Urbs Iengan (Yen an fu in Shensi). Florem profert _Moutan_ dictum maximeque estimatum a Sinis, quasi florum regem diceres, rosa nostrata major est, hujus tamen figuram imitatur, sed folia magis expandit, odore quidem cedit, at pulchritudine superat, spinis caret, coloris est magis albicans quasi ex purpureo et albo misti. Rubri etiam et flavi reperiantur. In virgulto nascitur Sambuco nostrati haud absimili. Per totam Sinam hic flos in divitum viridariis colitur, idque magna arte et diligentia in calidioribus quippe locis aestate contra solis ardores regi debet. (p. 51.)

According to Chinese authors the 牡丹 mu tan, or _Paeonia moutan_ Sima, is found in a wild state in the mountains of the southwestern part of Shensi. Martini is the first European who notices this handsome Chinese flower introduced into European gardens only in 1789.


This is _Jasminum Sambac_. Ait., the 茉莉花 mo li hua of the Chinese.

20. Urbs Quei lin (prov. Quang si). Maxima ex parte nomen habet a _Quei_ floribus, qui licet per totam reperiantur regionem Sinarum, nullibi tamen copiosiores sunt quam in hanc provincia, maximeque in hujus urbis territorio unde urbi Quei lin nomen inditum, quod _Quei_ florum sylvan sonat. Nascitur autem Quei flos in procer a arbores, quae folia habet lauri, aut Cinnamomi. Flos minimus est, ac flavi coloris, in racemulos dispersiguur, suavissimi plane odoris; flos apertus in ipsa
arbores longo admodum tempore perstat integer, minimeque
flaccescit, ubi decidit, interjeto mensis unius spatio denuo arbor
repullulat, novumque florem gignit autumni ali tempore; tam
fragrante gratumque exhalat odorem, ut regionem totam
cui arbor vicina est, a suavitate recreet atque perfundat.
Latinum illius nomen nusquam reperio; is ipse autem flos est,
quem Turcae limonum succo maceratum ad crines equoram
tingendos adhibent. Ex eodem Siniae multa bellaria ori ac
naribus gratissima adornant. (p. 143.)

The tree here described is the 桂花 kui hua of the Chinese, the Olea
fragrans Thb. of botanists. M. is wrong in supposing it to be the Henna of
the Mohammedans, which is Lawsonia alta Lam., also cultivated in
Southern China.

21. Urbs Cin cheu (prov. Quang si). Cinnamomum profert
praestantissimum, a Ceilani cinnamomo in eo tantum differt
quod odoris sit fragrantioris, majorisque mordacitatis, dum
linguae imponitur. (p. 146.)

Cinnamomum Cassia Bl., C Burmannii Bl. and perhaps other species
furnish the Cassia bark of China.—By Cin cheu M. means 桂州府
Sin chou fu. In the same prefecture near the town of Tai Wu, according
to Mr. Moss (Narrative of an exploration of the West river. 1870.) the best
Cassia bark is produced.

22. Provincia Iun nan (Yun nan). Mo pang munimentum
maxime australam ac occidentalem hujus provinciae partem
occupat. Piper profert. (p. 165.)

23. Provincia Kiang nan. Cha folium (p. 106). A good
description of the Tea plant, its cultivation, preparation of the
leaves etc. The best quality is said to be that of Sung lo.—On
p. 158 M. notices the tea of the prefecture of Ta li in Yun nan.

I have omitted Martini's treatise on tea (茶 cha in Chinese)
for the subject is too well known and M. not the first European
who mentions tea. The 松羅 sung lo mountains separating
the provinces of Che kiang and An hui, are still famed for their
superior quality of tea.

24. The province of Kiang nan (Kiang su and An hui)
famed for its Cotton and manufacture of cotton cloths, especially
the cities of Sung kiang and Shanghai. (p. 94. 101. I omit
the details.)

Cannabim ex qua vestes aestivas contra calorem ac sudorem
aptissimas textunt. (p. 88.)—Urbs Xiao (Shao) wu (prov. Fo kien).
Texit hujus urbis plebs pannos praestantissimos ex crudo
Cannabe, qui aestati tempore ob frigiditatem et quia sudore
madefacti non sordescent, citoque siccantur, vulgo expetuntur et in pretio sunt. (p. 128.)

Boehmeria nivea. Hook. et Arn., from the fibre of which the so called Chinese Grasscloth is manufactured.


Pueraria Thunbergiana Benth. (Pauchyriaus Thunbergianus S et Z.)

Sin: 葛 Ko. L. trifolius D.C. has the same Chinese name. It seems that both of them are textile plants.

27. Urbs Ping lo. (prov. Quang si) Conficitur hic pannus ex foliis Musarum rubrarum. (p. 145.)

In the Yi t'ung chi, the great geography of the Ch. Empire, the 紅葉布 hung tsiao pu (cloth made from the red Musa.) is mentioned as manufactured in the prefecture of Ping lo. Perhaps the Musa coccinea. Andr., introduced into European gardens from Chiu a in 1792, is meant. I am not aware whether the appellation of red Musa could be applied to Musa textile Nees.

28. Urbs Cin cheu (prov. Quang si). Incolae ex herba Yu conficiunt pannos, quorum praestantia sericum ipsum superat, majorique quam istud in pretium sunt. (p. 146.)

The plant Yu and the fabric manufactured from its fibres seem to be unknown to Europeans. In the Yi t'ung chi I find under Sin chou fu (vide supra 21) a cloth mentioned there produced which they call 納布 chu pu or 嶺布 yu lin pu.

29. Provincia Xan tung (Shan tung). Rarum est, et omnino nium quantum beneficiae in eam gentem naturae argumentum, filum sericum ibidem in arboribus ac campis sponte sua nasce, quod non a domesticis bombycibus, sed a vermissibus contextitur erucis haud absimilibus, non in globum aut ovum ductum, sed in longissimum filum paulatim ex ore emissum, albi coloris, quae arbusculis dumisque adhaerentia, atque a vento hoc illucque agitata colliguntur, atque ex illis, uti ex vera bysso, panni conficiuntur serici qui licet radiores nonnihil sint serico domestico, firmitate tamen ac robuste superant. (p. 53.)

Martini alludes here to the wild silkworms feeding on the leaves of different oaks and producing the silk from which the so called Shan tung Pongsee is woven (纖紗 kien chou in Chinese.) Comp. Dr. Hance's interesting article on Northern Chinese silk worm oaks, Journ. Linn. Soc. X. XIII. and Du Halde, in Chine II 207.

30. Martini explains (p. 39) the method adopted by the Chinese in the production of Weeping Willows by bending down large branches of the liu or Willow tree, which generally has upright branches, and causing them to take root in the ground.
I may observe, that *Salix babylonica* L. in Europe and Western Asia is generally seen with its branches hanging down, whilst in China (in Northern China at least) where this tree, 柳樹 liu shu in Chinese, is very common, its branches shoot originally upwards. In a similar way the Chinese produce artificially the tree known in Europe as *S. pohra pendula*, in causing two young trees of *S. japonica* L., growing close together, to join by grafting, and then turning upwards the roots of one of them.

31. Urbs Chao king (prov. Quang tung). Multa odorifera ligna producit: *Aquilam* nimirum et illud quod Lusitani *Pao de Rosa* sen rosaceum vacant, quo ad capsulas, mensas, sedes, similiaque conficienda frequentissimae utuntur, quoque vix alind est praestantius, coloris ex nigro rubicantis, venis quibusdam intercisinum et artificiosa benignae obstetricantis naturae quasi manu depictum. (p. 137.)

Urbs Kiun chen in insula Hai nan. *Aquila lignum* crescit in montibus, uti et *Ebenum, lignum Rosae*; et illud quod *Brasilum* vulgo vacant, quod ad tinturam per totam Sinam passim adhibent fullones. (p. 140.)

With respect to Eaglewood and Rose wood compare Semedo s, note. The Ebony of China is probably yielded by the tree described in Loureiro's Fl. cochin. under the name of *Ebenoxylon verum*, but it seems that after Loureiro no botanist had had opportunity of observing it.—Brazil wood is *Cassalpinia Sappan*. L. (Comp. Yule's M. Polo 2d edition II 260.)


The mountain 高良 kao liang in the district Te king chou. The tree producing the Chinese Iron wood, sin: 鐵梨木 tie li mu seems to be unknown to botanists. Comp. Loureiro Fl. cochin. 326. *Baryxylum rufum*. There are probably several trees going under the same Chinese name. I have myself seen in Canton a red and a grayish green wood, both of them termed tie li mu and extremely hard.

33. Urbs Chu chen (prov. Che kiang). Luyeu (?) rivus prope King ning (景甯) magnis *Arundinarum* sylvis virescens. Sineae eas communi nomine Cho dicunt, licet quam plurimae earum sunt species, Lusitani in India *Bambu* vacant, aliae alis majores sunt. Harum omnium durities prope ferrea est, adeoque saeppe crassae sunt, ut duabus tribusve maribus stringere nequeas: quamvis autem intus vacuae sint, suisque nodis articulisque distinctae, firmissimae tamen sunt, ac securissime imposita onera sustinent. Altitudo saeppe trium aut plurium canarum est, minores aliae medium perticam haud excedunt, aliae sunt trunco ac ligno viridi, aliae nigerrimo, atque haec plerunque
solidae quales in India Bambu marem vocant. Amoenissimum
aspectum praebent tum folia oblonga forma gladioli, sum-
mitatibus nonnihil inflexis atque incurvis; tum quia toto anni
tempore virides sunt. Licet autem adeo durae sint arundines
facile tamen in licia tennissima, ac veluti membranulas ab artis
peritis dissecantur, ex quibus storeas, capsulas, pyxides, pectines
aliaque simili utensilia minutissima subtilissime contexunt.
Ex eisdem domos suas facile construunt eisque par aedium
minorum postibus utuntur; ex tenuioribus hastilia fiunt cusptide
praeferrata atque ad sexcentos alios usus, quorum nihil prolixia
esse narratio adhibentur. Ad aquarum canales ductusve
struendos, cum a natura perforatae sint, aptissimae sunt: ac pro
tubis opticis longioribus ob levitatem, rectitudinem, crassitiem
ac firmitatem excellentes prorsus ac singulares. Cum recens
haec canna absecta comburitur, aquam emittit, uti linea omnia,
plurimum a medicis expetitam: epota namque putrescentem
sanguinem locoque motum vel casu, vel percussione, e corpore
expellit. Tenera ac primum nata, priusquam folia emittat
cum carne adhibetur pro cibo veluti rapae, aut coeci cardui, quin
et aceto macerata toto anno servatur tamquam condimentum,
seu obsolium ad delicias, non secus ac minores apud nos
cucumeres, aut foeniculum. (p. 116.)

Urbs Hoai gan (prov. Kiang nan). Ad urbis orientum est
Hung lacus (洪澤) et palus ingens. In eo nascantur Cannae
illae palustres altissimae, quibus lignorum loco tota utitur
regio. (p. 104.)

Urbs Hoei cheu (prov. Quan tung). In monte Lo fou
(羅浮山) longissimae Arundines nascentur caedem crassissi-
mae, quae reliquas fere omnes superant, trunci circumferentia
decem subinde aut plures palmos aequant aut etiam superat.
(p. 136.)

竹 chu is the general term for Bamboo in Chinese. Munro in Transact.
of Linn. Soc XXVI. (1868) enumerates 12 species of Bambusa, known
from China. It is not certain whether B. arundinaeas Retz (Arundo
Bambus L.) occurs in China.

34. Urbs Lui cheu (prov. Quang tung). In omnibus hisce
terris vimen illud mirabile nascitur quod Sinae Teng, Lusitani
Rota vocant, funem a natura contortum esse credas, in maximam
enim longitudinem extenditur, ac veluti funis per terram ac
montes prorept; spinis horridum est, foliisque oblongioribus
viret, crassitie vix digitum aequant, et tamen saepe ad integrum
studium diffunditur, tantaque per montes copia ut inter se
intricatae stirpes etiam cervis iter imperium reddant. Len-
tissimum prorsus vimen est, maximeque fractioni resistit,
into the flora of china.

quamobrem ex eo rudentes, funesque pro navibus confieri solet; imo illud in licia vittulasque tenuissimas minutissime partiri solet, ex iisque corbes, crates, sedilia aliaeque similia contextere, maxime vero subtilissimas ac molissimas illas storeas, in quibus Sinenses plerique ad ipsum Regem nudi, dum somnum capiunt, decumbere consneverunt, quae res mundissima est et acetate perfrigida, et Sinensisib, tametsi eae storeae vel nudis asseribus instratae sint, sat commoda videtur ob longam ita decumbendi assuetudinem. Ex iisdem viminalibus ipso lectulos efformant, ac pulvinaria, quae rebus quibusdam odoratis infarciant ad delicias. (p. 139.) Vimen etiam seu Rotam tota insula Hainan profert. (p. 140.)

Calamus Rotang. L., C. rudentum. Lour., C. verus. W. C. viminalis W. and probably several other species, growing in India, the Archipelago and Cochinchina, furnish the Rattans so commonly employed for different purposes. As to the species of Southern China they are very imperfectly known, but some of the above mentioned species may occur also in China. The Chinese character 福 t'eng denotes not only Rattans, but is also applied to other climbing plants.

35. Urbs Nien chou (M. means Yen chou fu, prov. Chekiang.) Plurimum colligitur Gummi illius seu glutinis Cie, quod stillat ex arboribus, persimileque est lachrymæae terebinthi. Acestate colligitur, purgaturque a Sinis, et quo volunt colore incessit : optimum est quod anreo flavescit, proximum quod nigerrimum. Cum nondum siccatum est, venenatam quandom emittit exhalationem, cui non adsueti intumescent ac pallent vulta, sed facilis est curatio. Cum tinguntur arculae tardius siccatur, nisi in humido sit loco, semel autem exsiccatum numquam amplius liquefit. Quam vero res fit elegans munda ac splendida jam pridem didicit Europa ex capsulis quae e Japonia atque ipsa Sina plurimæ fuerunt adventæ (p. 113.)

漆 to'i, the famous Chinese Lacquer, yielded by a species of Rhus. The plant however has not yet been examined by botanists, with the exception of Loureiro, who has named it Augia sinensis. See also above Semedo 17.

36. Urbs Kin hoa (prov. Chekiang). Quod mihi hic ssepe admirationem movit pinguedo quaedam est ex arboribus nata, ex qua veluti ac sebo optimæae atque albae fluunt candelaæ, quae manus non inscient etsi tangantur, nec foetorem exhalant dum extinguuntur. A Sinis Kieu yeu vocari solet. Arbor sat magna est, pyros nostrates et folis et forma refert, florem album emitit, ut cerasi, florem excipit bacca rotunda omnino, ceraso mole aequalis; tegit hanc subniger et tenuis cortex, alba intus caro est, quae, cum bacca matura est, disrupto cortico appareat. Has baccas colligrant ac aqua calida excoquant, tum caro liquefit, at frigida iterum omnino ut sebum solet, spissatur.
Nucleus dein remanet, hunc oleo plenum, ut olivas nos, macerant et oleum non ad cibos, sed ad lucernas aptum exprimunt. Hyberno tempore folia, quasi cuprea essent, omnino rubescunt; amoenus mihi horum foliorum saepe visus est conspectus, cum quasi integrae sylvae rubrae appareant: demum folia decidunt, et quia pinguedine quadam praedita sunt, gratissimum ovibus ac vaccis cibum praestant, ex quorum esitatione egregie pinguescunt. (p. 114.)

Martini's account of the Tallow tree, Stillingia sebifera. Mich., in Chin. (kiu) (the vegetable tallow is called kiu yu), is correct, with the exception of the description of the flowers. The tree is very common in Central and Southern China.

37. Urbs Tegan (prov. Hu quang). Est in hac regione rarum quid, Alba Cera, quae a vermiculis elaboratur eo fere artificio quo apes favos suos strunt. Sunt autem hi favai multo minores ac candidissimi, nec vermiculi culti sunt, aut domestici, sed inculti atque agrestis. Ex collectis favis canelas ut ex communi nostrate cera conficiunt, at longe magis albo sunt, a magnatibus, quod majori constent pretio, fere tantum adhiberi solent: nam praeter canorem odorem etiam suavem emittunt cum comburuntur, nihilque sordibus inspiciunt aut foedant, licet guttae liquefactae in vestes incident. Lumen etiam clarissimum, maximeque temperatum reddunt. (p. 76.)

Urbs Ping lo (prov. Quang si). In hujus urbis territorio reperitur cera illa alba ab animalculis illis insectis elaborata, de quibus supra dixi. (p. 145.)

This is it seems the earliest notice given by an European observer with respect to Chinese Insect Wax produced, as is well known now, by the Coccus pela Westw. living upon the branches of Fraxinus chinensis Roxb. and other species, and also on Ligustrum lucidum Ait. (See Hanbury's scient. pap. p. 60.)

38. On p. 108 and 88 of Martini's Atlas sinensis an account is found of the breeding of silkworms and the planting of Mulberry trees in the provinces of Chekiang and Fukien.

naturae qui sunt ejus sumptione vitae periculum adire solent nimium auctis exundantibusque spiritibus; debilibus, fatigatis, vel morbo diuturniori, aliave de causa exhasnutis ad miraculum profest. Moribundis ita vitales quandoque vires reddit. (p. 35).

Panax Ginseng, C.A. Mey., a plant now confined to Manchuria, not met with in the prefecture of Yung ping, as M. asserts. Yung ping fu is situated near the Manchurian frontier. It appears however from the ancient Chinese records that in former times Ginseng was gathered even in the mountains of North China. Comp. also Semedo ii.

40. Provincia Xensi (Shensi) multa praeclara suppeditat medicamenta, Rheubarbarum imprimis, quod non sylvestre est, ut putant quidam, sed diligenti culturae arte indiget. Sinae vulgo Tai hoang vocant. Radix est sat solida, tuberibus hinc inde prominentibus, foliorum forma haud ita procul abest a caulibus nostratibus, quos tamen magnitudine superant. Radices uno pertusas foramine in umbra suspendunt at siccat: nam in sole suspensa viam amittunt. Ex hac et Suchuen altera provincia, est magna ex parte Rheubarbarum, quod ad nos in Europam defertur, nimirum per mare indicum vel Cascar, Astracaniam et Russiam vel per Tebet, Mogor et Persidem; nemo enim est magnopere rerum peritus (quod equidem sciam) qui in illis regionibus nasci Rheubarbarum velit, sed inde nos habere asserunt, quia ab illis affectur emiturque nationibus, et ex Sina allatum esse ignoratur (p. 43. 45).

M. is correct in stating, that Rhubarb in its native country is cultivated. Prezewalsky reports the same. But it seems that the greater part of the drug collected for sale grows wild in the mountains of Si ning fu and those surrounding lake Kukonor. Comp. also above Semedo 10, note.—There is in Kircher's Chinsa illustrata (French ed. 1667) p. 249 an engraving representing the "Rheubarbarum verum." Kircher states, that this drawing has been made from a plant grown in the garden of Mr. Juste Nobilar in Leyden at the time when Father Martini, in June 1654 passed through this city. He then had declared, that it was the true Rhubarb of China. But at the time here spoken of Rh. rhapsonticum L. was the only Rhubarb known and cultivated in European gardens, and Kircher's drawing seems indeed to represent this species.—Dapper in his Description of China 1670 (see further on) gives a good drawing of a Rhubarb plant, which he terms Rhubarbarum Wilsoniarum. I know nothing about this name, but the plant represented seems also to be Rh. rhapsonticum.—The Chinese name of Rhubarb is 太黄 tai huang.

41. Prov. Suchuen. Vera Radiz Sina in hac provincia sola reperitur, sylvestris ubique, Folin utramque Siniae vocant, ac fere sola sylvestris ad nos affectur, cujus medulla rubicundiori colore quodammodo tincta est, ad verae autem magnitudinem non accedit, neque efficaces adeo habet vires, quamvis non omnino illius effectu careat. Vera autem uti dixi radix in hac sola nascitur provincia, idque sub ipsa terra, uti fere phalli
Hollandici (an ancient name for Phallus impudicus, L.) aut apud Indos Patatas nasci propagarique solent, maxime in annosis pinorum sylvis, und eam ex glutine seu pice pinea produci scribunt, quae in terram delapsa radices agat, atque herba fiat longo tractu per terrae superficiem serpentis, continuoque tuberosas radices sub ipsa terra emittens subinde ad capitis puellis magnetudinem, figura ac mole magnas nubes indicas, quas Cocos vocantm aequat, nec cortex colore abludit, quamvis non adeo duros crassusve sit, sed mollior omnino ac tenuior. Corticem replet nucleus seu caro alba ac spongiosa, hanc Sinae magni faciunt et in suis medicinis adhibent, tametsi cum hac carent, sylvestrem illam non respuant, at effectu non aequo bono. (p. 65.)

Martini's Radix Sina vera is a fungus which has been described under the botan. name Pachyma Cocos Fries. (Hanbury scient. pap 201, 287) in Chinese 茼苓 fu ling or 白 pe fu ling, i.e. white fu ling; whilst his Rad. Sina sylvestris is to be referred to Smilax China L. and other species yielding the drug we call China root and the Chinese 灯 tu fu ling i.e. common fu ling. Martini at first distinguishes the two plants but in the inscription confounds them.

42. Urbs Hang cheu (prov. Che kiang). Ex monte Tien mo infinita vis Fungorum per totam Sinam defertur, quos sale conditos exsiccat (p. iii).

The 天目山 Tien mu mountain is situated N. W. of Lin an bien.

43. Urbs Kiun cheu in insula Hainan. Est herba quam Chi fung, seu ostendentem ventum nominant. Nautae enim ex illa quo mense, et quot toto anno futurae sint tempestates, colligere se posse asserunt, idque ex nodulis seu geniculis ipsis; quo enim nodi pannores sunt, eo pannores illo anno futurae sunt tempestates, ex distantia autem nodorum a radice scire, aut colligere posse se autumnant, quo mense accidere tempestas debet. (p. 140)

The plant 指風 chi fung is noticed in the Chinese Botany Kuang kün fang p' u XCII fol. 24.

44. Urbs King chou (prov. Hu quang). Hic reperitur Herba quam mille annorum vocant quin et immortalem esse scribunt. Hae aqua macerata, ac epota albos crines in nigros commutat atque ad vitam producendam conducit. (p. 77.)

千蔭嘉草 See the great geography Yi t'ung chi sub King chou.

45. Urbs Cung chang (prov. Xien si). Ad Ciu civitatem in Po chang monte herbam nasci scribunt Hoo co, quae comesta steriles reddit. (p. 50.)

The Yi t'ung chi notices the plant 花骨 hua ku on the mountain

歸宗山 in 常州.
46. Urbs Ching yang (鄭陽, prov. Hu quang.) Stirps quadam hic nascitur quae ut Hedera nostra in altum serpit, flores producit luteos et nonnihil albicantes. Extremitates ramorum subtillissimae sunt, velut fila serica: ajunt ramosculum nudae carni allegatum somnum suavissimum conciliare, ideoque Mung hoa dicitur i.e. somnii flos (p. 82.)

I have not been able to find the 夢花 meng hua noticed in Chinese works.

In the year 1656 a treatise was published at Vienna under the pretentious title of FLORA SINENSIS, the author of which was Father MICHAEL BOYM, a Pole, born in 1612. He left Europe as a Jesuit missionary for China in 1643, returned to Europe (Lisbon) in 1652, reembarked for China in 1655 and died in the province of Kuang si in 1659.

The original work of Boym's Flora sinensis published in Latin is a very rare book. I have seen it in the great Vienna library. It is issued in folio, Viennae Austriae, typis Matthaei Rictij, 75 pages with 23 engravings. Several prefices, dedications and poetical essays occupy a considerable part of the book, which has no claim to research into Chinese botany, as the name of the treatise would seem to indicate. Boym gives an account of 22 plants, of which more than one half are rather plants of the Indian Archipelago. 21 of them are represented by tolerably well executed engravings and the Chinese characters added to the names. The Flora sinensis is followed by an account of some Chinese mammals, birds, reptiles etc with 2 engravings. The book concludes with an appendix on the Inscription of Si an fu. Boym's Flora sinensis has been translated into French by Bayer and appeared also in Thevenot's Relation des Voyages. 1696 sec. partie p. 15–30. The greater part of the engravings have been reproduced in Kircher's China illustrata and in Dapper's Description of China (see further on.)

I shall give in the following pages a list of the plants described by Boym, reproducing occasionally the original text or a part of it.

1. Fay cu 椰子. Palma persica et indica seu sinensis, vulgo Coco vel Nux Indorum. (no engraving.)

2. Pin lam 檳榔. Fructus Areca et Bethel folium. (no engraving.)

   Drawings representing the Areca palm and Betel pepper are found in J. Bontius, Historia natur. et med. Indiae orient. (1629.) p. 90, 91.

3. Pan yay xu 反椰樹. Arbor Papaya in India dicitur, copiose in Sinarum Haynan insula progignitur nec non in Iunnam, Quamsy, Quamquam, Focien, australibus provinciis.
The first character in the Chinese name is evidently wrong. In the Chin. Botany Chi yen ming shi t'u k'ao XXXI, fol. 54, Carica Papaya L. is represented in a drawing and termed 番瓜樹 fan kua shu (foreign melon tree). A drawing of it is also found in Bontius I. c. 96.


The above description and the accompanying drawing of the fruit leave no doubt that Anacardium occidentale L. is meant. The Chinese characters render, it seems, the Indian name of it, being Caju (Watson names of Indian plants etc.). Comp. also Loureiro 304, Bontius I. c. 193.


Boym describes two species of the Rose-Apple, Jambu in India, viz: Eugenia malaccensis. L. (purple flowers) and E. Jambos. L. (yellowish white flowers). The fruit is well represented by the drawing.—The island Hian shan is situated north of Macao. E. Jambos is naturalized in Hong-kong (Bth. fl. hong. 120.)


The first Chinese character is again wrong and is to be read 番 (foreign).

10. Manco (Chinese characters illegible). In australibus terris productur uberrime.
A good description and drawing of Mangifera indica. L. Compare also Bontius l.c. 95.

11. Pi pa 毛dives.
Eriobotrya japonica Lindl.


The Chinese characters mean: stinking fruit. Indeed the scent of the fruit of Psidium Guyava L. when too ripe is unpleasantly powerful. According to Dr. Williams in Bridg. Chrest. 443 (18) the Chinese name of the Goava is 鶏尿果 Ki shi kuo, meaning: fowls dung fruit. Under the latter name it is represented in the Chi wu ming etc. XXXI 49.

13. Po lo mie 波羅密 seu Giaca ab Indis dictus fructus.
Artocarpus integrifolius. L. Jack fruit. Compare above Martini ii. The Chinese name po lo mi, under which it is also represented in the Chi wu ming, XXXI 44. is apparently a transcription of the Sanscrit parasita (excellence).


Diospyros Kaki, L. v. supra Semedo 4. The Chinese name given by Boym properly denotes the dried fruit, for the second character means cake.


The drawing given by Boym of this fruit represents Anona squamosa L. By ya ta (a ta in the Southern dialect) the Singhalese name of it, being atta (Watson l.c.), is rendered. At Canton the Chinese call it fan li chi, foreign Li chi (Bridg. l.c. 443 (10).


This is the famed Durian, Durio Zibethinus. L. a tree of the Indian Archipelago and Siam. I do not think that it is cultivated in Macao as Grosier (la Chine II. 539.) reports. It seems to me that Grosier, who
refers to Boym, took Macaca mentioned by the latter to be Macao. But Macaca is an ancient name for Macassar (Crawford Dict. Ind. Isl. 90.). Bontius l. c. 118 seems to confound the Durian with the Jack fruit, at least he gives Durian and Jaca as synonyms. His drawing of the fruit could be referred to the Jack as well as to the Durian, it does not represent leaves.


It would seem from this description and the drawing accompanying it, that *Cynometra cauliflora* L. is meant, a tree of the Malayan Archipelago, which I have seen myself in Java. The fruits of it grow on the stem or about the roots.

18. *Hu cyao* 胡椒 *Piper nigrum.* L. (v. supra Martini 22.)
19. *Fo lim* 茯苓 *Radix Sinae* (v. supra Martini 41.)
20. *Tay hoam* 太黄 *Rhabarbarum* (v. s. Martini 40.)
21. *Quei pi* 桂皮 *Cinnamomum* (v. s. Martini 21.)
22. *Sem kiam* 生薑 *Zingiber.*

A good drawing of Chinese Ginger is found also in Bontius l.c. 189.

As the late D. Hanbury has proved in the introduction to his Notes on Chin. Materia medica, the treatise, which is generally quoted under the name of *CLEYER'S SPECI MEN MEDICINAE SINICAE*, published in 1682, consists of translations from Chinese medical works by Father Boym. They were only edited by Andreas Cleyer, a physician in the service of the Dutch E.I. Comp., well known as the first European botanist, who studied the Flora of Japan. One section of the specimen medicinae sin. of 30 pages, is entitled: *Medicamenta simplicia quae a Chinensibus ad usum medicum adhibentur.* It is nothing more than an enumeration of 239 Chinese drugs, for the most part of vegetable origin, giving the Chinese name of each written according to the Portuguese orthography, without the Chinese characters. The medical properties of each drug according to the Chinese ideas, are explained. In some cases the author adds the European name. Although the greatest part of these drugs can now be ascertained from the Chinese names added, the treatise is altogether devoid of interest and may be quoted only as a bibliographical curiosity.
In the same year, 1655, when Martini's Novus Atlas Sinensis was published in Europe, the Dutch E. I. Company sent an embassy to Peking and appointed Goyer and Keyser, two merchants of Batavia, as envoys. **J. NIEUHOF**, who accompanied them as steward of the mission, published ten years later a work under the title: **LEGATIO BATAVICA AD MAGNUM TARTARIAE CHAMUM SUNG TEIMUM,** *SINAE IMPERATOREM.* Amst. 1665. It is illustrated by a great number of engravings representing views, plants, animals and other things relating to China, and has been translated into several European languages. This book may well stand as a model of the most impudent plagiarism and imposture in the literature of travels in the 17th century. As N. quotes no previous books on China, the reader cannot but suppose that all the rich information he furnishes with respect to that Empire, had been gathered by himself in China. But in reality it is only the diary of the embassy's journey from Canton to Peking, partly by land and partly by river and the Grand Canal, which N. can claim as his property, and there is nothing in it to boast of, for the whole narrative abounds in errors and intentional misrepresentations. As far as I can judge the drawings in this work, representing Chinese scenery, are all pure creations of fancy. The cities and villages of North China, through which they passed, appear there as overshadowed by lofty Coconuot trees, and even Peking, of which a large view is given, with the great wall close behind the city, has not been exempted by the artist in this respect. As to the rest of the accounts found in this work, they are a reproduction of Martini's valuable Atlas sinensis, and that is precisely the case regarding the chapter dealing with Chinese plants, animals, etc. The engravings representing plants have been borrowed from Bontius and Boym. Some of them seem to be the production of the artist's imagination.

In 1670 Dr. **DAPPER**, published in Dutch a **DESCRIPTION OF THE CHINESE EMPIRE**, appended to his narratives of the second and the third Dutch embassy to the Chinese Court, in 1662 and 1668–1668. This is also nothing more than a translation of the Atlas sinensis, often misunderstood, undigested and indigestible. Nearly twenty pages in it are devoted to the Botany of China. The greater part of the drawings of Boym's Flora sinensis are here reproduced and, of course, no sources are adduced.

* Emperor Shun chi 1644-62.*
There is another well known ancient work on China, **Kircher's China Illustrata**, published in 1667. This has also little claim to originality. The author, who had never been in China, draws from Martini (who had been his pupil,) Boym, and the writings of other missionaries, but he quotes honestly his sources and compiles with criticism, displaying a great knowledge of the subject he treats of. Athanasius Kircher, a German, born in 1601-1680, was also a Jesuit, at first Professor at Würzburg; he subsequently resided in Avignon and in Rome.

After Boym the next Jesuit missionary in China I have to notice as a writer on matters of natural science is **Gabriel de Magalhaes**, a Portuguese. He was born in 1609, arrived in China in 1640, died at Peking in 1677. He is the author of a work entitled: **Nouvelle Relation de la Chine**. The original M.S. was in Portuguese. It was translated into French and published in 1668. On p. 173 we find an interesting account of the Chinese White Wax, *pe la* (白蠟), produced by insects in the provinces of Shan tung and Hu kuang, and of the trees on which these insects use to live. Compare above Martini 37.

Some remarks on Chinese plants are found also in **Le Comte's Nouveaux Mémoires sur l'Etat de la Chine**. Paris 1696. 2 vol.

*Louis Le Comte*, a Frenchman, born in 1655, joined the Jesuit mission in China in 1687. He died in Bordeaux, in 1729.

1. We learn from Le Comte (I. 173.) that the first Orange tree, which had been introduced by the Portuguese from China, then (i.e. at the end of the 17th cent.) still existed in the garden of Count St. Laurent in Lisbon.

It is known, that the sweet Orange, now extensively cultivated in Southern Europe, was unknown there before the middle of the 16th cent., when it was introduced by Juan de Castro. It is in allusion to its Chinese origin, that the orange in Dutch is styled *Sinaas appel*, and *Apfelsine* in German.

2. Le Comte saw in the province of Shensi a kind of small yellow *Melon*, which the Chinese eat, without peeling off the skin. He notices also Melons the same in size as those cultivated in Europe and large *Watermelons* with red or white pulp (I. 132.)

An excellent globular Melon of the size of a small fist with a thin skin is also seen in Peking and known there under the name of 酸瓜 *tien kua* or 香瓜 *kiang kua*. The peel is yellow, or in another variety green. Loureiro, Fl. cochin. 726, speaks of Melons of large size in Southern China. I have not seen large Melons in Peking.
3. A good description of the Tea plant, its culture, etc., in the Province of Fokien is found I. 368. The author explains that the Chinese call the plant properly Cha, and that only in the dialect of Fokien the name sounds Te.

4. Le Comte reports that Tobacco is cultivated near Peking and in the provinces of Shansi, Shensi, Szungchuan. (I. 168.)

Le Comte seems to be the first European, who notices Tobacco in China. It is now a well established fact, that Tobacco was first introduced into China through the seaports of Fokien at the end of the 16th or the beginning of the 17th cent.

5. Le Comte speaks (I. 178) of a peculiar Chinese Onion in the following terms: J'y ai vu une espèce d'oignon qui ne vient point de graine comme ceux d'Europe, mais à la fin de la saison on voit sortir de petits filaments sur la pointe ou sur la tige des feuilles, au milieu desquelles se forme un oignon blanc semblable à celui qui germe dans la terre. Ce petit oignon pousse avec le temps des feuilles comme celles qui le soutiennent, lesquelles à leur tour portent un troisième oignon sur leur pointe, de manière néanmoins que leur grosseur et leur hauteur diminuent à mesure qu'ils s'éloignent de la terre.

This seems to be the same onion as that described under the name of 楂子葱 lou ts' ts'ung (onion growing in stories) in the 救荒本草 kiu huang ben ts'ao, published at the end of the 14th cent; a good drawing of it is also given there. The description states that at the top of the leaves grow from 4 to 5 little onions and on these again other onions are produced constituting thus from 3 to 4 stories. These onion plants do not bear seeds.—We have here probably to do with a so-called viviparous variety of an Onion. Allium Cepa, A. scorodoprasum and other species show sometimes the peculiarity of their flower-stems being surmounted by small bulbs, instead of bearing flowers and seeds. These bulbs produce new plants.

6. The black and yellow Peas, to which Le C. refers (I. 168) as used in North China for feeding horses, are: the yellow, Соja hispida Moench. (Glycine Соja), the black, a variety of it.

7. Le C. speaking of the Peci (Eleocharis tuberosa. Schult. v. supra Martini 14.) refers to Martini's statement, that when chewed together with a copper coin, the latter is easily bruised by the teeth, a story we met also in Chinese books. But Le C. refutes this assertion, appealing to his own experience. (I. 179.)

8. The tree is described which yields the Chinese Pepper or hou tsiao. (I. 177.)

Several species of Zanthoxylon are included under the name of 花椒 hua tsiao in China. In Peking this name is applied to Z. Bungei. Planch.
9. Description of the tree *ou tom chu*, a large tree of the appearance of the Sycamore. It has large leaves with long leafstalks, the seeds of it are produced on the edges of leaves, different however in shape from the true leaves. (I. 268). There is also a good drawing of this tree.

This is *Sterculia platanifolia*. Cav. a common tree in China, sin: 桐 樹 *wu t'ung shu*. Its carpel opens into green follicles indeed much resembling leaves, with the seeds attached to the edges of the follicles.

10. Le C. states that besides Cotton, the Chinese use to wear in summer clothes made from *Nettles* and another kind, they call *Co pou*, which is much esteemed by them. The latter is obtained in Fokien from a plant called *Co*, a shrub-like creeper, which they allow to grow over the fields, often extremely long. It has roundish leaves larger than those of the Ivy. They are soft, green on the upper side but covered on the under side with a coating of white down. The stem attains the thickness of a finger. To obtain the textile fibres they soak the stems in water, as we do in preparing flax, and after having removed the outer skin, they use the fibres of the inner bark for making linen, which is very fine, transparent and cool. (I. 242.)


11. Le C. devotes also some pages to the celebrated *Ginseng*, describing the plant and the mode of its use as a medicine (I. 377).

A great amount of useful information with respect to China is stored up in the *Lettres édifiantes et curieuses écrites des Missions étrangères*, a collection of letters written by the ancient Jesuit missionaries to their superiors or friends in Europe. There are several editions of this collection. The most convenient for reference is that published in the *Panthéon littéraire*, of which the letters received from the Chinese and Indo-Chinese Missions constitute vol. III and IV.

The following names of Jesuit missionaries appear there in connection with reports on botanical matters in China. 

**JOANnes LAUREATI**, an Italian, born 1666, joined the Chinese mission 1697, died 1727 at sea.

He wrote a letter, dated Fokien, July 26, 1714, to the Baron of Zee, in which he gives some accounts of the vegetable productions of China, especially of Tea. (Panth. lit. III. 225.)

In the same letter he notices, that the Chinese use the fibres of a *Nettle* for making clothes and speaks also of *Tobacco* which in the beginning of the 18th cent. was largely cultivated in Fukien. (I.c. 228.)
FRANCIS XAVIER D'ENTRECOLLES, a Frenchman, born 1662, joined the Chinese mission 1698, + in Peking 1741. Many interesting notes on China from his pen have been preserved. The following relate to Chinese plants:

Letter to Father Du Halde, dated Peking 7 Jul. 1727 (l.c. III 544.) This letter contains an interesting treatise on the manufacture by the Chinese of artificial flowers made from the marrow of a Chinese plant, called tong tsao, of which the author gives a description translated from a Chinese work.

This is the 通草 t'ung ts'ao of the Chinese, a plant which is not only used in making artificial flowers, but is also the source of the Rice paper, erroneously so called. It was only in 1852 that European botanists became acquainted with this plant, a native of Formosa. Sir W. Hooker described it in his Journ. of Bot., 1852 and 1853 as Aralia papyrifera. It has been introduced subsequently into many tropical countries. When I visited Java, in 1872, I saw it already, escaped from cultivation, growing luxuriantly in the forest surrounding the botanical garden of Tjibodas.

In the same letter (l.c. 547) d'Entr. says a few words on the large Citron, called Fo shou or Buddha's hand by the Chinese (v. supra Martini 10.)

In another letter, dated Peking 6 Oct. 1736 (l.c. III 713.) he treats of several other famed Chinese plants and begins first with some interesting and correct accounts of the tree and fruit, which the Chinese call si tze or chi tze. (Diospyros Kaki as has already been stated, v. supra Semedo 4, Boym 14.) He had observed the tree at Peking and sent also seeds of it to Paris. He states that the provinces of Shan tung, Ho-nan and Che-kiang are famed for their excellent sitze fruits, which are of various sizes, colors and shapes in different parts of China. They are generally of an orange or red color, but those of Chekiang are green even when ripe. Some varieties of this fruit have the appearance of two apples joined together or a fruit of two stories. The fruits on grafted trees are devoid of seeds.

The author here refers to the Peking variety of the Kaki, the largest in size, which near the basis of the fruit is provided with a circular depression and contains rarely seeds.

E. further states that the Chinese claim to graft successfully peach-trees on the sitze.

I have found the same statement in ancient Chinese works but cannot confirm it.

After this E. speaks of the Lichi fruits (v. supra Martini 7.) and then proceeds to describe a kind of Acacia, called hoai shu by the Chinese. Its fruit is used as medicine, the flowers for dying yellow.
This is the *Sophora japonica* L., a very common tree all over China, 槐樹 huai shu.

E. next translates from a Chinese book some notes with respect to *Willows*, explaining the use of willow wool instead of cotton.

The author means *Salix babylonica* L., also a very common tree in China. This reminds me of a statement of Professor Bunge, who, in his Enum. plant. Chinese bor., writes that the female tree of *S. babylonica* is very rare at Peking. This is an error. The female tree is met here much more frequently than the male and in May or June, when the willow seeds ripen, the air in the neighborhood of some places, where the trees abound, is full of this white wool (cottony down, which envelopes the seeds) and d’Entrecalles reports the same. If I am not mistaken, in Europe the female tree only of *S. babylonica* is known. At Peking both male and female are met with.

In the same letter (l.c. 721) E. recommends, on the authority of Chinese authors, the roots of the *Belvédère, sao techou ts'ao*, termed *kue* in Chinese books, as substitute for food in times of famine.

The author commits an error. What the French call Belvédère is *Kochia scoparia*. Schrad., a salsoaceous plant in North China as common as in Europe. The Pen *tsao kang mu*, XVI. 44. calls it 地膚子 ti fu *ts’er* or 撂帯草 sao chou ts'ao (meaning broom plant.) But the 蒜 kue (Pen *tsao* XXVII. 25.) is not the same, this name being applied to a Fern, *Pteris aquilina*. L., the farinaceous rhizoms of which are used in China as food as is also the case in some parts of Europe.

Finally (l.c. 722) E. gives an account of the Chinese *Camphor tree* and the method used by the Chinese to obtain Camphor from it.

**DOMINICUS PARENINN,** a Frenchman, born 1665, came to China 1698, + in Peking, 1741.

In 1723 Parennin sent a few Chinese drugs to the Academy of Sciences in Paris, furnishing some explanatory remarks on them in an accompanying letter. (l.c. III 341.)

The first of these drugs he calls *hia tsao tum chom*, meaning as he explains: a plant in summer, and in winter an insect. It is produced in Tibet and also in the province of Sz' ch'uan, and considered among the Chinese a very powerful medicine. The Father had himself experienced the medical virtues of this drug.

It is known now, that the drug in question is a Fungus, *Cordyceps sinensis*, which grows upon the head of a caterpillar.

The plant next described, the *san tsi*, is said to grow in the mountains of the provinces of Yün nan, Kui chou and Sz' ch'uan. This is still unknown to botanists. The plant 三七 *san ts'i* is treated of in the Pen *ts’ao* XII b. 41. The name
means: three and seven, and is explained by the distribution of the leaves.

After this P. gives some account of *Rhubarb*, and concludes by noting an aromatic root, called *tan coue*, brought from Sz’ ch’uan and much valued by the Chinese.

This is, it seems, the 當歸 tang kui of the Pen ts’ao, XIV. a I. which is referred by Tatarinov with? to *Radis Levistici chinensis*. I do not find this name in D.C. Prodr. It seems, that the Chinese plant yielding the drug tang kui is unknown to botanists.

In the same letter (l.c. III. 345.) P. states, that during 18 years he had accompanied the Emperor Kanghi on all his frequent travels. As is known, Kanghi was an enthusiastic sportsman. His hunting expeditions were generally directed to Southern Mongolia and Manchuria. There were also other missionaries, who were associated with Parennin in these excursions. He mentions especially Dr. Bourghese and Baudin. The latter, a clever apothecary and botanist, had been ordered by Kanghi to search in the mountains for Gentian and Imperatoria (Masterwort.) in order to prepare the celebrated Thêriaque Andromachi. But Baudin did not succeed in finding these plants.

There is no Masterwort in North China or in Southern Mongolia, but as to Gentiana, there are 5 species of it growing in the Peking mountains, some of them even employed as medicine by the Chinese. The Chinese name for Gentiana is 龍膽草 lung tan ts’ao (dragon’s gall plant.)

P. gives finally in the same letter a slight sketch of the botany of the mountains of Southern Mongolia. Among the trees and shrubs there he mentions Oaks of a dwarf size, Pines, the Aspen, Elm trees, Hazelnuts, wild Roses.

The Tartars and Mongols, who inhabit these regions, do not cultivate any fruit. There are also very few wild fruits. Two of them are worthy of notice.

The fruit *oulana*, as the Tartars call it, is of the size of a great red cherry and is produced on a little stem, 3 or 4 inches high. The other fruit has the appearance of small raisins. It is produced in clusters on a fine tree, 25 and more feet in height. After the first frost these berries become red and are then of an acidulated sweet taste.

*Oulana* is the Mongol and Manchurian name for *Prunus humilis*. Bge., frequent in the mountains of North-China and Southern Mongolia. As to the other fruit mentioned, it is difficult to say, what is meant, for P. gives no native name. Perhaps he saw *Sorbus aucuparia*. L.

P. mentions further the following herbaceous plants he met with in these mountains; a fine *Angelica, Dictamus albus,*
Parsnip, Asparagus, Chelidonium, Potentilla, Agrimonium, Pimpernel (Poterium sanguisorba), Pouliot (Montha.), Joubarbe (Sedum.), Artemisia, Absinthium.

I have adduced the preceding particulars merely on account of the length of time that has elapsed since their publication, for the botanical features of the regions Parennin traversed about 180 years ago, are well known now. We can therefore account for the plants he speaks of.

Finally I may mention, that Parennin was the first European, who notices the elegant Wisteria chinensis D.C., well known now also in our gardens. The climbing plant ten lo hua he speaks of (see Grosier: la Chine III. 66.) in a letter to Father Du Halde, with violet flowers hanging down in large bunches, is without doubt W. chinensis, sin: 膝 罗花 teng lo hua, growing wild and also much cultivated in North-China.

PETRUS JARTOUX, a Frenchman, born 1668, joined the Chinese mission 1701, + in Peking 1720.

We owe to this missionary a very valuable article on the Ginseng plant (Panax Ginseng C.A. Mey.) contained in a letter addressed to the Procureur général des Missions des Indes et de la Chine, and dated Peking, 12 April, 1711. (l.c. III. 183.)

The Fathers Jartoux and Regis had been intrusted by the Emperor Kanghi with the survey of Manchuria and the eastern part of the Great Wall, and on this occasion Jartoux had opportunity to visit the very country where the finest specimens of this famous plant grow, near the frontier of Corea. Jartoux describes the plant and the mode of its collection and preparation for the Emperor’s use, and adds also a drawing of it made by himself from nature. Du Halde in his great work on China reproduces this drawing. Jartoux here gives the first authentic account of Chinese Ginseng. Lamarck in his Encycol. Botan. II. 714 gives an abstract of this memoir.

GASPAR CHANSEAUME, a Frenchman, born 1711, joined the Chinese mission 1746, + in the province of Kiangsi in 1761. He has left an interesting memoir, written about 1750, and published in the Panth. lit. III. 830, on Chinese Insectwax. Ch. who speaks from his own observation made in the province of Hu kuang, gives some very valuable information regarding the insects which produce the wax, as well as with respect to the trees upon which they use to live. (Comp. above Martini 37, Maghellane.)

Father J. B. DU HALDE, in his admirable and comprehensive work: DESCRIPTION DE L’EMPIRE DE LA CHINE, published 1735 in French, and
translated into many other languages, devotes several chapters
to Chinese Botany, viz.: I. 16-27 Fruits, trees, flowers, economic
plants; II. 64. On Chinese Agriculture and the Cereals of
China; II. p. 143-153. On the abundance of several produc-
tions in China. Finally, there is in vol. III 378-509 a long
 treatise on Chinese medicine, all translations from Chinese
medical works, especially from the Pen tsiao kang mn, the well
known Chinese book on Natural History and Matéria medica.
We find there several descriptions of Chinese medicinal plants.
According to Le Comte (I. 368.) these translations are due to
Father Visdelou, one of the most distinguished sinologues.
(Born 1656 in France, joined the Chinese mission 1687, + in
India 1737.)

As Du Halde has drawn all the information, brought
together in his work, from the letters of the Jesuit missionaries,
we meet in it most of the matter preserved in the Lettres
défisantes. He never quotes his sources, but gives in the
preface a list of the names of the missionaries, who have con-
tributed to the compilation of the work. I need not mention
that Du Halde had never visited China. He was himself a
Jesuit and it seems that he made use of many letters, which
the missionaries in China addressed to him and which are
not included in the collection of the Lettres défisantes.

In the sequel I give a list of the Chinese plants spoken of in
Du Halde’s work, supplying the botanical names as far as
these plants are known to me. I quote from the original
French edition.

The fruit Tsétsé (I. 16.) is Diospyros Kaki. (v. Semedo 4,
Boym 14.) Oranges, Citrons, Lemons (I. 16 and II. 143.)
Litchi and Long yen (I. 16.) Nephelium Litchi and N. Lungan
(v. Martini 7.)
(v. Martini 9.)

The fruits Tein lan and Quang lan, resembling our olives
(I. 16. 17.) are Canarium Pimela. Koen. sin: 青欖 t'ing
lan, and C. album. Räush. sin: 楂 t'kan lan.

The hoa tsiao, Chinese Pepper (I. 17.) is Zanthoxylum
(v. supra Le Comte 8.) I do not know what is meant by “arbre
qui produit des pois” (I. 17.) perhaps Robinia or Caragana.

Some interesting particulars with respect to the Chinese Var-
nish tree, Tsi chu (I. 17, II. 174.) Comp. also above Martini 35.

In the Phil. Trans. vol. XXII. p. 525. (1700) is an article:
On the way of making China Varnishes sent by the Jesuits
in China to the Grand Duke of Tuscany, communicated by
Dr. W. Sherard, the well known botanist, who is said to have gained this information whilst in Rome with his pupil, the Duke of Beaufort.

The tree *tong chu*, with fruit resembling walnuts and containing a poisonous oil, used for painting, (I. 18.) is the *Aleurites cordata*. Müll. (*Elaeococcus verrucosa* Adr. Juss., *Vernicia montana*. Lour.) sin: 桐樹 *t'ung shù*.

The *Tallow tree* (I. 18., II. 143.) v. supra Martini 36.

The *pe la chu* or Wax-insect tree. (I. 18.) Martini 37. sin: 白蠟樹 *pe la shù*.

The *tchou tze* or Bamboo (I. 19.) sin: 竹子 *ch'ü tze*. Martini 33.

The *cha mou*, yielding an excellent timber wood (I. 19.) is the *Cunninghamia sinensis*. R. Br. sin: 沙木 *sha mou*.

The *nan mou*, a precious timber wood, much used for building the Imperial palaces (I. 19.) is, as my friend, Father David, kindly informed me, a species of *Laurus*. He saw the tree in Sz'ch'uan.

The *tse tan* or Rose wood, the *tie ly mou* or Iron wood (I. 19.) 紫檀 *tsê fan*, a heavy precious wood, much used for furniture. The tree which produces it seems to be unknown to botanists. With respect to Iron wood comp. above Martini 32.

The *Tea* plant (I. 20.)

The tree *tcha yeou*, the fruit of which yields an oil (I. 22.) is the *Camellia Sesamia*. Thbg. (C. oleifera. Abel.) The oil, styled Tea oil by Europeans, is 茶油 *ch'a yu* in Chinese.

The flower *mo ly hoa* (I. 23) is *Jasminum Sambuc L.* v. supra Martini 19.

The tree *kuey hoa*, with fragrant flowers (I. 22.) is *Olea fragrans*. Thbg. v. supra Martini 20.

The flower *lan hoa* or *lan wei hoa* with ornamental yellowish but very fragrant flowers (I. 23.) is *Cymbidium ensifolium* Sw., in Chin: 蘭 *lan* or 蘭蕙花 *lan wei hua*.

A tree called *oven koang chu* in Peking, with white flowers, and fruits with the appearance of a peach, but containing large black and hard seeds. (I. 23.) This is *Xanthoceras sorbifolia*. Bge. sin: 金冠樹 *wen kuan shù*.

*Lien hoa* (I. 24.) *Netelium speciosum*. W. (Martini 16.).

*Pe tsi* (I. 24.) *Eleocharis tuberosus*. Schult. (Martini 14.).

A peculiarity of the *Chinese Cabbage, pe ts'ai* is noticed, (I. 24.) which does not form heads like European Cabbage. This is *Brassica chinensis* L. sin: 白菜 *pe ts'ai*.

Rhubarb, the *Fou ling* and the *Pe fou ling* (I. 25.) v. supra Martini 40, 41.
I suppose, that by the medicinal herb *Fen si* described on the same page, the 防己 *fang ki*, *Pen ts'ao* XVIII b. 23, is meant. The Chinese plant of this name is however unknown to botanists. In Japan these characters denote *Menispermum acutum*. Thbg.

Another medicinal plant *Ti hoang*, of the province of Honan, is mentioned on p. 26. This is *Rehmannia glutinosa*. Lib. very common in the neighborhood of Peking, sin: 地黄 *ti hoang*. According to Cibot: Mém. conc. Chin. V. 498 the root of it yields a yellow dye.

With respect to *san tsí* (p. 26.) see above the account given by Father Parennin of this plant.

The tree with long pods, *tchang ko tse chu*, *Cassia fistula*, in the province of Yünnan (I. 26.).

*Cannelle Chinoise* (*Cassia bark*) in the province of Quang si (I. 27.) v. supra Martini 21.

The plant *Tien*, used as a blue dye (I. 27.) is *Indigofera tinctoria*. L. sin: 染 *tien*. But *Indis anilica* has the same name.

The Cotton plant (II. 147.)

The *kou chou* is a tree, which has much the appearance of a fig tree. It contains a milky juice. Its leaves are divided into irregular lobes. The juice is used by gilders (II. 148.)

This is *Broussonetia papyrifera*. Vent. in Chinese 柳树 *ku shu* or 竹 *ch'un*. Du Halde does not mention the principal use of this tree in China, a very strong paper being manufactured from its bark.

On the same page a much detailed but very obscure description is given of a tree called *lung ju* 木, the fruit of which has a peculiar stone containing an almond-like kernel. It seems to me that the first syllable of the name is wrong and we should read *kia ju tsí*, which according to Boym is the Chinese name for Anacardium occidentale.

*Mö lien*, a large tree with large deciduous leaves. It puts forth its conspicuous lily-like flowers before the leaves; some trees have red, others white or yellow flowers (II. 149.)

木蓮 *mu lien* or 木蓮 *mu lan* is the Chinese name for *Magnolia obovata*. Thbg.

*Lamôé*, a tree with opposite leaves and yellow, very fragrant flowers, which the tree puts forth in winter (II. 149.)

*Chimonanthus fragrans*, Lindl. v. supra Semedo. 12.

The *icha hoa* (II. 149.) is *Camellia japonica*. L. sin; 花茶 *icha hoa*.

Description of a peculiar tree called *tse song* or *yuen pe*. Some of its leaves are prickly and resemble those of the Juniper tree, whilst other branches of the same tree present Cypress leaves. (II. 150).

This is *Juniperus chinensis* L. a large tree, which shows indeed the above mentioned peculiarity. Scale-like closely appressed leaves or linear spreading ones occur in different parts of the same tree. Its Chinese name is in Peking 剃松 *tse*’ *sung* (prickly pine). The name 圓柏 *yuan po* is applied to a different coniferous tree, according to Chinese books.

On the same page begins a long treatise on *Ginseng*, for the greater part a reproduction of Jartoux's memoir. It is accompanied with the drawing of the plant made by Jartoux.

Among the Chinese medicinal plants noticed in the 3d vol. of Du Halde's work, there is only one the name of which appears for the first time in the records of the Jesuits. On p. 496 is an account of certain *Galls* call ou *poey tse* and produced upon a tree *yen fon tse*. These galls are used by dyers to produce a black color.

As is known now,—these galls constitute a regular article of commerce—the tree or shrub on which they are, found is *Rhus semialata*. Murr. Sin: 鹽鉻子 *yen fu tse*. The galls are termed 五倍子 *wu pei tse*.

Du Halde's work is illustrated by eleven engravings representing Chinese plants. He does not quote the sources of these drawings but from comparison I have been able to trace them.

1. The *Bamboo*. (taken from Niewhoff, resp. Bontius.)
2. The *Sugar cane*. (Niewhoff.)
3. The *Lichi* tree. (Boym's Flora sin.)
5. *Betel pepper* (Niewhoff, resp. Bontius. 91.)
6. The *Cotton plant*. (Niewhoff.)
7. The *Ginseng*. (reproduced from Jartoux's original delineation.)
8. *Fouling, Radix China*. (Boym's Flora sin.)
9. The *Rhubarb plant*. (Kircher's China illust.)
10. *On tong chou*, *Sterculia* (Le Comte.)
11. The *Tea plant* (Niewhoff.)

Having brought down thus far my review of the observations made by the ancient Jesuit missionaries with respect to
Chinese plants, I must in the meantime leave the learned Fathers, and, to lay down in the order of time my material for a history of botanical discoveries in China, devote a chapter to an English naturalist, who in the very beginning of the 18th century visited China. In another chapter I shall have to speak of some Swedish travellers and naturalists, who half a century and more later, collected plants in the neighborhood of Canton or left accounts of their botanical observations in China.

II JAMES CUNNINGHAM 1702.

Eleven years after E. Kaempfer had studied the Flora of Japan and brought home from that country about 500 plants, JAMES CUNNINGHAM, an Englishman, had the opportunity of investigating the Flora of China at several points in the Empire. He has the merit of having been the first European, who made botanical collections in China and whose rich herbarium safely arrived home, where it was described by several distinguished botanists of that time. The only biographical particulars I have been able to gather with respect to Cunningham are: that in 1698 he was sent to China as a physician to the English factory at Amoy. He visited also the island of Chusan and was subsequently transferred to the island of Pulu Condore, where the English had also established a factory. The publisher of the Philosophical Transactions styles him F. R. S. Besides his botanical collections made in China, he had sent also to England a few plants from the island of Ascension, gathered on his way to China. Comp. Pultney's historical and biographical sketches of the progress of Botany (1790) II. 58—and Sprengel's Geschichte der Botanik, II. 79.

In the Philosophical Transactions of the year 1702, vol. XXIII, p. 1201. sqq. two of Cunningham's letters treating of China and addressed to the editor of that Journal, have been published. As they are not very long, I shall reproduce them here, adding occasionally some explanatory notes. An abstract of these letters has already been given in vol. ix. p. 133 of the Chin. Repository.

It appears from the first of these letters that the ship in which Cunningham came out to China proceeded directly from England to Chusan. He does not allude in his letters, both written in 1701, to his stay at Amoy. But as among his Chusan plants described by Petiver we find also several noted as having been gathered on the island of Emuy, we can
conclude, that C. went from Chusan to Amoy in 1703. We know from the "New account of the East Indies" published in 1723 by Capt. Hamilton, that the factory at Chusan was commenced by the E. I. Company in 1700 and abandoned by the chief supercargo Mr. Catchpole in 1703 by reason of the exactions of the Chinese government and the Company's neglecting to send money.

Cunningham's Letters on China.

The first of these letters bears no date. It seems to have been written in October 1701 (but perhaps in 1700). It reads as follows:

Sir! My last to you was from the island of Borneo, in which I gave you an account of our arrival there the 17th July, where we staid but two days, the season of the year being so far past, and from thence made the best of our way through the Strait of Banca with favourable winds and weather, till we came on the coast of China the 13th of August. There we had variable winds which carried us abreast of Emuy the 19th following, at which time the north east winds setting in fresh, put us in great fears of losing our passage: whereupon we were forced to turn it up against wind and current all the way, the weather so favouring us, that we were never but by our topsails, else we should have lost more ground in one day, than we could have gained in eight. The last of August we came to an anchor under the Crocodile islands both to shelter us from the bad weather and also to look for fresh water, not having recruited since we came from the Cape of G. H. There are three small islands lying in the latitude of 26 degrees, about 6 leagues from the river of Hocksien; on two whereof we found very good fresh water with a convenient watering place on the south west side of the innermost of the three*. By the assistance of a few Chinese fishermen we procured some fresh provisions from the mainland, because we did not reckon it safe to adventure ourselves thither, lest we should have been brought into trouble by the government there. While we lay here, on the 5th of September, we had a sudden short shift of the monsoon to south-west, the fury whereof others felt, in coming upon the coast of China at the

* There can be no doubt, that C.'s Crocodile islands are the Dogs islands of modern maps, south east of the mouth of the Min river on which Fu chou (or Hok chiu in the local dialect) is situated.
same time. The 8th of September we put to sea again, turning
to windward night and day without all the islands, which
are very numerous along this coast, to which we were all
together strangers beyond Emuy, and the hydrography thereof
is hitherto so imperfect, that there was no trusting to our
drafts, which made our navigation somewhat more dangerous.
However on the first of October we got into the latitude
of 30°, where we came to an anchor near the land, until
we found the way by boat to Chusan,* about 12 leagues
within the islands, from whence we had a pilot, who
carried us safely thither on the 11th of October. Upon
this island the Chinese have granted us a settlement and
liberty of trade, but not to Ningpo, which is 6 or 8 hours
sail to the westward, all the way amongst islands; this being
the largest, is 8 or 9 leagues in length from E. to W. and 4 to
5 in breadth, about 3 leagues from that point of the mainland
called Cape Liampo by the Portuguese, but Khi tso† by the
Chinese. At the west end of this island is the harbour, very
safe and convenient, where the ships ride within call of the
factory, which is built close by the shore on a low plain valley,
with near 200 houses about it for the benefit of trade, inhabited
by men, whose jealousy has not as yet permitted them to let
their wives dwell here; for the town where they are, is ¾ of a
mile further from the shore, environed with a fine stone wall,
about 3 miles in circumference, mounted with 22 square
bastions placed at irregular distances, besides 4 great gates,
on which are planted a few old iron guns, seldom or never
used; the houses within are very meanly built. Here the
Chumpeen‡ or governor of the island lives and betwixt 3 or
4000 beggarly inhabitants, most part soldiers and fishermen;
for, the trade of this place being newly granted, has not as
yet brought any considerable merchants hither. The island

* The island of Chusan, the largest of the group marked as Chusan
Archipelago on our maps, is immediately opposite the mouth of the river
on which Ningpo is situated. The Chinese call it 定海 Ting hui, which
is properly the name of a district city on this island. 舟山 Chou shan
(Chiu san in the local dialect) is an ancient name of it not found on
modern Chinese maps. The island of Chusan is not to be confounded
with Port Chusan, on the south-eastern coast of Corea, where Ch.
Wilford collected plants about a quarter of a century ago.
† A long projecting promontory opposite Chusan, 歧 頃 K' i sou
of Chinese, Ke sou point of English maps.
‡ 總 兵 Tsung ping, a general.
in general abounds with all sort of provision, such as cows, buffaloes, goats, deer, hogs wild and tame, geese, ducks, hens; rice, wheat, calavances, colcavars, turnips, potatoes, carrots, beets, and spinach; but for merchandize there is none but what comes from Ningpo, Hangcheu, Nankin and the island towns, some of which I hope to see, when I have acquired a little of the Chinese language.

Here also the Tea grows in great plenty on the tops of the hills, but it is not in that esteem which what grows on more mountainous islands. Although this island is pretty well stored with people, yet it is far from what it was in Father Martini's time, when he describes Cheuxam, and this puts me in mind, that the superstitious pilgrimages thereto, mentioned by him, must be meant of the island Pouto, which lies 9 leagues from hence and 3 miles to the eastward of this island, whither (they say) the Emperor designs in the month of May next (being his birthday and the 40th of his age) to come to worship in an ancient pagod there, famous for sanctity, having sent one of his bonzes already thither, to get all things in order.

Chusan. November 22. 1701.

Sir! I formerly told you that the Emperor designed to have come to the island of Pouto to worship in the month of May last, being the 40th year of his age, I should have said of his reign. But all things being prepared there for his reception, he was dissuaded from his purpose by some of his mandarins, who made him believe that the terrible thunder there was very dangerous. This Pouto is a small island about 5 leagues round at the east end of this island, famous for the superstitious pilgrimages made thither for the space of 1100 years. It is inhabited only by bonzes, to the number of 3000, all of the sect called Ho shang, or unmarried bonzes, who live a Pythagorean life; and there they have built 400 pagodas, two whereof are considerable for their greatness and finery, being lately covered with green and yellow tiles brought from the emperors palace at Nankin, and inwardly adorned with stately idols finely graved and gilded, the chief whereof is the idol Quon em. To these two great pagodas belong two chief

* Dolichos sinensis L.
† Pouto. This island is indeed exclusively occupied by Buddhist priests. It has 72 Buddhist temples. In the description of his Chinese plants Cunningham mentions some other islands of the Chusan Archipelago viz: Thow whey san 桃花山—Pam si san.
‡ Ho shang, a Buddhist priest.
§ Quon em, 观音—the Goddess of Mercy.
priests, who govern all the rest. They have several ways and avenues cut through the island, some of which are paved with flagstones and overshadowed with trees planted on each side. Their dwellings are the best I have yet seen in these parts; all of which are maintained by charitable devotions. And the junks which go from Ningpo and this place to Japan touch there both going and coming, to make their offerings for their good success. There is another island called Kimtong,* 5 leagues hence in the way to Ningpo, whither, they say, a great many mandarins retire, to live a quiet life after they have given over their employments. On that island also are said to be silver mines, but prohibited to be opened. The rest of the circumjacent islands are either desert or meanly inhabited by a few fishing people, but all of them stored with abundance of deer. For it is not long, since this island of Chusan began to be peopled. It is true in Martini's days, about fifty years ago, it was very populous for the space of 3 to 4 years, at which time the fury of the Tartarian conquest was so great, that they left it desolate, not sparing so much as the Mulberry trees, for then they made a great deal of raw silk here, and in this condition it continued till about 18 years ago, that the walls of the fort or town, which now is, were built by the governor of Ting hai, for a garrison to expell some pirates, who had taken shelter here. About 14 years ago the island beginning to be peopled, there was a chumpeen or general sent to govern it for 3 years, to whom succeeded the late chumpeen, who procured the opening of this port to strangers and whose government continued till April last, being translated to the Chumpeen of Tien ching wei †, near to Pekin, and was succeeded by the present chumpeen, who is son to the old Chun koon ‡ of Emnay.

They have got no arts or manufactories here, but making of lackered ware, a particular account whereof I cannot as yet send you. They begin to plant the mulberry trees, to breed up worms for the production of raw silk and they make some Tea, but chiefly for their own use. The three sorts of Tea commonly carried to England are all from the same plant, only the season of the year and the soil makes the difference. The Bohe, or Voii, || so called after some mountains in the

*金塘山 Kin t'ang shan.
† Now Tien tzu fu.
‡ 中軍 Chung kün.
‖ 武彝 Wu yi, in Amoy bo he.
province of Fokien, where it is chiefly made, is the very first but gathered in the beginning of March, and dried in the shade. The Bing * tea is the second growth in April, and Sing lo † the last, in May and June, both dried a little in pans over the fire. The Teashrub being an evergreen is in flower from October to January and the seed is ripe in September and October following, so that one may gather both flowers and seed at the same time, but for one fresh and full seed there are a hundred nought. These make up the two sorts of fruit in Le Comte's description of tea: as for his other sort, which he calls flymic pease, they were nothing but the young buds of the flowers not yet opened. Its seed vessels are really 3 capsular, each capsule containing one nut or seed, and, although two or one capsule only come to perfection, yet the vestiges of the rest may be discerned. It grows in a dry gravelly soil, on the sides of hills, in several places of the island without any cultivation.

Le Comte is mistaken in saying (p. 96) that the Chinese are wholly strangers to the art of grafting, for I have seen a great many of his paradoxical Tallow trees ingrafted here, besides some other trees. When they ingraft, they do not slit the stock as we do, but cut a small slice off the outside of the stock, to which they apply the graft, bringing up the bark of the slice upon the outside of the graft, they tye all together covering with straw and mud as we do.

Martini says he could never find a Latin name for the Fula Mogorin of the Portuguese (v. supra Martini 19). I am sure it is the same with the Syringa arabica flore pleno albo in Parkinson. ‡

He says also, that the Kieu yeu or Tallow tree bears a white flower like a Cherry tree, but all that. I have seen here bears a spike of small yellow flowers like the julus of a Salix. ||

The Bean or Mandarin Broth, so frequently mentioned in the Dutch Embassy and by other authors is only an emulsion made of the seed of Sesamum and hot water. §

* Ming, in Amoy beng.
† 松 薬 Sung lo, name of a mountain, see above Martini 23.
‡ Cunningham is right. Lamarck Enc. bot. IV 210 quotes the Syringa arabica (already known to Clusius) as a synonym of Jasminum Sambuci. Alt.
|| Cunningham's statement is correct. See above Martini 36, note.
§ In the narrative of the third Dutch Embassy a Bean soup is mentioned which they believed to be prepared with milk and Peking butter (sic!). But it seems to me that the above statements of Cunningham and the Dutch are to be referred to the Chinese condiment commonly called Bean card by Europeans. (Williams' Middle Kingdom, II. 43.)
(I omit the particulars given with respect to fishing, tillage, and obtaining of salt.)

Had I not found the printed Newspapers last year take notice of a singular root brought from China by F. Fontaney, I should not have told you that I have seen one since I came here, called *Hu chu wu* (which I take to be the same), whereto they ascribe wonderful properties of prolonging life and turning gray hairs into black, by drinking its infusion for some time, in so much that they say it is to be had in value from 10 taëls to 1000 or 2000 a single root, for the larger it is, the more is its value and efficacy: which is too much money here to try the experiment. You have it mentioned in Cleyer's Medicina sinica, 84, under the name of *Ho xeu u*. It is likewise painted in the 27 table of those plants Mr. Petiver has of me.†

After this C. relates a Chinese legend with respect to this root. A man fell down from a precipice and found himself in a valley from which he was not able to come out. He lived there for a hundred years feeding on the above-mentioned root. He was finally delivered by an earthquake, which destroyed the valley.

Cunningham distributed his Chinese botanical collection, made in Chusan, at Amoy and on the Dogs islands near Fuchou, among his friends in England. Plukenset and Petiver seem to have received the greatest part of it. I may be allowed to say here a few words with respect to these ardent and able botanists and their works, in which they described and depicted Cunningham's plants, soon after they had received them.

*James Petiver,* Apothecary of the Charterhouse, London, and secretary to the Royal Society, an active collector of objects of natural history, born about 1658 + 1713. He had correspondents in most parts of the world, who sent him productions, plants, animals, etc. He was a friend of the botanist *Ray* and of Sir *Hans Sloane*, the celebrated promotor of science and President of the Royal Society (born 1660 + 1752), who offered

---

* Joannes de Fontaney, Jesuit Missionary in China, end of the 17th cent.
† What C. tells with respect to the plant *何首烏* (*ho shou wu*) is found also in Chinese works. A good drawing of it is given in the Chin. Botany, *Chi wu ming shi òu k'ao* XX. 16, a climbing plant with a large tuberous root, and this agrees with the engraving under the same Chinese name in the Japanese Botany *So mo kou* etc VII. 80, which according to Franchet and *Savatier* (*Enum. pl. Japon.* 1:402.) is *Polygonum multiflorum* Thbg. and has in fact tuberous roots.
him £4000 for his collections of specimens. As the Sloanian collection subsequently gave origin to the British Museum (Hanbury's Science pap. 384) Petiver's specimens may also be stored there.

In a paper published in the XXIII. vol. of the Philosophical Transactions (1703) Petiver describes about 70 Chinese plants supplied principally by Cunningham. But previously he had published in his Museum (1692-1703) short characteristics of 1000 exotic plants, amongst which we find scattered about 100 from China, the greatest part of them not mentioned in the Philosoph. Trans. Besides this he issued his *Gazophyto- lacii Natuarce Decades decem*, 1702-1709, short descriptions and engravings of 100 exotic plants, about 20 of which were selected from Cunningham's Chin. collection.

It appears from Cunningham's letters and from Petiver's quotations that the latter had also received from C. a collection of Chinese drawings representing Chinese plants. Petiver frequently speaks of "Herbarium nostrum sinense pictum."

Leonard Plukenet, born 1642-1705, a learned English botanist, educated at Oxford. He was in war with Sloane and Petiver. Plukenet has published many botanical works and described and depicted a great number of new plants especially from America, the East Indies and China. Almost all Chinese plants he mentions had been handed to him by Cunningham, and it seems that the latter had entrusted the greatest part of his herbarium to Plukenet, who described about 400 Chinese specimens in his *Amaithewm botanicum seu Stirpium Indicarum alterum copiae cornu 1705*, intermixed with American and Indian plants. Nearly one half of the Chinese plants Plukenet faithfully figured in vol. III of his *Phytographia*. These figures are small and often much reduced from the natural size, but are generally very characteristic.

In 1779 Dr. P. D. Gieske added an Index Linnaeans in Plukenetii opera botanica, in which he ascertained a great number of the plants there described and figured, but with respect to the Chinese specimens in the Phytographia he has only in a few cases been able to identify them.

Perhaps the botanist Ray (1628-1705) disposed also of a part of Cunningham's plants. In his *Historia plantarum*, in the 3d vol. (1704) he describes some of them. It may be

---

*The 3rd vol. of Plukenetii Phytographia bears the date 1692. But this is evidently an error for each engraving in it is referred to the text in the Amaithewm, published 1705. Pl. published also an *Atnagestium Botanicum*, 1696, in which a few Chinese plants appear.*
however, that he copied from Petiver and Plukenet. I have seen the Hist. plant but had then no opportunity of comparing it with the Amaltheum and Petiver's works. As appears from Petiver's statements, C. had given also to Sloane some of his specimens.

On the whole, nearly 600 Chinese plants have been described by Petiver and Plukenet from Cunningham's specimens. It would be interesting to know what has become of this herbarium. Petiver's botanical collections as well as those of Plukenet had been acquired by Sloane and were finally incorporated into the British Museum, where they may still exist, or at least some "rudera" of them.

After Cunningham, botanical collections have been made twice at Chusan, as far as I know. Dr. Th. Cantor visited the island in 1849 and in an account of Cantor's botanical collections in the Journ. As. Soc. Beng. XXIII. 1854, Mr. Griffith enumerates 133 plants gathered at Chusan, but he gives generally nothing more but the genus names. There is only one plant of the collection he describes as new, viz. Actinostemma tenerum. I am not aware whether Cantor's herbarium is now in England or in India.

The well known traveller and botanical collector R. Fortune (who died in April 1880) investigated the Flora of Chusan some years later. He first came to that island in 1843 and visited it again in 1850. His plants, distributed by the R. Hort. Soc., are found in all the more important herbarium's of Europe. It seems that only a small part of Fortune's Chinese plants have been described.

Concerning the Crocodile islands (Dogs islands near Fuchou) where Cunningham gathered some specimens, the botanical features of these islands are probably the same as those of the adjacent mainland. The Flora of that part of China, and I must say the same with respect to Amoy, is very imperfectly known. But all plants gathered at those places may, I believe, be found in Dr. Hance's magnificent herbarium, and he is probably the only botanist who would be able to identify Cunningham's plants from the ancient descriptions and drawings left.

A great part of Cunningham's plants, described and depicted by Petiver and Plukenet, are probably included in the later collections alluded to. I therefore have thought it would be useful to bring under the notice of modern botanists and to place together the scattered remarks and diagnoses referring to Cunningham's plants, as found in the Amaltheum.
and in Petiver's writings. But as the descriptions there are often long and detailed, I cannot venture to reproduce the whole and shall often confine myself to quoting only the short diagnoses, which generally precede the descriptions, referring the reader to the original works and the drawings. The latter of course will be more serviceable to identify the plants in question, than the descriptions given.

**Musei Petiveriani Centuriae Decem Rarioar Naturae Continentis**

London 1692—1703. 2 tab.

This is an enumeration of exotic plants, from Asia, the Cape of G. H. and America. I extract the following notes on Chinese plants found there. These Chinese specimens were gathered, as Petiver states, chiefly by Cunningham, a few of them also by Keir and Barklay, surgeons, and Sum Brown. The latter visited Chusan before Cunningham.

The first century mentions three Chinese Ferns.


Hamoy in China.


352. Argentina Emuyaca, foliis ramosis, altius incisis. From Emuy, a Chinese island.

400 Pagopyrum chinense Bistortae folio.

402. Filix Emuyaca pinnis proliferis mire ornatis.

403. Filix Emuyaca pinnis singulis integris et divisis, marginibus seminiferis.


498. Um ki Chinensisbus. Frutex Cynosbaty fructu alato tinctorio, barbulis longioribus coronatis.—The fruit supplies a famed ingredient used by the Chinese for dying scarlet.

* Adiantum Chinense perelegans ramosum, folio flabelliformi cum rubedine perfuso. Pluk. Alm. ii. tab 4, 3. is diantum flabellatum L. Linnaeus describes yet another Chinese species: A. chusanum, which has been referred to Davallia chinensis Sw. by Sprengel.
This is *Gardenia florida* L. See further on Pluk. Amalath. 29.
545. *Filix Emuyaco* pinnis majoribus denticulatis. Cunningh

Probably *Polypodium Barometz* L. sin: 狗脊 kou tai.
640. *Fagara Emuyaca* Cardamomi sapore, ramulis et medio nervo foliorum utrinque spinosis.—Seems to agree with the Fagara minor from the Philippine islands, where it is called Cayutana.

The Cayutana is *Zanthoxylum heterophyllum* Sm., but Petiver’s plant is probably *Z. nitidum* D. C.

757. *Capillaris chinensis* pinnulis rotundioribus. Fern from China.

857. *Amelanchier chusanensis* folio parvo subrotundo rigido, from China.
858. *Androsace chusanensis* Cortusae Matthioli folio (v. infra Philos. Trans. 52.)
859. *Angola chusanensis* Pruni folio, calice amplo.
860. *Anonymus chusan.* floribus spicatis, petalis tribus angustis.
861. *Apios ex insulis Crocodilorum.*
864. *Arbor chusan.* Laurocerasi folio serrato.
865. *Arbor chusan.* Laurifolio serrato subtus molli, virgulis verrucosis.
867. *Arbor Emuyaca*, flore minimo stamineo, albente, Ilicis folio.

875 *Aster chusan.* foliis superioribus integris, inferioribus Coronopii.
878. *Buccifera chusan.* Theae folio.
Baccifera Emuyaca dispermos, scandens, Flammulae facie.

Calamintha chinensis, Teucrri folio, flore staminoso.

Camphorosmos chusan, flore piloso.

Curambu Emuyaca, Persicariae foliiis hirsutis. 

The Caramba of Rheede is a Jussima.

Cerasus chusan, floribus minoribus plenis.

Chamaerhododendron chusan, flore albo, Myrti romanae folio.

Chamaerhododendron chusan, flore coeruleo, foliis et calycibus hirtis.

Christophoriana forte Emuyaca, spinosa, Mori folio molli.


Clematis chusan, folio cordato umbilicate.

Coccifera Crocodyl. Pimentae Jamaicensis folio.

Cocculus reniformis scandens Emuyacu, Cotini folio subtus molli.


Clematis chusan, folio cordato umbilicate.

Coccifera Crocodyl. Pimentae Jamaicensis folio.

Coeculus reniformis scandens Emuyacu, Cotini folio subtus molli.


Polygala flaviloba. folio Sonchi integro.

Probably Emilia sonchifolia

Cynoglossum chusan, summo late ramoso.

Cytisus Crocodyl. foliiis parvis subtus villosis.

Euonymus chinensis, Glycyrrhizeae folio.

Euonymus forte chusan. Berberidis folio.

Euonymus Crocodyl. Laurocerasi folio.

Euonymus Emuyacu, Pervincæ majoris folio, baccæ solitarii, vasculo bipartito vel tripartito inclusa.

Empatorium Crocodyl. Leonuri folio.

Ficus chusanensis, Mori folio.

Ficus chusanensis minima, nigrescens, folio integro, superne scabro, subtus molli.—It bears fruit in Sept.

Ficus forte chusan. folio vulgaris facie sed molliori.

Frutex Crocodyl. foliis alatis subrotundis glaucis, subtus albidis.

Frutex Crocodyl. Fagi foliiis parvis, venis subtus purpureis.

Fagi foliiis parvis, venis subtus purpureis.

Hai hoa Chinensibus, flore albo, siliquis gummosis articulatis.

Probably Sophora japonica L. sin.; 槐花 hui hua. Pod contracted between the seeds, containing a viscid matter.

Ham shaw Chinensibus. Arbor flore albo, calyce hirsuto.

Jacobaea chusan. folio lato.

Jujubæ folio minore, planta repens chinensis.

**Chimonanthus fragrans** Lindl. sin: 非梅 *la mei* or *la bai* in some Southern dialects.


**Humulus japonicus** S. et Z. gathered also by Cantor in Chusan.

948. *Oxyanthus chusan*, Pyracanthae folio.
950. *Persicaria chinensis*, folio subitus albido. V. infra Phil. Trans. 28.


954. *Phaseolus chusan*, siliqua hirta folio latiore.


964. *Quinquefolium chusan*, folio subtus incano, albo.

**Stillingia sebifera** Michx. V. supra Martini 36.


Perhaps *Rubia cordifolia* L.


975. *Serratula chusan*, folio hastato.
976. *Serratula chusan*, folio subtus incano albo.
978. *Shew kow* chinensibus, folio oblongo serrato nervoso.

980. *Stoechadis spica* *Planta chusan*, Galeopsis folio.

V. infra Philos. Trans. 59.
985. *Thea chusan*. sylvestris non potabilis.—The flowers much the same with the common, but the leaves less and thicker.
988. *Viburnum chusan*. spinosum, folio digitato.
990. *Vitex Crocodyl.* folii oppositis Arbuti.
993. *Ulni folio minore frutex chusan.*
994. *Ulni folio minore splendente Emuyaca.*

柳楊 *Yang liu is Salix babylonica*. L.
998. *Ya hap* chinensisbus. Arbor flore albo, folio Anonae venosae.
1000. *Zizyphus chusan*, suberis folio, subtus punctato.

**J. PETIVERI GAZOPHYLLACIUM NATURAE ET ARTIS. 1702-1709.**

Two volumes, each consisting of 50 plates. The following Chinese plants are represented by the drawings:

Tab. 6, fig. 3 *Cupressus chusanensis*, Abictis folio, from *Chusan*. The leaves are triangular, carinated, stiff and stand off from the stalk; its seed is brown and small, not much unlike Buck wheat but not so regular.

The drawing seems to represent *Cryptomeria japonica*. Don. Fortune observed this tree in Chekiang.

Tab. 12, fig. 3. *Tagetes chinensis*, foliiis undulatis, radice cordiali. *Herbar. nost. Chin. tab. 27, fig. 3*. This is the wonderful plant *Hu chu u* of which Cunningham speaks in his letter.

As we have seen, the Chinese plant, C. alludes to, seems to be *Polygonum multiflorum*. Thbg. Petiver seems to reproduce the Chinese drawing of his Herbarium Chinense, which is not correct.

Tab. 19, fig. 5. *Sagittaria chinensis* foliiis tenuis longissimis. *Herbar. nost. Chin. tab. 12, fig. 3. Sa heo chau indigenis*.

According to Lam. Enc. Bot. II. 504, this is *Sagittaria trifolia* L. Kth. enum. III. 157 thinks that *S. chinensis*. Sims. may be the same.

tab. 18, fig. 18. This beautiful plant would be a fine ornament to our gardens.

Tab. 21, fig. 10. The Tea shrub is here figured with its leaf, flower and fruit.


The root of Ginseng is correctly represented, but not the leaves.


Tab. 27. Onium chw.

Vide intra Phil. Trans. 82 Sterculia platanifolia.

Tab. 33, fig. 4. Thea chinensis, Pimentae jamaicensis folio, flore rosaceo simplici.

This is Camellia japonica. L. See Lam. Enc. Bot. I, 572.

Tab. 33, fig. 8. Androsace chusan. Cortusae Matthioli folio. Museum nostr. 965. I take this elegant plant to come next in kind to Linum umbilicatum, which Tournefort calls Omphalodes.

The drawing seems to represent Androsace saxifragae folia. Bge.

Tab. 34, fig. 3. Ricinus chinensis schifera, Populi nigræ folio Mus. nost. 965. Chinese Tallow tree. Philos. Trans. 90.

Stillingia schifera Michx.

Tab. 34, fig. 11. Teucrium Crocodyl. V. infra Philos. Trans. 41.

Tab. 35, fig. 7. Vaccinia forte chusan., Laurocerasi folio flore tubuloso.

The drawing seems to represent Vaccinium bracteatum Thbg. or V. chinense. Benth. Fl. hongk. 200.

Tab. 35, fig. 11. Rosa chusan. glabra, Juniperi fructu. This Rose I have received both from Chusan and China.

Linnes identifies this Rose with his Rosa indica, but Lindley with his R. microcarpa.

Tab. 36, fig. 1. Gramen Lagopedes chusen. spicis cristatis palescentibus. Phil. Trans. 24.

Pennisetum ?

Tab. 36, fig. 7. Coecifera chusan. Coryli folio, floribus exiguis racemiferis. Phil Trans. 67.

Symplocos ?

Tab. 36, fig. 8. Fagara chusan. Rhois virginianae folio, caule alato.

The drawing seems to represent Zanthoxylum Bungei Pl.
Tab. 45, fig. 9. **Zapoll. chinensis.** fructu cinnabarino, Xicu Sinensibus, Chicoy Hispani., Figoaque Lusitan. Its leaves single, 6 inches long and 3 broad.—fig. 10. **Zapoll. fructus,** dried in the sun, as they do figs.—fig. 11. **Zapoll. ossiculum.**

**Diospyros** Kaki L. sin. 柿子 shi ts’iz.

Tab. 63, fig. 8 is a **Loranthus.** See further on Linn. Chin. pl. 220.

Tab. 95, fig. 6. In Chinese **Samtanguy** or Flammula. Cat. 379. Grows about a yard and a half high, into many branches, bearing at the top scarlet Jasmin-like flowers. Kam. Ray. App. p. 7 pl. 23.

**Izora stricta** Roxb. is called 山丹 shan tan (the red of the mountains) in Chinese.

Tab. 97, fig. 2. A Chinese Feather-few, with double white or blush flowers. Cat. 337.

Tab. 97. fig. 3. Another with a double yellow flower. Mus. Pet. 786.

**ACCOUNTS OF SOME PLANTS FROM CHUSAN, COLLECTED**

**BY J. CUNNINGHAM.**

Published by J.Petiver, Philos. Trans. XXIII (1703.) p. 1421. The first 20 numbers refer to Corals from the Philippine Islands.

21. **Lingua cervina chusanensis** maculata media.

The root of this is like our common Polypody with fibres running from them. The leaves resemble Harts-tongue, but are longer and narrower, but as that bears its seed in slant streaks on the back of the leaves, these have them in round spots like those in Polypody, one on each side of the middle rib at nearly half an inch distance, beginning near the point, and reach above half the leaf.

22. **Lingua cervina chusanensis** maculata, parva.

This has a fibrous root, its leaves have scarcely any footstalk and rarely exceed 3 inches in length, the seeds stand in round spots like the last, as large but much closer set, reaching from the middle rib to the edge of the leaf, coming down about half way.

23. **Arundo chusanensis** polydactyloides, perelegans.

This reed has a very beautiful tuft, composed of about a dozen pappose spikes, like some of our Indian downy Cocksfoot grass, each above a span long.

This is next in kind to our Gr. Lagop. guineense, Gazoph. nat. tab. 2, fig. 7, et. Mus. 238, but its spikes are larger and both glumae and aristae are whitish, whereas the Guinea sort when full ripe is ferrugineous and its spike turns downwards. Dr. H. Sloane has the only specimen I have as yet seen of this new grass.

25. Panicum cristatum chusanense, spica multiplici nude.

This is a very elegant grass, each capsule somewhat resembles those of our Nasturtium verrucaenum or Swines Cress.

- 26. Secalis facie frumentum chusanicum.

27. Candelari siciliana folio acuto, Amaranthus siculus spicatus.

This is Achyranthes argentea Lam., a variety of A. aspera L. observed in China by Stannton and others.

28. Persicaria chinensis, folio subtus albido, Musei nostri 950.

This resembles our Arse-smart, but the leaves underneath are very white and soft.

29. Triopteris scandens chusanensis, cordato folio.

This is a twining plant, like our black Bryony, and its leaves not unlike, the capsules resemble the Melianthus, but have only three wings containing membranaceous seed, like those of the Oleander.

30. Aster Eupatoroides chusanensis, Hyssopi folio.

The leaves stand alternately on the stalk, which towards the top branches out into many small flowers with little radiated petala. These look at first view like our Eupatorium.

31. Tussilago chusanensis, ramosa, folio rotundo, glabro.

This has smooth round leaves about the root at the time of the flowering, and narrow leaves at the stalk, which is branched, each terminating in one flower of the same bigness with ours.

32. Abrotanum chusanense, Thalictri folio.

The leaves are deeply jagged at top, generally into 3 or 5 segments. The flowers are extremely small.

33. Abrotanum chusan. segmentis foliorum tenuissime serratis. The flowers of this are as large as the common Southernwood, the leaves finely divided and notched like those of some umbelliferous plants.

34. Absinthium umbelliferum chusan. Achovaen folio.

The stalk is round, hoary and slightly furrowed, the leaves somewhat like the next, but less, and more serrated.


The leaves of this are like Mugwort but less, the flowers scarcely so big as our Featherfew.

The leaves and flowers are much like the last, the discus is large and yellow as are the petala about.


On each side of every joint come forth longish leaves, some bigger, others less, soft underneath and yellowish. From some of these joints, especially towards the top, come spikes of flowers and seed, after the manner of common Vervain.


The stalk is for the most part 5 square, the leaves grow opposite, by turns crosswise. It bears a long spike of flowers, each with a long tube or neck set in a small turgid calyx.


The stalks of this plant are very hoary and soft, as are its leaves, especially the under side.


Each flower stands single on a half inch foot stalk, with 4 long stamina, and a style like the Teucrium Boeoticum.

41. *Teucrium Crocodylianum*. Styracis folio minore. *Gaz. nat. tab. 34, fig. 11.*

42. *Alcea forte fruticosa chusan*. folio summno lato, subtus molli.

The leaves are somewhat like our Aspen-tree, very broad at the top, with a small point in the middle, slightly notched, a little rough above, but underneath very soft.

*Hibiscus tilicaceus*. L.


The twigs and footstalks are thorny, the leaves single, sometimes lobated, broad at base, but grow tapering to a very narrow point.

Perhaps *Rubus corchorifolius*. L. of Japan.

44. *Rubie facie planta chusan*. folio Altheae acutiore.

The stalks thorny, the leaves grow alternately on short pedicles, and some of them are lobated. At the bottom of each grows a small scaly cone like a bud.

45. *Alectorolophus chusan*. viscosa, Acheavan folio.

This and the next seem very elegant plants, but I dare not meddle with their descriptions until I receive better specimens of them.
46. Rapunculus seu Cardinalis, forte Chusan. Sambuci folio.
47. Anonis chusan. pubescens, Lupini facie.

This seems herbaceous, the leaves are very large, somewhat hoary, but the stalks much more, the flowers spicated and large, resembling the yellow Lupine, but have the face and hoariness of the common blue.

48. Astragalus chusan., sinapis siliqua.

These leaves resemble the Sainct Foin, the pods are about 3 inches long, with 2 or 3 swellings, and end blade-pointed like the pods of mustard.

49. Cowage chusan., floribus parvis ex alis foliorum.

The stalks, young leaves, flowerhusks, and pods have all a rusty hoariness, in the full grown leaves it is much less. From the bosom of these comes a small spike of little flowers, by which and its hoariness it is easily distinguished from all others.

50. Cytisus chusan. tetraflorus.

Its leaves are small, finely veined and end in a hair. What is peculiar in this, is to have 4 flowers on a naked or leafless inch foot stalk.

51. Polygala chusan. folio subrotundo, spica aphylla.

This is distinguished from others in having broader obtuse leaves, excepting towards the top they are a little pointed and from the middle of each leafy stalk comes out a naked spike of flowers.


Seems to be Androsace saxifragae folia Bge.

53 Lysimachia chusan. Gentianellae folio, flore albo.

This in manner of growing resembles our yellow Loostrife, but the flowers are white, petala less, and more pointed. Its capsule ends in a thread. I saw a branch of this in flower and seed with Mr. Sam. Doody, which Mr. George Loudon had gathered in some garden, I think about town.

54. Lysimachia chusan. spicata, Persicariae folio, flore exiguo.

These leaves grow inordinately, are narrow-pointed at base, without footstalks. At the top of the branches grow slender spikes like Arsmart, with small flowers and seed vessels like Flax, but much less.

55. Ros Solis chusan. perelegans, caule folioso. Mus. 968.

This is a very peculiar sort of Sundew, in having leaves on the stalks, which towards the top ramify and flower.

Trees.

56. Abies argentea chusan. foliiis acutissimis.
This resembles the Silver-fir but the leaves are somewhat serrated and very sharp.

Perhaps Abies Kamepferi. Lindl.

57. *Acer forte chusan.* folio minore trifido.

These leaves very much resemble the *Acer monspeliacum* I.B. They are smooth above and glaucous underneath, standing on long slender reddish stalks. The fruit of this and the next I have not yet seen.

Perhaps the Japanese *Acer trifidum* Thbg., observed also near Ningpo.

58. *Aceris* folio arbor chusan. virgulis spinosissimis.

Its young branches are reddish and very full of brier-like thorns, amongst these leaves inordinately grow, the base of each pedicle leaving an impression like a V consonant on the stalk. The leaves have very much the face of the common great Maple or Sycamore with long pedicles, whose base agrees with the branches.


By its leaves and flowers I at first took it for a Tea, but having lately received it in berry, I find it to be another family. The leaves are stiff, serrated, and pointed, generally thickest towards the tops of the branches. From the bosom of these and below grow many small flowers close to the stalk, which are succeeded by little berries, that are both calcified and pointed.

60. *Arbor chusan.* Frangulae folio majore subtus albido molli.

Although I have not yet seen the flower or fruit of this tree, yet I could not omit it, because its leaves are very distinguishable from any that have yet come from this island. They seem, especially the young ones, to have the texture and face on the upper side of our Frangula or Alderberry, yet somewhat softer, but its peculiarity is underneath, in being white, softish and having its middle vein spongy, and towards the stalk rusty coloured, as are its younger branches.


The leaves resemble those of cloves, but are somewhat thicker, generally about 1½ inch broad and 3 long, growing alternately. From the bosom of each come 3 or 4 pentapetalous flowers somewhat like the Malabar Patsjotti (Hort. malab. vol. 5.) each filled with large curled like spices ending pointed. These are succeeded by black berries set in a small 5 starred calyx, its point ¼ of a inch, each standing on a half inch foot stalk. Out of one berry I took 11, from another near 20 small shining brown seeds, of different shapes from their lying together.

Its larger woolly twigs are smooth, cinereous and speckled, the smallest woolly, the leaves grow by pairs, at the top come the flowers, loosely spiked, each in a small cupped calyx, the berries less than currants, black with a bluish cast, each on a very short footstalk and in an undetermined cup, which seemed to want a part on one side. In each berry is one large oval kernel.

63. *Buxus chusan*. folio praelongo.

This has the face and the texture of the common Box, but the leaves are longer, very narrow at the base, broadest near the middle and blunt at the end.

64. *Buxi affinis Emuyaca*. folio rugoso.

The twigs are reddish and rough, as are the under sides of the leaves, but smoother above. They stand on very short footstalks and have this particular, that the upper half of each leaf is somewhat lobated or largest. At the ends of the branches grow commonly two or more rough capsules gaping like the Fagorasa. Each of these contains 1 or 2 black oval shining seed somewhat bigger than an Oat.


It is very well figured and amply described in Breynius centurin (in 1678) and first Prodomus.


The twigs are blackish with many small warts, the leaves grow inordinately, on short pedicels, most of them more or less thorny, dented, and some smooth. Underneath they are glaucous and somewhat soft.


Its twigs are speckled, the leaves of different magnitude and breadth, lightly serrated, standing on an inch footstalk. At the top of each twig grows a small racemose spike of little flowers, which are succeeded by dry berries, growing like currants.

*Cocciferae* I call such trees and shrubs, as have dry berries like the Cocculus Indiae, in opposition to those, that are moist, as goose berries.

68. *Coccifera Emuyaca*, folio marginibus crisps.

The stalk of this is furrowed irregularly like Elder, its leaves have the face and shape of a Willow Bay, but peculiarize themselves by drawing their edges unevenly inwards, which swell the upper side and make them seem curled. Their footstalks are scarce 1/2 inch, its coca, or dry berry, like the
Allspice or Jamaica Pepper, is set in a 4 or 5 starred calyx in a loose cluster, each on an \( \frac{1}{3} \) inch footstalk. Between the outward skin and kernel, which is solid and very hard, is but little space.


*Hoà* in the Chinese language signifies a flower. The leaves are much less and narrower than the American kind, otherwise in its spikes, flowers and way of growing it very much resembles it.

*Crista Pavonis* is *Adenanthera pavonina* L. Lam. Enc. Bot. II 76 mentions it as a native of China. Dr. Hance has observed it in Hongkong.

70. *Cupressus chusan*. Abietis folio. Gazoph. Tab. 6, fig. 3.

Where you may with its figure see a description of its leaves and seed.

It bears its cones single at the end of each branch; the scales of these, when they are open or cracked, are serrated and rugged.

As we have stated above (Gazoph. l.c.) this is *Cryptomeria japonica*. Don.


The leaves grow opposite, and generally 3 pairs tailed, i.e. one at the end. The footstalk is very short and next the tail scarce any. The fruit grows in clusters, each husk rugose, including one black shining seed.

72. *Fagara Emuyaca* Fraxini folio.

This is distinguished from the next in having much broader leaves. They grow opposite and are much like the Ash. The berries are about the bigness of Pepper and grow in small clusters. The tender shoots and first sprouts are prickly, in the more grown they are not so discernable. I have not as yet observed any prickles on the leaves of this kind except in its first shoots, which are very small and wear off as they grow older.

I call *Fagara* those trees and shrubs, whose berries split like those figured by Garcias ab Horto, Gerard, Parkinson, Clusius, etc. There are also these peculiarities, which generally attend this tribe, viz., the branches are prickly and often the leaves on the underside and middle rib, and sometimes on both sides and the lesser veins. The berries split in the middle and discover a black shining seed, the outer skin rough, tastes hot and spicy. The leaves in all I have yet observed are perforated like St. Johns wort, Orange leaves, Myrtle. The Hercules and prickly yellow woods of the W. Indies are of this family.

The genus to which the Fagaræ of the ancient botanists belong is now called *Zanthoxylum*, Lin.
73. *Fagara chusan*. *Fraxini* folio angustiore.

The leaves of this are not only narrower than the last, but prickly underneath and the prickles are very thick set on the branches and between the leaves.


These leaves very much resemble the Virginian Sumach, with a winged or welted stalk, with lightly serrated transparent notches. Dr. Sloan has a fair specimen of this in fruit, which ripens in October.

As has been shown above, this seems to be *Zanthoxylum Bungei*. Pl. sin.: *花椒 hua tsiao*.

75. *Fraxix chusan*. *Fagi* folio, fructu sulcato.

This very much resembles No. 926 Masei nostri, but is in all parts much larger, especially its leaves, which are very like the Carolina plant at No. 915. Its fruit grows naked at the top of the branches from a reversed calyx, and is sulcated like the capsule of an Adhatode.

76. *Gelseminum chusan*. folio Betae hirsuto.

The leaves somewhat like Beet, but hoary, the flower is leaved, in shape much resembling Nerium. The apices on each stamen seem double beaded, the calyx is quinquiesided and hoary. It grows spikated, as I observed in a very large specimen amongst Dr. Sloane's dry plants.

77. *Hedera arborea* C. B. 305. 1.

I can see no difference between this and our common Tree Ivy. (*Hedera Helix* L. var. *arborea*).

I may observe that among Cantor's Chusan plants *Hedera Helix*. L. is mentioned.

78. *Spurge Laurel*.

Pet. means *Daphne laureola*. L.—Fortune has gathered *D. Fortunae* Lindl. in Chusan.


The twigs of this end in a thorn, the leaves are like the slow but less-finely serrated, growing inordinately on very short stalks. The berries are black and wrinkled like pepper and of that bigness. They stand on a ¼ inch footstalk in a small round calyx. Under the thin outer skin lies one or two kernels.

An undetermined species of *Lycium* is noticed in Cantor's collection. L. *chinense*. L. has been observed in North-China as well as in the South.


The leaves which are all of this plant I have yet seen, seem to be of the Malabar kind of Mandaru. The leaf is deep cut and glaucous underneath.
Mandarin is Bauhinia. 3 species of it are known from Southern China viz. B. glauca Wall., B. Championi. Benth., B. chinensis Vogel.

81. Mori facie chusan. folio subtus molli ferrugineo.

82. Oo tum chu. P. Le Comte. Oo tum shu Herb. nostr. Chin. tab. 6.—Gazoph. tab. 27. folio trifido, petalis bacciferis. This is a wonderful tree and very particular in the product of its berries, which I take to be the fruit. The flowers grow separate from the leaves in a large loose or sparse tuft, after the manner of Fraxinella or Dittander, from the larger stem each little one has many flowers, composed of 5 broad green petala or leaves like those of our Adderstongue, every one standing on ¼ inch pedicle starwise. On both the edges of these grow one or more stalkless berries, of the bigness of Holy, rugged now dry. I opened one of them. A large white cavity and a small decayed substance only remained in it.

Petiver gives a correct description of Sterculia platani folia. Cav. (see above Le Comte), only he takes the spreading follicles of the fruit for flowers.

83. Paliurus Emuyaca major folio rotundiore. This seems to differ from our European sort in having its leaves much larger and round.

Probably Paliurus Aubletii. Shult, which has been observed in South China and Japan.

84. Palmae Christi vulgaris facie, forte Chusan. caulibus et foliis pubescentibus. Very near the basis of the footstalk of each leaf it has 2 long and very narrow threadlike auricles.


Its leaves stand on short footstalks, they are pointed, stiff and somewhat notched. From the bosom of these and at the top of the branches come forth many small flowers, full of stamina like the Tea but much less, which made me conclude it was of that family. But Mr. Cunningham has since sent me in fruit, which I find a small dry berry of an oval bottled shape, coroned somewhat like a clove.

86. Populi facie chusan. folio subtus molli ferrugineo. This has the shape, thickness and softness of Abele leaves, but instead of white is rusty coloured underneath.

87. Quercus chusan. Castaneac folio pubescence. The stalk and the underside of the leaves are hoary. Its catkin or julus round and echinated, as Dr. Cunningham says, but its acorn small and smooth.
Quercus chinensis Bge. of North-China has leaves resembling those of the chestnut.

88. Rhamnus Emuyacus maritimus, flore coeruleo.
The leaves like Sea Purslain but smaller and nearly stalkless. From them towards the top of the branches come 2-3 pentapetalous flowers set in a like divided calyx. The footstalks of some of them are near \frac{1}{2} inch.

89. Rhus Emuyaca folio serrato subtus molli, rachi alato.
Some of these leaves are broader and more or less serrated than others. The stalk is larger or smaller winged as the twigs are older or younger. Mr. Cunningham says they eat the berries which are sour and have a dew on them. He further observes, that from the broken branches there issues out a turpentine like balsamic liquor.

Perhaps Rhus semialata Murr. which is found in North-China as well as in the South, or Rhus chinensis. Mill.

The leaves grow alternately on long slender footstalks, some of them much extended in the middle and very sharp pointed. The flowers are yellow, mighty small, and grow in a slender catkin like those in Hazel. The fruit is about the bigness of a middling nut, smooth, blackish, and trisulcate, opening into 3 parts, discovers as many white seeds, from whence and its kernels, I suppose, the suet or fat is produced, each being covered with a white fatty body, under which is a brown hard shell, containing an unctuous kernel, which by bruising turns almost wholly to an oil.

Mr. Sam. Brown first sent me this some years ago from China, since which I have received it from Emoy and Chusan. There are two young trees of this now growing, September 27. 1703, in the Charterhouse, raised this year by Mr. Cole Gardiner.

The tree here described is Stillingia sebifera Michx. repeatedly spoken of in this paper.

91. Ricinus forte chusan. Tiliae folio.
These leaves grow alternately on footstalks, some above 2 inches long, of the bigness of the Mulberry and Lime tree, but not serrated. At the top grow spikes of thrummy flowers, like the common Palma Christi, but closer set. I hope the next ship from Chusan will bring me it in fruit.

92. Thea chinensis vera potamella. Gazoph. tab. 21, fig. 10.
Chaa chinensisibus.—Bontius Hist. nat. Ind. or p. 88, fig. The principal authors, who have given us accounts of the Tea plant are: Bontius, Breynius, Dufour, Pecklin, Pomet, Ray, Tulpius.

This plant has a very beautiful flower, some being single and of a deep red, others white and some striped, there are also of these colours with double flowers. The Chinese and the Japanese keep them as an ornament in their gardens. The young flower bud is scaled like a cone. The fruit is about the bigness of a chestnut, somewhat triangular, including under a very thick woody shell several seeds disposed into 3 cells. It flowers in February.

According to Lammareck Enc. Bot. I. 572, this is *Camellia japonica* L. Petiver is the first botanist, who describes the plant.


The flowers are like Jasmin but 4 leaved, their tube or neck hoary and about ½ inch long.


CHINESE PLANTS DESCRIBED AND DEPICTED BY L. PLUKENET.

As has been stated above, Plukenet described in his *Amaltheum botanicum*, probably in 1703 and 1704, about 400 Chinese plants almost all it seems from Cunningham’s collection. About 180 of them he represented by good drawings in his Phytographia, pars III. The plants in the Amaltheum are arranged alphabetically and the Chinese plants intermixed with Indian and American species and plants of the Cape. I shall extract in the following pages the diagnoses of all the Chinese plants of which engravings are found in the Phytographia and also of the greater part of those only described, omitting however in many cases the detailed descriptions. Plukenet generally quotes Cunningham’s original descriptions. The pages quoted refer to the Amaltheum, the plates to the Phytographia, vol. III.

*Abies major sinensis* pectinatis Taxi foliis. subtus caesiis, conis grandioribus sursum rigentibus, foliorum et squamarum apiculis spinosis. P. 1. Tab. 351, fig. 1.

*Cunninghamia sinensis* R. Br.

*Abies maxima sinensis* pectinatis Taxi foliis, apiculis non spinosis. P. 1. Tab. 351, fig. 2.

The drawing seems to represent a *Cephalotaxus*. 
Abrotanum mas sinicum latiori folio, cum pulchris corymbis. P. 1. Tab. 353, fig. 1.
Abrotanum sinense latiori et multifido Artemisiace folio, rigidiusculis apicibus spinularum nemulis insignito, cum parvis corymbis. P. 1. Tab. 353, fig. 4.
Abrotanum tenuifolium dense fruticosum, cum exiguis corymbis. Insula Cheusan. P. 1. Tab. 353, fig. 6.
Abrotanum sinense tenuifolium, corymbis majoribus elegantissimis. P. 2. Tab. 351, fig. 5.
Abrotanum sinense tenuissimis longioribus foliis corymbis perexiguis. P. 2.
Abrotanum mas Sinarum foliis et corymbis minutissimis. P. 2.
Tanacetum chinense A. Gray. (Maxim. Deccad X.)
In Peking A. Kurneostowit. Rcbh. blue flow, is called 草鳥頭 Ts'ao wu Ts'ou. Fl. Sept.
Hibiscus tiliaceus. L. (Gieseke.)
Hibiscus Manihot. L. (Gieseke). By the Chinese name given probably 秋葵 ts'iu k'u (dziu hwe Shanghai,) is intended. In Peking this is the name for Hibiscus Abelmoschus.
Alni folia arbor e Chusan, P. 8.
Althaea fruticosa sinensis, Betonicae folio majore. P. 11.
Althaea fruticosa sinensis, foliis parvis angulosis, seminibus incanis. P. 11. Tab. 355, fig. 3.
Amaranthus sinicus latifolius, spica candidissima. P. 12.
Antirrhinum minus cheusanensis, Anchusae folio scabro, flore luteo, ad fundum superin extra et intus purpurastente P. 17. Tab. 358, fig. 1.
Aquilegiae corniculis, Moschatellinae foliis planta pusilla. Chusan. P. 19. Tab. 360, fig. 3.
Arbor indica cheusanensis, Salicis latior folio, leviter serrato, flosculis ad foliorum exertum, confertim sessilibus. P. 21.
Arbor cheusanensis, Arbuti minoribus foliis, flosculis ad foliorum alis, curtis pediculis deorsum tendentibus afflixis P. 21. Tab. 402, fig. 3.
Arbor prunifolia cheusanensis, baccifera, fructu parvo, rotundo, summis ramulis in spicam disposito. P. 21. Tab. 361, fig. 3.
Camellia japonica. L. V. supra Philos. Trans. 93.

Arbor baccifera cheusonensis, Euonymi foliis undulatis et punctatis, fructu rotundo, parvo, calyculato, rubro, Oxyanthi aemulo. P. 21. Tab. 362, fig. 6.


Arbor cheusonensis, Fraxini foliis superne dilute virentibus, subtus lividis, summa singulari pinna alas claudente, caeteris multo majore. P. 22.

Arbor sinensis Taxi folio, apicibus obtusis. P. 22.

Arbor cheusonensis baccifera, Coryli folio, summis ramulis racemosos. P. 25.

Arbor Sinensis, Laurocerasi foliis angustioribus, alterno ordine sitis. P. 25.

Arbor Sinensis Lauri folio Lei chi, i.e. Oculum Draconis, fructum ferens; et aliquando Lung yen indigenis audit. Michael Boym Flora sin. P. 25. Tab. 365, fig. 6.

Nepholium Litchi Camb. and N. Longav. Camb. Plukenet erroneously takes these two species to be identical. V. supra Boym 6. 7.

Arbor cheusonensis, Arbuti foliis serratis. P. 25. Tab. 370, fig. 2.

Arbor cheusonensis baccifera, Frangulae foliis venosa, fructu parvo pyramidalis, calyculato, ossiculo oblongo binucleo. P. 25. Tab. 368, fig. 3.

Arbor sinensis sebifera Kieu-yen. (I omit the detailed description.) P. 25. Tab. 390, fig. 2.

Stilllingia sebifera. Michx. See above Phil. Trans. 90.


Eriobotrya japonica. Lindl. See above Boym. 11.

Arboris Pipa altera species, non serrata, foliis viridibus, scabris. P. 27.
Arboris Pipa species altera, Quercinis foliis, Cheusanica. P. 27.
Olea fragrans. Thbg. V. supra Martini 20.

Eadem Arbuti foliis serratis. P. 27.
Arbuscula baccifera sinensis, Lauri folio, ad ortum foliorum bacca singulari, nigra, longo pediculo innixa. P. 27. Tab. 362, fig. 2.
Arbuscula sinensis; Viburni foliis. Cheusan. P. 27.
Arbuscula cheusan. Neriis splendentibus foliis, aversa parte medio plurimum extante, virgulis purpureis. P. 28. Tab. 365, fig. 5.

I may observe that this is not a Chinese, but rather an Indian name.


Lour. Fl. cochin. 183 identifies this with Gardenia florinda L., which at Shanghai is called 黄栀 huang (wang) chi

Arbuscula cheusaniensis Aceri Monspeusulani folio, subtus rore coeruleo tincto, longo pediculo insidente. P. 32. Tab. 366, fig. 3.

Perhaps the same as Phil. Trans. 57 (see above) Acer trifidum Thbg.


According to D.C. Prodr. IV 269 this is Hamamelis chinensis R. Br. observed by Abel (1818) in China.

Arbuscula baccifera spinosa, Persicariae foliiis densis, triphylla, Lentisci modo rachi medio alata, fructu parvo, monopyreno, aromatico. Wha tchaw Sinensisibus dicta. P. 33. Tab. 391, fig. 2.

Zanthoxyllum. V. supra Philos. Trans. 74.


Arbuscula sinica, baccifera, folio parvo, subrotundo, solidiori, Caryophilli aromatici fructu, rotundo, monopyreno et insipido. P. 34. Tab. 362, fig. 4.

Arbuscula sinica folii argute denticulatis et incanis, Verbasci nigri Salvi folii aemulis, flosculis numerosis, ex foliorum alis. P. 34. Tab. 450, fig. 1.

Arbuscula cheusaniensis, Laurinis pallidioribus foliiis, ad summum ramulorum, in specie plurimis erectis, juliorn ad instar, flosculos ferens. P. 34. Tab. 369, fig. 2.

Arbuscula sinensis Convolvulacea, Staphyloendri aethiopici folio, lucido, bijugo, margine piloso. P. 34. Tab. 372, fig. 2.


Arbuscula Sinarum, alternis minoribus foliiis, non punctatis, floribus Aurantiae. P. 34. Tab. 365, fig. 1.

Arbuscula Sinarum baccifera, Salicii odoratae foliiis glabris, leviter crenatis et laete virentibus, fructu rotundo monopyreno. P. 34. Tab. 369, fig. 1.

Arbuscula Sinarum, alternis foliiis Arbuti, saturato virentibus et ragute denticulatis. P. 35. Tab. 370, fig. 3.
Arbuscula sinica Rhamni cathartici fere foliis non-serratis, fructu albo parvo, bivalvi, in calyce villoso pene immerso, ad foliorum ortus cum pediculis egredienti. P. 35. Tab. 361, fig. 2.

Arbuscula prunifolia sinensis, floribus parvis, pentapetalis, albis, summis ramulis racemosis. P. 35. Tab. 368, fig. 6.

Arbuscula bacifera sinensis, foliis Lauri alternatis sitis, fructu nigro mollis, polypyrreno, ex alis binatim cum pediculis exeunte. P. 35. Tab. 360, fig. 5.

Arbuscula sinensis Alaterni alternis brevioribus foliis, magis mucronatis, floribus pentapetalis albis, Oxyacanthi aemulis, in ramulorum fastigiis. P. 35. Tab. 362, fig. 3.

Arbuscula sinensis, Alaterni alternis, longioribus foliis, fructu Myrti solitario inter ramulos sparso. P. 35. Tab. 366, fig. 1.


Artemisia chinensis, cujus mollugo moxa dicitur. Plukennet's Almagestum 50, tab. 15, fig. 1.

This is according to Lamarck. Enc. Bot. Suppl. I. 466. Artemisia vulgaris L. var. indica.

Aster cheunanensis Tripoli nostratis aemulus et forte idem. P. 40.

I may observe, that Aster Tripolium. L. is found in North-China.


Aster cheusan. Virgae aureae alternis foliis, summo caule flore parvo singulari. P. 42. Tab. 373, fig. 4.


Aster luteus cheusan. Blitii majoris folio, pancioribus floribus, summo caule brachiatam. P. 43. Tab. 373, fig. 5.

Aster luteus cheusan. Botryos folio, plurimis floribus, summo caule brachyato. P. 43. Tab. 410, fig. 3.

Auriculae Ursi affinis (Androsace dicta.), sinensis, Saxifragae aureae foliis, pediculis longis insidentibus. P. 43. Tab. 440, fig. 6.

See above Philos. Trans. 52.


Calamintha cheusanensis, Pulegii odore, dentatis foliis, floribus dilute coeruleis ex longo, ramoso, brachiatam caule prodeuntibus. P. 48.

Campanula sinica, Ocymi majoris folio, flosculis ad summationem perexiguas. P. 49.

Cannabis sterilis s foemina nostras e regione Sinarum.

Cardiaca angustiiori folio sinica, flore coerulescente et purpurascente. P. 50. Tab. 377, fig. 5.

CarduO Cirsium Sinarum, foliis magis spinosis, capitulo singulari. P. 51. Tab. 382, fig. 3.

Casiae Cinnamonoeae, Myrrhae odore Phytograph. similis ex insula Cheusan. P. 52. Tab. 381, fig. 2.

Centaurium minus, vulgari similis, ex insula Sinarum Ukuisan, mense Junio collectum. P. 53. Tab. 381, fig. 1.


Chrysanthemum sinicum Bellidis majoris folio, floribus parvis, in ramulorum fastigiis. P. 56. Tab. 383, fig. 6.

Chrysanthemum minus, Anchusae foliis, floribus parvis Cheusan. P. 56. Tab. 382, fig. 1.

Chrysanthemum sinense procumbens, Hyssopi foliis, pilis tenuissimis, margine fimbriatis. P. 56.


Chrysanthemum sinicum minus angusto Calendulae folio, flore octopetaloto luteo. P. 57. Tab. 383, fig. 5.


Sigebeckia orientalis. L. 稀罕 hi hien. I have omitted Cunningham’s detailed description.

Cistus Rhododendros, sericeis foliis cheusanensis. P. 59.

Cistus sinica, Cisti Populi nigrae majoris foliorum aemula. P. 59.

Cistus minor cheusan. Salicis pumilae folio angusto et incano. P. 59. Tab. 379, fig. 2.

Clematis cheusanensis, Bucananthi majoris fere foliis solitariis, ad margines spinosis serris, spica florum ampliori, ex foliorum alis. Planta repens flore purpureo violaceo. Sept. flor. in saxosis proveniens (I omit Cunningham's description.) P. 60. Tab. 384, fig. 1.


The name here quoted is an Indian name for Bauhinia scandens. Comp. also above Philos. Trans. 80.

Clematis minor maritima Sinensis. P. 60.
Clinopodium sinense nostrati simile, sed minus. P. 60.
Clinopodium cheusanicum Chamaedryos folio majore. P. 61. Tab. 384, fig. 4.


Gieske identifies this with Cometes alterniflora. L., an Indian plant.


Convulvulus minor sinensis, longiore hirsuto folio, flore albo parvo. P. 64.

Convulvulus argentatus, rectus Sinarum, spicæ foliis. P. 64.
Coriòtragumatodendros Sinarum, foliorum marginibus magis serratis. P. 65. Tab. 446, fig. 7.


Crotalaria cheusanensis, spicæ folii argentei, siliquis propendentibus glabris, calycibus villis ferrugineis obductis in totum fere immersis. P. 67.

Cupressus cheusanensis, Juniperinis arcuatis foliis, clavis galbularum eleganter cristatis. P. 69. Tab. 386, fig. 3.

Cryptomeria japonica. Don. See above Philos. Trans. 70.

Doronicum Tussilaginis folio, flore magno singulari. Chusan. P. 71. Tab. 390, fig. 6.

Tussilago japonica. L. (Giseke). Comp. above Philos. Trans. 31.

Ellychnysum angustifolium sinicu, incanis foliis, floribus parvis sulphureis in capitulum congestis. P. 72.
Equinum nudum non ramosum, asperum, fimbriis ciliariibus ad genericula cayaneis. Ins. Crocodil.
Eryngii species sinica, folio fere plano, trilobato et crenato, sin. sha sin dicta i.e. in arenis nascens. Ins. Taw whey san.
Euonymo affinis cheusan. Frutex Laureoli foliis, solidioribus, tricapsularis et quadricapsularis, P. 76. Tab. 390, fig. 3.
Euonymo affinis Sinarum quadricapsularis, subrotundis, rigidis foliis dentatis, foliis et ramulis ex uno puncto quaternis P. 76. Tab. 392, fig. 3.
Euonymo affinis cheusanensis. Arborcule staphyloendri nostratis folio, fructu gemello, bicapsulari. P. 76. Tab. 390, fig. 5.
Euonymo affinis Pyracanthae foliis. Cheusan. P. 76. Tab. 390, fig. 4.
Euonymo affinis aromatic s. Zanthoxyllum spinosissimum, Fraxini angustiore folio punctatum. Cheusan. P. 76, Tab. 392, fig. 1.

Euonymo affinis aromaticæ s. Zanthoxylæm spinosum, Fraxinellæ foliis cheusanicum. Frutex aromaticus, spinosus, spinis brevibus, foliis laevisibus, perforatis, brevibus, in acumen desinentibus, costae per conjugations innascentibus, impari claudente. Fructum fert unicapsularem, rotundum, seabrum vel verrucosum, acerriimum Camphoræ gustum sapientem qui bifariam dehisces, semen ostendit unicum, nigrum, splendens, nulli fere gustus, nisi oleosi. Fructus in racemis, Oct. maturescit, sin: Hoo tchaw nominatur et vice Piperis utuntur. P. 78. Tab. 393, fig. 2,

According to Hooker and Arn. voy. Beech. 175 this is Zanthoxylum nitidum D.C.—Comp. also above Phil. Trans. 74.

Euonymo affinis aromaticæ seu Zanthoxylæm sinicum spinosum, Cynorrhodi foliis et facie. Cunningh. P. 78.


On the same page an account of Tea is found, which I omit.

Eupatoria Conyzoides sinica, Baccharidis folio rarius renato, summo caule ramoso, floribus parvis coronato. P. 79,


Eupatorium Conyzoides cheusan. Tarraconis folio, coma aurea amplissima. P. 82. Tab. 395, fig. 3.

According to Lam. Enc. Bot. 1629 this is Justicia procumbens. L.

Euphrasiae affinis sinica, Chamaedryos laciniiatis foliis, Botryos instar, floribus purpureis, spicatis, amplis, longo et striato calyce exuentibus. P. 84. Tab. 394, fig. 2.

Euphrasia Chamaedryos spuriae foliis ex ins. Cheusan. P. 84. Tab. 396, fig. 4.


Euphrasia parva Thymi folio, procumbens, seu Cratagonum minimum Indorum, Arrevenar-pundoe Sinarum. P. 85. Tab. 404, fig. 3.


The Chinese name 辣蓼 la liao is applied to several species of Polygonum.


Linnaeus identifies this with his Polygonum perfoliatum.

Filix Adianto nigro officinarum similis pediculo viridi, pin-nulis magis elegantier incisis. Cheusan. P. 91. Tab. 403. fig. 2.


Felicis non ramosae genus, pinnulis latius dentatis. Ins. Crocodil. P. 92. Tab. 401, fig. 2.

Felicis folia, Lonchitidis facie sinensis, ad pinnularum nervos lincolarum ferruginearum duplicem ordinem dorsigerens. P. 93. Tab. 399, fig. 3.

Felicis cheusanica, latiori Lonchitidis serrato folio, aversa parte ferrugineis punctulis refertissimo. P. 93. Tab. 405, fig. 1.

Felicula s. Bryopteris repens Sinarum, inter Felicem et Lycopodium compos., pinnulis aversa parte micis argenteis ornatis. P. 93. Tab. 400, fig. 3.

Felicis Phyllitis dicta minima cheusan. aversa parte globulis binis ordinibus per longitudinem foliorum instructa. P. 93. Tab. 405, fig. 4.

Felix minor sinica, foliis integris et trifidis, aversa parte punctis ferrugineis rarius interspersa. P. 93. Tab. 404, fig. 1.

Felicula cheusanica s. Hemionitis multifido folio tennissime serrato, ad margines seminifera. P. 94. Tab. 407, fig. 2.


Felix sinica Smyrni cretici facie, perelegans. P. 94. Tab. 398, fig. 6.


Frutex sinensis prunifolius, denticulis ad marginem spinosis, aversa parte parum villosis. P. 96. Tab. 409, fig. 3.

Frutex cheusanensis Myrti folio, flore albo hexapetalto, Jasmini odore fragrantissimo. P. 96. Tab. 409, fig. 1.

Frutex sinensis Myrtinis foliis pallentibus, alterno ordine dispositis. P. 96. Tab. 411, fig. 5.


Frutex sinicus non spinosus, baccifer, Pyracanthae foliis majoribus, fructu parvo, rotundo, polypyreño. P. 97. Tab. 411, fig. 4.

Frutex cheusanicus floribus Theae ex albo carneis, fructu unicapsulari, capsula trida. Foliis Theae sed non in usum adhibendis. Cnghm. P. 98. Tab. 409, fig. 2.

Frutex sinensis Alaterni longioribus foliis dilute viridibus, flosculis plurimis squamososis, ad ortum foliorum cauli appressis. P. 98. Tab. 406, fig. 2.


Frutex sinensis Majoranae minoribus foliis, prona parte candidatis venis pullis e directo, et lineolis transcurrentibus elegantissime delineatis. Chusan. Cnghm. P. 100. Tab. 408, fig. 3.


Frutex spinosus baccifer Sinarum, foliis Pentaphylli quinquefidis. P. 101. Tab. 409, fig. 4.


Frutex convolvulaceus spinosus sinicus rotundiore nervoso folio, floribus parvis, umbellatis, claviculis ligneis binatim donatus. P. 101. Tab. 408, fig. 1.

Smilax China. L. V. Maxim. Decad. X.


Probably Juniperus chinensis. L.

Fruticos Theae species altera Sinarum. P. 102. Tab. 405 fig. 3.

Thea viridis (Giseke).
Fumaria sinica foliis Chelidonii modo laciniatis. P. 102.
Galeopsis chusanensis spicata, Sideritis folio et facie. P. 103.
Galium minus chusanicum, locis uliginosis. P. 104.
Gentiana major aphyllos, adunco flore purpurascens. Chusan.
Planta flore Digitalis purpureo absque foliis e terra prorum-
Gramen cyperoidenum capillaceis foliis pusillum. Ins. Chusan,
P. 110. Tab. 417, fig. 8.
Cyperus tenellus. L. Comp. Roem and Schult. Syst. II. 167.
Gramen panicum polystachion sinicum, binis granorum
ordinibus, et binis granis in eodem ordine, uno versu constante.
P. 110. Tab. 417, fig. 7.
Gramen cyperoides chusan. tricephalon, globulis echinatis.
P. 112.
Gramen Cyperoides parvum sinicum, capitulo globoso, ad
sumnum caulem inter quatuor foliola sessili. P. 112.
Hedera arborea chusanensis, vulgari similis, sed foliis per-
angustis. P. 114. Tab. 415, fig. 5.
Comp. Philos. Trans. 77.
Hedera chesanensis Glycyrrhizae foliis rigidioribus. P. 114.
Tab. 416, fig. 5.
Hieracium chesanicum, Rapistri foliis glabris, ramoso caule,
floribus parvis luteis. Flos radiatus, Discus ex flosculis lute-
centibus et fuscis 5 fidiis, corona e semiflosculis luteis octo
Hieracium chesan. Sonchi laciniatis folio. Flores in ram-
Horniumin sinense triphyllon, Caryophyllatae foliis, spica
florum Galeopseos Dioscor. Planta flore purpuro violaceo
labiato, piloso, cujus labium sup. falcatum est, infer. vero in 3
partes dividum, media Cochlearis instar excavata, cum duobus
vel tribus staminibus versus labium sup. prodeuntibus. Calyx
parum pilosus purpurascit et quasi labiatus, cujus labium
inferius bifurcatum. Folia Betonicae similia versus radicem
ex uno pediculo terna. Sept. flor. Cnghm. P. 119. Tab. 410,
fig. 6.
Hypericum Aserum dictum Chusanense, gummiferum, flore
rosaceo, longissimis foliis, theca seminum pyramidata ex calyce
polyphylllo 5 capsulari, gummi subflavum et lucidum Mastiches
instar fundente. Semina oblonga et exigua. Folia fert absque


*Sin kiu* is the Chinese name for several species of *Hydrangea*.


There is an *Illex* among the plants gathered by Cantor in Chusan.

*Junca sinensis* paniculis parvis conglobatis, acumine singuliari, integro. P. 124.


Carrière (Conif. 151), identifies this with *Glyptostrobos heterophyllus*. Endl. But it seems to me, that this short diagnosis agrees as well with *Juniperus Chusenia*. L.


*Kali* (forte) Genus herba sinensis, rotundiore Bliti folio, striato caule ad genicula plurimis barbulis ornato. *Toundepundoe* Sinensibus dicta. Haec autem hand parum convenire
videtur Anonymus: nostra americana foliis Parietarieae scabraceae etc. Phytogr. tab. 136, fig. 4.
I need not say that Tounde pandoe is not a Chinese name.

Lamium purpureum cheusan. seu Galeopsis. Vide supra Hormium sin. P. 129. Tab. 410, fig. 6.


Laurifolia pomifera e regione Sinarum. P. 130. Tab. 424, fig. 5.

Laurus cheusanensis aromatica, Camphoriferae hauud abludens, foliis subtus rore coeruleo tinctis. P. 131.

Lupulus foemina cheusanensis florens solummodo et non fructum ferens.


Lychmis ramosior cheusan. purpureo flore multifido, calyce longo striato. P. 135.

Lychnis sinensis angustis foliis multiflora, capsulis rotundis, glabris. Ins. Crocodil. P. 135. Tab. 427, fig. 3.


In Japan as well as in China (Peking) the name of 虎刺 hu ts’z is applied to Damnacanthus indicus. Guert.


Lysimachia siliquosa minor, villosis foliis, flore purpureo, Cheusan. Nostrati forte sit villosior, alio quin haud differt, P. 138.


Malva cheusanica, coeruleis floribus, ad caulis intervalla semiverticillatim positis. P. 140.


Marrubium aquaticum sinense, Ambrosiae Mexicanae foliis inodoris. Planta verticillata, flore labiato, foliis serratis oblongis

Matricaria sinensis, minore flore, petalis et umbone ochroleucis. P. 142. Tab. 430, fig. 3.

Linnaeus identifies this with his Chrysanthenum indicum.

Melilotus sinensis elatior, vulgari haud absimilis. P. 143.

Menthae cheusanensis spicata, Lysmachiae foliis, inodora. P. 144. Tab. 430, fig. 5


The Chinese name 薏荷 po ho is applied to Mentha arvensis. L.


Muscus clavatus erectus crispati foliolis, Spongiiadum imitamentum. China. P. 149. Tab. 431, fig. 3.

Lycopodium cernuum. L. (Giseke).

Myrtus sinica latiore et crassiore folio, caule nodoso, ad cymum ramulorum flores’emittens. P. 151. Tab. 433, fig. 4.

Nasturtium aquaticum minus cheusan. succretum. P. 151.

A long confused dissertation on Ninsin seu Ginseng is found on p. 152.


At Peking Perilla ocyoides L. is termed 薖子 su ts'z.


It seems that the Jujube is meant, but the Chinese name given is wrong.


Plunkenet means Chelidonium corniculatum. L.


Pedicularis cheusan. Geranii moschati folii, flore carneo. P. 166. Tab. 439, fig. 7.

Pentaphylloides Sinarum foliis subtus argenteis, flore auro- guttato. P. 166. Tab. 435, fig. 5.

Potentilla.


Periclymenum erectum sinense Frangulae foliis. P. 167. Tab. 435, fig. 4.
Periclymenum herbaceum cheusan. erectum, Circaeeae majoribus foliis mollibus, incanis. P. 167. Tab. 438, fig. 3.


In China *Lonicer chinensis*. Wats. is called 金 銀 花 *Kin yin hua*.


*Persicaria cheusan*. foliis subtilis argenteis, spica florum elegantiori. P. 168. Tab. 436, fig. 6.


*Persicaria pusilla* Sinarum, angustissimis foliis, spica rara gracili. P. 168. Tab. 436, fig. 4.


*Phillyrea Myrsinitis* Sinarum. P. 171.


*Pulegii vulgaris* species Sinarum, herba capsularis, pluribus capsulis ad nodos junctis, caule quadrangulari. *Toude Chedde a Sinis nominatur*. P. 179. Tab. 439, fig. 2.


*Pyrolae nostratae similis*, serratis foliis. Planta sinica, baccata, monopyrena, ad pedalem altitudinem vix assurgens,


*Quercus* julo rotundo, calyce echinato, glande minore laevi.


See above *Philos. Trans.* 87.

*Quercus cheusan.* minoribus et serratis foliiis hirsutis. P. 180.


*Rhamno nostrati cathartico accedens minor.* Ins. *Cheusan*. P. 182. Tab. 408, fig. 4.


*Rhamnus Pruni sylvestris folio cheusan.* cortice querno, validioribus foliatis spinis, bacca minore nigra, unicum intus semen cladento. P. 183. Tab. 427, fig. 4.


Miller identifies this with his Rhus chinensis. Comp. also above Philos. Trans. 89.
Rorella parva cheusan. nostrati similis, caule folioso. P. 184.
Plakenset mensa Drosera.
Rosa sylvestris cheusan. foliis subtus incanis, floribus purpureis parvis. P. 185.
Rosa alba cheusan. foliorum marginibus et rachi medio spinosis.
Rubia sinica, fructu majore negro, foliis partim Galii stellatis, partim Smilacis aspere effigie scabris. P. 185. Tab. 441, fig. 3.
One of these two species is probably Rubia cordifolia. L. But the fruit of the latter is of a brown colour, when ripe.
Rubus sinensis non spinosus triphyllos, floribus parvis rubro-purpureis. P. 186.
Rubus parvus spinosus, foliis subtus canescentibus ex insula Emoy. P. 186.
Rubus odoratus minimus sinensis, cauliculis asperis provolutis. P. 186.
Scabiosa graminifolia nudicaulis, capitulis argenteis, sive Statice minima elatior Sinarum. P. 188.
Scutellaria sinica Betonicæ folio, floribus albis. P. 190. Tab. 441, fig. 1.
Linnaeus identifies it with his Scutellaria indica.
Scrophularia minor sinica, Betonicæ subrotundis foliis. P. 190.


Solanum mordens sinicum, Berberidis fructu singuliari, viti culis suis spinis longioribus aculeatum. P. 195. Tab. 443, fig. 2.


On pag. 198 of Plükenet’s Amalth., sub Tamarindus monococcos, the author suggests, that the celebrated Soy of the Chinese and Japanese, (made as is known from the Soja-bean, Soja hispida Moench.) may be obtained from the seeds of Tamarind, of which he gives a drawing. Tab. 441, fig. 4.

Tetragnottis baccifera Sinarum seu Lignaria arbor sinensis, Gossypii quinquefidi amplioribus foliis, quator ligulas foliaceas, longo pedunculo ex alis insidentes, pro floribus terens, e ligularum margine baccifera. On tom chu Sinarum. P. 199. Tab. 444, fig. 4.

Sterculia platavifolia. Cav. See above Philos. Trans. 82.


Trifolium monocarpou Meliloti affine, folliculis parvis compressis. Cheusan. P. 205. Tab. 446, fig. 1.

Verbasci similis quadrato caule, Cheusan, minore folio acuminato, subtus molli tomento candidante. P. 207. Tab. 448, fig. 2.


Violae parvae cheusan, grumosa radice. P. 208.


Visci similis frutex cheusan. Clematis. P. 210. Tab. 448, fig. 3.


Comp. above Mus. Petiv. 987, Gazoph. tab. 35, fig. 7.

Vitis vinifera sylvestris. Cheusan. P. 211.

Vitis vulpina dicta Virginiana alba. Almag. 392. Hujus ramulum Cnghm. ex ins. Chusan ad nos transmisit. Et circa Constantinopolin frequens est (Dr. Timone.)

Vitis agrestis sinica minor “The least Fox grape.” Chusan.
Vitis vulpina. L. has been observed also in Manchuria and Japan.
One of the above mentioned grapes may be V. labrusca, which has been observed in Formosa, Amoy, Peking.


Boehmeria nivea. Hook. and Arn.

Fueraria. See above Le Comte 10.


This plant is identified in Lam. Enc. Bot. III. 239 with Xeranthemum heterophyllum from the Cape of G.H.


Arnus sinica ramosa, plurimis squamulis ad culmum donata. P. 213.

Calamintha montana sinica, Betonicae folio, floribus coerulecentibus. P. 213. Tab. 450, fig. 8.

Eupatorium cheusanense, Urtaeae folii, pediculis alatis et auriculatis, floribus summio caule conglomeratis. P. 213. Tab. 451. fig. 2.

Frutex cheusan. foliis rugosis, Jasmini flore tetrapetaloide. P. 213. Tab. 451, fig. 1.

Frutex sinensis alatis foliis, siliquis torosis, villis aureis densius obductis. Tab. 451, fig. 8.

Frutex sinensis, Senae sylvestris folio angustiore, nodosa siliqua rostro longiore donata. Tab. 451, fig. 10.

Gramen parvum cheusan. spicatum, granulis compressis cordiformibus. Tab. 452, fig. 6.

Gramen cheusan. folii brevibus aculeatis globiferum, globulos aureos Chamaemeli nudi similes, inter folia proferens. Tab. 451, fig. 9.
Mespilus oxycantha chusan. oblongis, mucronatis et serratis foliis, fructu longiore, summis ramulis innascente. P. 216. Tab. 453, fig. 3.

Loureiro Fl. coch. 392 identifies this with his Mespilus pyracantha (see below.)

Musca denticulatus minor. Cheusan. Tab. 453. 9.

Lycopodium?  

III. SWEDISH COLLECTORS OF PLANTS IN SOUTH-CINA, 1751 AND 1766.

The greater part of the accounts presented in this chapter have been borrowed from a book, which bears the following title:

A VOYAGE TO CHINA AND THE EAST INDIES BY PETER OSBECK together with A VOYAGE TO BURATIE BY OLOF TOREEN and AN ACCOUNT OF THE CHINESE HUSBANDRY BY CAPTAIN CH. ECKEBECK. translated from the German by JOHN REINHOLD FORSTER.*

to which are added A PAUNULA AND FLORA SINENSIS. London 1771. Two volumes.

PETER OSBECK, a Swede and a pupil of the great Linnaeus, to whom the latter was indebted for the greater part of the Chinese plants and animals he has described—was born in 1723. In 1750 he set out on a journey to China, as chaplain to a Swedish East Indiaman, the Prince Charles, which left Gothenburgh 18 Nov. 1750, and arrived at Cadiz 4 January 1751. After a stay of 10 weeks they left this place 20 March, sailed around the Cape, without landing there, in the second half of May. June 12 they passed St. Paul, on July 15 anchored in the harbour of Angeri (Java, Sunastr.), left again on the 17th. Here Osbeck was able to collect some plants. On the 25 Aug. 1751 the Prince Charles anchored at Whampoa (near Canton) and remained there more than four months, weighing anchor on the 5th Jan. 1752. On the way home Osbeck again collected Javanese plants and beasts in New Bay, where the Pr. Charles stopped a few days. In April O. made some collections on the island of Ascension and on the 26. June 1752 came bake to Gothenburgh.

* The well known naturalist and traveller, who accompanied Capt. Cook on his second circumnavigation of the globe 1772-76.
Osbeck was a zealous naturalist and brought home a rich collection of natural objects, chiefly Chinese specimens, for during his long stay at Whampoa and Canton he had ample opportunity of visiting the neighborhood of these places. All his collections he placed in the hands of Linnaeus, who described them, the plants in his *Species plantarum*, published a year after Osbeck's return.

Osbeck's original account of his voyage appeared in 1757 in his native language: *Dagbok öfver en ostindisk resa*. He published also some botanical articles in the Act. acad. Holm. 1762, 1765, and 1769. He was member of the Academy of Stockholm and of the Soc. of Upsal, and died as Rector of Hasloff and Woxtorp in 1805.

A German translation of Osbeck's narrative was made in 1765 by J. G. Georgi, and revised and completed by Osbeck himself. Georgi* was Professor of Mineralogy at the Academy of St. Petersburg. He accompanied Pallas on his travels to Siberia and died 1802.

The English translation of Osbeck's book was made from the German by J. R. Forster, the well known companion in travel of Capt. Cook.

All the Chinese specimens gathered by Osbeck belong to the neighborhood of Canton. During his stay at Whampoa he repeatedly made excursions to Canton and investigated the Flora of the islands in the river. He often mentions Danes island, French island, only separated from the latter by a stream, and Honam (erroneously written Stonam in the narrative), an island west of the two first mentioned and on which a large suburb of Canton is situated. Not many of the botanists in Europe will be aware, I think, that Danes island on which Osbeck collected plants 130 years ago, has been for nearly 20 years the residence of one of the most distinguished botanists of our time, who has done so much to throw light on the Flora of China and whose name has a world-wide reputation. The numerous papers on botanical matters which have been published by Dr. H. F. Hems are generally dated from the British Consulate at Whampoa, which has been established on Danes island and not, as might be presumed, at the Chinese city of Whampoa, situated opposite the Consulate on the left bank of the river.

*Wildenow named the genus *Georgina* (Dahlia) after him. Thus this favored gardenflower was not, as is erroneously believed by some authors, dedicated to King George III of England.*
Osbeck's notes on his plants collected near Canton are found scattered in his diary. He enumerates in the whole 244 Chinese plants, giving their Linnaean names, often describing them. Sometimes he adds also the Chinese names according to the Canton dialect, but generally he sadly perverts the Chinese sounds. He says himself (II. 10) that it is possible that the Chinese, who gave him these names, have imposed upon him on many occasions.

Linnaeus, when determining Osbeck's Chinese collection seems to have been under the impression, that the habitats marked on the herbarium tickets, as Danes island, French island etc., referred to places of India, for in his Species plantarum, published 4 years before Osbeck's narrative appeared, all plants gathered by the latter, figure, with a few exceptions, as Indian plants only. But as we have seen Osbeck never visited India. He collected a few plants on the coast of Java, but the bulk of his collection was represented by Chinese specimens. I may quote a few instances. In Linnaeus' Spec. plant, it is clearly stated, that Osbeck had gathered Rubus parvifolius, Cyperus Iris, Barleria cristata in India, whilst Osbeck had brought these plants from Canton. It seems that Linnaeus had a very confused idea with respect to the position of China and we cannot but think, that he considered the latter name to be a synonym for India. He describes many plants not known from elsewhere than from China as natives of India. Thus he states himself, that his Rosa indica and Lagerstroemia indica are Chinese plants. He describes his Daphne indica from specimens gathered by Osbeck at Canton, and this plant has, as far as I can conclude from the quotations in D. C. Prodr. XIV. 543, never been observed in India. On the other hand Sphaeranthus chinensis in his Spec. plant, figures as an Indian plant only. Compare D. C. Prodr. V. 371 "cur chinensis cum ipsa auctor ex India ortam dicit?" It is strange to say that none of the botanists who after Linnaeus have compiled general systematic works on Botany, as Lamarck, Willdenow, Sprengel, De Candolle, Kunth etc., ever ventured to refer, with respect to Chinese plants directly to Osbeck's book. They draw from Linnaeus and mention Osbeck's Canton plants only in such cases for China, when the former had happened not to give India as habitat. But, as we shall see further on, by far the greatest part of the plants Linnaeus knew from China were collected by Osbeck near Canton.

A considerable number of Osbeck's Chinese specimens were known previously from India (Rumphius, Rheede), but were
then new for China and of many of them Linn. had hardly seen original specimens from India. There are in his collection about 56 (probably more) entirely new plants, 12 of which are represented by drawings in his book, viz:

Tab. 1 Baeckia frutescens.  Tab. 6 Trichomanes chinensis.
Tab. 2 Osbeckia chinensis.  Tab. 7 Rhamnus linearis.
Tab. 3 fig. 1 Pteris semipinnata. Tab. 8 Barleria cristata.
   fig. 2 Utricularia bifida. Tab. 9 Gerardia glutinosa.
Tab. 4 Pteris vittata.  Tab. 10 Carpesium abrotanoides.
Tab. 5 Helicteres angustifolia.  Tab. 11 Clerodendron fortunatum.

Besides dried specimens of plants Osbeck had brought also from China many seeds from which Linnaeus succeeded in raising several new plants. It does not seem, that he had examined the whole of Osbeck's collection, for we meet in Osbeck's narrative some names and descriptions of Chinese plants not found in the Spec. Plant.

LIST OF CHINESE PLANTS KNOWN TO LINNAEUS.

Forster in compiling his Flora sinensis, or Catalogue of Chinese plants (see above.) enumerates all Osbeck's specimens from China (244) and adds the names of 56 more Chinese plants known in 1771. In the following list I venture to present a more complete list of Linnaean Chinese plants (for Forster has overlooked many species) arranged according to Bentham and Hooker's Genera Plantarum. I always give their new names in the system, should the Linnaean name have been changed. The plants collected by Osbeck I mark with Osb. As in his narrative (Engl. transl.) the accounts of Chinese plants are found in the first volume from p. 208 to the end, and in the second from p. 1 to 17, I shall quote only the pages not the volumes.

DICOTYLEDONS.


* Abbreviations of the titles of some botanical works, to which I shall have to refer frequently in the subsequent pages:
  G. P. = Bentham and Hooker, Genera Plantarum.
  D. C. = De Candolle's Prodromus Syst. nat. veg.
  Lour. = Louréiro's Flora cochinchinensis 1793 (edit. Willdenow.)
  Fl. hkg. = Bentham's Flora hongkongensis. 1861.
  Add. Fl. hkg. = Dr. Hance's Supplement to the Flora hongk. Journ. Linnaean Soc. XIII.
This name was given by Osbeck and is not found in Lin. Sp. pl. Retz described the plant under the same name in his Obs. bot. (1780). D. C. I. 3. According to Maxim. Dec. XX probably the same as Cl. terniflora. D. C.

2. *Illicium anisatum*. Lin (Forster.)

Star Anis was first brought to Europe from the Phillipines in 1588. Linnaeus had hardly seen a specimen of the Chinese plant producing Star Anis.

3. *Lian fa* or *Leen fa* Chinensium. Canton. Osb. 209.—*Gnau* or *Laen gao* (Nymphaea Nelumbo L.) white roots of the thickness of carrots, but longer, articulated and hollow inside. Poor people eat them raw, but they are not very palatable. Osb. 310.

*Nelumbium speciosum*. Willd. *蓮花* *lin fa*, the roots *蓮藕* *lin ngau*.

4. *Funaria spectabilis*. Lin. (Amoen. acad H. (1751) and VII. (1768; drawing) described as a Siberian plant, but Gmelin, from whom Linnaeus draws, states clearly that the plant had been received from China. This is *Dicentra spectabilis*. Miq. It grows wild in the Peking mountains.


The Chinese names intended are probably 芥菜 *kai lau* and 白菘 *pak sung*. Linnaeus states, that his plants had been raised from seeds brought by Osbeck.

6. *Brassica violacea*. Lin. This plant, which Linnaeus describes as a Chinese plant, is only known, it seems, from his specimens.


8. *Sinapis chinensis*. Lin. This plant was first noticed by Boerhave, who in 1710 received the seeds from Batavia. D. C I. 219. and Lour. 485, mean that it is rather a variety of the next.


11. *Raphanus sativus*. Lin. var *oleifera*. D. C. I. 228. *R. chinensis* annuus *oleiferus*. Lin. Seeds of this had been brought from China by Capt. Fbeckberg (s. further on.)

* As Osbeck gives (or tries to give) the Chinese names in the Canton dialect I shall write the Chinese sounds according to the same dialect.
12. **Polygala chinensis**. Lin. I am not aware whether this species is really found in China. Lin. gives only India as habitat.


14. **Dianthus chinensis**. Lin. Introduced into Europe from China about 1702.


16. On p. 246 and 39 Osb. gives some accounts of the Tea shrub. When the ship departed from Whampoa Osbeck’s Tea shrub, which stood in a pot fell upon the deck during the firing of the canons and was thrown over board.


22. **Urena chinensis**, caule erecto, floribus majusculis. French isl. Osb. 363. This name is not found in botanical works.


28. **Sterculia platanifolia**. Cav. introduced from China in 1757, known to Lin. under the name of *Hibiscus simplex*, Plukener’s *Tetraglottis*.

Known from Ceylon before. Fl. hkg. 38.

B. indica not mentioned in any system. botan. work. Bartramia is now considered a section of Triumfetta. Sparrmann (s. further on) gathered at Canton Triumfetta Bartramia, which is probably the same. D.C. I 508 dubious plant. The Chinese name given by Osb. is probably 黃花龍 wong ja mo, which is applied in Canton to Sida rhombifolia. L. (Parker)

The Chinese name of this plant is 酸味 sün mé (Parker.) It was known from India before Osbeck.

33. Averrhoa Bilimbi. L. An oblong, yellow, sourish fruit with 5 deep furrows, which has the quality of Lemons, but is sooner spoiled. The Chinese at Canton call it sam-nim and make a conserve of it called ba la meng Osb. 306.
A. Bilimbi, known from India before, sin: 三 拣 sam nim.

Known from India before.


37. There are in Canton 2 sorts of China Oranges (Citrus sinensis. L.) The first is that called the Mandarin Orange, whose peel is quite loose, and the Chinese call them kwan. It is the best kind. The peel of the other sort sits close. It is called ting or rather kang. Osb. 307.
The Mandarin Orange, Citrus nobilis. Lour. is termed 柑 Kow in Canton, the Coolie Orange (see above Martini 8) is known in China under the name of 橙 ch'eng

38. A sort of low sweet Orange trees, with a small fruit called gatt. Canton. Osb. 208.
柑 Kwat is a generic term for Oranges.

39. Kwan-kat is the name of a sort of small Lemons, which are not much larger than Cherries. Canton. Osb. 306.

Citrus japonica. Thbg. sin: 金柑 Kow Kwat.

41. Here are also two sorts of Lemons (Citrus decumana. L.) which are called 丫o by the Chinese. The first is round and its name is Lo yao. The second called Han yao is long and is usually offered as a sacrifice to their idols. Osb. 307.

The Chinese name for Citrus decumana is 柚 Yau.

42. The Lemt yee tree (Citrus medica. L.) in Canton bears little round sour Lemons called na mang, and which are used instead of Tamarinds, or common Lemons, generally before they are ripe. The trees are sold in pots and seldom about a yard high. Osb. 208. 306.

This is I believe Citrus medica. L. var. acida. Hook flor. Ind. I 514. Sin: 橙檬 ning meng.

43. Ailanthus glandulosa Desf. (1786.) This Chinese tree has been introduced into Europe in 1751 and was at the time of Linnaeus known under the name of Vernis du Japon.

44. Chinese Olives in Canton, pack-la. Osb. 309.

Osbeck evidently means Canarium album. Rauscsh. sin: 白欔 pak lam.

45. Olom sio, a certain great tree with pinnated leaves, smooth, with opposite folioles. A resin comes out of the tree much like the Gum arabic. Danes isl. Osb. 9

Canarium Pimeia. Koenig. sin 烏欔樹 u lam shu.

46. Salacia chinensis. L. See D. C. I. 571.


49. Rhamnus Thea. L. Poor man’s tea. The leaves of this shrub are made use of by the poor Chinese instead of tea. They call it thin. Danes isl. Osb. 375.

Sageretia theessama. Brong.—Fl. hkg. 68.


51. Lat-yee is the Chinese name of a fruit, which is eaten in Canton with tea. It tastes almost like a plum, and looks like large gallapples, covered with a brownish, thin, and warty skin. Long-an is less than lat-yee. They have a smooth skin and sweet pulp. Osb. 308.

Nephelium Liteki Camb. and N. longan. Camb.

Probably the same as Rh. chinense Mill. Dict. known before Osbeck from China. See above Pluk. Amalth. Rhus quinquefol. sin.


54. **Mango (Mangifera indica)**. L.) This fruit is sold in China by the name of quai mao. In the Javan. language it is called Po.

I am not aware what name is intended by quai mao. The Chinese call the fruit mango as the Malays do. Fl. hgtk. 70.


Known from India before.


57. **Crotalaria sessiliflora**. Lin. China.—Fl. hgtk. 74.


Known from India before.


60. **Astragalus sinicus**. Lin. China.


Known before from Asia and America. Sin: 花生 fa shang.

63. **Hedysarum triquetrum**. L. Danes isl.—In Chin: Ka song so. Osb. 374.

Known from Ceylon before. D. C. II. 326. Desmodium triquetrum.

64. **Hedysarum gangeticum**. L. Canton. Osb. 330.

Known from Ceylon before. D. C. II. 327. Desmodium gangeticum.


Known from India before. D. C. II. 327. Desmodium maculatum.


Known from Ceylon before. D. C. II. 334. Desmodium triflorum.


Known from Ceylon before. D. C. II. 337. Desmodium heterocarpum.


D. C. II. 324. Uraria lagopodioides.


D. C. II. 352. Alysicarpus styracifolius.

72. Abrus precatorius. L. A sort of little red pease with a black spot. They are valued as the lowest coin and used in weighing gold. Osb. 384.

Known from India before.

73. Uang tea, a sort of small pease of which cheese is said to be made. Canton. Osb. 305.

Glycine (Soja) hispida. Moench. The Soja bean, sin: 黃豆 wong tau of which Bean curd is made. First known from Japan (Kaempfer).

74. Lack tau is the Chinese name of a sort of pease, which are much less than our wild vetches. Osb. 304.

Phaseolus radiatus. L. sin: 綠豆 luk tau. First known from Ceylon.

75. Dolichos sinensis. L. Callvanses. A dish which is like our sweet cheese and which they call Filou fu is prepared of this. Osb. 218. 304.

The name of D. sinensis is first met in Rumphius’ Amb. V. 375. Chinese Bean curd 豆腐 tau fu is made of different kind of beans.

76. Dolichos scandens maximus, with large black beans which were said to be poisonous. The pods likewise grow black, when the fruit ripens. The Chinese call it spoe lock tau. Osb. 394. But p. 375 Osb. gives the Chinese name of the same plant, which he observed on Danes island as min tau.

By the first name is probably intended 小緑豆 sin luk tau. According to Lour. 539 min tau is a variety of Dolichos Catjang. L. Parker gives 麵豆 min tau as the Cantonese name of Cajanus indicus. Spr. Comp. also Fl. hkg. 88 with respect to the poisonous seeds of Canavalia virosa.


Known from Ceylon before.

78. Cassia procumbens. L. Canton Osb. 336.


Known from India before. Lour. 488 mentions the Tamarind as growing in Cochinchina, not in China.


Perhaps Acacia concinna Fl. hkg. 101.
81. **Rubus parvifolius.** L. Canton. Osb. 11.

D.C. II. 564. identifies this sp. with *R. moluccus.* Rumph. but Bth. Fl. hsgk. 105. seems to exclude this synonym.


83. **Mo quai fa.** Canton. Osb. 209.

玫瑰花 *mei quai fa* is the Chinese name of a Rose; according to Lour. 395. *R. cinnamomea.* L.

84. **Saxifraga sarmentosa.** Lin. fil. (1781.)

This plant, a native of China, was introduced into our gardens about the middle of the last cent. Bot. mag. 92.


This name *Tiongine* applied to this plant by Poiret (Lam. Enc. Bot. VII. 681.) seems to be derived from this (evidently wrong) Chin. name. Fl. hong. 118.

86. **Psidium Guajava.** L. eaten in Canton. Osb. 309.

As is known, this tree, generally cultivated in tropical countries, is a native of trop. America.


According to Parker the Chinese name of it in Canton sounds "tip kiong loa."


Known from Ceylon before. D. C. III. 142. *Osbeckia octandra.* Not mentioned for China by other authors. According to Parker 地拈 *te nin* is the Canton name for *Mel. repens.* Desc.

89. **Melastoma malabarica,** with fine red flowers. French isl. Osb. 354.

*Melastoma malabathricum.* L. Known from India before.

90. **Ammania baccifera.** L. Near Canton. Osb. 387.

D. C. III. 78, 79. Linnæus' *A. baccifer.* seems to be a dubious plant; perhaps *A. vestitior.* Roxb. (India).

91. **Lythrum fruticosum.** Lin. known to Linnæus from China. Also in India. D. C. III. 92. *Grisleia tomentosa.* Roxb. Not mentioned for China by later authors.

92. **Lawsonia inermis.** L. French isl. Osb. 354.

Known from India and W. Asia before.

93. **Lagerstroemia indica.** Lin. known to Linnæus as a native of China, mentioned earlier by Rumphius and Cleyer (Japan).
94. *Punica Granatum*. L. Whampoa (cult.) Osb. 198. This tree, a native of N. Africa and W. Asia, is cultivated in China.


Known from Ceylon before.

96. *Trapa natans* L. in Chin: ling kamm or leng ka. Osb. 305. Linn. fil. described the Chinese sp. as a new plant *Tr. bicorns*. The spec. cult. at Peking under the name of 菱角 ling kio (ling kok, Canton.) is *Trapa bispinosa* Roxbg.

97. *Trichosanthes anguinea*. Linn. Hort. Cliff. This plant was known as a Chinese plant before Linn.—Rumph. amb. V. 407.—Cucurbita sinensis fructu longo etc. Tilli Cat. pl. h. Pisani I. t. 71. (1723).


Cultivated throughout China. The Chinese sounds intended by Osbeck are probably 蔬菜 po o.


*Luffa acutangula*. Ser.


This name is not found in system. botan. works.


Known from Ceylon before.


Known from Ceylon before. Flora hgsk. 23, where the plant is mentioned as a variety of *M. stricta*. L.


Known from Ceylon before.—Pl. hgsk. 134.


*Apium graveolens*. L. is cultivated throughout China.

106. *Sium nins*. Linnaeus describes it as a Chinese plant but I am not aware that any botanist after Linn. has mentioned it for China. But the plant may be found there as it is frequently seen in Japan.

*Sium sisarum*. Linnaeus supposes this plant also to be a native of China, but Maximowicz. (Dec. XIII.) has proved that it is a Persian plant, which has never been gathered in China.


Osbeck of course does not mention it as a plant of South-China.


This is *Panax aculeatus*. Ait. or *Acanthopanax aculeata*. Benth. Hook. G. P. 939. According to Dr. Hance common in South-China.


S. nigra is hardly found in China. The S. nigra of Lour. 226, is a different species. D. C. IV. 323.—According to Dr. Hance S. *chinensis* Lindl. is a common spec. near Canton.


Known from Ceylon before. After Osbeck not gathered in China.


Known from Ceylon before. *Fl. hbg* 151. *Oldenlandia Hoyziana*.


Known from Ceylon before. Not observed in China after Osb.


Known from Ceylon and E. India before. *Flora hbg*. 153.


According to D.C. IV. 486 Osbeck's plant is *L. stricta*. Roxb. By Osbeck's Chinese name is probably to be understood "Flower of the Emperor Kien lung."


Known from Ceylon before. Flora hbg. 159.


According to D. C. IV. 541, this is an American plant.

121. *Rubia cordifolia*. Linnaeus describes it as a Chinese and Siberian plant. It is very common in North-China but I do not find it mentioned for South-China.
122. **Eupatorium chinense.** Lin. See. D. C. V. 179. Not observed in China by other collectors since Linn.

123. **Solidago chinensis** (a name given by Osb. not Linn.) Danes isal. Osb. 393.

**Solidago virgo aures.** L. is found in Hongkong. D. C. V. 342. states **Solidago chinensis** Spreng.—*Senecio vagans.* But Sprengel does not describe a plant of that name.


This is Boltonia indica. Rth. Fl. hgrk. 174.

125. **Aster chinensis.** Linn. described it first in the Hrt. Cliff. (1737) but it was previously known in Europe. D. C. V. 274.

**Callistephus chinensis.** Nees. Much cultivated in Peking.

126. **Coryza chinensis.** L. Near Canton. Osb. 386.


127. **Coryza hirsuta.** L. In Chin: *ky lat soy,* also *kung gan faa.* Danes isal. Osb. 374. 394.


129. **Sphaeranthus chinensis.** Linn. Mant. 119. But he gives only India as habitat. It seems the plant has not been observed after Linn.

130. **Carpesium abrotanoides.** L. Canton, Honam, Osb. 329, 17.

Has been observed also in Formosa, India.


Described by Linn. in 1737, but Pluekenet described it previously in the Amalth. 58.


Known from India before. D.C. V. 490 Eclipta prostrata L.


Known from Ceylon before. D.C. V. 539 Wedelia calendulacea. Less.

136. **Chrysanthemum indicum.** L. In Chin: *cock fua.* On the walls of Canton, also in pots. Osb. 6.

137. Chrysanthemum indicum. L. cultivated in gardens, Canton. Flowers as large as those of Tagetes patula, white, double or full like a round brush. Osb. 15.


140. Artemisia vulgaris. L. This is the only Swedish plant in this country (Canton), ‘though it varies in some measure with it. The Chinese heal wounds with it, and to that purpose apply the fresh plant bruised. They call it gnai Danes isl. Osb. 394.

A. vulgaris L. (A. indica Willd.) is very common throughout China. Sin Ngai.


D.C. VI. 301. Gynura divaricata. Only known from China.


Linnaeus’ plant (from India) is dubious. Gynura nitida. D.C. VI. 299?


Linn. confounds several species in his L. zeyl, and L. trigona Roxb. (Fl. hkg. 196) is probably the plant Osb. saw in China. D.C. VII. 360.

146. Black Ebony, in China: ghome is brought to Canton from the E. Indies and from Maurice. Osb. 227.

Ebony sin: 烏木 u muk seems to be produced also in China. Maha Ebenos. Spreng.


D.C. VIII. 302. Jasminum pubescens. Willd. Also in India (Roxbg.)


桂 花 kwai fa is Olen fragrans. Thbg.

150. Nerium Oleander. Lin. Forster, Fl. sin. mentions it as known from China. I may observe, that the species generally
cultivated in China is **N. odorum**. Soland. the Oleander sinicus of Rumph. Introduced into Europe from India 1683.

151. **Periploca graeca**. L. Canton, French isl. The flowers are an ornament to our hot houses, on account of their velvet colour Osb. 336, 363.

The plant Osb. saw was hardly our European species.

152. **Fan sino or fuy-sio**, **Convolvulus Batatas**. L. the Chinese potatoes, grow with long tendrils, which they extend along the ground. They never flower in China. Osb. 311.

**Batatas edulis**. Chois. Sin: 番薯 fan shū (Canton). At Peking also the plant never flowers.

153. **Convolvulus reptans**. L. In Chin: or-say. It grows spontaneously everywhere in ditches and low places. We daily eat this spinage. Osb. 313.

Known from India before. **Orobium vagum**. Rumph. According to Parker **Ipomoea reptans** Poir. is called 苋菜 ang tsoi in Canton.


Known from India before. Sin: 鳥屏風 Nu ping fang (Parker).


Known from India before. **Ipomoea pes caprae**. Sw.

156. **Convolvulus biflorus**. Linn. described it as a Chinese plant. **Ipomoea biflora** Pers. It does not seem that this plant has been observed after Linn.


**Pharbitis Nil**. Chois. Common in tropical countries.


Linn. describes it as an Indian plant. It is dubious. D.C. IX. 412. **C. farinosus**. L. But this has pink or rose coloured flowers. Perhaps **Ipomoea chrysealis** Ker. Fl. hkg. 239.


Known from India before. Fl. hkg. 240.

160. They eat (at Canton) a reddish fruit like figs, but longer, and almost everywhere likewise thick, called ay qua or keu. Osb. 297.

This seems to be **Solanum malongena**. L. the Egg plant, in Chin: 卵果 or 锄瓜 ai hua (Canton).

161. **Solanum aethiopicum**. Lin. (Forster Fl. sin.)

162. **Solanum indicum**. L. French isl. Osb. 357.

Known from Ceylon before.


Known from India before.


Loureiro's and probably also Osb.'s L. barb. are *L. chinense*. Mill. dict. 5 (1763.), which was cultivated in England as early as 1806 in the Roy. garden. (Hort. Kew 2. ed. II. 3). But there is much confusion in system. botany with respect to *L. barbarum*, chinense and vulgare. Meyen, obs. bot. notices *L. barbarum* as a plant of Macao. It seems to me that Hook. and Arn. (Voy. Beech. 267) are perfectly right in doubting, whether these species are really distinct.

166. *Datura ferox*. Linn. mentions it as a Chinese plant. It was known before him (Ph. Miller cultivated it 1731) but it seems from India. D. ferox is common in N. China.


168. *Nicotiana fruticosa* is described by Linn. and Miller as a Chinese plant. But as Hooker has proved (Bot. mag. 6207.) it is a little known plant received from Guinea, Brazil and the Cape of G. H.

Known from Ceylon and India before. D. C. XI. 69. *Adenosma uliginosa*. R. Br. Osb. is quoted with a? Not observed, it seems after Osbeck in China.


It would seem from Osb.'s statement, that Toreen, after whom Linn. named this plant, gathered it near Canton, not in India, as Linn. states. It is also not mentioned in the list of Indian plants collected by Toreen at Suratte. As we shall see further on, Toreen was in Canton at the same time when Osbeck was there. It seems however that after Osbeck T. asiatica has not been observed in S. China. *T. rubens and flavo* grow in Hongkong.


Flora hongk. 256.

178. *Columnea? chinensis* (name given by Osb.) in Chin: "pan ge ku" is plentiful along the river side of Danes isl. Osb. 371.

I am not aware what plant is meant.


Linn. mentions it only as an Indian plant. It has not been observed in China after Osb.


Known from India before. Flora hongk. 263.


J. purp. was known to Linn. from the Moluccas and China. *Rostellaria diffusa*. Nees. D. C. XI. 438. There is a great confusion with respect to the former name. Just. purp. of Loureiro 30 is *Peristerpoea tinctoria* Nees. (D. C. XI. 493). Just. purp. Vahl is *Hypoestes purpurea* R. Br. Both of these plants have been observed in Southern China.


Known from India before. Fl. hongk. 273. According to Benth. *V. incisa*. Lam. from China, cultivated in Europe since the middle of the last cent. is only a cut-leaved form of *V. negundo*.


Known from Ceylon before. Fl. hongk. 271. *Clerodendron inermis*. R. Br.


Known from India before.


Pluken. Amalth. 190. Scutellaria sinica.

194. Leonurus sibiricus. Linn. Siberia. China. This is a common weed throughout China.


196 Mirabilis odorata. L. grows as nettles grow in our country. Canton. Osb. 326.


D. C. XIII. 2. 455. Boerhavia repanda. Willd. Also in India.


First described by Linn. in the Hort. Cliff (1737).


This is only a variety of C. argentea. Known from India before Osbeck's Chin. name is wrong. Lat tai is Cayenna Pepper in Cantonese.


Known from India before. 菜 in te'oi is a general name for Amarantus.


Known from India before. Fl. hbgk. 285.

204. **Achyranthes chinensis.** (name given by Osb. botan. description.) Canton. Osb. 329.

Known from India before. Introduced in Europe 1714.

206. **Spinage** is called **bou-say** in Canton. Osb. 313.
The Chin. name for **Spinacia oleracea.** L. is 菠菜 *po ts'oii*.


209. **Basella rubra.** L. in Chin: 低子. The spots which the berries make in white linen are very hard to be got out. Canton factory. Osb. 12.
Known from India before. Sin: **藤菜 t'ang ts'ei** (Parker) Flor. hbgk. 283.

Common in S. China.

Known from India before. Common in China.

Common in S. China. Sin: 火炭毛 fo than mu. (Parker.)

213. **Rheum palmatum.** Linn. China. Seeds of the true Rhubarb plant, observed in 1872 near lake Kukonor by Col. Prezewalsky, were first received in Kiakhta, in 1750, and since that time the plant is cultivated in Europe.

214. **Rheum undulatum.** Linn. Rhabarbarum sinense Amman Herb. 206. The seeds of this had been received in 1740 from Siberia, its native country. Linn., who thought, that it was of Chinese origin, described it under the name of Rh. Rhabarbarum.

215. **Rheum compactum.** Linn. gives as habitat China, Tartary. It is stated to have been introduced in 1758 from Tartary. Pallas observed it in Dauria. It is not found in China.

216. **Piper betle.** L. Canton. Osb. 314.
Fl. hbgk. 335 describes the **Chavica sarmentosa.** Miq. which is very near the Chav. betle. But the true Betle pepper is also cultivated in S. China.
217. A Chinese told to Osb. that the Camphor tree, *Laurus Camphora*, was found near Canton, and called *tyong sio*. Osb. 253.

This tree was known to Linn. only from Japan. Sin : 檗樹 *tioing sio* (Fu chou dialect.)


Known from India before.


220. *Loranthus scurrula*. Linn. China. According to Benth. Fl. hkg. 141 this is probably the *L. chinensis*. D. C. gathered by Staunton in China, but not as Linn. thinks the species represented in Potiver’s Gazophyl. Tab. 63, fig. 8.


Kaempfer’s plant, quoted by Osb. is *V. Kaempferi*. D. C. IV. 285. The Fl. hkg. 141 notices for Hongkong *V. articulatum*. Burm. and *V. orientale*. Willd.


Known from Ceylon, India, before. Sin : 火秧花 *fo yong fa* (Parker.)


224. *Agynia pubera*. L. and *Agynia impubes*. L. Both known to Linn. as Chinese plants. D. C. XV. 2. 307 considers the second to be only a variety of the first, as do also Benth. and Hook. G. P. III. 271. Müller in D. C. l. c. refers both to *Phyllanthus puberus*, of which he enumerates 4 varieties. Two of these have been observed in China by Fortune and others, but for the above mentioned varieties Müller quotes only Linnaeus.


Known from Ceylon before.

226. *Croton tomentosus*. Müll. D. C. XV. 2. 588. states that he has seen in Linnaeus’ herbarium a specimen of this plant brought by Osbeck from China. It seems that Osbeck does not mention it. *Croton crassifolius*. Geisel is the oldest name and must be restored. *Cr. chinense* Bth. Fl. hkg. 309.

is the same.

This is H. japonicus. S. et Z. common throughout China.
This is probably Ficus retusa. L. the Bastard Banyan, very common in
S. China; also in India.
230. Ficus pumila. Linn. China (Forster Fl. sin.) known
also from Japan, introduced in Europe 1759. Loureiro mentions
it only for Cochinchina. It is not found in the Fl. hongk.
But Dr. Hance has seen specimens of it from Formosa.
Known from India before. Boehmeria nivea. Hook. and Arn. Flora
bgk. 331.
Known to Linn. from China before, described in the Hort. Cliff (1737)
Seeds received from China. Biota orientalis. Endl.
235. Latt fa is the Chinese name of a little tree (Canton),
which looks like the Yew tree, but the leaves are ornamented
on the inferior side with white strips, running length-ways as
in Pinus balsamea, or the Phalaris picta. It seems to be
Taxus nucifera. L. or the F1 of Kaempf. Amoen. 814.
The Japanese tree alluded to by Osb. is Torreya nucifera. S. et Z.
not found in China, as far as I know. But Torreya grandis has been
observed by Fortune in Chekiang. D. C. XVI. 2. 505.
The timber of which their ships are built is called sao mock.
Osb. 196. Shau pann is the Chinese name of that sort of wood,
from which they make coffins. Osb. 228.
All these names refer it seems to Cunninghamia sinensis. R. Br. D. C.
XVI. 2. 432. Sin: 杉木 sha muk. Boards of that timber are called
1 板 sha pan.

MONOCOTYLEDONS.

237. Musa paradisiaca. L. Plantain tree, called Tean
by the Chinese. Canton. Osb. 308. In a note Forster states,
that the plantain tree has flowered for the first time in the
Upsal garden, and has also brought forth ripe fruits.
The Chinese name of the Plantain, which is cultivated in S. China, is
蕉 tsiu.
There is no difference between this and M. paradisiaca.
A native of India, frequently cultivated in China.


241. **Curcuma chinensis.** (name given by Osb.) Canton. Osb. 329.

242. **Epidendron ensifolium.** L. planted in flowerpots. Its flowers have an exceeding fine scent. Canton. Osb. 15.

243. **Cymbidium ensifolium.** Sw. Much cultivated in China.

244. **Narcissus Tazetta.** L. flowers in January. Canton.
In Chin: *soi sin fu.* Osb. 209.

Frequently cultivated in China. Sin: 水仙花 *shui sin fu.*

245. **Dioscorea alata.** L. Yams, in Chin: *tdai sio.*
Cultivated, Canton. Osb. 311.

Known before from Ceylon, India. Sin: 大薯 *tai shu* (in Canton.)

246. **Convallaria chinensis.** Osb. 353. Canton.

I am not aware what plant is meant.

247. **Smilax China.** L. China root, in Chin: *long fan tao.* It grows near the river on dry hills and is very cheap in Canton. Osb. 255, 2.

Comp. Hance Add. Fl. hkg 130.

248. **Smilax Sassaparilla.** L. Danes island. Osb. 10.
It was certainly not this American species, which Osb. saw there.


Two sorts of *Leek* are cultivated at Canton, viz. *tsung* and *lo fron.* Osb. 309.


252. **Commelyna communis.** L. Danes isl. Osb. 393.
Known from Ceylon before. Common in China.

253. **Commelina chinensis.** (name given by Osb.), in Chin: *Katyan.* Danes isl. Osb. 393.

254. *Oo tao* are roots so called by the Chinese. They cannot be eaten raw because the acidity would prevent the action of swallowing. Osb. 310.
The name of 半 頭 w·tau is applied to several species of Colocasia with edible tubers, viz: C. esculenta. Schott., C. antiquorum. Schott., C. indica. Kth.


Probably *Lemna minor*. L., which is very common in China.


We know two species of *Sagittaria* from S. China, viz: *S. chinensis*. Sims. and *S. cordifolia* Roxb. Fl. hkg. 346. I think it is the former which is largely cultivated in China for the sake of its edible roots under the name of 火 菜 tse' ku.—*Sagittaria trifolia*. L. (China.) is according to Kth. III. 157, perhaps *S. chinensis*.


Known from Ceylon before. Hance Add. Fl. hkg. 130.


Known from India before. Fl. hkg. 386. Common in China.


Known from India before. Fl. hkg. 386. Also in America.


This is an American species.


This name is not found in Kth. enum. pl.


Kth. II. 202. identifies the motto pulla with *Scirpus squarrosum*. L. or *Isolepis squarrosa*. Rock. Schult., an Indian plant, not found in China. But Bth. Fl. hkg. 389. states that *Lipocarpha microcephala* R. Br. found in Hongkong, closely resembles the former. Osbeck’s *Sc. chinensis* is not to be confounded with *Sc. chinensis* Munro. Fl. hkg. 395.


266. *Saccharum chinense* (name given by Osb.) grows in the river (Canton) like reeds. In Chin: mao. Osb. 10.

茅 mao is according to Lour. 67 *Saccharum spicatum* L. or *Perovis latifolia* Ait. Fl. hkg. 418. Osb.’s plant is not to be confounded with *Saccharum chinense*. Roxb.

Known from Ceylon, India before.

Europa, Siberia. Frequent in N. China.

270. **Andropogon fasciculatum.** L. Canton. Osb. 346.

It is found also in India but has not been observed in China since the
time of Linn.

Fl. hgk. 422. Found also in India.

European species, the same as **P. crus corvi.** L. Also common in China.

274. **Panicum alopecuroides.** L. Danes isl. Osb. 375.

275. **Panicum arborescens.** L. Canton. Grows from 10 to 12
feet high and is very ramose. Osb. 330.
Known from Ceylon before. Kth. I. 426. **Arundinaria glaucescens.** Beauv.


Kth. I. 126. India orient.

278. **Panicum dissectum.** L. Canton. Osb. 346.
This is a plant of S. America. Forster Fl. sin. means, that Osb.
probably saw **P. dimidiatum.** L. (India orient.)

This is a plant of Mexico.

Kth. I. 158. **Gynnochris crenchroides.** Roem. et Sch. **G. hordeiformis.**
Nees. India orient. C. B. Sp. Peking (Hance.)

281. **Oryza sativa.** L. The Chinese call the Rice **waa,**
while it is yet in the ground. Osb. 350.

禾 **waa,** growing grain, Paddy in the southern provinces (Williams.)

282. **Kow-sun.** is the Chinese name of white, long roots,
of the thickness of Parsneps, the extremes of which had been cut
off, and with which a sampan, that passed by, was quite filled.
They were tied into bunches with their ensiform leaves, and
were offered to sale. Osb. 11.

I have no doubt that Osb. saw **Hydropyrum latifolium.** Griseb. the
basis of the stem of which is a vegetable much in esteem among the
Bot. 1872. 146. The Chinese call it 稻谷 **kao sun.** It is cultivated in
Peking as well as in Canton, and grows wild in Southern Siberia.
Widely diffused over the warmer regions of the globe. Fl. hgtk. 426.
*Sporobolus indicus*. R. Br.


Kth. I. 366. *Centotheca lappacea*. Desv. Found also in India, the Indian Archipel., Australia.

It seems, that this is the *Leptochloa chinensis*. Nees. Fl. hgtk. 430. Nees gives as synonym *P. chinensis*. Roth. See Kth. I. 270.

Kth. I. 365. India orientalis.

European species.


292. *Arundo Bamboo*. L. Bamboo roots is what we call Asia, when preserved with salt, vinegar, leek, and Capsicum. Paper is made of the inner bark of Bamboo. Osb. 310, 276.

Munro in his article on Bambusaceae (Trans. Lin. Soc. XXVI.) states, that the Chinese bamboo of which Osebeck speaks, which is said to flower once in 60 years, is *Bambus flexuosus* Munro, gathered also by Staunton.

293. A reed which the Chinese call *lu ta*. It looks like

**Arundo Donax.** Near Bocca Tigris. Osb. 29.


294. *Nardus articulata*. (name given by Osb.) Canton Osb. 346.

Kth. I. 461. species dubia. India orient.

**CEYPTOGAMS:**

Common throughout the tropics.

East and West Indies.

This is not a Linnaean name. L. varium. R. Br. is an Australian plant and has probably nothing to do with Osbeck's plant.


Known from Ceylon before. Fl. hgw. 441. Lygodium scandens, Sw.


Known also from India. Hec. Add. Fl. hgw. 140. Aspidium varium. Sw.


This is an European species. Aspidium cristatum. Sw.


Fl. hgw. 448. China. India.


305. Acrostichon punctatum. Lin. China. (Forster Fl. sin.)

306. Acrostichon dichotomum. Lin. China (Forster Fl. sin.)


Flor. hgw. 444. Also in India.


This is an American species.


Davallia chinensis. Sw.—Sprengel Syst. IV. 120 refers to this species also Adiantum chusanum. Linn. Syst. veg. p. 940.

311. Jungermannia chinensis (name given by Osb.). See Dill. Musc. t. 49. fig. 4. French isl. Osb. 356.


317. *Simu*. Chinese Truffles are carried for sale in the streets of Canton. Osb. 312.

*Simu* is a general term for Mushrooms. Comp. Loureiro 849. *Agaricus deliciosus*.

318. **Byssus flos aquae**. Linn. (Forster Flora sin.)

319. **Fucus Tendo**. Linn. China.

_Dubious Chinese plants mentioned by Osbeck._

_Cryptanthus chinensis_. Small bushes bearing a great resemblance to Blackberry bushes. Leaves opposite, as large as those of the Rosemallow, cordate, obtuse; their margin is unequally serrated, they are somewhat rough at the top, but smooth below and have at least 8 pretty large veins. The flowers are white, double and grow in bunches at the top of the branches. Near Canton. Osb. 345.

There is no Linnaean genus *Cryptanthus* and the genus of this name proposed by Nuttal (Salsolaceae) is even not mentioned in the Gen. Plant.

For the food of gold and silver fishes a species of plant is put into the water, the leaves of which resemble *Ceratophyllum demersum* and *Pistia stratiotes*. They call it *Sim yan gai*. Osb. 208.

Large high trees called *leean see*. Canton. Osb. 325.


_Ka tong qua*, a shrub, which twists round other plants. Leaves heart-shaped, thick. Corolla 4-fid, 4 filaments, 1 pistil. Danes isl. Osb. 374.


_Ko su* or *Yam ko sua* is the name, which the Chinese give to the great trees, which grow near the plantations. Osb. 9.

_Pa lamm* is the name of the leaves with which they cover their fruit baskets. Osb. 9.

_Ka toa* is a long climbing plant with round leaves and red flowers. Danes isl. Osb. 394.

**OLAF TOREEN**, Chaplain of the Gothic Lion, a Swedish East India man, visited Canton at the same time, when Osbeck was there. The Gothic Lion anchored at Whampoa on the 7. July 1751 and left the 4. Janr. 1752. Toreen presented to Linnaeus, his instructor, a collection of Indian plants, chiefly from Suratte, where he had made a stay
of more than 5 months. It would seem that he gathered also some Chinese plants. I have already stated (see above Linn. Chin. plants. 172.) that Torenia asiatica, named by Linnaeus after Toreen, was probably brought from China, not from India. In D. C. V. 543 I read under Pluchea (Comyza) hirsuta: China (Torr. ex Linn.) I cannot now refer to Linn.'s original work in order to decide whether Toreen is quoted. Toreen died a year after his return to Sweden. Linnaeus published the letters Toreen had addressed to him during his voyage. In his narrative there is nothing of interest concerning Chinese botany. He speaks of some cultivated plants and reports, that the Tea shrubs he took with him on his return, died, on the road, notwithstanding his care.

The third account of Swedish naturalists in China translated by Forster, is a Treatise on Chinese Husbandry by Charles Gust. Eckeborg. Eckeborg was Captain of a Ship in the Swedish E. I. Comp.'s service. We know from Sparmann's brief account of his voyage to China, (see further on) that Eckeborg was Captain of the Navarcha and that this ship arrived at Canton Aug. 24. in 1766. It was at this place, that Eckeborg made his observations on Chinese husbandry, on which subject he subsequently published a very interesting account, of which I shall give an abstract. It seems that E. had previously visited Canton, about 1762.

E. states that Rice is largely cultivated in the neighborhood of Canton. But he saw also Wheat there and Barley.

He mentions a coarse species of plant, with thin roots, whose leaves, flowers and seed capsules were like those of Radishes. These were sown in the beginning of Dec. In Febr. they were all in blossom, but in April the seed capsules turned yellow, and then the plants were plucked, dried, and the numerous seeds beaten out. From the seeds they press an oil, which they turn to many purposes in economy, but especially they burn it in lamps, and dress several dishes with it while it is fresh. The oil is so fat, that it cannot be used in painting, because it will not dry. The soot which comes from the lamps in which this oil is burnt is used in making the well known Indian ink.

The plant here alluded to is the Raphanus chinensis annuus oleifera. L. Raphanus sativus, var. oleifera. D. C. I. 228. It is stated in the Collect. acad. partie étrang. XI. 379 (quoted by Grosier, la Chine III. 234. I have not seen the original,) that the seeds of this plant, which the Chinese cultivate under the name of sui fa or sui fa tun, had been supplied
by Eckeeberg and sown in Sweden, where they produced a good crop. I am not prepared to say what Chinese name is intended by suifatun. Evidently it has been incorrectly rendered.

It seems to be the same plant, which Osbeck II. p. 29 mentions; 21. Dec. 1752. The high fields about Bocca Tigris (mouth of the Canton river) were green with a plant out of whose seeds the Chinese press the oil, which they call loam, and which is most probably Sesam.

Fortune (Wander. 55,) states, that the Cabbage oil plant of the Chinese in Chusan, Chekiang, Kiangsu is Brassica chinensis. L.

Commonly the seeds of Cotton, which they call min fu succeed to those oily seeds. They are sown in April. Flowers appear in July, pods in August.

The Cotton plant, 棉花 min fu, in Canton.

Potatoes, which they call fow cee make the third and last crop, which they plant after the cotton crop being over. These potatoes are different from ours. The roots have red peels, are longer, yellow, sweet, but the leaves are like those of European potatoes.

E. means evidently Batatas edulis, Chois (a above Lin. Chin. pl. 152.) sin: fan shii, but he is mistaken with respect to the leaves.

Sometimes the place of Cotton is supplied with lentils, beans Löktaus and Calvannes.

Löktaus is Phaseolus radiatus L. (Lin. Chin. pl. 74.) Calvannes = Dolichos sinensis L.

Yams, which they call ou tao are planted like potatoes but set in swampy wet places.

Colocasia (Lin. Chin. pl. 254.)

After this some particulars with respect to the cultivation of the Sugar cane by the Chinese are given.

In the kitchen gardens they cultivate Salads, long and short Cucumbers, Leeks, white Onions, Spinage, Celery, Carrots, Orach, a species of watery Turnips, long Radishes, Gourds, and Water melons. Of these they have procured the seeds from the Portuguese. Purslane grows wild. They keep a coarse sort of Water Spinage in ponds about ½ fathom deep, in which it grows so plentifully, that it quite covers the surface of the water. This is one of the most usual pot herbs.

This Water spinach seems to be Ipomoea reptans. Poir. See above Lin. Chin. pl. 153.

After this E. speaks of the cultivation of Ginger and of Tobacco, yeen of the Chinese.

They cultivate a plant, which they call fock yong, not unlike Mint, but with paler leaves. They value this plant very highly and sell the pekul of it for 50 tael. It is said to be of great service in consumption.
Perhaps 香 hōk hōng, which Lour. 441 thinks to be a Betonica. In Peking Lophanthus rugosus. Fisch. is cultivated under this name.

The greater and the less *Palma Christi* (the less in particular *Ricinus*) is planted everywhere. The kernels being pressed afford a white clear oil.

Instead of cabbage they use a plant with great coarse leaves like those of Burdock, all issuing out of a little root. The yellow flowers, the stalk with the pods, and the seeds themselves are like Calce. They daily use this plant and therefore it goes off so fast, that they immediately sow the void beds with it again. It grows very fast in all seasons. They boil and dry it and take it with them upon sea voyages.

Besides this the Tartars of Peking have a species of *White Calce* with long, narrow heads, which is scarce in Canton.

The first mentioned is probably *Sinapis brassicata*. L. (Lin. Chin. pl. 10.) which is distinguished by its large leaves, the second *Brassica chinensis*. L. which does not form heads.

Eckeb. then enumerates the following fruits: *Citrus decumana*, sweet Oranges, which come to great perfection in Fokien, Amoy, little sour *Citrus*, Leicki, Longyan, Mango trees, Olives, Pear- and Apple trees, and likewise Grapes.

The *Bolle* bushes grow spontaneously without being planted.

I may finally mention, that according to Linnaeus Eckeberg was the first, who succeeded in bringing a living Tea shrub to Europe, which Linn. received 3. Oct. 1763.


Sparrmann has dedicated to Eckeberg a new genus of plants, *Eckebergia*. (Meliaceae.)

A small collection of S. Chinese plants was made by Andreas Sparrmann in 1766. A brief account of his voyage to China and his botanical investigations there is found in Linnaeus’ *Amoenitates academ. vol.VII. 1769. p. 497—506. Sparrmann, born 1747, a Swedish botanist and traveller, visited besides China also the Cape of G. H. (1771—72). He died 1787 and has written many botanical articles in the Act. acad. holm. and in Nov. act. soc. Upsal. Linn. fil. dedicated to him the genus *Sparrmannia* (Tiliaceae.) As to his voyage to China he states that Capt. Eckeberg had invited him to accompany him. Their ship, the Navarcha passed by Macao 24. Aug. 1766 and anchored not far from the city of Canton 26. Aug. Sparrmann enumerates the following plants gathered at that place:
Thea Bohea. Linn. Chin. pl. 16.  
Ixora coccinea. l. c. 118.  
Rhamnus lineatus. l. c. 48.  
Baeckea frutescens. l. c. 85.  
Triumfetta Barthramia l. c. 31.  
Urena procumbens. l. c. 24.  
Barleria cristata. l. c. 180.  
Hedyotis fruticosa. D. IV. 123.  
Planta dubia. Spermacoce?  
Sinapis brassicata. Linn. Chin.  

In my notice of the services rendered by Swedish naturalists with respect to the investigation of Chinese Botany, I ought not to omit mentioning the name of MAGNUS VON LAGERSTROEM, born in 1696. He was an ardent naturalist and a friend of the Great Linnaeus. His position as Director of the Swedish East India Comp. at Gothenburg enabled him to procure many rare objects of natural history from India and China, which he used to present to Linnaeus. He died in Gothenburg in 1759. Linnaeus dedicated the genus Lagerstroemia to his friend. Toreen in his letters repeatedly speaks of Lagerstroem.

There is in Linn. Amoen. acad. IV. p. 230—266 a paper by J. L. Odhelo, written in 1754, devoted to the Chinensis Lagerstroemiana. The author reports, that Lagerstroem had obtained from India not only dried specimens of plants, but had also succeeded in introducing living plants from those distant countries into the botanical garden of Upsala. He enumerates namely: Cocos, Phoenix, Cycas, Saccharum Pentapetes, various species of Hibiscus, Sangus Draconis, Bambu, Cryzsa, Amaranthus, Arum chinense (I do not know to what plant the last name refers. There is no Chinese Arum in Linn. Spec. Plant.)

Besides this, Lagerstroem is stated to have been possessed of a Botanicon chinense, written in Chinese characters, in 36 volumes, of which 2 volumes contained engravings of plants, beasts, and minerals. (This was probably the well known Pents'ao kang mu.) Lagerstroem had moreover received from China a collection of about 1000 Chinese drugs.

IV. EARLY RESEARCHES INTO THE FLORA OF PEKING.

Let us return again to the Jesuit missionaries and continue to illustrate the services they have rendered in extending our knowledge of the vegetable products of China.
We have first to consider in this chapter the merits of Father Petrus d’Incarville in having sent to Europe dried plants and seeds from North-China. He was a Frenchman born in 1706. In 1740 he joined the Chinese mission of the Jesuits and died in 1757 at Peking, where he seems to have labored during the whole period of his sojourn in China. d’Incarville’s name has been repeatedly inscribed in the annals of botanical science. From the seeds of various Peking plants procured by him a number of interesting new species, now-a-days much cultivated in Europe, have been raised. A. L. de Jussieu dedicated to him the genus Incarvillea represented by one species only, the I. sinensis, a beautiful Bignonaceaeous plant with large scarlet flowers, met frequently with in the Peking plain and in the mountains, towards the end of summer.

Besides this, D’In. transmitted to his instructor Bernhard de Jussieu in Paris a collection of dried Peking plants. I am not aware to what number of species this collection amounts. It has been incorporated with the herbarium of the Museum of Paris, but has never been worked up in any regular form. Only a few new plants of it have been occasionally selected for publication by French botanists, and, it is strange to say, from 30 to 80 years and more after the specimens were received in Paris. As far as I have been able to trace out from various botanical works, the name of Inc. is connected with the following Chinese plants, of which he has supplied dried specimens or seeds.

1. Ailanthus glandulosa. Desf. Inc. first mentions this tree under the name of Frêne puant (stinking Ash.) in a memoir on Chinese wild silkworms, published a long time after his death by Cibot in the 2d vol. of the Mém. conc. les Chin. (1777.) p. 583. According to Loudon (Arb. et Frut.) seeds of this tree, sent by d’Incarville, had been received in England in 1751. It was cultivated in France also, but described for the first time by Desfontaines only in 1786.


3. In the same memoir, p. 583, Inc. speaks of an Oak (of Shantung province it seems) which he means to be identical with Quercus orientalis castaneae folio, glande recondita in capsula crassa et squamosa, which he had seen cultivated in Paris and in Toulouse. Lamarck Enc. Bot. I 719, refers this
diagnosis (Tournef.) to a variety of *Quercus aegylops* L. of the Levant. But there can be no doubt that Incarville’s Chestnut oak is the *Quercus chinensis*. Bge., very common in North-China.

4. **Zanthoxylum Avicennae**, D. C. It was first described by Lamarck l. c. II. 445, in 1786, under the name of *Fagura Avicennae*, from a specimen sent by Incarville, probably from the province of Shantung. It seems this is his Fagura or Poivrier de Chine, the leaves of which are used to feed a kind of silkworm. (see the above mentioned memoir.)

5. **Syringa villosa** first described by Vahl 1805, from specimens gathered by Incarv. in the mountains of Peking.


7. **Dicentra spectabilis** Miq. *Fumaria spectabilis* L.—Lam. l. c. II. 571, saw dried specimens of this plant sent by Incarv. in Jussieu’s herbarium. (comp. also above Linn. Chin. pl. 4.)

8. **Polygonum tinctorium**. Lour. Grosier (la Chine III. 276) reports that Inc. had sent to Paris seeds of the *Peking Indigo* (which is Pol. tinctorium.) accompanied with a memoir on the cultivation of the plant and directions for the extraction of its coloring matter. Jussieu cultivated the plant in the Royal Garden.

9. **Callistephus chinensis**, Nees. *Aster chinensis* L. Thouin (Diction. d’Agriculture l. 710.)* states that seeds of the “Reine Marguerite” sent by Incarv. to Jussieu had been for the first time received in 1728. There seems to be some misapprehension. Seeds of the Chinese Aster or Reine Marguerite may have been sent by Incarville but not in 1728, for he arrived in China only in 1740. Dillenius describes the plant for the first time in his Hort. Eltham. 1732.

There is a strong probability that many other plants of North-China cultivated in European gardens and especially in Paris since the middle of the last century, were first raised from seeds sent by Incarville, although in botanical works his name does not appear in connection with the introduction of these plants. I may mention the following:

10. **Koelreuteria paniculata**. Laxm. a tree hitherto observed in a wild state only in the neighborhood of Peking. Laxmann, a Russian botanist, described it first in 1772. Nov. Com. Acad. Petrop. XVI. He states that this shrub, the native

---

*I have not seen the original but quote from Grosier. l. c. III. 129.*
country of which then was unknown, had been cultivated for 20 years in the hot-houses of the bot-garden of St. Petersb. It had first flowered in 1772. Lam. i.e. VI. 667 (1804) notices the K. paniculata as cultivated in Paris, but says nothing about its introduction. In England it was introduced in 1763. I am not aware what plant is intended by Sizindus Koelreuteria. Blanco. Fl. Philippin. 289.

11. **Zizyphus chinensis.** Lam. i.e. III. 318 states, that this tree is cultivated in the Royal Garden, Paris, and that it is said to be a native of China. Z. chinensis, the same as Z. vulgaris. Lam is very common at Peking.

12. **Caragana Chamlagu.** Lam. First described as Robinia Chamlagu by l' Héritier, Stirpea novae, 1784. p. 161. Ex traditione in horto Parisiensis accepta gignitur in China eamque dieunt Chamlagu ubi nomen vulgare Sinarum. I am not prepared to explain this name. C. Chamlagu is a common plant in the Peking mountains. It has also been gathered at Ningpo and Shanghai (Fortune, Forbes.)

13. **Gleditschia sinensis.** Lam. i.e. II. 466 (1786) states: cultivated in the Royal garden, Paris; it is said to have been raised from seeds received from China. The tree is common in N. China.

14. **Vitex incisa.** Lam. i.e. II. 612 (1786.) said to be a native of China, cultivated in the Royal garden, Paris. Miller (Fig. Gard. Dict. tab. 274.) states that seeds of this plant had been sent by missionaries from China to Paris. This shrub is very common at Peking and has been observed only in N. China, as far as I can conclude from the quotations in D. C. XI. 684. See above Linn. Chin. pl. 185.

15. **Lyceum chinense.** L. Miller in his Gard. Dict (1768) No. 6 states with respect to L. halimifolium (L. chinense) that Bernh. Jussieu, who had received the seeds of this plant from the missionaries in China, transmitted them to Miller. Lam. i.e. II. 509 says that L. chinense is cultivated since a long time in the Royal Garden.

It is generally believed that **Sophora japonica.** L. has been first introduced into our gardens by James Gordon in 1753 (See Acton Hort. Kew. III. 2). But in a letter which I lately received from Mr. J. Decaisne he kindly informs me that Sophora japonica was introduced into the Jardin des Plantes by d'Incarville.

During my last stay in St. Petersburg, in 1878, I fell in with a curious memoir by Incarville, an Alphabetic Catalogue of Peking Plants and other objects of natural history,
published in the Memoirs of the Soc. of Naturalists of Moscow, in 1812. (In French.) In an introductory note it is stated, that the original M. S. of this paper exists in the Archives of the Foreign Office at Moscow and had been communicated to the Society by Mr. Molinofsky, councillor of state. It seems that this catalogue had been drawn up by Incarville at the request of Bernh. Jussieu, his instructor. The Chinese characters accompanying the native names of plants, given in the M. S. have been omitted in the printing. Dr. Fischer, inspector of the botanical garden at Gorenki (subsequently Director of the Bot. Garden St. Petersburg) has supplied some scientific botanical names, for Incarville, besides the Chinese names, gives only old French popular appellations of plants. Even at the time when Incarville's paper was published the Flora of Peking had not yet been investigated by men of science and I venture to believe, that in the herbariums of the Botan. Garden and of the Academy in St. Petersburg, which now are so abundantly provided with plants from North-China, there was then hardly a specimen procured from Peking. Thus Fischer, in commenting on Incarville's accounts merely identifies the old French names of plants with the scientific Latin genus names. Incarville notices about 260 Peking plants or drugs, adds generally the Chinese names and occasionally some particulars regarding the economical uses of these plants. As I am tolerably well acquainted with the Flora of North-China and as I know also the popular names applied by the Chinese to the cultivated and some wild growing plants, I find no difficulty in ascertaining the plants mentioned by Incarville. But it would draw out my paper to an unconscionable length, were I to reproduce Incarville's enumeration and to comment on it.

From some allusions in Incarville's memoir it can be inferred that he used to keep up a correspondence with some of the learned academicians in St. Petersburg. He refers to a letter Krasheninikov had written to him about some seeds received from Peking. His collections destined for Jussieu, Inc. used to intrust to the care of the Russian caravans from Kiakhta (resp. Moscow) which every three years visited Peking. Jussieu seems to have forwarded European plants to Inc. by the same way, for in one instance the latter speaks of some bulbs and seeds sent by Jussieu in 1748, and of the delay in their transmission from Kiakhta by the Russian caravan.

In Koch's Dendrology, II. 307. I find a statement, that Adr. Jussieu after his death left a M. S. by Incarville, relating his
voyage to China, and a collection of 4010 Chinese drawings representing plants and animals, which then became the property of the Muséum d’histoire naturelle. Anxious to see these documents I addressed myself personally to Mr. Decaisne, the eminent French botanist and director of that Museum. As they were found not to exist there M. Decaisne was kind enough to inquire about them at some other libraries in Paris, where he supposed they might have been deposited. But all inquiries proved unsuccessful. Koch has probably been mistaken, not, I believe, with respect to the real existence of such manuscripts and drawings, but evidently as to their fate after Jussieu’s death.

I go on now to illustrate the labours in the way of botanical researches of another Jesuit missionary of Peking, who followed Incarville’s footsteps.

PIERRE MARTIAL CIBOT was born in 1727 in Limoges, in France. He came to China in 1759 (thus two years after Incarville’s death.) and died in Peking in 1784. He was a prolific author and had a predilection for Botany. There are a considerable number of interesting observations from his pen, relating to Peking plants and their economic uses. All his papers have been printed in the Mémoires concernant les Chinois etc., this vast repertory of the scientific labours of the Jesuit Missionaries at Peking in the second half of the 18th cent., issued in 16 vol. from 1776 to 1814. Cibot’s articles are found in vol. II. (1777), III (1778), IV (1779), V (1780), VIII (1782), XI (1786). We are of course not to seek for scientific botanical names in Cibot’s accounts. He confines himself to good popular descriptions and adds generally the names. The following is the list of the plants spoken of in Cibot’s papers, with the modern botanical names and the Chinese characters added.


Brassica chinensis. L. sin: 白菜 pai ts'ai.

2. The Lien hao treated of in vol. III. 437, and XI. 218, is Nelumbium speciosum. Willd. sin: 蓮花 lien hua

3. A good description of the water plant Lien kien or Ki teou is found in vol. III 451.

This is Euryale ferox. Salisb. sin: 蓮芡 lien kien or 雞頭 kei ts'ou (fowl’s head.)

4. The Lin kio or Water Chestnut. III. 449, is

Trapa bispinosa. Roxbg. sin: 魚角 ying kio.

6. The *hong hoa* used as a red dye, V. 498, is *Carthamus tinctorius*. L. sin: 紅花 hung hua.

7. The *siao lan* from which in Peking a blue dye is obtained, a “Persicaire,” as Cibot correctly states, V. 499, is *Polygonum tinctorium*. Lour. sin: 小藍 siao lan.

8. Various kinds of *Artemisia* used by the Chinese for preparing their *moza* and also a sort of tinder

*Artemisia vulgaris* L. ( *A. ignaria*. Maxim.) and *Tanacetum chinense*. A. Gray.


11. The *Moutan* flower, III. 432, is *Paeonia Moutan* Sims. Sin: 牡丹 mu tan.

12. The *Kui hoa*, *Matricaire de Chine*, III 455, is the celebrated *Chrysanthemum indicum* L. and *Chr. sinense*. Sab. sin: 菊花 Kui hua.


15. The *Yu lan*, III. 441, is *Magnolia Yulan*. Desf. sin: 玉蘭 yu lan.


17. The *Mo li hoa*, III. 446, is *Jasminum Sambac*. L. sin: 茉莉花 mo li hua.


20. On the *Apricots of Peking*, cultivated and wild. V. 505.

21. On Chinese *Chestnuts*. III. 484. Cibot states, probably on the authority of ancient Chinese authors, that the Chinese graft the Chestnut tree upon the Walnut tree.

22. Cibot asserts further, that the Chinese graft the Quince tree upon the Orange tree. III. 495.


27. The tree chou kou, resembling the Mulberry tree and the fibrous bark of which is used for making paper, XI. 295, is Broussonetia papyrifera. Vent. sin: 桑皮 ch’u ku.
29. Cibot translates from Emperor Kanghi’s memoirs an account of a barkless tree of Mongolia, called Tcha ke, furnishing an excellent fuel. IV. 460.—This is the Haloxylon ammodendron C. A. Mey, the dshak modo of the Mongols.
30. The tree Lo ye song, a Fir tree with deciduous leaves, in South-Mongolia, IV. 454, is Larix dahurica. Fisch. sin: 洛葉松.
31. An interesting memoir on Chinese Bamboos is found II. 623.
32. The mou chou kouo tse, a tree on which peculiar Galls are produced, XI. 294, is Celtis sinensis. Pers. sin: 木樹果子. mu shu kuo ts‘.
33. The Lin tchi, Agaric ramiqte, described in vol. IV. p. 500, with an engraving, is a Chinese Agaric, termed 靈芝 ling chi in Peking, not yet examined by botanists.
34. The Mo kou sin. IV. 500, accompanied with an engraving. This is the Clathrus mokusin Spreng. Phallus mokusin. L. A more detailed article on this Fungus, has been published by Cibot in the Mémoires de l’Académie de St. Pétersb. IX (1774) The Chin. characters are 瓣蕊moduleId mo ku sin.
35. Finally I ought not to omit to mention a treatise written by Cibot on Chinese Hot-houses, in which he furnishes interesting details with respect to the primitive but practical mode of Peking gardeners to protect Southern plants in winter, and how they proceed to cause plants to put forth blossoms in winter. Vol. III. 423.

For the sake of completeness I may mention moreover in connection with papers on botanical matters two Jesuit missionaries of Peking, contemporaries of Cibot. One of them L. COLLAS, +1781, wrote an article on Chinese Bamboos, and another on the plants, flowers and trees of China, which could be cultivated in France. Mém. conc. Chin. XI. 553, 183. L. de Foirrot, +1802, has written a paper on Chinese Worm wood (Artemisia). ibid. IX. 244.

Before quitting the subject dealt with in this chapter it may not be out of place to call the attention of the reader to a slight account of Northern Chinese fruits and vegetables found
in PALLAS' notable work REISEN DURCH VERSCH. PROVINZEN DES RUSSI- SCHEN REICHES, 1768–1773. In the 3d. volume Pallas details some natural products sold in the streets of the Chinese market town Muimaiche, opposite K i a k h t a, which place he visited in 1772. Most of these fruits and vegetables, brought for the greater part from Peking, were completely unknown to him, but he describes them and adds the Chinese or Mongol names. As it may be presumed, that hardly any botanist, not acquainted with the native names of North-China and Mongol names of plants, would be able to ascertain what fruits are enumerated in Pallas' account, I venture to make some brief commentary on it.

Small green Peas, called to dou, which Pallas correctly identifies with Phasecolus radiatus. L. See above Lin. Chin. pl. 74.

Arbuzes, Pears, Apples, called pin sa and resembling green Rennet apples.

Watermelons (Arbuz in Russian) are cultivated in Transbaicalia, but no edible pears or apples are grown in Southern Siberia. 窯子 p'in tez' in Peking is a small dark-red Apple.

Oblong Quinces, called mugha.

Cydonia sinensis. Thouin. Sin: 木瓜 mu kua. The fruits of this are brought to Peking from the province of Shantung. They are oblong and often of enormous size.

Lemons, sweet and acid Oranges, Walnuts, Chestnuts, called lidsa.

Castanea vesca 粒子 li tez'.

Small red Medlars, Mespilus fructu obtuste pentagono, ruberrimo. These are said to grow wild in North-China. The Chinese boil them with sugar and thus make a kind of Jam.

An excellent Jam is prepared in Peking from the fruit of Crataegus pinnatifida. Bge.

The fruit Aleana is the fruit of the tree Akashu, an Apple tree of Southern-China.

Aleana is the Mongol name for Apple. It seems that the other name is a corruption of 沙果樹 sha kuo shu, Apple tree. Sha kuo at Peking is a small red-cheeked Apple.

Pallas saw also a most curious kind of Citron, splitting into 12 fingerlike divisions. It is devoid of pulp and seeds, but is very fragrant. The Chinese called it Fui shu.


Small fruit of a kind of Elaeagnus with a peculiar stone. The Bukhars call it drhigde, the Mongols zaga, the Chinese sazusa.
The fruit Pallas saw was probably that of *Elaeagnus hortensis* M. B. var. *sungarica* or the var. *orientalis*, (D. C. XIV. 609.) The Kirghizes call the *Elaeagnus* fruit *daghde*, the Chinese *沙棗* *sha tsao*. (Sand Jujube, name applied in Peking to *E. latifolia*. L.)

Smoke dried red *Plums, shuptaga*, with roundish stones.

*Shuptaga* is the Mongol name for Jujubes. *Zizyphus chinsensis* Lam. has small fruits with roundish stones. The Chinese use to dry them.

Black sweetish fruit with many flat seeds, called *hodesoi*.

Probably *Diospyros Lotus*. L. Sin: 黑棗 *he tsao.*

Pallas states that the same fruit is brought to Kiakhta from Persia, and called *vorokum.*

Pallas describes also the fruit *lun yen* (*Nephelium Longan*). He saw further some leguminous fruit, each containing two seeds, resembling in taste those of the tree *Arabis curassavica* (?)

Probably *Arachis hypogaea*. L.

White nuts with a smooth shell like the stone of the Apricot and of a bitter taste. They call them *lanziu* or *boigo.*

*Salsbubria adiantifolia.* Smith. 白果 *pai kuo* in Peking.

Long dried flowers, called *tchetcheng*, brought from the South. The Chinese boil and eat them.

*Hemerocallis fulva*. L. and other species. Sin: 金蓮花 *kin cheng hua.* The flowers are a favorite vegetable of the Chinese. In Mongol shira *tsitsik.*

Long articulated spongy roots of a water plant. This was I think the root of *Nelumbium speciosum* Willd. from which the Chinese prepare a kind of Arrow root.

**V. SONNERAT.**

About a quarter of a century after Osbeck had herborized in the neighborhood of Canton, China was visited by a French naturalist, who gathered some plants at the same place it seems. **P. SONNERAT** was born in 1745 and spent a great part of his life, from 1768-1803, in travelling to different distant countries of the old and the new world. In 1768 he went to Isle de France, visited with *Commerson* Madagascar and Bourbon. From 1774 to 1781 he travelled to China and India, and settled finally at Pondicherry. In 1803 he returned to France with an immense collection. He died in 1814. Lamarck in his Enc. Botan. has described a great number of Sonnerat’s specimens.

There is a work entitled: *Voyage aux Indes Orientales et à la Chine 1774-1781* par M. Sonnerat, Commissaire de la marine, naturaliste du Roy. 1782, 2 vol.
All that I can gather with respect to Sonnerat’s voyage to China is on the title of this book. The text contains no allusion to his journey but consists of several articles on the countries he visited and the natural objects he collected there. It may be assumed however, that Canton was the place he visited in China. In the 2d volume p. 222–248 we find descriptions of plants with good engravings. Only 3 Chinese plants are there represented, viz:


Besides this Lamarré noticed some plants gathered by Sonnerat in China. I name those which I have happened to find mentioned.

- Ixora chinensis. Lam. III. 344.
- Capsicum sinense. Lam. V. 327.
- Phyllanthus villosus. Lam. (Poir.) V. 297.
- Adiantum flabellatum. Lam. I. 42. Flor. hongk. 447.

VI. LOUREIRO.

We come now to the most conspicuous among the Jesuit missionaries, who have devoted themselves to the investigation of Chinese botany. I shall attempt presently to give an account of LOUREIRO’S FLORA COCHIN-CHINENSIS, a valuable monument of conscientious labour and considerable research. Although it deals properly, as the title intimates, with the Flora of Cochinchina, there are also described in it a considerable number of Chinese plants.

Let me introduce the subject with a short biographical notice derived principally from the preface to the book, written by the author himself. I have also consulted Colmeiro’s History of Botany in Spain and Portugal 1855. (in Spanish.)

Joannis de Loureiro was a Portuguese. According to Colmeiro he was born in 1715 and proceeded in 1735 as a missionary to Cochinchina. But from Loureiro’s own account we infer
that he arrived in Cochinchina about 1743, for he says that
when in 1779 he established himself in Canton, he had spent
36 years in Cochinchina. As he states, p. 818, that in 1742 he
was in Cambodja, we can therefore infer that he first lived in
that country. It seems, that after his arrival in Cochinchina
he had soon gained influence, for we find him holding an office
at the Court of the King. (Rebus mathematicis ac physicis in
Aula praefectus). Some knowledge of medical practice which
he had previously acquired rendered him very popular among
the people. He tells us that, European medicines not being
within his reach, he was obliged to depend entirely on native
drugs, and by investigating them he was necessarily induced to
study the flora of the country and to make botanical collections.
This was the origin of his herbarium. His collection of plants
of Cochinchina (nearly 1000 species) seems to be confined
for the greater part to a small area of the littoral region. He
says, that his herbarium is far from being complete and may
represent only about a quarter of the flora of Cochinchina. It
had been impossible for him to procure plants from the distant
forests. Only a few specimens had been obtained with great
pains and not without danger from the (neighboring) forest-
covered mountains. As at the time of Loureiro the capital of
Cochinchina, where he lived, was at Hué (near the sea coast,
about 17° N.L.) it may be assumed, that the largest part of his
Cochinchenese specimens were gathered in the neighborhood of
that place. He generally does not specify the stations of the
plants he collected in Cochinchina but confines himself to
the statement that they are natives of that country. It is
only in a few cases, which I shall notice here, that he refers
to the stations.

Hué, the metropolis of Cochinchina, is only once mentioned
p. 129.

The port of Éo near Hué, ibidem.
The rivulet Hon mo, not far from Hué, p. 32.
The mountain of Ho chen opposite Hué, p. 201.
The mountain of Con mit situated at a distance of 6 miles
from Hué, p. 753.
The port of Tura, called Han by the natives, south of
Hué, p. 208.

Province of Doung nai in the Southern part of Cochinchina,

Province of Binh khang in the southern part of Cochinchina,

Province of Quang binh in North-Cochinchina. p. 404.
Via (province?) Nha ho in North-Cochinchina. p. 544.
The country of the Moji (tribe) in the west, p. 679.
Mountain Ngon nhung (Cochinchina) p. 646.
Sandhills of Son hong (Cochinchina) p. 243, 547.
River Laruus flowing between Cochinchina and Laos. p. 327.

In 1779 Loureiro proceeded to Canton, where he continued his botanical researches during three years. At that time foreigners living in Canton were not allowed to walk beyond the limits of the factories, L. hired a Chinese peasant, acquainted to a certain degree with the medicinal plants of the country, to collect such for him. This Chinaman used to communicate also the native names of the plants he brought in the vernacular Cantonese dialect. But as the information thus derived seemed not always to be reliable, L. compared it with a Chinese book on Botany, in which he was able to find the correct names of the plants used for medical and economic purposes, and in his Flora cochinchinensis tried to spell these names according to the Mandarin dialect.

Loureiro seems to have embarked with his botanical treasures in 1782. On his way home he visited the island of Mozambique, where he made a stay of three months, enriching his herbarium with many rare specimens. He states further, that during his peregrinations he had improved the opportunity by herbarizing in Cambodja, Champava, Bengal, Malabar, Sumatra. All the plants gathered in those regions he describes also in the Fl. Coch.

After having reached his native country L. was taken up during several years, in Lisbon, with the preparation of his work for publication. In 1788 the M.S. of the Flora coch, written in Latin, and arranged according to the Linnaean system, was completed, but the book was not brought out before 1799. Three years later Willdenow edited it anew, adding some notes, which however throw little light on dubious questions and as he had no opportunity of referring to Loureiro's herbarium his identifications are not always happy.* In the following notes, quoting Loureiro, I always refer to Willd. edition.


There is no allusion in L.'s preface to his having belonged to the Soc. of the Jesuits. On the title page he styles himself only: olim in Cochinchina Catholicae Fidei praece. But in

* On p. 458 he identifies Loureiro's Campsis adrepons with Incarvillea sinensis. But the former is Bignonia grandiflora and bears no resemblance to Incarvillea.
the Catalogus he is stated to have entered the Jesuit mission in China in 1779.

Loureiro occupies without doubt one of the most prominent places among the botanical collectors of the last century. We owe to him one of the most important contributions illustrating the Flora of the eastern part of the transgangetic peninsula and of South-China, and his book is still a standard work to which botanists dealing with Chinese plants have frequently to refer. Although a self-taught and not professional botanist, L. had acquired good botanical knowledge, at least he was up to the level of his time. Modern botanists often find fault with his description of plants. But may we not ask whether it would be possible to identify even a quarter of Linnaeus' plants only from the short characters he gives, had his herbarium been lost, as is the case with the greater part of Loureiro's collection. Thus Loureiro is not to be blamed for want of scientific accuracy in our modern sense or for mistakes occasionally met with in his work. Generally it can be said, that he was a conscientious observer and his veracity is always beyond question.

One great merit of the Flora cochin. consists in descriptions made by a botanist upon living or fresh plants. It is a matter of regret, that the greater part of the existing Floras of various exotic regions have necessarily been based upon the description of dried specimens and often unsatisfactory material. The botanist in Europe, who works up these collections then knows nothing more about the plants he has to describe than he observes on the dry specimens. Thus it is quite exceptional to find in De Candolle's Prodr. the colour of the blossoms noticed, although this is a very important characteristic.

The value of Loureiro's elaborate work lies also in the illustrations he gives with respect to the economical use, medical virtues etc. of the plants. The Chinese names he adds are for the greater part correct.* He gives them

---

*I take the opportunity of noticing here a very valuable list of Canton plants with the Chinese names added, and accompanied with interesting annotations, published two years ago in the Hongkong China Mail, July 10 to Sept. 11, 1878. The anonymous author of this paper, which gives the Chinese, (Cantonese) names of nearly 300 plants, states, that in compiling this list he did not refer to any printed authority for the application of any one Cantonese name to any single botanical name. But every plant had been shown to at least three natives to ascertain the Chinese names and then referred to a competent botanical authority, to supply the scientific name. This is indeed the only rational way to identify Chinese appellations of plants. I have been informed, that Mr. E. H.
now in the Mandarin, now in the popular Canton dialect and makes sometimes mistakes in transliterating the characters.

A considerable number of plants described by Loureiro, especially of Southern Chinese ones have been gathered by later collectors, who investigated the Floras of Canton, Macao or Hongkong. Loureiro's name occurs frequently in Hooker and Arnott, Botany of Capt. Beechey's voyage—in Mogen's Observ. botan. in it. c. terram.—in Bentham's Flora hongkongensis. Dr. Hance has also rediscovered many Loureirian specimens. But a great part of Loureiro's plants, in particular those from Cochinchina are still known only from his description, although they are probably very common in that country. It may be also that many Loureirian species relegated by botanists among the species dubiae are known under other scientific names. From the diagnoses alone given by L., without examining the original specimens, it is impossible to identify them.

I may say finally a few words with respect to the fate of Loureiro's herbarium. From his preface we learn, that in 1774, when he was still in Cochinchina, he had sent by way of Canton to England and Sweden about 60 specimens of plants, accompanied with his own original descriptions, and that Berg in his Materia med. p. 5 and Linnaeus fil. Suppl. p. 331, have noticed these plants. In 1779, when he was already established in Canton he transmitted to London 230 species more, which seemed to him to be novelties. This collection is now in the British Museum. As we can conclude from some references found in Benth. and Hook. Gen. Plant. these plants have been badly preserved and their examination is of little use for deciding dubious questions. According to Colmeiro the bulk of Loureiro's herbarium was

Parker of the British Cons. Serv. at Canton is the author of this paper, and I need hardly say, that the competent botanical author alluded to in it, is my respected friend Dr. H. F. Hance. I hope these gentlemen will pardon my having disclosed their names. The only faults I have to find with Mr. Parker's paper, are its publication in a Newspaper, where hardly any one interested in these questions would dream of looking for it, and the arrangement of the list in no intelligible order, scattered over 8 numbers of the China Mail with the interesting annotations generally not placed in the same number as the plants to which they refer. It would be worth reprinting in a form more accessible for reference.—M. Parker is right in supposing that a great part of the Chinese names of plants, given by Dr. Williams (Bridgman's Chrestomathy) have been derived from Loureiro.
kept by the Academy of Lisbon, but in 1808, when Napoleon I. had taken possession of Portugal a part of the herbarium was transferred to Paris, where it still exists in the Muséum d'hist. nat. as Mr. Decaisne has kindly informed me. My late friend Mr. D. Hanbury gives the following account with respect to Loureira's herbarium. (Science Papers 98) M. Pereira Da Costa of Lisbon had informed him, that the herbarium in question had never been at the Academy; it was supposed to have formerly belonged to the Musen da Ajuda; but upon the removal of that establishment to the Academy, no trace of it could be discovered.

A great number of new plants have been described by Loureira. Among the new Genera he has proposed, the following 30 have been ascertained and retained in Bentham and Hooker's (or Endlicher's) Genera Plantarum.

Argyreia.   Enkianthus. Rhynchosia.
Coeus.      Limacia.    Striga.
Derris.     Mazus.      Triphasia.

The total number of plants described in Loureira's Flora cochin. is 1257 of which 36 must be deducted as having been gathered in India, Sumatra, Mozambique. Of the remaining 1221 he enumerates 976 for Cochinchina and of these, 294 he had also gathered in China. As found only in China he mentions 245 spec. Thus the total number of Chinese plants observed by Lour. is 539. Of 341 of these China in general is given as habitat. With respect to the rest he indicates the habitat precisely, viz.

Canton and Macao 193 plants.
Southern China in general 2.
Province of Yunnan 1. Amomum medium. p. 5.
Mountains of West-China 1. Nardus indica. p. 57.
North-China 15 species. These plants or accounts of them had probably been sent to Loureira from Peking by the Jesuits there (Incarville? Cibot?)
Dorstenia chinensis. p. 114.
Rhamnus soporifer. p. 196.
Pyrus Malus. p. 393.
Pyrus Cydonia. p. 394.
Potentilla fruticosa. p. 399.
Sinapis pekinensis. p. 485.
Glycyrrhiza echinata. p. 543.
Robinia flava. p. 556.
Cichorium Endivia. p. 583.
Artemisia annua (Peking.) p. 599.
Paeonia officinalis. p. 419.
Juglans regia. p. 702.

CHINESE PLANTS DESCRIBED IN LOUREIRO’S FLORA COCHINCHINENSIS.

In what follows I shall give a list of all the plants Loureiro mentions for China and include also those species which he had gathered only in Cochinchina but which subsequently have been observed also in China.

I arrange the list according to the Natural System adopted by Bentham and Hooker, giving for each plant at first the Loureirian name, the habitat and the Chinese name as noticed by Loureiro, and quoting the page in the Flora cochin. After this I shall add, if necessary, my observations. Many of Loureiro’s plants have by the progress of science received other names and mistakes made by that author have been occasionally corrected. In my researches with respect to Loureirian plants I depend upon De Candolle’s Prodromus, Kunth’s Enumeratio plantarum, Bentham and Hooker’s Genera Plantarum, Bentham’s Flora hongkongensis, the botanical papers published by Maximowicz, Dr. Hance and others. I shall also give the Chinese names of plants noticed by Loureiro, as far as I have been able to ascertain them.

With respect to the abbreviations used in the following notes I beg to refer to my list of Chinese plants known to Linnaeus. When quoting Osbeck I always refer to that list not to Osbeck’s Voyage.

DICOTYLEDONS.


    Willdenow thinks, that it is the same as C. chinensis. Retz. Obs. 1.

3. **Clematis virginiana.** Lour. (non Linn.) Cochin-China. 422.


5. **Hecatonia paluistra.** Lour. Sin: **chu lien.** Canton. 371.

    D. C. I. 34. Ranunculus sceleratus. Linn.—Hcc. add. Fl. hgk. 98.


    D. C. I. 43. Ranunculus cantoniensis. Not observed after Lour.


    The above Chinese name is applied in China to P. albiflora. Pall.

8. **Calligonum asperum.** Lour. Cochin. 418.


    D. C. I. 70. Trachysetsa Actaea.—G. Pl. I. 12. spec. valde dubia.—

    Bridgm. Chrest. 457 (3).

10. **Illicium anisatum.** L. Provinciae ad occasum Canton.

    Sin: **pa co huei hiam** (八角回香). 432.

    Comp. above Linn. Chin. pl. 2.

11. **Liriodendron Coco.** Lour. Macao, Canton, Cochin.

    culta. 424.

    Hance Advers. in stirp. crit. 6. Magnolia pumila. Andr.—Fl. hgk. 8.

12. **Liriodendron iliijera.** Linn. Canton. Lour. 424.

    D. C. I. 81. Magnolia inodora. Not observed after Lour. Comp. also


13. **Liriodendron Figo.** Macao, Canton, cult. 424.

    Hance Advers. 6. Michelia (Magnolia Andr.) fuscata.


    The above Chin. name is applied in Canton to Artobotrys odoratissima.

    R. Br. (Parker.)—Fl. hgk. 10.


    D. C. I. 91. Unona chinensis. Species non satis nota.


    As is known this is a native of tropical America. The name Lour.

    gives as a Chinese appellation is the Malay name of the fruit, being **busa**

    nonsa (Cyclop. of India.)


D. C. I. 113. *Nelumbium speciosum*. Willd.—Osb. 3—Fl. hkg. 15.


Chel. majus is common in North-China. D. C. I. 123: means that Lour.’s plant is a new species: *Ch. sinense*.


D. C. I. 236. *Nasturtium*? *chinense* (Lour.’s plant). Not observed in China after Lour.


D. C. I. 152. European plant, not observed in China, after Lour.


Osb. 5. The above Chin. name given by Lour. is found in the Kuang tung tung chi. (vegetables).


Linn. Chin. pl. 8. In Peking different varieties of *S. juncea*. L. go under the above Chinese name.


In Peking this Chin. name is applied to *Brassica chinensis*.


Linn. Chin. pl. 10.—D. C. I. 219.


Flor. hkg. 17.—Cultivated throughout China.


33. **Capparis falcata.** Lour. Canton. 405.

   Not observed after Lour.

35. **Viola primulaefolia.** Linn. Canton. Lour. 628.
   D. C. I. 293. Viola Patrinii var. chinensis. (Lour.'s plant.) Fl. hongk. 20.

   Lour. 627.
   Maxim. identifies Lour.'s plant with V. serpena. Wall. Fl. hbgk. 20.
   V. confusa


38. **Salomonia cantoniensis.** Lour. Sin: siao lam teng.
   Canton. 18.

39. **Polygala sibirica.** Linn. Canton. Lour. 517.
   Frequent in North-China.

   D. C. I. 326. specim. in Mus. Paris.—Fl. hbgk. 44.

41. **Dianthus caryophyllus.** Linn. China, colitur.
   Lour. 345.
   Probably another species.

42. **Dianthus chinensis.** Linn. China, Coch. cult.
   Lour. 346.

   According to Willdenow this is Lychnis grandiflora, Jacq.—Bridgen.
   Chrest. 454 (66.) Lychnis coronata, Sin: 虞美人 a mi yan.

44. **Cerastium repens.** Linn. Canton, Cochín. Sin: a kim tsao.
   Lour. 349.
   D. C. I. 419. Cerastium arvense. L. ?—The latter plant occurs in North-
   China.

   Fl. hbgk. 327.


D. C. I. 561. *Garcinia Cambodjana*. Desc.—According to Hanbury (Science pap. 329) the Gamboge of Siam and Singapore is yielded by *Garcinia Morella*.


D. C. I. 530. *Thea chinensis*, var. Bohea. L. In the Chinese name given by Lour. *Ho nam* means probably the island of this name on which a suburb of Canton is situated.


Not observed after Lour.—Not to be confounded with *Thea oleifera*. Abel, which according to Hance is *Camellia Sasamqua*. Thbg.


D. C. I. 529. Dubia.


Comp. Linn. Chin. pl. 20.


Fl. bgk. 33.


Osb. 24.


Flor. bgk. 34.
   Osb. 23.—Fl. hkg. 34.
   Lour. 511.
   D. C. I. 448. gives only India as native country. I know that it is much cultivated in South-China.
   Lour. 512.
   D. C. I. 450. India orient. cult.
66. **Hibiscus tiliaceus.** Linn. China, Cochin. Lour. 509.
   Fl. hkg. 35.
   Lour. 505.
   Osb. 27.
68. **Bombax pentandrum.** Linn. China, Cochin. Sin: *mo mien hoa* (木棉花), *wun zu*.
   Lour. 504.
   D. C. I. 479. *Eriodendron anfractuosum*. India orientalis.—The tree is well known to the Chinese.
69. **Helicteres undulata.** Lour. Cochin. 649.
   Spreng. Syst. III. 81. *Stereolius lanceolata*. Cav.—Fl. hkg. 36.
   Osb. 29.—Fl. hkg. 37.—Parker, the same Chin. name as Lour.
   D. C. I. 498. India orient.—Cultivated Canton (Williams).
   Hance, Journ. Bot. IX. 239. *Grewia microcos*. Linn. known to Linn. from Ceylon.—Fl. hkg. 42.
73. **Ardisia rugosa.** Lour. Cochin. 409.
   Fl. hkg. 40.
75. **Oxalis corniculata.** Linn. China, Cochin. **Sin:** teo tao (酸浆草). Lour. 350.
Osb. 32.—Fl. hkg. 56.

76. **Oxalis sensitivaw.** Linn. Canton, Cochin. **Sin:** chan tso. Lour. 350.
D. C. I. 690. Biophytum sensitivum. Ind. orient.—Not observed in China after Lour.

77. **Averrhoa Carambola.** Linn. China austr. Cochin. **Sin:** yam tao (杨桃). Lour. 354.
Osb. 33.—Fl. hkg. 56.

78. **Impatiens Balsamine.** Linn. Cochin. agrest. cult. Lour. 626.
Osb. 34.—Much cultivated throughout China.

79. **Impatiens chinensis.** Linn. Canton, cult. spont. **Sin:** hung than kio. Lour. 625.
Osb. 35.

80. **Impatiens mutilus.** Lour. China, Cochin. cult. 627.

81. **Impatiens cochleata.** Lour. Canton, cult. **Sin:** tsien chi hum. 686.

82. **Tribulus terrestris.** Linn. China, Cochin. **Sin:** cie li tsao (蒺藜子). Lour. 331.

Very common in Nothern China. Has been gathered also in Formosa.

83. **Ruta chalepensis.** Linn. China, Cochin. cult. **Sin:** sao tso. Lour. 330.
D. C. I. 710. B. bracteata. According to Parker, list of Canton plants, the Chinese call it 臭草 ch'ou ts'ao.

84. **Lepta triphylla.** Lour. Cochin. 104.

85. **Fagura piperita.** Linn. Cochin. Lour. 101.

86. **Piper pinnatum.** Lour. China. **Sin:** xu tso (蜀椒). 38.
D. C. XVI. I. 383. ignotum.—Judging from the Chin. name it seems to be a Zanthoxylum.

87. **Zanthoxylum clava Herculis.** Linn. China, Cochin. **Sin:** so. Lour. 810.

88. **Jambolofera pedunculata.** Linn. Macao. Lour. 283.

89. **Triphasis aurantiqa.** Lour. China, Cochin. cult. 189, 572.
G. Pl. I. 303. Species chinensis. **Sin:** Limoa trifoliata. Linn. Known to Linn. from India.


D. C. I 537. *Murraya exotica*. L. India. Flor. hkg. 50. According to Parker the Chin. name given by Lour. for *Ch. paniculata*, is applied to *Murraya exotica*.


D. C. I. 535. *Atalanta monophylla*. India orient.—Loureiro’s plant may be *Atalanta Hindisii*. Oliv. or *A. buxifolia*. Oliv.—Fl. hkg. 51. Osb. 40.


Osb. 37. As far as I know the above Chin. name in Canton is rather applied to the Mandarin orange.


Kerr bot. reg. t. 211. *Mandarin Orange*. Introduced into Europe from China in 1805.


In Peking the above Chinese name is applied to Bunge’s *Citrus microcarpa*, which is I think the same as *Citrus japonica*. Thbg. fructu globoso. Hooker bot. mag. 6128 (1874) refers also Loureiro’s *C. margarita* to this species.—See also Osb. 39.


Osb. 41. Largely cultivated in South-China.


This curious fruit with its lobes separating into fingerlike divisions is frequently seen in China. It is cultivated in Peking as well as the *Citrus medica Cedra*, of which it is a variety. Ten years ago I stated in my.
paper: On the Study and Value of Chin. bot. Works, p. 12, that the Chinese fingered Citron is the *Citrus Sarcodactylis* or *Sarcodactylis helicterides* of Gaertner Fruct. III. 39. t. 185. But that was an error. The latter, which Gaertner had received from Guyana, is as Bent. et Hook. G. Pl. I. 305 correctly state, a variety of *C. decumana*.


Osbr. 42. *Citrus medica*, var. *acida*.


D. C. II. 88. *Bucida sumatrana*. Roxb.—Fl. hgrk. 60.


D. C. I. 621. Ceylon, Syria.—Parker, Canton, 森棟 *shen lien*.


According to Parker in Canton 米仔蘭 *mi ts'e lan*.


In North-China the above Chinese name is applied to *Zizyphus vulgaris* Lam.


Not observed after Lour.


According to Parker this Chinese name in Canton is applied to *Sap. mukorossi*. Gaert. (Japan).


Osb. 51.—Fl. hbg. 47. *Nephelium Litchi*. Camb.


Osb. 51.—Fl. hbg. 47. *Nephelium Longan*.


The Chinese Varnish tree.—G. Pl. I. 418. *Augia* est genus omnino ignotum; ex descr. multis notis cum *Rhoids quadrat*.


Osb. 58.—Fl. hgd. 77.

sin*. 559.
D. C. II. 233. Species dubia.


sem* (苦 参 ?) 556.
D. C. II. 232. Species dubia. In Japan the above Chinese name is 
applied to *Sophora angustifolia*. S. et Z.

*Fu chau can tao* (府州甘草). Lour. 543.
D. C. II. 248. Tataria.

Sin: *Fun chau can tao* (汾州甘草). Lour. 543.
D. C. II. 247. Europa anstr.—Gl. glabra, var. glandulosa has been 
oberved in North-China and may yield a part of Chinese Liquorice root 
(甘 藁). According to Chinese books the best comes from the north-
western provinces. *Fu chou* (see 131.) is an ancient name for Fu-kü hien 
in N. Shensi, *Fun chou fu* is in Shansi.


D. C. II. 326. *Zornia angustifolia*. Sm. India orient.—Fl. hgd. 80.

Lour. 549.
D. C. II. 334. *Desmodium triflorum*. India, China.—Osb. 66.—Fl. hgd. 83.

D. C. II. 326. *Desmodium triquetrum*. Ind. orient.—Osb. 63.—Fl. hgd. 83.

(阿婆 錢) Parker.* Lour. 548.
Osb. 69.—Fl. hgd. 83. *Desmodium pulchellum*. Benth.

thu*. Lour. 547.
D. C. II. 327. *Desmodium gangeticum*. Ind. orient.—Osb. 64.

tsao*. 549.

Osb. 70.—D. C. 2. 324. *Uraria lagopoides*.


D. C. 2. 324. *Loureia reniformis*. De Cand. quotes only Lour. and his spec. in Mus. Paris.—The plant of Linn. is referred to *Desmodium reniforme* (II. 327.)


Much cultivated also in N. China.


Largely cultivated in N. China.


Osb. 72.—Pl. bgk. 92.


Cultivated in N. China.


Osb. 74.—Cultivated throughout China.


D. C. 2. 395. India orient.—The second Chinese name Lour. gives is applied in Peking to *Dolichos sinensis*.


Osb. 75.—Largely cultiv. in China.

D. C. II. 404. *Canavalia ensiformis*. India orient.—Osb. 76.—Fl. hkg. 88.  
var. 1. *he seed* (黑豆).  
var. 2. *min seed* (麴豆).  
var. 3. *siao hum seed* (小紅豆).  
D. C. II. India orient.—Hei *seed* in Peking is a black variety of *Glycine Soja.—Min *seed* in Canton (Parker) is *Cajanus indicus* Spr.  
D. C. II. 398. India orient.  
D. C. II. 402. *Lablab perennis*. The above Chinese name is applied in Peking to *Lablab vulgaris* var. albiflorus.  
D. C. II. 406. *Cajanus flavus*. India orient.—Fl. hkg. 89.  
D. C. II. 263. Species dubia.—There is some reason for supposing that Lour, intended the above Chinese characters, confounding the second,
which is pronounced k'i with 帰 k'in.—Huang k'i in Peking is **Sophora flavescens** Ait.


D. C. II. 430. Spec. dubia.—The above Chin. name is applied in Peking, and in Chin. botan. works to *Sophora japonica*. L. a common tree in China.—Fl. bgk. 95.—Lour.'s description of his Min. corniculata agrees with *S. japonica*, with the exception of the bipinnate leaves. But he repeatedly commits this error in taking a small branch for a common leafstalk. See further on 409, *Campsis adrepsens*.


G. Pl. I. 556. Lour.'s plant (not Linn.'s, which is a native of Europe) is referred by Benth. and Hooker to *Ormosia*.


This tree is probably not found in China, but the Chinese know well the Sapan wood.


Fl. bgk. 96.


D. C. II. 429. is right in supposing, that this is a Gleditschia. The above Chinese name is applied to *Gleditschia sinensis*. Lam. a common tree in Peking as well as in S. China.—Fl. bgk. 100.


D. C. II. 484. *India orientalis*.—Cultivated in Canton.

172. **Cassia Tora**. Linn. Cochín. Lour. 322.


Fl. bgk. 98. *C. obtusifolia* is referred to *C. Tora*.


Osb. 77.—D. C. II 492. India, China.—Peking, cultivated.


Osb. 79.


Linn.'s plant is a native of America. Thunberg's *M. arborea* of Japan, quoted by Lour., is *AcaciaNemru*. Willd. Frequent in N. China.

Largely cultivated in N. China, but more commonly termed 李. 二
Cultivated throughout China.
As my friend Dr. Hance wrote me some years ago, he has never heard of the Almond tree having been observed in China. The A. communis in Bunge’s enum. pl. Chin. bor. is Persica Davidiana. The Chinese name Lour. gives for the Almond is as far as I know only applied to the Apricot, the kernels of which are used in China like almonds in the West.
Flor. bgk. 105.
D. C. II. 564. Osb. 81.—Fl. bgk. 105.
Probably another species.—Fragaria elatior. Ehrh. has been observed by my friend Mr. W. Hancock in the mountains west of Peking. (Maxim. l. c. p. 17.)
Frequent in N. China. But the Chinese name Lour. applies to the plant is wrong, being that for Rhododendron.
Not observed in China after Lour.
Peking, cultivated.
189. Rosa spinosissima. Linn. Flos rubescens. Cochinchina. Lour. means, that this may be Rosa sinica. Linn. Lour. 395.

According to Dr. Regel, Monogr. Rosar. 357. a variety of *Rosa semper-florens* Act. (a native of China.)


Cultivated in N. China.


The Pears cultivated in N. China are for the greater part varieties of *P. chinensis*. Lindley.


Probably *Cydonia sinensis* Thouin, cultivated in the northern provinces.


In Peking the above Chinese names are applied to *Crataegus pinnatifida*, Bge., in Japan to *Crataegus cuneata*, Sieb. et Zucc. and *Crataegus sanguinea*. Pall.


199. **Opa metronideros**. Lour. Cochin. 379.

Decaisne, Pomac. 133. identifies it with *Raphiolepis indica*. Lindl. Fl. hbk. 107.—But in the G. Pl. I. 719. it is combined with *Sinigium resp.* *Eugenia*.


Fl. hbk. 128.
D. C. III. 395. Kalanchoe laciniata. Java, Molucc. Probably the same as K. ceratophylla. Haw. Has been observed in the province of Yunnan. (Hook. fl. ind.)
D. C. III. 403. European species.
D. C. III. 404. European species.
Lour. applies the same Chinese name to Eriocaulon. See 624.
211. Psidium pyriferum. Linn. and Ps. pomiferum. Linn.
China, Cochín. cult. Lour. 378, 379.
Fl. hbk. Psidium Guyava. Linn.—Osb. 86.
214. Eugenia malaccensis. Linn. India, Malacca, Macao.
Lour. 374.
Eugenia odorata.


D. C. III. 303. Luffa aegyptiaca. (i. e. Linn.'s plant). Lour.'s plant according to Naudin (Cucurb. in Ann. sc. nat. XII, 1859, 119.) Luffa cylindrica. Roem.
According to Naudin, l. c. the same as the preceding.
Flora hkg. 125.
The above Chin. name is applied in Peking to Benincasa hispifera. Lav.—Naudin l. c. 87 also identifies Lour.'s plant with Benincasa.
The Cucumber is much cultivated throughout China.
Various varieties of Melons are cultivated in N. China, as well as in the South.
Naudin l. c. 84. Lour.'s plant (non Linn.) Cucurbita moschata. Duch.
Oab. 101. The Water Melon is largely cultivated in all parts of China.
Hce. Add. Fl. hkg. 104.

Osb. 103.—Fl. hkg. 23. *Mollugo stricta*. Linn.—Benth. combines also *M. pentaphylla*. Linn. with this plant.


*zuei kin* (水勤). Lour. 223.

This plant has never been observed in China. See above Linn. Chin. pl. 106.—The above Chinese name is applied in Japan to *Oenanthe stolonifera*. D. C.

Linn.'s plant as well as that of Lour. are dubious. Comp. D. C. IV. 159. *Ligusticum graecum* and 143 *Kundmannia sicula*.

249. *Anethum Foeniculum*. Linn. Abundanter in China,  

Sin: *ze choan* (蛇床). Lour. 222.  

251. *Coriandrum sativum*. Linn. Colitur in China, raro  
D. C. IV. 250 considers Loureiro's Coriander a dubious plant. But *C. sativum* is much cultivated in North-China as well as in the South.—Fl. hkg. 135.

Cultivated throughout China.


Osb. 109.—Fl. hkg. 135.

255. *Aralia octophylla*. Lour. Cochin: Canton (varie-  
tas). 233.  
D. C. IV. 258. Dubia.

Lour. 806.  
D. C. IV. 254. Java.

D. C. IV. 252. *Panax Loureirianum*. Perhaps the same as *Panax aculeat-  
tum* or *Acanthopanax aculeata*. Osb. 111.—Add. Fl. hkg. 104.
   D. C. IV. 264. *Hedera scandens*.


   *u chu yu* (吳茱萸). Lour. 226.

   leang tsoo. 172.
   D. C. IV. 323. *Sambucus ebuloides* (specim. Lour. in Mus. Par.)

   ngan hoa (金銀花). Lour. 186.
   D. C. IV. 334. *Loniceria Loureiri*. Dubia.—In Peking the above Chinese
   name is applied to *L. chinensis*. Wats.

   Cbamp.—Maxim. diag. plant. nov. asiat. II. 57.

   cung. 94.
   Genus Rubiacearum.

   mai. 84.

   Lour. 83.
   et Schult. (non Linn.).—Comp. Pl. hagk. 146. *Cep. occidentalis* (sud
   Adina.)

   Lour. 98.

   Fl. hagk. 152.

   Oub. 114.—Fl. hagk. 151, note.

   D. C. IV. 373. Dubia, a genere removenda.

Linn. Chin. pl. 117.—Fl. hgk. 153.
275. Ixora coecinea. Linn. Cochin. Lour. 95.
D. C. IV. 493. A genere forte ab ordine excludenda.
D. C. IX. 119. Paederia foetida. Linn.—Fl. hgk. 162.—
of Huan. (Journ. Bot. 1880 p. 261.)
D. C. IV. 611. Pl. dubia.—In Chinese botan. works the above Chinese
name is applied to various species of Polygonatum. See Chi wu ming shi
18. 19, 20, 21.—In Peking Pol. sibiricum. Red. bears this
name.
lin sien (see above 1, clempatis). Lour. 100.
D. C. IV. 586. European spec.
D. C. IV. 661. Stirps dubia.—The above Chin. name is applied in Canton
to Elephantopus scaber. Linn. (Parker.)
siong hoa. 612.
Comp. Osb. 123.
siong. 612.
D. C. V. 342. Spec. dubia.


289. *Aster chinensis.* Linn.—Lour. 615, mentions this plant (*Callistephus chinensis.* Nees.) but states that he has not seen it.—Osb. 125.


D. C. V. 445. *Blumea chinensis.*—Osb. 226.—Fl. hkg. 177.

293. *Baccharis Salvia.* Lour. (Conyza balsamifera. Linn.) 603.


Flor. hkg. 188.


Linn. Chin. pl. 132.—Fl. hkg. 181.

300. *Siegesbeckia orientalis.* Linn. Cochinchina, China, sed Lour. ibi non obvia. 616.

Osb. 133.—Fl. hkg. 182.


D. C. V. 539. Wedelia calendulacea. Less.—Osb. 135.—Fl. hgk. 182.


D. C. V. 618. Dubia.

Fl. hgk. 183.

Fl. hgk. 183.

D. C. V. 605. Bidens leucorrhiza?

Cultivated throughout China.

Fl. hgk. 185.

Osb. 136.—Fl. hgk. 184.—Maximow. Dec. X. 516. Pyrethrum (Chrysanthemum) indicum Cass. var. & genuinum. (the wild growing form.)

Osb. 137.—Maxim. I. c. 518. Pyrethrum sinense. Sab. var. plenum.

Linn. Chin. pl. 138.—Fl. hgk. 186.

Sin: khi ngai (蒿艾). Lour. 600.
Linn. Chin. pl. 139.—Maxim. Dec. XI. Tanacetum chinense. A. Gray.

Osb. 140.—Fl. hgk. 187.

Fl. hgk. 187.—Common in North-China. 香薑 hiang hao.
D. C. VI. 106. Stirps Lour. certe diversa.

D. C. VI. 126. An vera Artemisiae spec? Eupatorium foeni culaceum Bess?

D. C. VI. 106. Stirps Lour. videtur diversa.

In Japan the above Chin. name is applied to Petasites japonicus. Miq.


Lour. 613.
D. C. VI. 301. Gynura divaricata.—Oab. 142.

D. C. VI. 298. Gynura sarmentosa ?


326. Cacalia sonchifolia Linn. Cochin. Lour. 593.

Senecio sonchifolius. Moench.

D. C. VI. 363. Senecio chinensis.


D. C. VI. 529. Stirps dubia.


D. C. VI. 645. Cirsium pratense. Linn.'s plant is a native of Europe.
   D. C. VI. 675. Linn.'s plant is probably *Jurinea linearifolia*. Siberia, Caucasus, Tauria.

   D. C. VI. 671. Dubia.

   Largely cultivated in China.

   D. C. VII. 40. Linn.'s plant is *Anandria Bellidiastrum*, var. *autumnale*. (Gerbera. G. Pl. II. 498.)

   D. C. VII. 84. Europa, India.


   D. C. VII. 150. *Taraxacum sinense*. Species non satis nota. In Peking *Leonotodon taraxacum*, found also in Hongkong, bears the above Chinese name.

   The common Lettuce is cultivated throughout China.

   D. C. VII. 249. *Mulgærium floridum*. American spec.—G. Pl. II. 525. *Lactuca florida*.—According to Parker *Lactuca brevirostris* in Canton is

**牛胴草** nei li tsao.


   Fl. hbk. 200.


(白花藤). 147.


(赤花藤). 147.


Not to be confounded with *Pr. sinensis*. Lindl. D. C. VIII. 35. P.

Sinensis Lindl. has lately been observed by Watters in the province of Huph (Journ. Bot. 1886. p. 262).


D. C. VIII. 219. Species dubia.


*u muen mu (烏欖木). 752.


Cultivated throughout China.


D. C. VIII. 302. *Jasminum Sambac*, var. *trifoliatum* or 303. *Jasm. arbores-

cens*. Roxbr. (Lour’s plant, non Linn.). But according to Parker *Jasminum grandiflorum* is also cultivated in Canton.


Sin: *mo li hoa* (茉莉花). Lour. 25.

D. C. VIII. 301. *Jasminum Sambac*. Ait.—Much cultivated in China.


Sin: *mo si hoa* (木犀花), *guei hoa* (桂花). Lour. 35.

Olea fragrans. Thbg. Japan.—Osb. 149.—Cultivated throughout China, and also wild.
357. **Ligustrum sinense.** Lour. Canton. 23.
Fl. hgk. 215.—Decaisne Monogr. Ligustr. 36.—Introduced into Europe by Fortune. Gardener’s Chron. 1878. 364.

358. **Vinca rosea.** Linn. China, Cochin. agrest. cult. Lour. 146.
Fl. hgk. 220.

359. **Plumeria obtusa.** Linn. China, Cochin. cult. Lour. 144.

360. **Nerium Oleander.** Linn. China, Cochin. Lour. 141.


D. C. VIII. 440. Stirps dubia.


364. **Cynanchum inodorum.** Lour. Sin: ti yong than. 207.
D. C. VIII. 551. Gymnema inodorum.


368. **Buddleia asiatica.** Lour. Cochin. 90.
Fl. hgk 281.


371. Varronia sinensis. Lour. In var. locis imp. Sinensis. Sin: 
zan chu yu (山 菊 黄). 171.

Lour. 126.
Fl. hbgk. 235.

373. Anchusa officinalis. Linn. In var. locis imp. Sinens. Sin: 
teu tao (紫 草). Lour. 127.
D. C. X. 42. Europa.—The above Chinese name is applied in Japan to 
Lithospermum officinale. L. var. erythrorizon. Maxim. Dec. XI. 541. The 
Chinese plant of the same name (the roots of it are sold in Peking) is 
probably the same.

D. C. X. 18. Europa.—


377. Ipomoea Quamoclit. Linn. China, Cochin. cult, 
D. C. IX. 336. India orient. America.—Osb. 154.—Much cultivated in 

Osb. 155.—D. C. IX. 349. Ipomoea pes caprae. Sw.—Fl. hbgk. 238.

D. C. IX. 353. Lour.'s plant is Ipomoea filicaulis. Bl.—Fl. hbgk. 238.

Lour. 133.
D. C. IX. 349. Ipomoea reptans. Poir.—Oso.153.—Cultivated throughout 
China.

381. Convolvulus Batatas. Linn. Tubera esculenta. India, 
D. C. IX. 338. Batatas edulis. Chois.—G. Pl. II. 872. Ipomoea Batatas, — 
Osb. 152.—Cultivated throughout China.

phan xy. Lour. 131.

383. Convolvulus tomentosus. Linn. China, Cochin. Sin: 
khien nieu (牵 牛). Lour. 133.
D. C. IX. 428. Linn.'s plant (non Lour.) Pharbitis tomentosa. Chois.—
G. Pl. II. 871. Ipomoea tomentosa.—In Peking the above Chinese name is 
applied to Pharbitis triloba. Chois.—Osb. 157?
Osb. 160.—Largely cultivated in China.

D. C. XIII. i. 351. Lour's plant is *S. aethiopicum*, var. violaceum.—Linn. Chin. 161.

386. **Solanum lycopersicum.** Linn. Cochin. Lour. 161.
Cultivated in Peking.

387. **Solanum nigrum.** Linn. Cochin. Lour. 160.
Fl. hkg. 242.—Frequent in North-China.

Osb. 163.—Fl. hkg. 242.—Add. Fl. hkg. 242.

389. **Solanum indicum.** Linn. Cochin. Lour. 162.
Osb. 162.—Fl. hkg. 242.


D. C. XIII. i. 438. Europa, China.—Common in North-China.

392. **Physalis angulata.** Linn. Cochin. Lour. 164.
Fl. hkg. 244.

393. **Capsicum annuum.** Linn. Cult. China, Cochin.
Lour. 157.
Much cultivated in China.

394. **Capsicum baccatum.** Linn. Cult. China, Coch.
Lour. 157.

395. **Capsicum frutescens.** Linn. China, Cochin. cult.
Sin: *lat tsiao* (辣椒). Lour. 158.
Osb. 164.

D. C. XIII. i. 510. Lour's plant is *Lycium chinense*. Mill.—Osb. 165.—Fl. hkg. 245.

The above Chin. name is applied in Canton to *Datura alba*. Nees. (Parker.)

Osb. 168.


Fl. hongk. 247.—Also in North-China.


D. C. X. 360. *Pterostigma grandiflorum* Benth.?—G. Pl. II. 449

Adenosma grandiflorum.—Osb. 170.—Fl. hkg. 247.


D. C. X. 415. India.


Fl. hkg. 252.


D. C. IX. 223. *Tecoma grandiflora* Delaun.—Loureiro in stating that this plant has bipinnate leaves, commits the same error as with respect to *Sophora japonica*. (166 above.)


Largely cultivated in China.


D. C. XI. 269. Lour.'s plant *Diliraria ebracteata*. Juss.? India orient.


D. C. XI. 243. Incertae sedis.


Linn. Chin. pl. 183.—Fl. hkg. 266. *Diciptera chinensis*. Nees.
Lour. 31.
13. Hainan (Hance). Observed also near Kiukiang.

415. **Dissolena verticillata**. Lour. Provincia Canton.
Sin: *mat sa*. 171.
D. C. VIII. 318. *Verbenaceae*.

Osb. 184.

Fl. hgrk. 268.


Osb. 185.—Fl. hgrk. 273.


D. C. XI. 696. Dubia.

Chin. name is applied in Canton also to *V. Negundo*. (Parker.)

423. **Clerodendron infortunatum**. Linn. Canton. Sin:
fung mi chu. Lour. 471.
D. C. XI. 667. India orientalis.

D. C. XI. 657. Clerodendron infortunatum. Linn.

Lour. 471.


Much cultivated in China.


Lour.'s plant is probably *Mentha arvensis.* L. (M. japonica Bl.). Fl. hkg. 276. The above Chin. name is applied in Peking to *M. arvensis,* var. sativa.


D. C. XII. 170. European spec.

432. **Mentha crispa.** Linn. China, Cochin. Lour. 437.

D. C. XII. 170. Europa.


434. **Origanum heracleoticum.** Linn. China, Cochin. Lour. 453.


Lour. 454.

D. C. XII. 195. 196. Ind. orient.


D. C. XII. 191. Europa.


D. C. XII. 227. *Calaminta cretica.* Benth. Creta.—In Peking the above Chin. name is applied to *Perilla ocyoides.* L.


Sin: yong tsoo. Lour. 34.


Sin: ho hiam (藿香) Lour. 441.

D. C. XII. 460. Europa. Asia bor.—In Peking the above Chinese name is applied to *Lophanthus rugosus.* Fisch.


D. C. XII. 504. Europa.
Lour. 439.

443. **Ajuga reptans.** Linn. Canton. Lour. 441.
D. C. XII. 595. Europa, Asia occid.

Fl. hkg. 280.—Linn. Chin. 195—Roem. et Sch. syst. III. 112. consider Lour.'s plant a new spec: *P* *Lourei.*

D. C. XVII. 291. Corolliflorae incertae sedis.

446. **Callicarpa triloba.** Lour. China, Cochin. Sin: *ca fu thay 89.*
D. C. XI. 647. Dubia.

Osb. 196.

Fl. hkg. 281. Canton.

Osb. 198.—Fl. hkg. 284.


Osb. 199.—Fl. hkg. 284.—D. C. XIII. 2. 242. *Celosia cristata*, var *castrensis.*

Osb. 201.

453. **Amaranthus spinosus.** Linn. Cochin. spont. cult. Lour. 687.
Fl. hkg. 285.

454. **Amaranthus cruentus.** Linn. China, Cochin. cult. Lour. 687.
Osb. 200.

Frequently cultivated in China.


Osb. 205.—D. C. XIII. 2. 409. China (Leclanché).—Cultivated in Peking.


Much cultivated in Peking and other parts of China.


Osb. 206.—Cultivated throughout China.


Willdenow thinks, that this is *Basella rubra*. Linn. But D. C. XIII. 2.

223. retains Lour.’s spec. as distinct.


Osb. 212.—Fl. hkg. 289.


Osb. 210.—Fl. hkg. 288.


Act. hort. Kew. 2d ed. II. 418. Introduced into England from China, in 1776.—Cultivated in North-China


D. C. XIV. 107. *Polygonum flaccidum*? (Lour.’s plant.). But P. hydropiper is found in Hongkong. Fl. hkg. 288.


D. C. XIV. 102. Species obscura.


D. C. XIV. 144. Tataria, Siberia. Nepal.—Found also in North-China.

Lin. Chin. pl. 213.


*Rheum undulatum.* Linn. Chin. pl. 214.

D. C. XIV. 60. Lour.'s plant is *Rumex chinensis.* Campd. Gathered in China by Staunton, Beechey, Millet.—Add. Fl. hkg. 117.


D. C. XVI. 1. 238. *Houttuyia cordata.* Thbg.—Fl. hkg. 334.


481. *Cedrus odorifer.* Lour. Cochin. cult. 112.


D. C. XV. 1. 16. Lour.'s plant is *Cinnamomum Loureiri.* Nees. Found also in Japan.


D. C. XV. 1. 179. *Tetranthera laurifolia*. var. *citrifolia*.—Fl. hgr. 293.—
Add. Fl. hgr. 119.


Willdenow thinks, that it may be *Cassyta filiformis*. L.—Oeb. 218.—Fl.


Fl. hgr. 296.


D. C. XIV. 537. Lour.'s plant: *Daphne sinensis*. Lam. Has been
cultivated in Paris.


D. C. XIV. 541. 537. (D. japonica).


Mus. Paris,—Fl. hgr. 297.


Lour. 292.

Oeb. 219.


G. Pl. III. 200. *Aquilariae spec*.


Lour. 113.


D. C. XIV. 693. India, Indian Archipelago.


Osb. 222.—D. C. XV. 2. 79. Ceylon.


Fl. hgr. 301.

Fl. bgk. 315. *B. sempervirens*. Bat Hance Add. Fl. bgk. 123 considers this a new spec: *Buxus Harlandi*.


D. C. XV. 2. 352. India orient., China (Staunton), Japan.—Fl. bgk. 312.—The above Chin. name = *Melanthes chinensis* in Canton. (Parker). Also *Phyllanthus obscurus*.


D. C. XV. 2. 433. **Phyllanthus villosus**. Poir. China (Sonnerat.) In Canton the above Chin. name = *Phyll. urinaria* (Parker.).

504. **Nympnthus Niruri**. Lour. Cochin. 665.


D. C. I. c. 364. Müller refers, evidently by a mistake, Lour’s Ph. Niruri both to Ph. Niruri and to Ph. urinaria, which however he describes as distinct species.—Fl. bgk. 310.—The above Chin. name in Canton *Euphorbia pilifera* L. (Parker.).

506. **Cathartes fasciculata**. Lour. Cochin. 746.


D. C. I. c. 268. Dubia.


D. C. I. c. 600. India, Ceylon, Philipp.


D. C. I. c. 588. India orient.


D. C. l. c. 1256. Species *Crotonis*.

515. **Phyllaurea Codiaeum.** Lour. China, Cochín. cult. 705.

D. C. l. c. 1073. Lour.'s plant is *Manihot Loureiri*. Pohl.

517. **Urtica gemina.** Lour. Cochín. 682.
Arn. bot. Beech. 213.—Also in N. China.


Fl. bgk. 307.—Cultivated throughout China.

Osb. 227.—Fl. bgk. 302.

521. **Excocarcia cochinchinesis.** Lour. cult. China, Cochín. 750.
Lond.

522. **Commia cochinchinesis.** Lour. Cochín. 743.
Holland. (Specim. Lour. in hb. Mus. Lond.)

Frequent in North-China and also in other parts of the Empire.


Linn. Chin. pl. 231.—Cleyer med. Sin. 290. *Cortex Morisam pe pi* (桑白皮). This resembles somewhat the Chinese name quoted by Lour.
   D. C. XVII. Lour.'s plant is Morus alba var. atropurpurea. Bur. Morus
tatropurpurea. Roxb. Introduced into India from China.

Hedde. Also in Formosa. Cultivated in India.

   D. C. XVII. 277. Dubia.

529. Ficus carica. Linn. Culta China, raro Cochin. Sin:
   mao hoa.qua (無花果). Lour. 816.
   Cultivated throughout China.

   Osb. 329?

   Linn. Chin. pl. 239.

   Swinhoe saw the tree cultivated in Hainan.

   hoang xiong. 691.
   G. Pl. III. 351. Cadrania? vel Piecospermum?

   Lour. 682.
   D. C. XVI. 1. 74. Fleurya interrupta. Gaudich. India.


   Lour. 683.
hkg. 331.—Sin: (苧麻) chuu ma.

537. Parietaria cochinichinensis. Lour. China, Cochin. Sin:
   mao soi. (葛水葛). 804.

   (核 桃). Lour. 702.
   Much cultivated in North-China.

   yam muei (楊 梅). 670.
   G. Pl. III. 401. Myrica sapida. Wall species in India orient. Chinaque
   Very near to M. sapida.
Flor. hkg. 322.

541. **Fagus Castanea.** Linn. Cochin. sylvestris, China colit.

D. C. XVI. 2. 116. **Castanea chinensis.** Spreng.—**Castanopsis chinensis.**
Hance. Journ. Linn. Soc. X. 199. He gathered this species in the Canton
province.—According to D. C. XVI. 2. 116. Loureiro's *Fagus cochinchinensis*
begins to the same species.

542. **Salix babylonica.** Linn. Frequens China, colit.
A common tree in North-China.

543. **Juniperus barbadensis.** Linn. China. Lour. 781 and
**J. chinensis.** Linn. ibid.

D. C. XVI. 2. 488. Both of these Loureiran plants are referred to **J. chinensis.** L.—D. C. quotes Hance ins. Hongkong (not found in Add.
fl. hkg.).

544. **Thuja orientalis.** Linn. China, Cochin. raro colit.
Lour. 712.

545. **Cupressus sempervirens.** Linn. China spont.
D. C. l. c. 468. Not quoted for China. In Peking the above Chin. name
is applied to *Biota orientalis.*

546. **Cupressus thyoides.** Linn. China, Cochin. Lour. 711.

Lour. 710.

D. C. l. c. 432. **Cunninghamia sinensis.** R. Br.—Osb 235.—Fl. hkg. 337.

Lour. 709.

337.—Add fl. hkg. 125. A common tree in all parts of China.

549 **Cycas inermis.** Lour. China, Cochin. spont. cult. 776.

**MONOCOTYLEDONS.**

550. **Musa seminifera.** Lour. Cochin. cult. spont. Lour. 791.
**Musa odorata.** Lour. Cochin. cult. Lour. 791.
**Musa nana.** Lour. Cochin. 791.
**Musa corniculata.** Lour. Cochin. 791.

Desvaux in Journ. d. Bot. 1814 considers all these species only varieties
of **Musa sapientium.** L.—Fl. hkg. 348.—Osb. 237.
551. Musa uranioscopos. Lour. Cochin. 792.

Os. 239.—Fl. hbk. 349.


Hanbury Science pap. 105. Chinese ovoid Cardamom. Known only from its fruits it seems.

Hanbury. Science pap. 95. Large round Chin. Cardamom. The plant is unknown to modern botanists.

Roem. et Sch. Syst. I. 27. India orient.


Flückiger and Hanbury, Pharmacographia. 577.] One sort of the Turmeric of commerce is China Turmeric.


Spreng. Syst. III. 708. Spiranthes amoena. M. B., which according to Ledebour Fl. rosa. IV. 184. is Spiranthes australis. Lindl.—Fl. hbk. 360.

Habenaria Susannae, R. Br.—Fl. hbk. 363.

According to Loudon introduced into Europe in 1800.


Osb. 242.—Pl. hkg. 357. *Cymbidium ensifolium*. Sw.


Fl. hkg. 357.—Bletia Tankervillae Br.


Lour. 639.


Lour. 245.

Kth. enum. V. 581. *Crinum Loureiri*. Roem. et Sch.—Loureiro's *Crinum asiaticum*. Linn. (Lour. 244) is according to Roem. et Sch. a new spec: *Crinum cochinichinense*. But *Cr. asiaticum* Linn. has been observed also in South-China. Flor. hkg. 366.


Kth. enum. V. 618 *Nerine? cochinichinensis*. Roem. The above Chin. name is generally applied to *Hemerocallis*.


Lour. 368.

Kth. enum. V. 459. India orient., Philipp.


Fl. hkg. 367.


Osb. 245.—Kth. enum. V. 387. India orient., Philipp. The above Chin. name is rather applied to *Arum* or *Colocasia*.


Lour. 237.

Kth. enum. V. 260. Also in Java (Blamey).—Journ. Bot. 1879. 15. Hainan (Swinhoe).
Linn. Chin. pl. 251.
Under the above Chin. name in N. China Allium fistulosum is cultivated.
Cultivated throughout China.
Kth. enum. IV. 454. Lour.'s plant (non Linn.) is Allium Thunbergii. Don. Regel Monogr. Allior. 235 combines also A. chinense. Don. with this.
—In Peking A. odorum. Linn. is known under the above Chin. name.
Regel l. c. combines it with Allium Thunbergii.
Kth. enum. IV. 422. Lour.'s plant is Allium uliginosum. Don. Baker refers this to A. tuberosum Roxb. Japan, China, India.
Kth. enum. IV. 337. Bernardiaselloides. Lindl.—Fl. hghk. 373.—Frequent in North-China.
This Chin. name is applied in Canton to Aloe vulgaris. Lam. (Parker) which is the same as the plant Lour. describes (non Linn.). India, Cambodia.
Kth. enum. IV. 255. Valde dubia.


Kth. enum. IV. 259. Lour.'s plant is *Lilium tigrinum*. Ker.—Much cultivated in North-China.


Fl. hgbk. 371. Asparagus incidua. Lindl.—In Peking this plant is cultivated under the above Chin. name.


Osb. 252.—Fl. hgbk. 376.

Fl. hgbk. 376.

Kth. enum. IV. 104. Commelina vaga.

Kth. enum. IV. 60. Commelina? Louriri.

Lour. 50.

Kth. enum. IV. 67. Aneilema medica. R. Br.—The above Chinese name in China as well as in Japan is applied to *Ophiopogon japonicus*. Ker.


Journ. Bot. 1875. 106. Dr. Hance has proved, that this is *Juncus effusus*. Linn. common in China, Manchuria.


Add. Fl. hnk. 129.


Kth. enum. III. 87. Lour.'s plant is *Acorus terrestris*. Rumpl. India orient. But the true *A. Calamus* is also found in South-China. Fl. hnk. 345.


Fl. hnk. 344.


Kth. III. 38. Linn.'s plant (India) is *Colocasia macrorhiza*. Schott.


Kth. III. 44. Linn.'s plant *Xanthosoma sagittafolium*. Schott. America.


Kth. enum. III. 90. Europa, Asia bor., America bor.—Frequent in North-China.


Osbg. 255.—Addl. Fl. hkg. 129. Frequent in S. China.—Common also in N. China.


Osbg. 256.—Kth. enum. III. 157. Lour.‘s plant is *Sagittaria chinensis*. Sima.


According to Parker the above Chinese name in Canton is applied to *Eriocaulon Wallichianum*. Mart.


Osbg. 262.—Fl. hkg. 387.


Fl. hkg. 394. *Isolepis supina*. R. Br.


*Sorghum vulgare*. Per. Cultivated throughout China.


*Sorghum saccharatum*. Per. Cultivated throughout China.


Osbg. 268.—Kth. enum. I. 493. India orient.
634. Saccharum spicatum Linn. Cochin. Sin: mao ken
(茅根). Lour. 67.
Kth. enum. I. 470. Perotis latifolia. Ait.—Fl. hkg. 418.
635. Saccharum officinarum. Linn. China, Cochin.
cult. Sin: can che (甘蔗). Lour. 66.
Osb. 265.—The Sugar cane is much cultivated in S. China.
Wheat is cultivated throughout China, more commonly in the northern
provinces.
Meu is rather the classical Chinese name for Barley, which is
cultivated in all provinces of the Empire, but more commonly in the north.
(葉竹). Lour. 70.
Osb. 292.—Munro Bambusaceae. Trans. Linn. Soc. XXVI. Bambusa
Osb. 287.—Fl. hkg. Leptochloa chinensis. Nees.—Kth. enum. I. 270.
L. tenuirima.
641. Cynosurus aegyptiaceus. Linn. Lour. 75.
Osb. 291.—Dactyloctenium aegyptiacum. Willdl. Fl. hkg. 429.—Eleusine
cruciata. Lam.
642. Cynosurus indicus. Linn. Lour. 75.
Sinensis. Sin: cam sum hiam (甘松 香). Lour. 56.
tsoo. 64.
Fl. hkg. 415.
Kth. enum. I. 143. Panicum Crus Galli. L. Osb. 275. Fl. hkg. 411.—
Common in N. China.
648. Panicum miliaceum. Linn. Pekini et aliis locis
Largely cultivated throughout China.


Osb. 290.—*Gymnothrix hordeiformis* Nees. Observed also in N. China.


Kth. euum I. 20. India orient.—Cultivated throughout China.

652. **Coix agrestis**. Lour. 674.


Cultivated throughout China.


Osb. 281.


**CRYPTOGAMS.**


Has been observed in North-China.


658. **Lycopodium cernuum**. Linn. Cochin. Lour. 838.

Osb. 296.—Fl. hkg. 436.


The above Chn. name is rather applied to *Niphobolus Lingua*. Spr.


Osb. 299.—Fl. hkg. 441. Lygodium scandens. Sw.


Osb. 307.—Fl. hkg. 447.

662. **Adiantum caudatum**. Linn. Cochin. Lour. 835.

Fl. hkg. 447.

663. **Pteris vittata**. Linn. China, Cochin. Lour. 834.

Osb. 304.


Dried Mushrooms of the above Chinese name are sold in Peking.


Sold in Peking.


See above Cibot. 34.


Pachyma Cocos. Fries. See above Martini. 41.


**VII. GROSIER. BUC'HOZ.**

In 1785 Abbé GROSIER published the first edition of his valuable *DESCRIPTION GENERALE DE LA CHINE* in one volume forming the 13th volume of Du Mailla's Histoire Générale de la Chine, edited also by the
learned Father Grosier, who was Bibliothécaire de Son Altesse Royale Monsieur, but had himself never visited China. A considerable part of his description of that Empire is devoted to Natural history, namely 108 pages to Botany. A new and much enlarged edition of the work he published from 1818 to 1820 in 7 volumes, nearly three of them treating of Natural history. Vol. II and III, 658 pages, deal with Botany. It supplies a mass of most valuable information with respect to Chinese plants, the vast material accumulated by the author having been principally derived from the accounts of the Jesuit missionaries found in the Lettres éditantes, Du Halde, the Mémoires conc. les Chinois etc. But Grosier draws also from many unpublished sources. He endeavours to give a list of the Chinese plants which since then had been described by professed botanists. But besides Loureiro's plants from Southern China, of which he generally gives a full account, his enumeration of Chinese specimens known to botanists is far from being complete.

Although Grosier in reproducing all the observations of the missionaries concerning Chinese botany, seldom ventures to identify the plants described, his compilation is very useful and interesting, and I hope, that with the aid of the identifications and commentaries I have supplied in the preceding pages, almost all the statements of the Jesuits relating to Chinese plants will be understood by botanists.

We learn from Grosier that the Jesuit missionaries have introduced many Chinese plants into the Mauritius (Isle de France) and Bourbon, where they had also missions. Some of these plants were subsequently introduced from these islands into France. Thus Eriobotrya japonica. Lindl. had been brought from Canton to the Mauritius and from this place found its way to France, where in 1784 one specimen of the introduced shrubs blossomed. (Grosier II. 504.)—Livistonia chinensis. Mart. a Chinese palm was for a long time known in Europe under the name of Latania burbonica. Lam.—Nephelium Litchi was introduced at the end of the last cent. from China into the Mauritius and subsequently into Guyana. (Grosier II. 478.)—In Lamarck's Enc. Bot. many Chinese plants are noticed as cultivated in the Mauritius. I may quote Euphoria longana (Nephelium longan) Lam. III. 574, Cookie punctata. l. c. VIII. 327, Driandra cordata (Elaeococcus vernicia). l. c. II. 329. Anona uncinata. (Artobotrys odoratissimus) l. c. II. 127, Litsaea chinensis (Tetranthera laurifolia). l. c. III. 574.

Dianthus chinensis. L. cultivated in Europe since the begin-
ning of the last century has probably also been introduced by the missionaries. Tournefort, who first described this plant in the Memoirs of the Acad. of Paris, 1705, p. 264, under the name of Caryophyllus chinensis, states that Abbé Bignon had received (seeds of) it from China about 3 years earlier.

It is merely for the sake of completeness in illustrating the botanical literature with respect to China, that I mention here two volumes of colored drawings of Chinese plants published by Buch'hoz, physician in ordinary to King Stanislas.


2. Herbier ou Collection des Plantes médicinales de la Chine, d'après un manuscrit peint et unique qui se trouve dans la bibliothèque de l'Empereur de la Chine. 100 plates.

These drawings with the Chinese names of the respective plants added (not in Chinese characters.) have been copied from some Chinese collection of pictures sent by the missionaries and have no claim to any botanical value. The medicinal plants especially are very badly represented. The other volume with ornamental plants shows more correct drawings.

Buch'hoz was a very prolific botanical author. But his publications are not entitled to serious attention. Pritzel in his Thesaurus botanicus, after having enumerated B.'s works states:

Catalogus noster partem solummodo parvam innumerabilium operum miserrimi compilatoris continet, in cujus ignominiam l'Héritier Buchoziam foetidam condidit et qui per semiseculum (1758—1807.) ultra 500 volumina consarcinavit.

The plant Pritzel alludes to is Serissa foetida. Comm. Buchozia coprosmaoides. l'Hér. See above Loureiro's plants 278.

We have thus in the preceding pages endeavoured to give a general review of the early knowledge acquired by European naturalists into the flora of China, and have also successively enumerated all Chinese plants which have come under the notice of European botanists up to about the end of the last century. Although the materials for pursuing this line of investigation and for bringing the historical account up to the present day have been accumulated by the author, he must now take leave of the reader, not being in the position at present to work up a treatise which would probably occupy twice as many pages as the present essay.
INDEX.

Abies 56, 109.
Abrus 146.
Acacia 97, 148, 149.
Acalypha 173.
Acanthopanax 100.
Acanthus 165.
Acer 56, 67.
Aconitum 63.
Acornus 180.
Aceracephalus 106.
Acrochynthus 141.
Acrostichon 114.
Actaea 136.
Actinostemma 45.
Adenanthera 58.
Adenosma 104, 165.
Adenostema 156.
Adiantum 46, 75, 114, 129, 183.
Aesculus 7, 177.
Agaricus 114, 126, 184.
Ageratum 156.
Aglaia 143.
Agrostis 113, 182.
Agyneia 108.
Allantus 95, 120, 125.
Aira 113.
Ajuga 168.
Alcuretes 34, 172.
Allium 27, 178.
Aloe 178.
Alopecurus 6, 15, 144.
Alopecurus 112, 183.
Alpinia 110, 176.
Alternanthera 169.
Althea 93.
Alysicarpus 97.
Amaranthus 106, 168, 169.
Amaryllis 177.
Ammania 98.
Amomum 176.
Amygdalus 149.
Anacardium 22, 35.
Anagallis 148.
Ananas 22, 119.
Anandria 160.
Anchusa 163.

Andrachne 108, 129.
Andropogon 112, 181.
Androsace 51, 55.
Anemone 179.
Aneisopappus 101.
Anona 23, 136, 185.
Antidesma 172.
Antirrhinum 165.
Apium 99.
Apluda 112.
Apocynum 162.
Apricot 5, 125, 149.
Aquaria 6, 15, 171.
Arachis 96, 128, 145.
Aralia 29, 100, 119, 154, 155.
Areca 11, 21, 180.
Argyrota 163.
Arissaema 181.
Aristoteles 176.
Aris 140.
Artabotrys 136.
Artemisia 63, 102, 125, 126, 158, 159.
Artocarpus 11, 23, 36, 174.
Arum 119, 180, 181.
Arundinaria 112.
Arundo 113, 182.
Asaram 170.
Asclepias 162.
Asparagus 179.
Aspidium 114.
Aster 68, 101, 121, 137.
Asteromoea 157.
Asparagus 96.
Astranghia 152.
Atalanta 94, 142.
Athyamanta 100, 154.
Aubletia 143.
Augia 17, 144.
Averrhoa 94, 141.
Baeckea 98, 119.
Bambusa 16, 34, 36, 113, 126, 182.
Barkhausia 160.
Barleria 105, 119, 165.

Barnardia 178.
Bartramia 94.
Baryxylum 15, 144.
Basiona 107, 169.
Batatas 103, 117, 163.
Bauhinia 60.
Bauerni 42.
Begonia 125.
Benincasa 153.
Bercillium 76, 95, 144.
Beta 169.
Betel 36, 107, 118.
Betonica 167.
Biddia 158.
Bignonia 129.
Biophyllum 141.
Biota 175.
Blastus 152.
Blechnum 114.
Bletia 177.
Boehmeria 14, 28, 87, 109, 174.
Boerhavia 106, 163.
Boletus 114.
Bombax 140.
Bonnaya 104, 165.
Brasica 34, 92, 117, 118, 124, 183.
Breynia 108.
Briza 113.
Bromelia 177.
Broussonetia 35, 126, 173.
Bucea 146.
Bryonia 99, 153.
Bryum 184.
Buchnera 105.
Buddleia 162.
Buphthalum 157.
Buxus 172.
Byssus 115.
Cacalia 102, 159.
Caesalpinia 15, 148.
Cajanus 97, 147.
Caladium 180.
Calamintha 167.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>INDEX.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>188</td>
<td>Calamus 17.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Callicarpa 166, 168.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Calligonum 136.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Callistephus101,121,157.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Calodium 171.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cambogia 189.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Camellia 34, 36, 51, 62.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>65, 93, 159.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Campshorstree6,30,35,108.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Campsis 165.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Campytha 168.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Canarium 33, 95, 143.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Canavalia 97, 147.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Canna 110, 176.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cannabis 13, 173.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cappariss 138.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Capraia 104.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Capsella 138.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Capsicum 104, 129, 164.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Caragana 122.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cardamine 138.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cardiospermum 144.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carduus 159.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carica 22, 152.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carpesiu 101.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carthamus 125, 160.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Caryophyllus 151.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Caryopteris 166.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Caryota 11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cassia 35, 97, 148.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Castanea 8, 57, 175.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Castanopsis 175.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cassytha 108, 171.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cathetus 172.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Caucalia 154.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cedrela 120, 125, 151.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Celery 99.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Celosia 106, 168.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Celsia 106.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Celtis 126.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Centipeda 158.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Centotheca 113.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cephalanthus 155.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cephalotaxus 62.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ceraja 177.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cerastium 138.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Certaphyllum 115.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chaetca 142.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chamaecyparis 175.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chavica 36, 107.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chelidonium 8., 138.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chenopodium 107.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chestnuts 125.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chimonanthus 7, 35, 48.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Choranthus 170.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chloria 112.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chrysanthemum 54, 80, Croton 108, 172, 173.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chrysopogon 182.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cibotium 114, 184.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cichorium 160.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cineraria 159.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cinnamomum 6, 13, 24, Cucurbita 99, 119, 152, 153.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cirrus 150.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cirrus 150.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cirsium 150.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clasius 144.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Citrus 5, 9, 10, 11, 26, 29, 33, 94, 95, 119, 127, 142, 143.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clathrus 126.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clausena 129.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clavaria 184.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cleistanthus 172.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cleomatis 91, 135, 136.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cleome 138.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clerodendron 105, 166.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clutia 172.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cudium 100, 154.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Coccinia 153.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Coccos 11, 21, 180.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Codiaeum 173.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Coix 183.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Colocasia 111, 117, 180.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Columnea 105.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cometes 71.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Commelina 110, 179.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Commia 173.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Conferva 184.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Convolvulus 108, 163.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cookea 129, 142, 185.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Corchorus 63, 140.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cordiia 163.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cordyceps 30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cordyline 110, 178.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Coreopsis 157.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Coreiandrum 154.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cornutia 166.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cotula 158.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cotyledon 151.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Crantaia 99.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Crassula 151.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Crataegus 127, 150.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Crataeva 138.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Creodus 170.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Crepis 160.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Crinum 177.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Crotalaria 96.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Crucianella 158.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cryptanthus 115.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cryptomeria 50, 58, 71.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cubospermum 152.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cucumis 153.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cudrania 174.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cunninghamia 34, 62, 109, 175.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cuperus 175.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Caranga 165.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cercuma 110, 176.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cynathula 169.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cynas 175.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cydonia 127, 150.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cymabium 34, 110, 177.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cymunosma 141.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cynanchum 162.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cynometra 24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cynosurus 113, 182.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cyperus 77, 111, 181.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cytisus 147.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dactylotetium 113, 182.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dammancanthus 79.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Daphnidium 171.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Datura 104, 164.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Daucus 154.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Davallia 114.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dendrobium 177.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dentella 155.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dentitia 167.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Derris 147.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Desmodium 96, 97, 145.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Desmos 136.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dianthus 93, 138, 185.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dicontra 92, 121.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dicrerna 145.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dickroa 150.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dicliptera 105, 165.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Digitalis 105, 165.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dillivaria 169.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dimocarpus 144.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dioscorea 110, 177.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diospyros 5, 8, 23, 29, 33, 51, 128, 161.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diphaca 145.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX.

Dissolena 166.
Dolichos 97, 146, 147.
Dorstenia 174.
Dracaena 110, 178.
Drosera 84, 151.
Durio 23.
Dysodia 156.

Eaglewood 6, 15.
Ebenoxylum 15, 161.
Echium 163.
Eclipta 101, 157, 158.
Elaenagnus 127, 171.
Elaeococca 34, 172, 185.
Ginseng 6, 18, 28, 32, Illecebrum 169.
Eleocharis 11, 27, 34, 125.
Elephantopus 156.
Eleusine 113, 182.
Emilia 48, 102, 159.
Enkianthus 160, 161.
Epidendron 110, 177.
Epilobium 152.
Equisetum 183.
Eratheriopsis 113.
Eriade 118.
Erigeron 157.
Eriobotrya 23, 65, 150, 185.
Gossypium 13, 35, 36, 114, 100, 119, 129.
Erica 111, 181.
Eriodendron 140.
Erythrina 146.
Ethulia 102.
Eucla 161.
Eugenia 23, 150, 151.
Eunonymus 148.
Eupatorium 101.
Euphorbia 108, 171.
Euryale 124.
Euxolus 169.
Evodia 141.
Evolveulcus 103.
Exocoecaria 173.
Fagana 141.
Fagus 175.
Fallopia 140.
Fibraurea 138.
Ficus 8, 109, 174.
Fimbristyli 181.
Fleurya 174.
Florea 179.
Foeniculum 154.
Fragaria 149.
Framinus 18.
Fritillaria 179.

Gaura 152.
Gentiana 156, 162.
Gernardia 104.
Glabraria 171.
Gladiolus 177.
Gleditschia 122, 123, 148.
Glycine 97, 146.
Glycyrrhica 145.
Glyptostrobus 78.
Gnaphalium 157.
Gomphrena 107, 169.
Gonus 143.

Gorteria 159.

Grape 3, 8, 11.
Gratiola 104, 165.
Grewia 140.
Grisca 98.
Guilandina 148.
Gynocostrixi 112, 183.
Gynura 102, 169.

Habenaria 176.
Haloxylon 126.
Hamamelis 67.
Hecatan 136.
Hedera 59, 77, 155.
Hedona 138.
Hedynia 100, 119, 155.
Kaempferia 176.
Hedysarum 96, 97, 119, Kalianchoe 161.
145, 146.
Helicia 171.
Helicteres 94, 140.
Heliotropium 163.
Hemericallis 110, 128, Lablab 147.
178.
Herpestis 156.
Hibiscus 12, 54, 63, 93, Lagerstroemia 98, 125, 140.
Hiasutana 157.
Holeus 181.
Homalium 152.
Hordeum 182.
Houttuynia 170.
Hoya 162.
Hydrocotyle 99, 154.
Hydros 162.
Hydropyrum 112.
Hypercium 93, 139.
Hypoestes 105.

Ilicium 92, 136.
Impatiens 94, 141.
Incarnata 121.
Indigofera 33, 96, 145.
Insect wax 26, 32, 34.
Ipomoea 103, 117, 163.
Isatis 35.
Ischaemum 112.
Isopyrum 64.
Itea 151.
Ixia 110, 177.
Ixora 52, 100, 119, 129.

Jambolifera 141.
Jasminum 12, 34, 42.
102, 125, 161.
Jatropha 173.
Juglans 172, 174.
Jujubes 8, 125.
Juneus 7, 180.

Jungermannia 114.
Juniperus 96, 76, 109, 176.
Jurinae 160.
Jussiaceae 48, 99, 152.
Justicea 74, 105, 165, 166.

Lacca 160.
Lagania 152.
Lagerstroemia 98, 125.
152.
Lagunae 169.
Lamium 167.
Larix 126.
Latania 185.
Laurus 168, 170, 171.
Lawsonia 98, 152.
Lechea 179.
Leuca 111, 141.
Leontodon 160.
Leontopus 164, 167.
Lepidium 138.
Leptis 141.
Leptochloa 113, 182.
Levisticum 51.
Lichen 114, 184.
Ligustrum 18, 162.
Lilium 179.
Linnophila 101.
Limonia 141, 142.
Linaris 165.
Lindera 171.
Lippia 105, 166.
Lipocarpha 111.
Liriodendron 136.
Liriope 179.
Lithospermum 163.
Lihsaea 171, 185.
Livistona 185.
LOBelia 102, 160.
Lonicera 82, 155.
Lophanthus 106, 118, 167.
Loranthus 52, 108.
Lourea 146.
Luha 99, 153.
Lychnis 138.
Lycium 59, 104, 122, 164.
Lycoceum 99, 113, 163.
Lygodium 114, 183.
Lythrum 98.

Melastoma 98, 129, 152.
Melia 143.
Melilotus 144.
Melissa 167.
Melon 26, 99.
Melothria 154.
Menispernum 35.
Mentha 80, 167.
Mespilus 80, 150.
Michelia 136.
Microchloa 182.
Mimosa 97, 148.
Mirabilis 106, 168.
Mollugo 99, 154.
Momordica 153.
Monarda 106.
Morella 174.
Morinda 100.
Morus 18, 109, 173, 174.
Mucor 134.
Malgudium 160.
Maricca 153.
Marrya 129, 142.
Musca 11, 12, 14, 109, 175.
176.
Musaeucla 100, 155.
Myrica 6, 82, 174.
Myrtus 151, 161.

Narcissus 110.
Nardus 113, 182.
Nasturtium 135.
Nauclea 100.
Nelumbium 4, 12, 34, 22, 33.
124, 168, 188.
Nepthia 4, 7, 9, 22, 29.
33, 82, 95, 98, 129, 144.
185.
Nerine 177.
Nerium 102, 162.
Nicotiana 27, 28, 104.
117, 125, 164.
Niphobolus 183.
Nyctanthes 102, 161.
Nymphaea 133.
Nymphaeav 172.

Phyllanthus 172.

Ocimum 105, 106, 166.
Phoenix 180.
Oldenlandia 100, 155, 161.
Phrynium 176.
Olca 13, 34, 66, 102, 161.
Phyla 166.
Ononlea 114.
Opa 150, 151.

Ophioglossum 114, 183.
Phyllanthus 178.
INDEX.

Phyllodes 176.
Physalis 164.
Phyteuma 155.
Pieris 165.
Pieris 160.
Pimela 143.
Pinus 175.
Piper 13, 27, 107, 141, 170.
Patia 115, 181.
Pisum 146.
Plantago 106, 163.
Plecospernum 174.
Electronia 154.
Plum 9.
Plumbago 161.
Plumeria 162.
Poa 118, 152.
Poinciana 148.
Polanisia 183.
Polychroa 174.
Polygala 93, 138.
Polygonatum 156.
Polygnanum 43, 50, 74, 82.
107, 119, 121, 125, 169.
170.
Polyozus 155.
Polypara 170.
Polyphema 174.
Polypodium 47, 114, 183.
Ruta 141.
184.
Pongamia 147.
Porphyra 166.
Portulacea 138.
Potentilla 81, 149.
Pothos 180.
Pouzolzia 174.
Primula 150, 161.
Prunus 81, 149.
Psidium 23, 80, 151.
Psophocarpus 146.
Pteris 30, 75, 114, 129, 183.
Pterocarpus 147.
Pteronia 157.
Pterostigma 104, 165.
Pueraria 14, 28, 87.
Punica 8, 11, 99, 152.
Pupalia 106.
Pyrethrum 158.
Pyrus 127, 150.
Quercus 14, 61, 83, 121, 126, 175.
Quinaria 142.
Quisqualis 151.
Quintilia 142.
Quirina 155.
Ramunculus 136.
Raphanus 92, 116, 138.
Raphiolepis 150.
Rehmannia 35, 105.
Reseda 138.
Rhamnus 76, 83, 95, 119.
143.
Rhapis 182.
Rheum 6, 19, 24, 31, 34.
36, 107, 170.
Rhus 7, 17, 36, 61, 84, 96.
144.
Rhynchosia 147.
Ricinus 61, 118, 173.
Ricotta 138.
Robinia 33, 122, 145, 147.
36, 170.
Rosa 12, 51, 98, 149, 150.
Rosewood 6, 15, 34.
Rosmarinus 167.
Rosellaria 105.
Roxburghia 178.
Rubia 48, 84, 100.
Rubus 54, 98, 149.
Ruella 104, 105, 165.
Rumex 170.
Saccharum 8, 36, 111.
117, 182.
Sagittaria 50, 111, 181.
Sageretia 95.
Salacia 95, 143.
Salisburia 128.
Salix 15, 30, 50, 175.
Salomonia 93, 188.
Salvia 106.
Sambucus 100, 155.
Santalum 171.
Sapindus 122, 144.
Saururus 170.
Saxifraga 98, 150.
Scabiosa 156.
Scirpus 111, 180, 181.
Scopolia 138.
Scoparia 165.
Scrophularia 106.
Scutellaria 84, 106.
Sebifera 171.
Sedum 151.
Selinum 100, 154.
Senecio 101, 102, 159.
Sepias 165.
Serissa 156, 185.
Serratula 160.
Sesamum 165.
Setaria 183.
Sida 93, 94, 139.
Sideroxylon 161.
Sinapis 92, 118, 119, 188.
Sium 99, 154.
Sixygium 150, 151.
Smilax 6, 20, 24, 34, 36.
76, 110, 178.
Soja 27, 97, 146.
Solanum 103, 164.
Solenila 153.
Soldago 101, 156.
Sonchus 160.
Sophora 30, 48, 122, 145.
148.
Sorghum 181.
Spathiun 170.
Spermacoce 100.
Spilanthes 156.
Spinacia 107, 169.
Spinifex 182.
Spiraea 149.
Spiranthus 176.
Sporobolus 182.
Stachys 167.
Stapelia 162.
Sterculia 28, 35, 36, 51.
60, 85, 99, 140.
Stillinger 15, 34, 42, 48.
51, 61, 65, 109, 173.
Streblus 173.
Striga 105, 165.
Strophantus 162.
Stylium 155.
Symplocos 161.
Syringa 121.
Taccia 177.
Tagetes 158.
Tamarindus 88, 97, 119.
148.
Tamarix 138.
Tanacetum 68, 102, 158.
Taraxacum 160.
INDEX.

Taxus 109.
Tecoma 129, 165.
Tetraceras 136.
Tetranthera 171.
Teucrium 188.
Thalictrum 196.
Thea 7, 13, 27, 28, 34, 36, 40, 41, 42, 50, 51, 61, 76, 93, 119, 139.
Thelia 161.
Thlaspi 138.
Thuja 109, 175.
Todalia 94.
Torenia 104, 116, 119.
Torilis 154.
Torreyea 109.
Toxocarpus 162.
Trachyttella 186.
Tradescantia 179.
Trapa 12, 99, 124, 152.
Triadica 173.
Trientalis 141.
Trichomanes 114.
Trichosanthes 99, 152, 153.
Tridesmis 173.
Trifolium 144.
Triphasia 141.
Trisanthus 154.
Triticum 182.
Triumfetta 94, 119.
Tussilago 71, 159, 160.
Typha 181.
Ulmus 87.
Unona 129, 136.
Uraria 97, 146.
Urena 93, 119, 139, 140.
Urtica 173, 174.
Utricularia 105.
Uvaria 129, 136.
Vaccinium 51.
Valeriana 106.
Vanda 7.
Vandelia 104.
Vanieria 174.
Varnish 7, 33.
Varronia 163.
Vatica 93.
Verbena 105, 166.
Verbesina 101, 119, 158.
Vernicia 172.
Vicia 146.
Vinca 162.
Viola 138.
Viscum 108.
Vismia 139.
Vitex 105, 122, 166.
Vitis 87, 144.
Volkameria 105, 166.
Waltheria 94.
Watermelon 26, 99, 127.
Wedelia 101, 158.
Wheat 4, 6.
Wikstroemia 108, 171.
Wistaria 32.
Xanthoceras 34.
Xanthosoma 180.
Xeranthemum 87, 159.
Zala 181.
Zanthoxylum 27, 33, 47, 51, 58, 59, 67, 73, 100, 121, 141.
Zea 183.
Zehneria 153.
Zingiber 24, 117, 176.
Zizyphus 95, 122, 125, 128, 143, 144.
Zornia 145.
ERRATA AND ADDENDA.

Page 29 Line 13 For W. Hooker read W. J. Hooker.

" 34 " 15-17 For as my friend etc., read as I learn from the Report of the Kew Gardens 1879, p. 37, *Persea Nan mu* Oliv.—sin: 楠木 nan mu.

" 35 " 2 from below. For On long chu read On tong chu.

" 36 " 10 For tsz' read tsz'..

" 37 " For call read called.

" 38 " 4 & 3 from below. For both written in 1701 read written in 1700 and 1701.

" 38 " 10 For 1701 (but perhaps in 1700) read 1700.

" 46 " 2 from below. For Linnaeus read Linnaeus.

" 50 " 16 For 柳杨 read 楊柳.

" 51 " 19 For Abictis read Abietis.

" 51 " 11 from below. For Linnaeus read Linnaeus.

" 62 " 12 For Lammarch read Larmarch.

" 64 " 9 For Crodit, read Crocidil.

" 66 " 13 from below. For H. Asiae read Fl. Asiae.

" 68 " 23 For fructu read fructu.

" 70 " 14 For A Kilcola read An Kilcola.

" 70 " 12 For semina read semina.

" 78 " 20 For includeente read includens.

" 79 " 21 For 48 read 42.

" 87 " 18 from below. For 440 read 450.

" 73 " 9 For Sigesbeckia read Siegesbeckia, and add after L.: Gieseke.

" 76 " 22 For fossicullos read fascicullos.

" 78 " 11 from below. For Inalli, read Inali.

" 81 " 25 Dele: But it seems .... to Chinensis. L.

" 87 " 18 from below. For cochllatum read cochleatum.

" 87 " 8 Dele: It seems .... to wrong.

" 88 " 2 After labrusca add: (V. ficifolia Bge.).

" 92 " 6 For hardly read certainly not.

" 92 " 7 For 352 read 353.

" 92 " 13 For This name read The name.

" 113 " 12 from below. For 蕨篠 read Perhaps 蕨篠.

" 116 " 5 For 543 read 453.

" 121 " 8 For Shantung read Chili.

" 122 " 9 from below. Read 16. It is generally etc.
ERRATA AND ADDENDA.

125  9 After tinder add: V. 517.
2    18 from below. For Pergulatoria read Pergularia.
144  2 After Lam. add: var. spinosa Bg.
146  8 & 9 from below. For See above Martini. 26. read according to Dr. Hance—L. angulatus. Rich.
160  last Line. After Fl. hkg. 128.—add: Probably Chang shan a famous Chin. febrifuge.
151  Line 14 from below. After Fl. hkg. add: 120.
153  20 For Lav. read Sav.
156  6 from below. For Coccinea. Spec. dubia, read Spec. dubia Coccinea?
158  18 For Bullock? read a Bullock.
158  1 Dele: Ct. after Osb.
159  16 from below. For Dec. X. read Dec. XI.
162  19 For 194 read 194 a.
162  3 For Giesel. read Griseb.
163  14 For Osu. read Osb.
165  9 After: China add: chi ma.
166  18 For 85 read 185.
171  14 & 18 from below. For Wickstroemia read Wikstroemia.
173  3 from below. For Morisam, read Mori, sam.
177  8 For 367 read 355.
178  7 from below. For Bernardia read Barnardia.
179  3 For Floscozia read Floscoza.
180  26 For Calladium read Caladium.
182  23 After Fl. hkg. add: 430.
ARTICLE II.

COINS OF THE PRESENT DYNASTY OF CHINA.*

By S. W. BUSHELL, M.D.

IN the first number of the Journal of the Society, published in June 1858, there is a paper by Mr. A. Wylie on the "Coins of the Ta Ts'ing or Present Dynasty of China," which is excellent as far as it goes. Since its publication however so many additional varieties have been discovered that a collection of some of them may be useful to the numismatic student. Chinese authors generally neglect recent coins although the latest Ni Mu in his voluminous work the K\text{u} chin ch'i\text{en} loo 古今錢略, published in 1877 in 36 books, commences with a series of the decrees and memorials relating to the coinage, with extracts from the official regulations on the subject, and devotes his 1st book to the money of the reigning dynasty concluding with the Chia ch'i\text{ing} period. On the large coins of the Hsien feng period there is a separate brochure by Pao k'ang, the 大泉圖錄 Ta ch'\text{ü}an t'\text{ou} lu published in 1876, which contains most accurate woodcuts of the specimens described, and gives also figures of the government silver and cash notes issued by the Board of Revenue during the same reign, with an appendix containing a series of letters on paper money.

Nearly all the figures in this paper are from fac-simile rubbings of coins in my own collection. I am indebted to the extensive collection of Mr. G. B. Glover for two or three not in my possession. I have figured only such as appear to be distinct varieties issued by the government mints. No special attention has been paid to different modes of writing the same Chinese character such as 隆, for the second character of 乾隆 Ch'ien lung; 寶 for 贝 pao &c. Still less have attempts been made to include every variation in the strokes

* Read before the Society on the 7th June, 1880.
of the Manchu characters which are often corrupt and due only to the ignorance of the illegal coiner.*

No. 1 was issued by the second emperor of the dynasty 太宗 T'ai ts'ung who succeeded in 1627. The inscription is in the original pointless form of the Manchu character. The obverse read in the order—left, top, bottom, right—has Sura han ni chiha "Money of the T'ien ts'ung period, corresponding to the Chinese, 天聰之寶 T'ien ts'ung chi'h pao. The reverse has on the left ch'uan "ten," on the right evn yan "one liang," giving the value and weight of the coin. †

Nos. 2-12 belong to the reign of 世祖 Shih ten (1644-1661), the first of the dynasty to rule over China, and have on the obverse Shun ch'i'h ts'ung pao "Current coin of the Shun ch'i'h (period)."

No. 2 has a ring on the reverse, above.
No. 3 has a dot above.
No. 4 has a dot on the left.
No. 5 has 疋 Hu above, indicating its issue from the 部 Hu pu, the Board of Revenue.
No. 6 has above 宣 Hsüan, for Hsüan-fu in the province of Chih-li.
No. 7 has on the right 川 Ch'uan, for Ssu-ch'uan.
No. 8 has on the right 午 Wu, the meaning of which is doubtful.
No. 9 has on the left — Yi "one."

* Many of these are given in an article by Mr. J. Kirkwood in the China Review (Vol. VII. No. 3) to which I may refer those curious in such matters. Nos. 21, 22, 23, 33, 34, 37, 62, 63, 65, 77 for instance differ from coins figured by Mr. Wylie only, if at all, in the slightest variation in the form of the Manchu letters. No. 4 in the same article is a typical example of the ingenuity of the Chinese variety-monger; a common Shun-ch'i'h coin having been altered by the conversion of 東 tung into 申 shên and some of the strokes of the corresponding Mancha word chiselled away so as to form an illegible monstrosity. Two of the Chi hsiang coins are wrongly given as belonging to the Ch'ien lung reign and there are other errors in the brief descriptive notes. On the other hand several of the above coins were first figured in this paper and I owe to the author some exchanges of rare specimens.

† For a full description of this coin see a note of mine in the China Review Vol. VI. p. 143. It was modelled after coins, with the same inscription in Chinese on the reverse, current during the Ming dynasty. A similar large coin of the Shun ch'i'h period is referred to in the Ku chin ch'ien luo with Chinese inscription on the reverse, † shih above, — 雨 yi liang on the right, but it is excessively rare and I have not even seen a figure of it.
No. 10 has Tung in Manchu and Chinese indicating the Shat-tung mint, and an additional character Kung below.
No. 11 has Fu in Manchu and Chinese and was issued in Fu-chien where a mint was founded in 1649.
No. 12 has Hsi in Manchu and Chinese and was probably cast in the Shansi mint.
No. 13 belongs to the reign of Sheng tso (1662-1722). It has on the obverse K’ang hsi tung pao, on the reverse Nan in Manchu and Chinese, for the Hu-nan mint, with a crescent above and dot or star below.
No. 14 is an additional coin of the reign of Shih tsung (1723-1735). It has on the obverse Yung cheng tung pao, on the reverse Pao ning, a transcript of the name of the Ning-po mint.
Nos. 15-25 belong to the reign of Kao tsung (1736-1796), and have on the obverse Ch’ien lung tung pao, “Current coin of the Ch’ien lung period.”
No. 15 has on the reverse Pao wu, the mint of Wu-ch’ang the provincial capital of Hu-pei, with a star below.
No. 16 the same inscription, with a star above.
No. 17 has on the reverse Pao ch’i, a transcript of having been issued from the mint of Taiwan T’ai-wan (Formosa).
No. 18 has on the reverse Pao i “I-li mint,” a transcript of the Chinese Shih, and has a bar above. For this mint, as well as for the silver coinage of Tibet, the regulation was made in succeeding reigns that one fifth of the coins issued should have the inscription Ch’ien lung tung pao, in memory of the conquest of the country.
Nos. 19-24* are from the mints of Mohammedan cities of Chinese Turkestan, the names of which they have on the reverse in Manchu and Turki, the alphabet of the latter being derived from the Arabic, but so badly written on the coins as to be hardly decipherable. The coins are of reddish alloy being composed of 84 pts. of copper, 34.8 of lead, and 1.2 of tin, in 120 pts. The zinc which gives the yellow colour to the ordinary Chinese coins is not easily obtainable in these districts.
No. 19 has Aksu on the left in Manchu, Aksai on the right in Turki. The transcript in Chinese is 阿克蘇.

* No. 19 is figured by Mr. Wylie. Three of the others are also included by him but not from actual specimens.
No. 20 has USHI on the left in Manchu, the Chinese form of which is 烏什; and Ushi in Turki on the right.
No. 21 has on the left Yerkiyang in Manchu, the transcript of the Chinese 耶爾羌; Yarkand on the right in Turki.
No. 22 has on the left Yerkim in Manchu, the transcript of the Chinese 耶爾奇木; on the right Yarkand in Turki.
No. 23 has Kashiyar on the left in Manchu and Kashgar on the right in Turki. The Chinese form is 喀什噶爾.
No. 24 has Hodiyan on the left in Manchu, the transcript of the Chinese 和闐. The Turki form ought to be Khoten, the second syllable of which is legible on the coin.
No. 25 has on the reverse 安南 An-nan. It is a thin, badly cast coin and similar in aspect to the ordinary cash of Cochinchina. It is figured also in the Ku chin ch'ien luo and described as issued after the submission of 阮光平 Juan kuang ping.

Nos. 26-37 belong to the reign of 仁宗 Jén ts'ung (1796-1820) and have on the obverse Chia ch'ing t'ung pao.
No. 26 has on the reverse Pao ch'ıowen for 寶泉 the Board of Revenue mint with a dot above.
No. 27 Pao yuwen for 寶源 the mint of the Board of Works, with a dot below.
No. 28 the same inscription with a ring below.
No. 29 Pao che for 寶浙 the Che-chiang mint, with a dot below.
No. 30 Pao k'ıyan * for 寶黔 the Kuei-chou mint, with a dot above.
No. 31 Pao u for 寶武 the Wu-ch'ang mint.
No. 32 Pao ch'ıong for 寶昌 the Nau-ch'ang mint, with a dot above on the left.
No. 33 Pao yön for 寶雲 the Yun-nan mint, with a crescent above.
No. 34 Pao v'ai for 寶臺 the Tai-wan mint.
No. 35 Pao i for 寶伊 the I-li mint.
No. 36 has the same inscription with a perpendicular bar below.
No. 37 has Aksu on the left in Manchu, on the right in Turki.

* Mr. Wylie is wrong in referring the coins with this inscription to the Fu-chien mint, the second character of which would be transliterated in Manchu without an aspirate.
Nos. 38–56 belong to the reign of 宣宗 Hsüan tsung (1821–1850) and have on the obverse Tao kung t'ung pao.

No. 38 has on the reverse Pao ch'iu wan for 寶泉 the Board of Revenue mint, with a dot above.

No. 39 Pao ch'ii for 寶直 the Chih-li mint.

No. 40 Pao fu for 寶福 the Fu-chien mint.

No. 41 Pao shan for 寶陝 the 陝西 “Shan-hsi” mint.

No. 42 Pao k'ii yian for 寶黔 the Kuei-chou mint, with a ring above.

No. 43 the same with a dot in the centre of the circle.

No. 44 the same inscription with a cross above.

No. 45 a cross below.

No. 46 a solid triangle in relief above.

No. 47 a similar triangle below with apex pointing downwards.

No. 48 a crescent, above.

No. 49 has also Pao k'ii yian with 大 ta “great” above.

No. 50 Pao i for 寶伊 the I-li mint.

No. 51 the same inscription with a dot above.

No. 52 the same with a vertical bar above.

No. 53 is a larger coin from the I-li mint, with the character 十 shih “ten” above, indicating its value to be equal to ten of the common small cash.

No. 54 has Aksu on the left in Manchu, on the right in Turki.

No. 55 the same inscription with 八年 pn mien “eighth year” (1828) above, and 五 wen “five” below, to mark the value.

No. 56 like the last with 十 shih 10 instead of 5. These two coins were issued after the recovery of the Mohammedan cities which had revolted from the Chinese rule, and the capture of Jehangir (張格爾), the descendant of the old Khoja rulers who took the title of Sultan in Kashgar in 1826 and was afterwards brought to Peking and beheaded.

The coins issued during the reign of 文宗 Wên tsung (1851–1861), the title of whose reign was 咸豐 Hsien féng, are much more numerous. On account of the rebellion in the central provinces the supply of copper which is mainly derived from Yunnan was cut off, and the government was reduced to great straits. In 1853 Chi Ch'un-tsao the minister in charge of the Board of Revenue memorialized to advise the issue of large coins equal to ten of the ordinary small cash. Then iron furnaces were founded and large quantities of iron coins
thrown into circulation. Soon after large coins of the nominal value of 50 and 100 were cast. These were so successful that the princes and high officials of the Council constituted to put down the rebellion recommended the issue of larger tokens each one representing 500 and 1000 units, and these circulated together with the rest and a new currency of iron and zinc small cash.

At first both officials and common people are said to have united in praise of the convenience of these large coins, but the large margin of profit tempted false coiners who swarmed like bees, and though executed in crowds, others took their place, including even the Buddhist monks. The result was a rapid depreciation of the large coins and finally nobody would take them at any price. Only those of the nominal value of 10 remained in circulation and these still constitute the actual currency of the capital. Their value however has sunk to that of two of the small cash and a tael of silver exchanges for about eight hundred.

The iron money held its ground till 1857 during the first Chinese month of which year there was a popular rising in Peking and it became, at one bound, so much worthless metal. Some of the provincial mints issued iron and zinc coins which had a yet shorter life.

At the time of the issue of the large tokens in the capital orders were sent to the provincial governors to have similar coins made in the various mints, after models which were distributed by the Board of Revenue. In some of the mints the coins were cast but never circulated; in others they circulated for a short time and were then withdrawn; in the rest the receipt of the models was acknowledged, and some pattern coins were duly forwarded for the inspection of the emperor, but no mint was opened.

There are altogether so many varieties that a collection in tabular form of the specimens figured here, together with the fifteen included in Mr. Wylie's article, may be useful, if only as a basis for future discovery and addition.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CITY</th>
<th>MINT-SIGNS</th>
<th>FACE VALUE</th>
<th>WEIGHT</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Peking</td>
<td>C.I.</td>
<td>1 c.</td>
<td>1 c.</td>
<td>Copper coin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pao ching</td>
<td>C.I.</td>
<td>10 c.</td>
<td>10 c.</td>
<td>Copper coin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pao yuen</td>
<td>C.I.</td>
<td>20 c.</td>
<td>20 c.</td>
<td>Copper coin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pao chin</td>
<td>C.I.</td>
<td>50 c.</td>
<td>50 c.</td>
<td>Copper coin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pao cheung</td>
<td>C.I.</td>
<td>100 c.</td>
<td>100 c.</td>
<td>Copper coin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pao lo</td>
<td>C.I.</td>
<td>500 c.</td>
<td>500 c.</td>
<td>Copper coin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pao foon</td>
<td>C.I.</td>
<td>1000 c.</td>
<td>1000 c.</td>
<td>Copper coin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuzhou</td>
<td>C.I.</td>
<td>1 c.</td>
<td>1 c.</td>
<td>Copper coin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hang-chow</td>
<td>C.I.</td>
<td>10 c.</td>
<td>10 c.</td>
<td>Copper coin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shensi</td>
<td>C.I.</td>
<td>20 c.</td>
<td>20 c.</td>
<td>Copper coin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hopei</td>
<td>C.I.</td>
<td>50 c.</td>
<td>50 c.</td>
<td>Copper coin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kiang-nan</td>
<td>C.I.</td>
<td>100 c.</td>
<td>100 c.</td>
<td>Copper coin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kiang-su</td>
<td>C.I.</td>
<td>500 c.</td>
<td>500 c.</td>
<td>Copper coin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yarkand</td>
<td>C.I.</td>
<td>1000 c.</td>
<td>1000 c.</td>
<td>Copper coin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Nos. 57-61 are from the Board of Revenue and have the name of the mint in Manchu pao ch'iuwan, the transcript of 寶泉, on the reverse.

No. 57 has on the obverse Hsien feng chung pao "Heavy coin of the Hsien feng period", on the reverse 伍文 wu wen indicating its value to be 5.

No. 58 reverse 拾文 shih wen "ten cash." This and the preceding are rare.

No. 59 is the ordinary Board of Revenue coin, having on the reverse tang shih, "equivalent to 10." Both copper and iron.

No. 60 has on the obverse Hsien feng yun pao "Large coin of Hsien feng", on the reverse tang erh pai "equal to 200".

No. 61 the same obverse, reverse tang wu pai "equal to 500".

No. 62 the same obverse, reverse tang ch'ien "equal to 1000".

Nos. 63-67 have similar inscriptions to the above from which they are distinguished by the addition of a crescent and dot or star on the reverse, to show that they were cast and presented to the emperor by the Hereditary Prince of K'o-ch'in 克勤郡王.

Nos. 68-70 are from the Board of Works and have the mint on the reverse in Manchu pao yuwan, from the Chinese 資源.

No. 68 reverse tang shih "equal to 10" exists also in iron.

No. 69 reverse tang wu pai "equal to 500".

No. 70 reverse tang ch'ien "equal to 1000".

Nos. 71-74 belong to Chih-li and were issued from Pao-ting-fu, the provincial capital. They have on the reverse the name of the mint in Manchu pao chi, the transcript of 寶直.

No. 71 is the unit, and occurs both in copper and iron.

No. 72 reverse tang shih "equal to 10".

No. 73 tang wu shih "equal to 50".

No. 74 tang pai "equal to 100".

Nos. 75-78 are from the mint established at Chi-chou for the eastern division of the province of Chih-li. The mint-name on the reverse is in Manchu pao ki, the transcript of 資亟. No small cash appear to have been issued.

No. 75 reverse tang wu "equal to 5".

No. 76 tang shih "equal to 10".

No. 77 tang wu shih "equal to 50".

No. 78 tang pai "equal to 100".

Nos. 79-81 have on the reverse the Manchu pao tsi, the transcript probably of 資濟 the mint of Tsi-nan-fu in Shantung. The mint in this province was closed in the Ch'ien-lung
reign and there is no record of its having been re-opened. The specimens figured are extremely rare and appear to be examples of a few patterns cast merely for imperial inspection as described above.

No. 79 is the unit, from Mr. Glover's collection.
No. 80 the "heavy coin" with tang shih "equal to 10" on the reverse.
No. 81 tang wu shih "equal to 50".
Nos. 82-85 are from the mint of Su-chou-fu in the province of Chiang-su having on the reverse in Manchu pao su, the transcript of 寶蘇. The units, 10 and 100, are figured in Mr. Wylie's paper and these complete the series.
No. 82 has on the reverse tang wu "equal to 5". Both copper and iron specimens occur.
No. 83 tang êch shih "equal to 20".
No. 84 tang suan shih "equal to 30".
No. 85 tang wu shih "equal to 50".
Nos. 86-87 are from the Chê-chiang mint and have in Manchu on the reverse pao che, the transcript of 寶浙.
No. 86 has 十 shih "ten" on the reverse. It is much rarer than the coin of corresponding value figured by Mr. Wylie with tang shih on the reverse.
No. 87 is also a rare coin in the collection of Mr. H. B. Morse with tang süt shih "equal to 40" on the reverse and is the only known instance of that value.
Nos. 88-90 are from the province of Chiang-hsi and have on the reverse in Manchu pao ch'ang, the transcript of 寶昌, for the Nau-ch'ang-fu mint. They are of 1, 10 and 50 nominal value and the inscriptions are similar to the preceding.
Nos. 91-104 are from the Fu-chien mint and have on the reverse in Manchu pao fu, the transcript of 寶福.
No. 91 obverse Hsien fêng chung pao; on the reverse tang wu "equal to 5", the nominal value, and on the rim êch ch'ien wu fên "two ch'ien five fên", the weight. This style of inscription of characters within squares sunk in the rim was adopted from the Japanese.
No. 92 has on the obverse Hsien fêng t'ung pao, on the reverse yi shih "10".
No. 93 on the obverse Hsien fêng chung pao, and the same reverse.
No. 94 the same obverse and reverse with the addition of chi chung wu ch'ien "of the weight of 5 ch'ien" on the rim of the reverse.
No. 95 is similar but with *chi chung wu chien* on the field of the reverse.
No. 96 on obverse *Hsien feng tung pao*, on reverse *erh shih* "20".
No. 97 on obverse *Hsien feng chung pao*, the same reverse.
No. 98 is identical with *chi chung yu liang* "weighing one liang" on rim.
No. 99 *chi chung yu liang* on the field of the reverse.
No. 100 on obverse *Hsien feng tung pao*, on reverse *wu shih* "50".
No. 101 on obverse *Hsien feng chung pao*, on reverse *wu shih*.
No. 102 the same with *erh liang wu chien* on the rim of reverse.
No. 103 on obverse *Hsien feng chung pao*, on reverse *yi pai* "100".
No. 104 similar with the weight—5 liang—*chi chung wu liang*, on the rim of the reverse.

Nos. 105-108 are from the Hu-nan mint and have on the reverse in Manchu *pao to*, the transcript of 賓德, for Ch'ang-te-fu. Of Nos. 106, 107 I have both copper and iron coins.

Nos. 109-116 are from the Ho-nan mint, having on the reverse in Manchu *pao ho*, the transcript of 賓河.
No. 109 is figured from an iron coin. No. 110 has a crescent, No. 111 a circle on the reverse; these are of copper but so wretchedly cast as to be almost illegible, and it is possible that the Manchu legend is *pao su* for the Chiang-su mint.
No. 112 reverse *tang shih* "equal to 10".
No. 113 *tang wu shih* "equal to 50".
No. 114 *tang pai* "equal to 100".
No. 115 *tang wu pai* "equal to 500".
No. 116 *tang chien* "equal to 1000".

Nos. 117, 118 are from the Shan-si mint and have on the reverse in Manchu *pao chin (tsin)*, the transcript of 賓晋, the name of the mint being derived from the ancient name of the province.

Nos. 119-124 are from the Shen-si mint having on the reverse in Manchu *pao shan*, the transcript of 賓陝.
No. 119 is the ordinary small cash.
No. 120 has on the reverse *tang shih* "equal to 10".
No. 121 *tang wu shih* "equal to 50".
No. 122 *tang pai* "equal to 100".
No. 123 *tang wu pai* "equal to 500".
No. 124 *tang chien* "equal to 1000". This specimen has on the reverse a square sunk in the rim below containing the
character 官 kuan, to indicate that it belongs to a government coinage.

Nos. 125-129 are from a mint started during this reign for the province of Kan-su at Kung-ch’ang-fu, and have on the reverse in Manchu pao kung, the transcript of 寶鷹.

No. 125 has on the reverse tang wu “equal to 5”.
No. 126 tang shih “equal to 10”.
No. 127 tang wu shih “equal to 50”.
No. 128 tang pai “equal to 100”.
No. 129 tang ch’ien “equal to 1000”.

Nos. 130, 131 are from a mint founded in the extreme N.W. of the province of Kansu at Urumtsi, called by the Chinese Ti-hua-chou, and have on the reverse in Manchu pao ti, the transcript of 寶迪. They are of red copper without zinc in the alloy like the Ili coinage.

No. 130 has on the reverse tang pa “equal to 3” and is a solitary instance of this denomination.
No. 131 tang shih “equal to 10”.

Nos. 132, 133 belong to the Kuang-si mint and have on the reverse in Manchu pao kui, the transcript of 寶桂, for the capital Knei-lin-fu. No 133 of the nominal value of 10 seems to have been the only large coin cast. In the adjoining province of Kuang-tung it is said that no large cash were issued from the mint.

Nos. 134-138 are from the Ssü-ch’uan mint and have on the reverse in Manchu pao ch‘uan, the transcript of 寶川. No. 135 has a crescent on the reverse. No. 136 the character 文 wen “unit.”

No. 137 tang shih “equal to 10”.
No. 138 tang wu shih “equal to 50”.

Nos. 139-147 are from the mint of the provincial capital of Yun-nan and have on the reverse in Manchu pao yon, the transcript of 寶雲. There are many varieties of small cash of which eight are figured. No. 140 has on the reverse a circle above. No. 141 a circle below. No. 142 a crescent with a dot. No 143 has a form of the character 五 “five” above, referring probably to the month of the year, possibly to the year of the reign. No. 144 has 合 ho, perhaps a contraction of 拾 shih “ten”, above, a circle with central dot below.

No. 145 has a crescent below.
No. 146 also a crescent below and 十 shih “10” above,
No. 147 has on the reverse tang shih “equal to 10”.
Nos. 148, 149 are from the mint of Tung-ch'ü-nan-fu in the province of Yunnan, and have on the reverse in Manchu pao tung, the transcript of 寶東.

No. 149 has on the reverse the Chinese character chêng above. The first month of the year is called chêng yuēh.

Nos. 150-156 belong to the province of Kuei-chou where there are two mints, one at Kuei-yang-fu, the capital, the other at Ta-ting-fu. The coins of both have on the reverse in Manchu pao K'êyen, the transcript of 寶黔, from the ancient name of the country.

No. 151 has on the reverse san “three” probably the month of the year in which it was issued.

No. 152 a cross, a form of ssù “four”.

No. 153 a form of ch'i seven in the same style of figure.

No. 154 shih “ten”.

No. 155 tang shih “equal to 10”.

No. 156 tang wen shih “equal to 50”.

Nos. 157-160 are from the Hu-poi mint in the city of Wu-ch'ang-fu and have on the reverse in Manchu pao n, the transcript of 寶武. The denominations are 1, 10, 50 and 100, with the usual inscriptions on the reverse.

No. 161 belongs to the original Hu-nan mint which was at Ch'ang-sha-fu, the capital of the province, and has on the reverse in Manchu pao nan, the transcript of 寶南. This city was taken by the Taiping insurgents before the issue of the large coins which were struck for this province at a new mint founded at Ch'ang-té-fu (Figs. 105-108).

Nos. 162-164 are from the Ili mint, having on the reverse in Manchu pao i, the transcript of 寶伊.

No. 162 has on the obverse Hsien féng ch'ung pao, and is the unit of the currency.

No. 163 obverse Hsien féng ch'ung pao, reverse tang wen shih “equal to 50”.

No. 164 obverse Hsien féng yuan pao, reverse tang p'ai “equal to 100”.

Nos. 165-169 are from the Aksu mint and have the name of the city on the reverse—on the left in Manchu, on the right in Turkic which is written with the Arabic alphabet.

No. 165 represents the unit.

No. 166 has on the obverse Hsien féng ch'ung pao, on the reverse tang wen “equal to 5”.

No. 167 a similar obverse with tang shih, “equal to 10”, on the reverse. A Chinese numismatist, with characteristic-
ally minute analysis, notes that the character 當 is unusually broad and sprawling, proving that the old Tao kuang moulds were used, the characters 八年 being obliterated (see Nos. 55, 56) and replaced with a separate stamp.

No. 168 obverse Hsien fêng chung pao, reverse tang wu shih “equal to 50”.
No. 169 obverse Hsien fêng yuan pao, reverse tang pai, “equal to 100”.
Nos. 170, 171 are from the Yarkand mint and have the name of the city on the reverse, on the left in Manchu—Yerkhiang—on the right in Turki—Yarkand.
No. 170 obverse Hsien fêng t'ung pao, reverse tang shih “equal to 10”.
No. 171 obverse Hsien fêng yuan pao, reverse tang pai, “equal to 100”.
No. 172 is figured here from its similarity in style of inscription and alloy to the coins of Chinese Turkestan. It has a on the obverse Hsien fêng t'ung pao, on the reverse tang wu “equal to 5”, and two other characters which would appear to be Manchu and Turki but are so badly written as to be undecipherable.

Nos. 173-203 belong to the reign of 穆宗 Mu tsung (1862-1874). After the death of his father on August 22nd 1861 at Jê-ho (Jchol), the new emperor succeeded and Chi hsiang “Good Luck” was chosen for the name of the epoch, the first year of which would have been 1862. After the return to Peking however there was a coup d'état, the Council of eight appointed by the late Emperor were degraded and the principal members executed, and Prince Kung, in conjunction with the two Empresses Dowager, became Regent. The nien hao was then changed to T'ung chih “Union in order”. Money had already been cast in the metropolitan mints but it had not yet been issued, so that the cash were re-melted, a few only being kept as curiosities. They are figured here.

No. 173 has on the obverse Chi hsiang chung pao “Heavy money of the Chi hsiang period”, on the reverse tang shih “equal to 10” with the name of the Board of Revenue Mint in Manchu pao ch'iowan.
No. 174 a similar inscription with pao yuwan in Manchu for the Board of Works Mint on the reverse.
Nos. 175-176 with the inscription Chi hsiang t'ung pao “Current money of the Chi hsiang period” belong to the unit currency of the same two mints.
No. 177 has on the obverse T'ung chih t'ung pao, on the reverse pao ch'iowan for the Board of Revenue Mint.
No. 178 on the reverse pao yuwan, for the Board of Works.
No. 179 pao chi for the Chih-li mint.
No. 180 pao su for the Chiang-su mint.
No. 181 pao che for the Che-chiang mint.
No. 182 pao ch'ang for the Chiang-si mint.
Nos. 183-186 have pao fu* for the Fu-chien mint. No. 183
has also on the reverse the Chinese character ch'ang probably
for the first month. No. 184 chiu “nine” in contracted
form. No. 185 shih “ten”. No. 186 shih erh “12.”
No. 187 pao chin for the Shan-si mint.
No. 188 pao kung for the Kansu mint at Kung-ch'ang-fu.
No. 189 pao kui for the Kuang-si mint, and a circle above.
No. 190 pao ch'uan for the Ssu-ch'uan mint.
Nos. 191, 192 pao yon for the Yun-nan mint with (a con-
traction of 拾 ten?); and shih yi “11”.
No. 193 pao tung for the second Yun-nan mint at Tung-
ch'uan-fu, with ch'eng above and a crescent below.
No. 194 pao u for the Hu pei mint.
No. 195 pao nan for the Hu-nan mint.
No. 196 pao kuwang for the Kuang-tung mint.

* On these specimens the fu is written with a diphthong instead with
a simple vowel as in preceding reigns.
## TABLE OF MINTS AND ANNUAL COINAGE (1865).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Province</th>
<th>City</th>
<th>Mint Name</th>
<th>Annual Coinage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chihli</td>
<td>Peking</td>
<td>Pao ch'uan</td>
<td>899,856,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pao yuan</td>
<td>449,928,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Paotingfu</td>
<td>Pao chih</td>
<td>60,756,840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shansi</td>
<td>Taiyuanfu</td>
<td>Pao tsin</td>
<td>17,472,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kiangsu</td>
<td>Suchoufu</td>
<td>Pao su</td>
<td>111,992,052</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kiangsi</td>
<td>Nanch'angfu</td>
<td>Pao ch'ang</td>
<td>42,037,992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fukien</td>
<td>Fuchoufu</td>
<td>Pao fu</td>
<td>43,200,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chêkiang</td>
<td>Hangchoufu</td>
<td>Pao chê</td>
<td>129,600,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hupei</td>
<td>Wuch'angfu</td>
<td>Pao wu</td>
<td>84,420,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hunan</td>
<td>Ch'angshafu</td>
<td>Pao nan</td>
<td>48,054,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shensi</td>
<td>Sianfu</td>
<td>Pao shan</td>
<td>94,589,040</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ssüch'uan</td>
<td>Ch'engtufu</td>
<td>Pao ch'uan</td>
<td>157,733,333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuangtung</td>
<td>Kuangchoufu</td>
<td>Pao kuang</td>
<td>34,560,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuangsi</td>
<td>Kueilinfu</td>
<td>Pao kuei</td>
<td>24,000,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yunnan</td>
<td>Yunnanfu</td>
<td>Pao yun</td>
<td>125,682,480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tungch'uanfu</td>
<td>44,886,600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kueiyangfu</td>
<td>Pao ch'ien</td>
<td>67,329,900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tatingfu</td>
<td></td>
<td>22,443,300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ili</td>
<td>Kuldja</td>
<td>Pao i</td>
<td>1,122,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This collection of small T'ung chih cash is not complete and it may be supplemented by a table of the mints and of the amount of copper money annually cast at each, extracted from the 欽定戶部則例, the official regulations of the Board of Revenue as corrected up to 1865. The numbers are generally calculated for ordinary years and would be proportionally greater when there is an intercalary month. This work may be referred to for details concerning the alloy, the source of the metal used &c. The general weight of each cash is directed to be 1·2 ch'ien. A number of heavier coins weighing 1·6 ch'ien are cast before the new year for distribution among the guards and eunuchs of the palace, made of pure brass composed of 60 per cent of copper and 40 per cent of zinc; these are called kua t'ang ch'ien "lamp hanging money", in popular slang huang kai-tsü "yellow covers". The percentage of the ordinary money ought to be 54 of copper, 42·75 of zinc, 3·25 of lead. In the provinces where the copper is of inferior quality no lead must be used, its place being supplied with zinc. In Ili where there is no zinc there are in 12 parts, 8·4 of copper, 3·48 of lead and 0·12 of tin.

With regard to the form etc. at the beginning of each reign, models are carved in ivory and presented to the superintendent of the central mint. If approved these are copied with the chisel in pure copper, and the copper models are used to impress the first moulds in which the "mn ch'ien" are produced. These "mother coins" are distributed to the various mints, and the provincial authorities have to cast from them a number of "yang ch'ien", "pattern coins" and forward them to the Emperor for approval.

Nos. 197-203 comprise large coins which have survived from the token-issue of the previous reign, and all have the inscription T'ung chih chung pao, with the exception of the Yarkand specimen which has t'ung pao.

No. 197, has on the reverse T'ung shih "equal to 10" and is from the Hu pu mint.

No. 198 belongs to the Kung pu mint.

No. 199 with tang wu "equal to 5" and No 200 tang shih "equal to 10" are from the Kung-ch'ang-fu mint in Kansu.

No. 201 with the inscription Aksu in Manchu and Turki is a large well-cast specimen and has the appearance of a model coin.

No. 202 with tang shih "equal to 10" has Yerkiang in Manchu, Yarkand in Turki.

No. 203 is an anomalous coin extracted from the T'ach'ien t'ou lu with pao 4 for the Ili mint and tang ssü "equal to 4" on the reverse.
COINS OF THE PRESENT DYNASTY OF CHINA.

Nos. 204-207 belong to the present Emperor the title of whose reign is Kuang hsi "Brilliant succession" beginning in 1875. They are specimens of the large and small coinage of the two metropolitan mints.

Nos. 208-211 are examples of medals cast in the government mint.

No. 208 has on the obverse K'ang hsi chung pao "Heavy coin of the period K'ang hsi" (1662-1722) : on the reverse a dragon and phoenix with two medallions containing the characters pao ch'uan, the name of the mint. A similar medal contains two dragons on the reverse. These are said to have been cast in obedience to a special decree for imperial presents. Dragon and phoenix medals were cast during the three succeeding reigns but not for imperial use and the execution is much inferior.

No. 209 has on the obverse Tao kuang tung pao, on the reverse T'ien hsia t'ai ping. "Peace throughout the empire". Coins with this and other felicitous sentences, such as 長命富貴 ch'ang ming fu kuei "long life, happiness and rank", are cast at the new year and presented with the "lamp-money" for palace use, and are said to be attached to the corners of wrappers &c. No. 210 with Yi tung tien hsia "The empire under one rule" is a similar medal of the reign Hsien feng.

No. 211 is a medal with the inscription T'ung chih tung pao, and on the reverse figures of the eight diagrams. Whenever a new hall is built in the palace a pao ho "precious box" is put upon the main beam with these "pa kua" medals inside and built into the roof. The box contains in addition current coins of the period, precious stones, the five kinds of metal, the five sorts of grain and silk of different colours. Placing this box under the roof is another instance of the curious contrariety of Chinese customs compared with those of the west.

Nos. 212, 213 are examples of charms, each one taken from a series, which are sometimes confounded with circulating coins of the same period. It is a common superstition that a set of twenty Kang hsi coins, strung together so that the names of the mints on the reverse can be read as a kind of verse, are an efficient protection, if carried by the traveller, against disaster by sea or land. A complete set of the original coins not being so easy to get the demand is supplied by a more modern issue. The Tao kuang and Hsien feng sets have the Manchu pao all through, the T'ung chih set the names of the localities transcribed in badly written Manchu, as well as in Chinese.
Nos. 214, 215 belong to 福王 Fu wang, a descendant of the Ming Dynasty who was proclaimed at Nanking in 1644.

No. 214 has on the obverse Hung kuang t'ung pao, on the reverse two dots above and below. Two other small coins of this issue exist, one with a ring above, the other with the character 屍 li written transversely below.

No. 215 is a large coin with the same inscription on the obverse, and on the right of the reverse ērh "two" indicating its value.

Nos. 216, 218 were issued by 唐王 T'angwang, another prince of the Ming who established his court at Fu chou in 1645.

No. 216 has on the obverse Lung wu t'ung pao and a plain reverse.

No. 217 a dot on the reverse above.

No. 218 with the same inscription and plain reverse is a large coin and equivalent to two of the ordinary cash. It occurs both in copper and iron.

Nos. 219-230 were issued by another scion of the Ming, 永明王 Yung ming wang who was proclaimed Emperor on the death of T'ang wang in 1646.

No. 219 has on the obverse Yung li t'ung pao, on the reverse two dots.

No. 220 on the reverse kung for Kung pu below.

No. 221 the same character on the right of the reverse.

No. 222 即 yii "imperial".

No. 223 勅 ch'ih "imperial order".

No. 224 鄂 o for the province of Hu-pei, of which it is the ancient name.

No. 225 道 tao for the chief officer of the circuit tao-t'ai.

No. 226 府 fu for the prefect.

No. 227 is a thicker coin with 二 牆 ērh li, the last character being contracted, indicating the value.

No. 228 with the same obverse in the seal character and plain reverse is equal to two small cash.

No. 229 a larger coin has on the reverse wu li "5 li", its value in silver and is equal to 5 unit-coins.

No. 230 still larger has on the reverse yì fèn, shewing its value to be one hundredth of a tael of silver, equivalent to 10 small coins.

Nos. 231-234 belong to the coinage of another descendant of the Ming entitled 魯王 Lu Wang whose seat of government was at Taichou in Chekiang. Only one coin of this issue is
figured in Mr. Wylie's paper with 王 hu on the reverse for the Board of Revenue.

No. 231 with Ta ming tung pao on the obverse has a plain reverse.

No. 232 has 工 kung for the Board of Works.

No. 233 帥 shuai, "commander-in-chief."

No. 234 the same character on the right.

No. 235 belongs to the coinage of the rebel 張獻忠 Chang Hsien-chung who established himself in the capital of the province of Ssu-ch'uan in 1644. It has on the obverse Ta shun tung pao, on the reverse below 王 hu for the Board of Revenue.

Nos. 236, 237 belong to the issue of another rebel 孫可望 Sun k'o wang, the adopted son of the last, who was proclaimed as 東平王 Tung ping wang. No 236 has on the obverse Hsing chao tung pao, on the reverse kung for the Board of Works. No 237 is a larger coin with the same inscription, equal to two of the former. The existence of any coin of this mintage with plain reverse is very doubtful.

Nos. 238-245 were issued by the Chinese general 吳三桂 Wu San-kuei who had invited the Manchus into China, and been appointed by them to rule Yunnan with the title of "Prince for the pacification of the West" 平西王. He cast money then with the inscription 利用通寶 Li yung tung pao. In 1674 he declared himself Emperor with Chao wu as the title of his reign.

No. 238 has on the obverse Li yung tung pao, on the reverse, below, kung for the Board of Works.

No. 239 on the reverse to the left 里 indicating the value.

No. 240 on the reverse, above, kuei for the province of Kuei-chou.

No. 241 on the right yun for the province of Yun-nan.

No. 242 with wu li on the reverse, is equal to 5 small coins.

No. 243 with yi fén, the silver-value, written transversely on the reverse, is an unusually small coin.

No. 244 the ordinary large cash of this mint, equal also to 10 units, has on reverse yi fén at the top and bottom.

No. 245 with the same inscription and value has yi written in its more complicated form.

No. 246 has on the obverse Chao wu tung pao, on the reverse, below, kung, for the Board of Works.

No. 247 has chêng above and chung below on the reverse, the meaning of which is not clear.
No. 248 is a unit-coin with the same inscription in the seal character on the obverse and plain reverse.

No. 249* a large coin with an inscription in the same style, has on the reverse 一 分 yi fén for the silver-value.

No. 250 was issued by 吳 世 磐 Wu Shih-fan the grandson and successor of Wu San-kuei who died in 1679. It has on the obverse Hung hua t'ung pao, on the reverse, on the right, kung for the Board of Works.

Nos. 251-253 belong to another rebel coinage of the beginning of the reigning Manchu dynasty and were issued by 胡 精 忠 Kung Ching chung who headed an insurrection in Fu-chien and Kuang-tung which was put down in two years.

No. 251 has on the obverse Yü min t'ung pao, on the reverse, on the right, t'ung.

No. 252 a large well cast coin with the same inscription on the obverse, has yi ch'ien on the reverse for the silver-value, shewing that ten were equivalent to one tael.

No. 253 a similar coin with yi ch'ien on the left of the reverse, chë for the province of Chë-chiang on the right. †

Nos. 254-258 belong to the coinage of the T'ai-p'ing rebels. The rebellion began in Kuangsi and the chief 汴 秀 全 Hung Hsien-ch'uan declared himself Emperor in 1851 and took for the title of his dynasty 太 平 天 國 T'ai p'ing tien kuo "Celestial State of Great Peace." He died in 1864 and Nanking was retaken the same year.

No. 254 has on the obverse T'ai p'ing tien kuo, on the reverse shëng pao "sacred money".

No. 255 the same inscription, with shëng pao written transversely.

No. 256 the same obverse in different order, and a similar reverse.

No. 257 on the obverse Tien kuo shëng pao "Sacred money of the Celestial State", on the reverse T'ai p'ing.

No. 258 on the obverse T'ai p'ing shëng pao "Sacred money of the T'ai p'ing" with Tien kuo on the reverse. ‡

* Mr. Wylie's No. 220, an anomalous figure with seal-character, obverse and reverse in the ordinary style, is perhaps figured from description only. I have never seen an actual specimen like it.

† Another coin of this mint is mentioned with 二 分 erh fén on the reverse.

‡ Silver coins of different denominations were issued by the T'ai ping rebels with the legend Tien kuo shëng pao "Sacred coin of the Celestial State". The official silver coinage of Tibet instituted in 1792 is also not included in this paper, having been figured and described in the China Review Vol. VI. p. 349. I have heard of silver coins issued recently by T'ao Tsung-yang in Kansu but have never seen a specimen.
No. 259 is a specimen which appears to belong to a recent rebel coinage. It has on the obverse Huang ti tung pao "Circulating coin of the Huang ti (Emperor)", on the reverse pao chê the name of the Chê-chiang mint.

In the third year of Hsien fêng (1853), when the large copper tokens were coined, the government paper currency of preceding dynasties was also revived. The notes of two kinds, cash-notes and silver notes, were issued by the Board of Revenue and forced into circulation by paying part of the salary of officials in the new currency and by compelling the banks and large pawnbroking establishments to accept it in lieu of more solid money. The value of these notes however depreciated rapidly until in 1861 they were sold by Dutch auction in the streets of the capital at a discount of 97 per cent (see Dr Rennie's Peking and the Pekingese). Soon after this they disappeared altogether from circulation.

The cash-notes are of four denominations equivalent to 500, 1000, 1500, and * 2000 cash respectively. They are printed from wood-blocks with blue ink on thick whitish paper. The specimen figured is of the value of 1000 cash. It is headed Ta ch'íng pao ch'ao "Money note of the great Ch'ing (dynasty)". The ornamental border has above two dragons striving for a pearl, below the fabulous mountain of precious stones with coral-trees in the midst of sea waves, and at the sides clouds interrupted by medallions containing, on the right the character T'ien hsia tung hsing "To circulate throughout the empire," on the left Ch'in ping ch'u ju "Issued and accepted at equal value." Within the border are three lines; the central specifying the value "Equivalent without deduction to 1000 pieces of government cash"; the right the number 426 in black, partly stamped partly written, classified under the character pien (one of the words of the thousand character classic used numeratively); the left the date "Made in the seventh year of Hsien fêng (1857)", the number of the year stamped in blue with a separate stamp. Below these is printed: "These notes shall circulate in place of government cash and will be received in the proportion fixed for the different taxes, for all the customs dues, and for the purchase of rank. The treasuries both of the capital and provinces shall alike accept and forward them. The cash-notes shall be exchangeable for government silver-notes in the proportion of 2000 cash.

"for one tael of silver." The large square vermilion seal in the centre is that of the Revenue Board in Manchu and Chinese, Ta ch'ing pao ch'ao chih yin. The small oblong seal in black under the date is that of the official in charge put on when the number is written. There is also at the side a round seal (differing in design in different notes) and blotted lines made with a brush before the note has been out from the tally.

The silver notes are printed on fine Corean paper, also from wooden blocks, in blue. I have examples of 1, 3, 5, 10 and 50 taels and figure the first. The ornamental border has five dragons traversing clouds in the direction of a pearl emitting rays of brilliance like flames, and waves of the sea below with precious emblems floating upon them. Within this border there is at the top an oblong frame containing, in Manchu Po kuan ni churhan ni alpan tongket u, in Chinese Hu pu kuan piao "Government note of the Board of Revenue." The central line has "Equivalence by the two tael scale to one tael of pure silver", the number impressed in black with a large stamp. On the right "Number 29643 of the numeral kung", the first character stamped in black, the number written. On the left the date "Hsien féng 3rd year (1853), 11th month, 9th day", the year and month printed in black by separate stamps, the day in manuscript. There is printed below: "The Board of Revenue has memorialized to recommend the circulation of government notes. All shall willingly take these government notes in exchange for silver and for copper money, and they shall be equivalent in all cases to silver. In accordance with the regulations fixed by the Board, they shall be accepted in definite proportion in payment of government dues. Those who counterfeit them shall be punished according to the statutes and shall not be pardoned." Outside the border on the left near the top is printed "Each tael is 6 per cent less than that of the treasury scale." There are two vermilion seals with inscription in Manchu and Chinese, the small square one in the centre being Hu pu kuan piao yung yuan tung hsing "The Board of Revenue government note for everlasting circulation." The large oblong one on the edge Hu pu kuan piao so kuan fang "The official seal of the Board of Revenue government note office." The third large square crimson seal on the right edge with the Chinese inscription Hu pu chih yin "Seal of the Board of Revenue" indicates that the note is for provincial circulation. The figure below to the left is the private signature impressed when the number is written.
COINS OF THE PRESENT DYNASTY OF CHINA.

67

元宝
元
咸丰当千

富
COINS OF THE PRESENT DYNASTY OF CHINA.
COINS OF THE PRESENT DYNASTY OF CHINA.

94

95

咸寶重

豐

五

十

計

98

計

五

十

錢

重
COINS OF THE PRESENT DYNASTY OF CHINA.

103

[Image of a Chinese coin with characters on it]

[Image of another Chinese coin with characters on it]
COINS OF THE PRESENT DYNASTY OF CHINA.

105

106

107
COINS OF THE PRESENT DYNASTY OF CHINA.

120

咸寶重豐

當金十
COINS OF THE PRESENT DYNASTY OF CHINA.

161

162

163
COINS OF THE PRESENT DYNASTY OF CHINA.

172

173

174
COINS OF THE PRESENT DYNASTY OF CHINA.

199

200

201

202
COINS OF THE PRESENT-DYNASTY OF CHINA.
COINS OF THE PRESENT DYNASTY OF CHINA.

240
241
242
243
ARTICLE III.

THE "NATURALISTIC" PHILOSOPHY OF CHINA.

BY FREDERIC H. BALFOUR. F.R.G.S.

It occasionally happens that a sudden ray of clear and valuable light is thrown upon a long-disputed subject from a source the very existence of which was unsuspected, and the authority of which would certainly never have been allowed. Just as an accident may reveal what generations of scientific men have laboured in vain to discover; just as a rank outsider may win a race, or the dart, shot at a venture, hit the bull's-eye when trained archers have discharged a quiver-full of arrows without success,—so may some happy and spontaneous phrase, falling from one who approaches a topic of interest or difficulty for the first time, fresh and unencumbered by preconceptions or the dissertations of experts, embody in itself the kernel of the enigma, and make the whole thing promptly and for ever plain. And such a service has, I think, been lately rendered to the cause of philosophical research in China. An able American writer, whose recent work on "Oriental Religions" is, or ought to be, on the shelf of every reading man, gives to the Confucian school, for the first time, its true designation of Rationalist. Confucius was a Rationalist in every sense; his followers are Rationalists; his philosophy was altogether Rationalistic in its scope. The word is just the one we wanted, but which we never found; and its universal acceptance, from henceforth, can be only a matter of time. It is not only for supplying us with a just descriptive epithet for the orthodox philosophy of China, however, that we are indebted to Mr. Johnson. As soon as ever the term Rationalism is recognised as belonging to the system of Confucius, it will fall into deserved desuetude in that sphere where hitherto it has usurped another's right. No word could, in my opinion, be more inappropriate, or more unhappily selected, as applied

* Read before the Society on the 21st September, 1880.
to the philosophy of Lao Tsze. That the character Tao 道 may be properly translated "reason" in certain instances, I do not deny. That it is an apt equivalent for λόγος in the Johannine sense of the word appears generally allowed. For the rendering of it by "way" there are both etymological and philosophical recommendations which may not be overlooked. But that none of these is the true and actual meaning of the word in its esoteric sense I hope to show in the present paper; submitting, at the outset, that no fitter illustration could be offered of the fatality attending servile adherence to a literal system of translation than the rendering, hitherto in force, of Reason. The letter killeth; and in the present instance it has killed all sense and meaning out of the word it was attempting to explain.

The position we take up, therefore, is a very simple one. To put it algebraically, Tao is the x, or unknown quantity that we have to find. And the first thing to be done is to see what is predicated of this mysterious Thing; how it is described; with what attributes it is credited; where it is to be found; whence it sprang, how it exists, and what its functions are. Then we may find ourselves in a position to discover what it is that answers to these particulars, and profanely to give a name to that which its preachers themselves declared must be for ever nameless.

We are told that it existed before the time which had no beginning had begun. Chuang Tsze says that there never was an epoch when it was not. Lao Tsze affirms that it existed before God Himself. It is all-pervasive; there is nowhere where it is not found. It fills the Universe with its grandeur and sublimity; yet it is so subtle that it exists in all its plenitude in the tip of an autumn hair. It causes the sun and moon to revolve in their appointed orbits, and gives life to the most microscopic insect. Formless, it is the source of every form we see; inaudible, it is the source of all the sounds we hear; invisible, it is that which lies behind every external object in the world; inactive, it produces, sustains, and regulates every phenomenon which exists in all the spheres of being. It is impersonal, passionless; working out its appointed ends with the remorselessness of Fate, yet overflowing in benevolence to all. "What is Tao?" exclaims Huai-nan Tsze. "It is that which supports Heaven and covers Earth; it has no boundaries, no limits; its height cannot be measured, nor its depth fathomed; it enfolds the Universe in its embrace, and confers visibility upon that which of itself is formless...
It fills all within the Four Points of the Compass; it contains
the Yin and Yang; it holds together the Universe and Ages,
and supplies the Three Luminaries with light. It is so tenuous
and subtle that it pervades everything just as water pervades
mire. It is by Tao that mountains are high and abysses deep;
that beasts walk and birds fly; that the sun and moon are
bright, and the stars revolve in their courses....When the
spring-winds blow, the sweet rain falls, and all things live and
grow. The feathered ones brood and hatch, the furry ones
breed and bear; plants and trees put forth all their glorious
exuberance of foliage, birds lay eggs, and animals produce
their offspring; no action is visible outwardly, and yet the
work is completed....Shadowy and indistinct! it has no form.
Indistinct and shadowy! its resources have no end. Hidden
and obscure! it reinforces all things out of formlessness.
Penetrating and permeating everything! it never acts in vain!'

Such are a few of the attributes ascribed to the nameless
principle we are considering. What ideas do they suggest to
our mind?—Such, I believe, as cannot be expressed in a single
word. Lao Tsze and his successors recognised the fact that
for this mysterious entity there can be no name, so they spoke
of it as Tao. We in the West have practically arrived at the
same conclusion. What is it that makes flowers grow up and
water flow down, which causes the showers to fall and the sun
to shine, which guides the stars in their flaming courses
regulates the seasons, endows the butterfly with its radiant
hues, gives one man red hair and another black, and, in a
word, is the cause of every phenomenon we see, the main-
spring of the huge machine of which we form a part? We,
too, have failed to find a name for it, and so we call it Nature.
This, I believe, is the key to early Taoism. Translate Tao,
as used in this sense, by our common word Nature, and nine-
tenths of the difficulties attending the study of this beautiful
philosophy vanish of themselves. Nor is this true only of that
phase of Taoism which deals with the physical universe. The
instincts of animals and the workings of the vegetable creation
are not any more the endowment of Nature than are the vary-
ing dispositions of mankind. The original constitution of
every man, then, being the direct gift of Nature—or rather, an
actual part of Nature itself—it follows that it should be
jealously preserved intact, in all its pristine purity. This is
the grand and primary object of Taoism—the preservation of
one's Heaven-implanted nature. And how is this to be accom-
plished? By imitating the great Mother. Nature never
strives; therefore the Holy Man should guard himself from striving too. Nature is ever passive; therefore the Holy Man should let things take their course, contenting himself with following in their wake. Ambition, scheming, hatred, lust—any attention to external objects of whatever kind—are all so much disordering, or spoliation, of the original nature of man, and should therefore be utterly discarded. Even the active cultivation of virtues, such as benevolence, rectitude and propriety, is condemned; nature requires no action to stimulate her growth, and all the Holy Man has to do is bring himself into perfect conformity with her. All such passions, accomplishments, and attributes, being the result of striving, are called, in Taoist phrase, the human nature of man, in contradiction to the heavenly or natural nature with which he is endowed. "Wherefore," says Chuang Tsze, "do not develop this artificial, human, or engrafted nature; but do develop that heavenly nature which is your natural inheritance." In Huan-nan Tsze's "History of Great Light" we have a still more striking passage, in which the difference between the two natures is lucidly explained. Speaking of those happy ones who, by having arrived at a thorough understanding of the principle of Nature, have reverted to a state of pure repose, he says: "Nourishing their constitutions by tranquillity, and letting their spirits rest in indifference, they enter the Door of Heaven—i.e. Nature. And what is it that is called the Heavenly? It is that which is homogeneous, pure, simple, undefiled, ungarnished, upright, luminous and immaculate, and which has never undergone any mixture or adulteration from the beginning. And what is the Human? It is that which has been adulterated with shrewdness, crookedness, dexterity, hypocrisy, and deceit; wherefore it bends itself in compliance with the world, and is brought into association with the customs of the age. For example: the ox has horns and a divided hoof, while the horse has a dishevelled mane and a complete hoof; this is the Heavenly—or natural. Putting a bit into the horse's mouth and piercing the nose of the ox; this is the Human—or artificial. Those who follow the Heavenly are such as roam in company with Nature; those who follow the Human are such as mix themselves up with the fashions of the world....Wherefore", continues the philosopher, "the Holy Man does not allow the Human to disorder the Heavenly—he suffers no injury to be done to his true nature; nor does he permit Desire to disturb his natural feelings. He acts exactly as he ought, without considering what
he shall do beforehand; he is trustworthy, without promising; he obtains all he wants without anxiety, and he brings all his designs to completion without doing anything himself. His Spiritual Palace”—a Taoist euphemism for mind—“being replete with pure sincerity, he assists the Creator Himself in the government of men.”

This leads me to the consideration of what may be termed the first development of the Naturalistic theory. In order to bring himself into conformity with Nature, it is imperative that the Holy Man should remain always and completely passive. This is expressed by the formula *wu wei*, which may be variously rendered “non-exertion”, “not-doing”, “inertia”, “absolute inaction”, or “masterly inactivity”. In addition to the idea of undisturbed quiescence it embraces also that of spontaneity and designlessness; so that even the rigid adherence to an inactive policy is robbed of its full virtue if it be adopted with intent. The very effort to obtain possession of Nature, says Chuang Tsze, defeats itself, for the simple reason that it is an effort. A man must be passionless as well as motionless; he must be content to leave himself to the influences which surround him, and discard all thoughts of helping on the work; he must banish desire from his heart; he must concert no schemes and form no plans; he must never anticipate emergencies, but simply mould himself according to any circumstances that may arise. And especially is this of importance in the world of politics. Here the formula *wu wei* must be translated “non-interference”—that wise and far-sighted policy the world is so slow to learn. The Taoist condemns over-legislation, and justly points to the peddling meddling system of a so-called paternal government as the cause of anarchy and ruin. Never do anything, he says, for the mere sake of doing it; never do anything that is not absolutely necessary; leave the people to develop their own resources, and feel their own way to tranquillity and prosperity. Let Nature work unimpeded, in social and political life as well as in the sphere of physics or of morals; then your subjects will be contented with their lot, and your kingdom free from conspiracies, dissensions, and disaster. Do nothing to disturb their primitive simplicity. Do not seek to replace their rough instruments of labour by complicated machines; such refinements lead to luxury, to scheming, to ambition, and to discontent; the very exercise of such ingenuity implies a scheming mind; therefore, discourage artificial innovations. The secret of happiness is to be found in quiescence, simplicity, and
content; and the only way to attain to these is to bring body, passions, intellect and will into absolute conformity with Nature.

The descent from these sublime and simple ethics during the Han and succeeding dynasties was fatally rapid. They soon became obscured in a mist of hocus-pocus and imposture, in which idolatry, the prolongation of life, the elixir of immortality and the transmutation of metals played a prominent part. With this degraded phase of Taoism we have nothing whatever to do. It is only sad to reflect how soon and how irrevocably the ancient doctrines of Lao Tsze and his successors fell into desuetude and have since endured the reproach of their enforced association with a system of superstitious folly. The fine indifference of the old Taoists to life and death, wealth and penury, has given way to sordid avarice and attempts to prolong the existence of the material frame; the pure code of the Naturalistic philosopher has been reversed; his precepts are forgotten, his dignity dishonoured. But the Canons of Taoism proper are still open to us, and they are deserving of careful study. The “orthodox” theories of the Rationalist school have surely had an ample share of attention from Western scholars, while the independent doctrines of the rival teachers have been in a measure neglected. And yet the Naturalists are far bolder and more original in thought than the Rationalists; they are trammelled by no slavish reverence for departed kings and exploded platitudes; their minds are free, their theories striking, and their practice pure. I will not write more upon this subject now, however, though in one sense it is almost inexhaustible. A forthcoming translation* of Chuang Tsze’s “Divine Classic of Nan-hua” will, I trust, do something, however little, towards attracting the attention of sinologues to the beautiful Philosophy of Nature preached by the founder of Taoism; a study, I make bold to add, which cannot fail to yield rich stores of benefit to every one who takes it up, be he scholar, dilettanti, or divine.

* Since published.
CONTENTS.

ARTICLE I.—Notes on the Hydrology of the Yang-tse, the Yellow River, and the Peiho. By H. B. Guppy, M.B. 1


ARTICLE III.—Botanicon Sinicum. Notes on Chinese Botany from Native and Western Sources. By E. Bretschneider, M.D. 18

Appendix. Celebrated Mountains of China 223

ARTICLE IV.—The Climate of Shanghai. Its Meteorological Condition. By the Rev. Father M. Dechevrens, S.J. 231

MISCELLANEOUS.—List of Ferns found in the Valley of the Min River, Foochow. By G. C. Anderson 247
JOURNAL
OF THE
NORTH-CHINA BRANCH
OF THE
ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY.

ARTICLE I.
NOTES ON THE HYDROLOGY
OF
The Yang-tse, the Yellow River, and the Pei-ho*
BY
H. B. GUPPY, M.B.,
Surgeon H. M. S. "HORNET."

It will be unnecessary to enter into a general description of these three rivers which together form the great drainage-system of China: and I will therefore confine my remarks to the subject proper of this paper.

While stationed in the waters of the Yang-tse and Pei-ho during 1877 to 1879, opportunities were afforded me of making observations on the discharge of water and sediment of these two rivers: and by supplementing my own estimates with those made at the close of last century by Sir George Staunton in the case of the Yellow River, I have been enabled to consider these three streams in their conjoint character.

* Read before the Society on the 21st September, 1880.
I. The Yang-tse.—The waters of this great river begin to rise in the months of February and March; and attaining their highest level in June or July, they commence to subside about the end of August, or the beginning of September; reaching their lowest level about the close of the following January. The subjoined chart represents the rise and fall of the water at Hankow during 1876 and 1877.

**MEAN HEIGHT OF THE YANG-TSE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>72</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1876

1877

*The discharge of water at Hankow.*—The position of the foreign settlement at Hankow immediately below the union of an important tributary—the Han—with the main stream, renders it a very suitable site for estimating the amount of water discharged in that portion of the river's course. In order to obtain correct data it was necessary to ascertain the average depth of the river, its breadth, and the force of the surface current. By taking a
line of soundings across the river from the middle of the "bund" (in November, 1877), I ascertained that by far the greatest bulk of water lay against the opposite shore or right bank, where a sounding of 62 feet was obtained within a few yards of the mud, (vide section below). The average depth of all the soundings—thirty in number—was 42 feet: and the breadth of the river at the same place was 1,450 yards (by sextant measurement).

![SECTION DRAWN FROM SOUNDINGS AT HANKOW, NOVEMBER, 1877.](image)

The following table, formed from my own observations and from data obtained from the Custom House at Hankow and by reference to the China Sea Directory, contains the requisite materials for estimating the water-discharge:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Surface current</th>
<th>Average depth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>May 31st</td>
<td>2 ¼ knots per hour</td>
<td>64 feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>June 30th</td>
<td>2 ¼</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>July 31st</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>August 31st</td>
<td>3 ¼</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September 30th</td>
<td>2 ¼</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>October 31st</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>November 30th</td>
<td>1 ¼</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December 31st</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>January 31st</td>
<td>1 ¾</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>February 28th</td>
<td>1 ¼</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March 31st</td>
<td>1 ½</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April 30th</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Having ascertained the average discharge of water per second for the last day of each month of the year included between May 1877 and April 1878, I was able to obtain the average rate for the whole period by dividing the sum by the number of estimates. The following list gives the result of my observations:

Average discharge of water per second.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>1877</th>
<th>Cubic feet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>May 31st</td>
<td></td>
<td>846,336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>June 30th</td>
<td></td>
<td>896,293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>July 31st</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,022,656</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>August 31st</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,275,381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September 30th</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,018,248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>October 31st</td>
<td></td>
<td>622,907</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>November 30th</td>
<td></td>
<td>308,560</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December 31st</td>
<td></td>
<td>211,584</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>January 31st</td>
<td>1878</td>
<td>141,085</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>February 28th</td>
<td></td>
<td>412,626</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March 31st</td>
<td></td>
<td>396,720</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April 30th</td>
<td></td>
<td>670,016</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12 | 7,822,502

\[
\frac{7,822,502}{12} = 651,875
\]

*Average velocity (four-fifths of surface current) × Sectional area = Water discharge.
We may thus estimate the average discharge of water throughout the year at Hankow at 651,875 cubic feet per second.

On the probable discharge of the whole river. Now I estimate the drainage area above Hankow—550,000 square miles—to be equal to eleven-thirteenth of the whole catchment-basin—650,000 square miles—; and by assuming that the area below Hankow drains off its waters at the same rate as the higher portion of the Yangtse valley, an approximation may be made to the discharge of water of the whole river. By a simple calculation a result may be obtained which shews that the Yang-tse discharges into the sea as much as 770,397 cubic feet of water per second: or roughly-speaking it may be stated that, whilst this river carries 652,000 cubic feet of water per second past Hankow, it discharges as much as 770,000 cubic feet per second into the Yellow Sea. Capt. Blakiston, * when at I-chang, nearly 1,000 miles from the sea, estimated the water-discharge of the upper Yang-tse at 500,000 cubic feet per second; it would therefore appear that between I-chang and Hankow, which is distant about 600 miles from the sea, the river increases its bulk by 152,000 cubic feet; and between Hankow and the sea by nearly 120,000 cubic feet. These estimates all refer to the average discharge of water for the whole year.

On the amount of sediment carried down by the Yang-tse at Hankow.—The proportion of sediment varied considerably in different seasons of the year: while in November 1877 the river contained about 4 grains in the pint, I found as little as 4 of a grain in March 1878; and as much as 7 grains per pint in the following July, when the river was at its height. The average quantity of sediment throughout the year may be placed at four grains per pint of twenty ounces. This amount would represent a proportion of $\frac{21}{22}$ by weight; and taking the specific gravity of the dried mud at 1.9, as much as $\frac{17}{15}$ by bulk. If this fraction of bulk is applied to the total amount of water carried in a year past Hankow—20,557,530,000,000 cubic feet—the annual discharge of sediment will be obtained; but to allow for the amount of mud a river pushes along its bed, one-tenth must be added, according to the method adopted by Messrs. Humphreys and Abbot.

* "Five months on the Yang-tse."
in the case of the Mississippi. With this correction the total annual amount of sediment carried past Hankow may be estimated at 5,439,808,275 cubic feet; which represents an average discharge of 172 cubic feet per second.

By assuming that the portion of the basin of the Yang-tse below Hankow supplies the same relative amount of sediment as the remainder of the drainage-area, we may, following the plan employed when estimating the water-discharge, place the total amount of suspended material carried down every year to the sea at 6,428,858,255 cubic feet.

On the rate of subaerial denudation of the valley of the Yang-tse.—Without entering into detail, it will be sufficient to state that the removal of this bulk of solid matter from the area of drainage—650,000 square miles—represents a lowering of the surface of \( \frac{221}{10} \) of a foot of sediment every year; but, allowing for the difference in specific gravity between sediment (1.9) and rock (2.5), the amount of suspended material is equivalent to the removal of \( \frac{331}{7} \) of a foot of rock in a year; or, which is the same thing, one foot in 3,707 years. This therefore represents the rate at which the surface of the Yang-tse valley is lowered.

II. The Yellow River.—Those who may have read the narrative of Lord Macartney's embassy to China in 1792 will be familiar with the description given by Sir George Staunton of the methods employed in estimating the quantities of water and sediment discharged by the Yellow River at the place where it was crossed by the Grand Canal. The volume of water was placed at 418,176,000 cubic feet per hour which is equivalent to 116,160 cubic feet per second: while the sediment was estimated to reach the enormous bulk of 17,520,000,000 cubic feet in a year. Though loth to disparage the value of these estimates given by Sir George Staunton—for by so doing I shall weaken the premises of my subsequent conclusions—yet I must accept with some hesitation results which have been obtained from a single experiment. Had I based my observations at Hankow on a solitary estimate, made either in the months of January or August; the difference between the two estimations would be represented by the numbers 9 and 1 (vide table): it should therefore be remembered that the estimates of Sir George Staunton are of more value as the trustworthy
results of a single observation than as representing the average discharge of water and sediment throughout the year. The rate of subaerial denudation of the basin of the Yellow River has been calculated to be one foot in 1,464 years.

III. The Pei-ho.—This river is indeed of small size when compared with the Yang-tse and the Yellow River; but it is worthy of consideration in this respect; that having obtained an approximate idea of the amount of water and sediment it discharges, we shall be able to consider the three rivers in their combined character. For the three winter months included between the beginning of December and the beginning of March, this river is frozen over; a character which distinguishes it from the Yang-tse and its sister stream.

The water-discharge.—My observations were made at the foreign settlement of Tientsin, situated about 50 miles from the mouth of the river, and immediately below the junction of the Yu-ho (commonly known as the Grand Canal) and the Pei-ho proper. My data were confined to the four months from December 1878 to March 1879; but owing to the limited "rise" and "fall" of the river in the different seasons of the year, which do not often exceed six feet, I feel fairly confident that my estimate of the average discharge of water for these four months approximates the average discharge for the whole year.

The breadth of the river in March 1879 at the place of observation was 280 feet; the greatest depth 18½ feet; and the average depth of all the soundings 14½ feet. The following table refers to the variations in the velocity of the surface current and in the depth of water.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Average surface current</th>
<th>Average depth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1½ knots per hour</td>
<td>14 feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 &quot; &quot;</td>
<td>14½ &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1½ &quot; &quot;</td>
<td>16 &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 &quot; &quot;</td>
<td>14 &quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| December 1878 | January 1879 | February 1879 | March 1879 |
From the data given above I have estimated the average volume of water discharged per second during each month as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Month</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>December</td>
<td>6,355 cubic feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>January</td>
<td>4,389 cubic feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>February</td>
<td>9,684 cubic feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March</td>
<td>10,592 cubic feet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The average discharge for the whole of this period of four months may be placed at 7,707 cubic feet per second, or roughly speaking 7,700 cubic feet. For reasons above stated this estimate may be taken to fairly represent the average discharge for the whole year.

On the amount of sediment carried down to the sea.—I found great variation in the amount of sediment contained in the river water from month to month. In the months of January and February, the quantity was not more than \( \frac{1}{2} \) of a grain per pint, in December 6 grains, while in March it averaged 11\( \frac{1}{2} \) grains, reaching in the middle of the month as much as 15 grains per pint. Taking the average quantity of sediment during the four months in question to be five grains per pint of twenty ounces, then the proportion of sediment by weight will be \( \frac{1}{15} \) and by bulk \( \frac{3}{33} \). Adopting the method of calculation employed in the case of the Yang-tse, we find that during this period of four months 26,655,417 cubic feet of sediment were carried past Tientsin. By assuming that this estimate fairly represents the rate of discharge during the remaining two-thirds of the year, we may place the total amount of sediment carried down annually to the sea at about 80,000,000 cubic feet.

The removal of this bulk of solid material every year from a drainage area of 55,000 square miles* is equal to the lowering of the whole surface of one foot in 25,218 years. This therefore represents the rate of denudation of the basin of the Pei-ho. I had not the means of ascertaining the amount of material held in solution in either the water of the Yang-tse or the Pei-ho, an element which has been omitted altogether in every one of these

---

* In Keith Johnston's Universal Gazetteer the drainage-area of this river is stated to be 24,000 square miles: such an estimate can only refer to the Pei-ho "proper," and I have had in consequence to adopt my own computation.
three rivers: but what an important factor has been disregarded not only in the case of the Chinese rivers but in similar estimations relating to other rivers of the globe, will be rendered evident by a brief perusal of Prof. Huxley's recent work on Physiography.

IV. THE YANG-TSE, THE YELLOW RIVER, AND THE PEI-HO.—We have now the necessary materials for considering these three rivers in their conjoint character. Together they drain an area of 1,105,000 square miles or about four-fifths of China "proper"; together they discharge a volume of water into the sea equal to 894,000 cubic feet per second (more correctly 894,177), and a mass of sediment amounting in a single year to as much as 24,028,800,000 cubic feet.* Attention should be once more directed to the great variations in the proportion of sediment contained by these three rivers: the maximum quantity I observed in the waters of the Yang-tse was seven grains in the pint; in those of the Pei-ho 15 grains; while Sir George Staunton found over 80 grains in the same quantity of water, an estimate which he accepted as typical of the whole year: I have already referred to the peril or receiving such an inference and have urged its acceptance as a quantum valeat experiment.

With reference to the combined rate of subaerial denudation of these rivers, it will be sufficient to state that the removal every year of 24,028,800,000 cubic feet of sediment from an area of 1,105,000 square miles represents a lowering of the surface of one foot in 1,687 years.

The following table will enable us to obtain an idea of the rank held by the Yang-tse, the Yellow River, and the Pei-ho in the river system of the globe:

* By some misconception certain Authors have adopted Staunton's estimate of the sediment discharged by the Yellow River and have accepted it as a general computation for the river system of China: e. g. Page's advanced Text Book of Geology.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>River</th>
<th>Water per second</th>
<th>Sediment per annum</th>
<th>Subaerial denudation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amazon</td>
<td>2,458,026 cubic ft.</td>
<td>6,428,800,000 cb. ft.</td>
<td>1 foot in 3,707 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congo</td>
<td>1,800,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yang-tse</td>
<td>770,397</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plate</td>
<td>700,000</td>
<td>1,543,500,000</td>
<td>6,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mississippi</td>
<td>615,924</td>
<td>7,474,000,000</td>
<td>6,846</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Danube</td>
<td>300,321</td>
<td>1,255,500,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shat-el-Arab</td>
<td>295,461</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ganges</td>
<td>203,485</td>
<td>6,368,000,000</td>
<td>2,358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indus</td>
<td>199,476</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atrato</td>
<td>185,274</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nile</td>
<td>130,032</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellow River</td>
<td>116,160</td>
<td>17,520,000,000</td>
<td>1,464</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhone</td>
<td>91,935</td>
<td>594,000,000</td>
<td>1,528</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhine</td>
<td>69,741</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Po</td>
<td>61,263</td>
<td>405,420,000</td>
<td>729</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pei-ho</td>
<td>7,707</td>
<td>80,000,000</td>
<td>25,218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thames</td>
<td>2,300</td>
<td>1,865,900</td>
<td>9,600</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

On the time required to fill up the Gulfs of Pechili and Liau Tung, the Yellow Sea, and the Eastern Sea north of parallel 29° and west of the 126th meridian.—By reference to a map it will be at once perceived that the portion of sea included above receives the waters and sediment discharged by the three rivers under consideration. Sir George Staunton estimated that the sediment carried down to the sea by the Yellow River would fill up the Yellow Sea with the Gulfs of Pechili and Liau Tung in a period of 24,000 years: * Elisee Reclus affirms that the Yellow Sea is

* At that period the Yellow River discharged its waters into the Yellow Sea.
much deeper than Staunton stated it to be, and that this estimate should be doubled: on carefully examining the latest charts of these seas, I am inclined to think that Sir George Staunton's estimate of the average depth—20 fathoms—is not more than two or three fathoms below the truth. Following the same method of calculation in the case of the larger portion of sea, I find that the total surface area is about 200,000 English square miles; and I place the average depth of the whole region at 26 fathoms. According to the present discharge of sediment of these three rivers, a period of 66 days would be required to form an island a mile square and reaching to the surface: and, assuming that there is no elevation or depression of the sea-bottom, an interval of 36,000 years would be requisite to form the whole sea under consideration into dry land. But we have the witness of raised beaches with historical and other evidence to prove that in our own time the Northern Coast of China is undergoing a gradual upheaval: and for this reason a period considerably less than 36,000 years will be required to convert the sea into terra firma. In very truth, Sir George Staunton's original estimate as applied to the Yellow River may not fall short of the time required by the three rivers to fill up the whole sea under consideration.

The following is the substance of some remarks made by the President after the reading of the paper:

In the account of Lord Macartney's journey referred to in the paper, an extract is given from the Journal of Mr. Barrow, in which it is stated that 1 1/4 gallons of the water of the Yellow River contained 2 1/4 cubic inches of mud. If this were dried mud it would represent fully 80 grains per pint. I have personally examined over 200 miles of the Yellow River, and although I have made no measurements of the mud contained, I can confidently assert that it cannot amount to anything like the above quantity. I have made measurements of the cross section of the river and have obtained the best information I could regarding the depth of water and speed of current at different seasons.

I estimate the discharge (very roughly) as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Discharge</th>
<th>Cubic Feet per Second</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extreme low water</td>
<td>18,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordinary low water</td>
<td>36,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flood discharge</td>
<td>112,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The last amount gives 403,200,000 cubic feet per hour, or almost exactly the amount given in the paper.

Considering the frequent floods I should not be surprised to learn that future careful observations gave the average discharge at 300,000,000 cubic feet per hour, and the sediment 50 per cent in excess of that in the Yang-tse.
I have examined the Pei-ho on several occasions, but always between March and October. Last year I had occasion to measure the cross section near the bridge of boats, and, taking the speed and depth at what appeared to me to be their normal amounts, I arrived at a discharge of 9,000 cubic feet per second. Seeing that the observations in the paper extended over four months, I should not have thought of giving the result of my observations, were it not that the paper refers entirely to the winter months, while my experience of the river is confined to the summer months, and my observations therefore go to show that had Dr. Guppy extended his observations over a whole year the average discharge would have come out slightly in excess of the amount of 7,700 cubic feet per second given in the paper.

Note.—Dr. Guppy contributed to Nature, September 23rd 1880, a letter going over much the same ground as the above, which led to an interesting discussion in the pages of that periodical on the main points at issue. An explanation offered by Mr. T. Mellard Reade that the excessive estimate of the amount of silt conveyed by the Yellow River was owing to the possible measurement of the deposit in a wet state seems to offer some explanation of the discrepancy between that river and the Yang-tzse. Experiments on the mud in the depositing tanks of the Cairo water-works show that the difference between the bulk wet and dry may amount to as much as 10½ to 1. If Sir George Staunton's results be divided by ten the result of 1,752 millions of cubic feet per annum as compared with the 6,429 of the Yang-tzse would fairly represent the different character of the two rivers, the Yellow River containing in its waters a palpably greater proportion of silt than the Yang-tzse. The conclusions to be derived from Dr. Guppy's paper are of great Geological interest, as bearing on the age of the Mid-Asian Continent. Leaving the Yellow River out of the question, as that stream has for the most part flowed into the Gulf of Pechili, we may form an approximate estimate of the age of the delta of the Yang-tzse. Taking the depth of the delta to average 150 feet and assuming Dr Guppy's calculations of the annual deposit as 6,732½ millions of cubic feet, which they seem to amount to, the annual superficial growth of the delta would amount to 1.6 mile. We may assume 40,000 square miles as the area of the alluvial deposit extending from Ningpo to the bed of the Wei. This would give an age of 25,000 years for the delta. In my address to the Society on the 20th February, 1877, I assumed a rate of denudation of the drainage area of the Yang-tzse amounting to one foot in 2,700 years, deriving thence an age for the delta of 13,500 years. Subsequent calculations led me to reduce this amount, and fix the time required for deposition at somewhat over 20,000 years. The age of the delta of the Ganges and Brahmaputra has been put down at about 26,000 years, which is in remarkable accord with the other calculations. With regard to the supposed "raised" sea beaches, those which have been detected in the Yang-tzse delta, as well as the present distribution of the water supply, go to prove that the oscillations of level since the commencement of the delta have been of the slightest, and that practically speaking the levels of the North-east of China have remained unchanged during the period of deposition.

Thos. W. Kingsmill.

ARTICLE II.

SOME NOTES ON THE GEOLOGY OF TAKOW, FORMOSA.

By H. B. GUPPY, M.B.,
H. M. S. "HORNET."

A NARROW entrance, about 60 yards in width and bounded on each side by precipitous limestone cliffs, leads into the lagoon-like harbour of Takow. This harbour, which is from 6 to 8 miles long and from 1 to 2 in breadth, is bounded on the south by a low sand spit 300 or 400 yards across and several miles in length; while on the north lies a flat plain through which winds a small river, which empties itself into the harbour. On the north side of the entrance Ape's Hill rises to a height of 1,100 feet above the sea, while Saracen's Head, a low hill about 170 feet in height, immediately overlooks the entrance on its southern side. A level plain extends between Ape's Hill and the distant range of mountains; in the midst of which rises the abrupt eminence of Whale-Back Hill which, removed from 4 to 5 miles to the northward of Takow, attains an elevation of 700 feet above the sea.

The leading physical features thus briefly described point to the conclusion that the harbour of Takow is of recent origin in comparison with the age of the island of Formosa. There was probably a time when the small river emptied its waters directly into the sea: the sand spit as such did not exist; and Saracen's Head was isolated by water from the adjoining coast. The river had not improbably in those ages a somewhat steeper gradient than it has at present; and the impetuosity of its current would be diminished, and in consequence its power of transporting material would be lessened when it discharged its waters with their suspended sediment into the sea. A bank might then be formed, which by means of a gradual upheaval of the sea bottom, assisted by the surf of these Formosan seas, might have given rise

* Read before the Society on the 21st September, 1880.
to the present spit. Should the same conditions, which determined the formation of the spit, still be in operation, the bar, which extends off the entrance to this port in a direction almost continuous with that of the spit, will in the lapse of time be raised above the level of the waves, and the harbour of Takow will be greatly extended.

With reference to the more strictly geological features of Takow, I was enabled to make a few notes during a stay of ten days in that port. The white compact limestone of Ape's Hill is honey-combed to a marked degree on its weathered surface by the long continued action of the rain and other atmospheric agencies. The honey-combed external surface, with the dark colour externally of this limestone rock, caused it to be mistaken by the writer of a paper in the Journal of the Royal Geographical Society of 1873 for a rock of igneous origin.—"The rocks are of igneous formation"—thus the author of the paper asserts when referring to Ape's Hill—"and are built up of a multitude of cells, the whole mass appearing to have been suddenly chilled while in a state of ebullition, presenting a series of jagged flint-like edges difficult to ascend."—This impression of the igneous origin of Ape's Hill is an error which might readily have been avoided by a moment's inspection of the fractured surface of the rock.

The limestone often rises abruptly from the sea; and in the portion of Ape's Hill that bounds the entrance to the harbour I observed that the rock was stratified and that it dipped to the East at an angle of from 35 to 40°. I obtained several fossils from a hill-slope, situated near the sulphur spring (which I will refer to towards the close of the paper). The limestone in which they were embedded was of a more earthy texture than that met with in the higher parts of Ape's Hill. The following fossils were collected:—

(a) A species of Scutella which was very abundant. Some specimens were embedded as they would have lain on the sea bottom, whilst others were raised upon their edges.

(b) Balanidae mostly small and evidently embedded "in situ" on the surface of the rock.

(c) A species of a genus of corals resembling "Cyclolites."

(d) Spines of Echini, often of considerable size. I was only
able to obtain one "sea-urchin" and that a small one.

(e) *Pecten*, *Ostrea* and other bivalves, with a curious fossil, apparently a cast of a *spiral unicalecte*.

(f) *Polyzoa* on the surface of the shells and scutellae: a single specimen of a small crab; a shark's tooth; and some fragments of coral.

On the summit of the ridge or hill where the fossils were obtained, I observed a fissure in the rock, varying from one to three feet across and extending for some 200 or 300 yards in a N. W. to S. E. direction: by dropping a stone I ascertained that it was of no great depth. I have been informed by residents at Takow, that besides other similar fissures there are caves often of considerable length, which, situated nearly half-way up Ape's Hill on the edge of the plateau, are rather difficult to find without the assistance of a guide as their entrances are small and often concealed partially by herbage. Loose bones are found on the floor of these caves. I was very much disappointed at not being able to find them; and the shortness of my stay prevented me from continuing the search. However I would especially recommend the careful examination of these caves and fissures to any resident at Takow, and particularly the investigation of the floor-deposits.

Higher up the sides of Ape's Hill I found no signs of bedding which may have been concealed by the honey-combed weathered surface of the rock. The ascent is tedious by reason of the sharp edges of the limestone which are often concealed by the long grass. Nearly half-way up the hill and elevated about 450 feet above the sea, there is an extensive plateau about two miles in length and one in breadth, from which the upper half of Ape's Hill rises steeply to its summit. The same compact limestone rock continues to the top.

The low eminence of Saracen's Head, on the opposite side of the entrance to the harbour, is of the same compact limestone. A steep cliff 170 feet high faces the sea, at the foot of which lie huge masses of rock—evidences of the eroding action of the sea. In the face of the cliffs there appear to be lines of horizontal stratification; but on obtaining a side view, the beds are seen to dip away to the East, though with rather a smaller inclination.
than that already noticed on the opposite side of the entrance. In many cases the face of the cliff was coated with a stalagmitic crust of carbonate of lime.

I should not omit to notice the existence of a sulphur-spring in a small bay of the harbour facing the native town. Impregnating the air in its vicinity with a strong odour of Sulphuretted Hydrogen, it oozes out at several places at the base of the hill—the largest outlet being covered at high water. The water also issues from small holes in the limestone just above the main spring; and retains the temperature of the air. At the summit of the spur—at the base of which the spring occurs—extends the fissure I have previously referred to.

If I might draw some conclusions from the foregoing observations, they would be as follows.

(1) The collection of fossils which I obtained evidently shews that the limestone in which they are embedded is of recent origin. I did not succeed in finding any fossils in the higher parts of Ape's Hill: but, according to the late Mr. Swinhoe, recent shells and corals are found at Takow at a height of 1,111 feet above the sea. To have been found at this height they must have occurred at the summit of Ape's Hill. Such was not my experience.

(2) The inclination of the strata in the lower part of the hill and the existence of the fissures, have a common origin in the upheaving process which raised the mass of limestone forming Ape's Hill 1,100 feet above the sea. The extensive plateau, elevated about 450 feet above the sea level, points to the cessation of the process of upheaval during a lengthened period, in which the part of Ape's Hill that rises from the plateau alone shewed itself above the sea. Then came another period of upheaval in which the lower part of the hill was raised above the waves, and the rocks highly inclined.

(3) It is difficult to explain the presence of these isolated limestone eminences in the midst of a plain; and one is reminded of the somewhat analogous case of the Rock of Gibraltar. The explanation that most readily presents itself, is that of the growth of a coral reef on a gradually
subsiding bottom, followed by the upheaval of the whole mass above the waves. This is not altogether a satisfactory solution of the problem; but such as it is it offers the readiest way out of the difficulty.
MORE than ten years have elapsed since I published a little essay intended to show the mode adopted by the Chinese in treating of Natural science, especially Botany, and what degree of advantage European botanists may derive from the study of Chinese botanical works. The present paper now brought before the public, although treating of the same subject and reproducing occasionally the matter of my former essay, will prove to be virtually a work new in substance, entirely recast, into which also a considerable amount of new information has been introduced.

In resuming my past labours after a long interval I cannot but repeat what I confessed in the preface of my former paper, that I am neither a Sinologue nor Botanist, my knowledge of Chinese as well as of Botany being quite limited. It may well then be

1 On the Study and Value of Chinese Botanical Works, with Notes on the History of Plants and Geographical Botany from Chinese sources, by E. Bretschneider, illustrated with 8 Chinese wood-cuts. This article appeared originally in the 'Chinese Recorder' of 1870 and 1871, published in Foochow. The editor of this periodical, at that time, seems to have had little experience in proof-reading; at any rate my paper (although presented in a very clear manuscript) came to light with such a profusion of misprints and other inaccuracies, that it would have been ridiculous to append to it a complete list of errata. I therefore would feel quite disposed to disavow this my first scientific essay; all the more since at the time I wrote it I had not yet sufficiently mastered the subject, and many of my former statements require modification.
asked whether the author has the acquirements to fulfil the difficult task he has taken in hand; and what value may be assigned to a work dealing with matters for the elucidation of which the author declares himself not sufficiently trained by appropriate fundamental studies. I therefore owe to the reader some explanation as to the extent of my competence.

Nobody will, I think, object to my asserting that, for western people, Chinese is of all languages the most difficult; and (I should also say) the most ambiguous. When I first arrived at Peking, 15 years ago, I felt a desire to make myself acquainted with the language in order to be able to utilize the vast literary treasures of the Chinese for the benefit of European science. I soon however became aware of the great difficulties to be encountered, and the long space of time which would be required to learn the language thoroughly. I therefore adapted my studies more exclusively to the branches of Chinese literature I intended to investigate, namely Natural History and Historical Geography. Here in Peking students of Chinese, even with a moderate stock of knowledge, do not generally find any difficulty in producing correct translations; and every information in this connection can easily be obtained from Chinese teachers or books. There are, I imagine, very few, if any, sinologues in China who translate independently and without availing themselves of the assistance of native scholars.

As to the botanical part of my researches, my own knowledge in this department generally is of secondary consideration only. During my long sojourn in China I have always been busy collecting plants, and in so doing I have paid especial attention to those employed by the Chinese for economic and medicinal purposes, ascertaining when possible their native names from books as well as from converse with the natives. My collections I have

---

2 I hardly think that any sinologue, who has pursued his studies in China and read ancient Chinese authors (even with the assistance of a good native scholar), would in every case agree with the great sinologue Stan. Julien, who in his Syntaxe de la Langue Chinoise, I. p. 1, states that for an instructed sinologue the Chinese language is as clear and intelligible as any other. Unfortunately we have frequently to complain of the vagueness and want of precision of the Chinese style, the authors generally being more anxious to imitate what they call the classical style than to convey in their writings a clear idea of what they mean to say.
been in the habit of sending for determination to several of the most eminent botanists of our time, whose names will be frequently met with in this paper, and who have always afforded me liberal assistance in elucidating many dubious questions relating to interesting Chinese plants. This may suffice for the present to enable the reader to form an opinion as to the reliability of the statements put forward in these pages. It may be added that, having access to the splendid libraries of the Russian Ecclesiastical Mission and of the Russian Legation in Peking, where all Chinese works of importance and many rare European books relating to China are to be found, I was enabled to avail myself of many sources of information which it would be difficult to obtain elsewhere, either in China or in Europe. These favourable conditions encouraged me to enter upon the vast, yet almost unworked field of investigation of Chinese Botany from Chinese sources. It is the first attempt of the kind, and is published with a view to laying a foundation for future inquiries. My notes have been written for sinologues as well as for botanists, and I must beg the latter not to be alarmed at the frequent occurrence of Chinese hieroglyphics in the text. No knowledge whatever of Chinese is required to understand the quotations met with in these pages.\(^3\)

M. Alph. de Candolle was the first to point to the importance of Chinese records for elucidating certain dubious botanical questions. His admirable work on Geographical Botany—a most interesting science first created by that eminent botanist—concludes in the following terms:

"L'ancienneté, en Chine et au Japon, de quelques unes des "races de plantes cultivées est curieuse, du même que la sé-
"paration du peuple chinois d'avec le peuple de l'Inde, à une
"époque reculée, séparation qui se prouve par des cultures diffé-
"rentes et par des noms de plantes usuelles, absolument différents.
"J'ai senti à plusieurs reprises dans mes recherches combien

\(^3\) I may notice here that an eminent botanist in Europe has distinguished himself also as a sinologue. Steph. Lad. Endlicher, born in 1804, died in 1849 as Director of the Botanical Garden, Vienna, known by his numerous botanical writings (his "Genera Plantarum" is still a standard work), published in 1845 a Chinese Grammar and also an Atlas of China. He does not however seem to have directed his attention to Chinese botanical works.
La étude des encyclopédies chinoises et japonaises pourrait rendre plus de services à l'histoire des espèces cultivées, laquelle à son tour est importante pour l'histoire des nations.

Indeed a considerable amount of information, interesting to botanists and throwing light especially on the history of cultivated plants, is found in Chinese literature, but is generally difficult to discover, and often involved in a mass of other matter, appreciated only by Chinese readers. We know from their ancient records the plants cultivated in China at an early period, when it had no intercourse with the other nations of Asia. We meet also with positive statements of ancient authors regarding other economic plants now abundantly grown all over the Empire, but introduced from other Asiatic countries, especially Western Asia, after these regions had become known.

After the discovery of America a great many American plants were introduced by the Spaniards and Portuguese into the Philippines and the Indian Archipelago. Their cultivation spread rapidly over the neighbouring regions of the old continent, and they found their way also to China. Most of these plants have become perfectly naturalized in Asia and, had the proof of their introduction from America not been preserved in ancient western records, they would certainly be considered natives of Asia. There are some other plants now generally cultivated in America as well as in Asia regarding which even M. De Candolle, notwithstanding his diligent researches, is unable to state, whether they are indigenous in America only, or whether they have been cultivated from time immemorial in Asia also. For the decision of these questions the ancient Chinese records again prove to be of great weight.

An important aid towards defining the geographical distribution of plants in China is found in the geographical works of the Chinese, and such information is all the more precious, as our botanical knowledge regarding the interior of the Empire is still almost a blank. In another place we shall speak more in detail of this branch of native literature.

There are numerous Chinese works dealing especially with Botany, Agriculture, and other kindred sciences relating to Practical Botany. They are replete with information regarding the uses of plants for food, clothing, manufacturing purposes, etc.
In introducing my work I may take the opportunity of explaining in a few words the plan of arrangement. I have divided it into a general and a particular part. The first, which forms the substance of the present paper, begins with a review of the History of Botany, Agriculture and Materia medica of the Chinese and other Eastern Asiatic nations, entering into some details concerning the most prominent treatises and authors in these departments. In the same chapter I shall attempt to show the method employed by the Chinese in describing plants and in investigating Botany and Materia medica.

Another chapter is devoted to the important question of identifying Chinese names of plants with scientific botanical names. I shall record the attempts made by European scholars to ascertain the botanical names of the plants described in Chinese books.

The first part will conclude with an alphabetical list of Chinese works, and another of Chinese authors quoted in native botanical treatises (the greater portion never before noticed in European books on Chinese literature). The time of publication will of course always be given, as this is a matter of primary importance for our investigations.

In the second part I shall endeavour to present a history of Chinese domestic, ornamental, medicinal, and other plants used for economic purposes, as far as these have come to the knowledge of botanists. My information has been derived from native authors as well as from European scientific works.

CHAPTER I.
CONTRIBUTION TOWARDS A HISTORY OF THE DEVELOPMENT OF BOTANICAL KNOWLEDGE AMONG EASTERN ASIATIC NATIONS.

1. Chinese Literature on Materia medica and Botany.

Before I proceed to enter upon the subject, it may be well to recall a few points in Chinese ancient history intimately connected with our researches into the history of plants and Botany from native sources.
The early history of the Chinese, like that of other nations, is veiled in obscurity. It is a view generally held by western scholars, although not the slightest evidence confirming it is found in the early historical records of the Chinese, that the birthplace of this race was somewhere in Central or even in Western Asia, and that they entered their present land from the northwest, apparently by the main route along and across the Yellow River. It seems that this supposition of Chinese immigration is principally based upon the fact, that the most ancient Chinese historical documents establish the existence of aborigines in China, quite different from the "black-haired people," as the ancient Chinese termed themselves. Obscure as is the origin of this nation, it is certain, however, that when they first appeared on the stage of history about 3000 years B.C., they considered themselves indigenous in China. For ages they were a people of no consequence, developing themselves independently and quite apart from other Asiatic nations. For many centuries they were acquainted only with their immediate neighbours, with whom they were constantly at war. The southern part of the present province of Shansi was the cradle of the Chinese Empire, whence it gradually extended its power in all directions, but less towards the south. We may therefore conclude that all the Chinese names of plants met with in the earliest native historical documents refer principally to northern Chinese plants, all indigenous in these regions. Even at the time when Confucius compiled the Classics (about 500 B.C.), the Chinese dominions did not extend far south of the Yang tze kiang. The present provinces of Shensi, Shansi, Chihli, and Shantung formed the northern part of China in that period. But the centre of Chinese civilisation was then in Southern Shensi, especially in the valley of the Wei River and in the present Honan. For nearly 30 centuries the Chinese Emperors resided in these provinces in the neighbourhood of the Wei River or the Yellow River.

The Emperor Ts' in Shi Huang Ti, B.C. 246—209, celebrated as the builder of the Great Wall (the same who ordered the burning of all Chinese books, sparing only those on Medicine, Divination and Husbandry), succeeded first in establishing his
authority over the feudal states of China. He subjected the whole Empire to one sole sovereign, and then conquered the regions which are now comprised in the provinces of Fu kien, Kuang-tung and Kuang si, known in ancient times by the general name of 南越 Nan Yue. But in B. C. 206 Nan Yue revolted and became again independent.

The Emperor Wu Ti, B. C. 140—86, of the Han dynasty, made himself master of the south-western portion of present China and reconquered Nan Yue, subjecting also a part of Annam. Then the Chinese Empire had nearly the same limits as the Chinese assign to China proper now-a-days. It was under the glorious reign of this Emperor that China, after centuries of isolation, became first acquainted with Japan and the countries of Central and Western Asia. I am aware that a French orientalist has endeavoured to prove that an embassy from Egypt was sent to China as early as B. C. 1113, and that 130 years later the Chinese Emperor Mu wang visited Western Asia. But such assertions are nothing but fantastic dreams. We can safely assume that, before the second half of the second century B. C., the Chinese had no intercourse with the distant countries of Western and Southern Asia, and were even ignorant regarding the tribes dwelling in Central Asia.

In about 139 B.C. Emperor Wu ti despatched one of his officers named 張騫 Chang K’ien on a diplomatic mission to the 月氏 Yue chi (or Yue ti), a people who first dwelt near the north-western frontier of China, but had been driven away by the Hiung nu and had then settled near the river Oxus. The 匈奴 Hiung nu at that time occupied the steppes of Mongolia and were constantly at war with China. Chang K’ien, who had necessarily to pass through their dominions, was made prisoner and retained

---

3a We read in the San fu huang tu, an ancient description of the public buildings in Ch’ang an, the ancient metropolis during the Han, near the present Sian fu in Shensi (see alph. list of works 647), as follows:

After the Han Emperor Wu Ti, in B. C. 111, had subdued Nan Yue, he built the palace Fu li (in Ch’ang an), and in the garden appertaining to it a number of rare herbaceous plants and trees brought from those southern regions were planted. Among the plants enumerated there I have been able to identify the following:

Nephelium Litchi, N. Longum, Consorium album, C. Pinella, Areca Catechu, Cinnamomum Cassia, the Banana, Canna Indica, Quisquilla indica, sweet Oranges,
for ten years by the shan yü (Khan) of the Hiung nu. Finally he succeeded in escaping to the west and penetrated to the countries of the Jaxartes and the Oxus, where he spent more than a year. On his way back he was again laid hold of by the Hiung nu, but escaped a year later and returned to China in 126 B.C. He brought back intelligence about various regions in the west and their natural productions. The official report of his observations and his biography are preserved in the Shi ki or Historical Record compiled by the celebrated Sze Ma ts'ien, a contemporary of Chang K'ien (book 111). In ancient catalogues (事言要元, see Introduction to alph. list) Chang K'ien is reported to have published a narrative with the title 海外異物記 Hai wei i wu hi, Record of remarkable things in foreign countries. The Emperor rewarded Chang K'ien after his return, and some years later raised him to the dignity of prince. In B.C. 123 he was commander-in-chief of the Chinese troops directed against the Hiung nu. Owing to a defeat the Chinese had suffered Chang K'ien was cashiered, but was afterwards pardoned. He died about B.C. 103. He is said to have introduced many useful plants from Western Asia into China. Ancient Chinese authors ascribe to him the introduction of the Vine, the Pomegranate, Safflower, the Common Bean, the Cucumber, Lucerne, Coriander, the Walnut-tree and other plants.

After Chang K'ien had first visited the countries of the west, the geographical knowledge of the Chinese in that direction rapidly increased. China extended its dominions over a great part of Central Asia, and envoys were frequently sent to the realms of Western Asia, and even to India, which country had been known to Chang K'ien only from hearsay. Since the introduction of Buddhism into China, about A.D. 66, intercourse between China and India had become very frequent and continued for centuries, but India was then generally reached by the long circuit of Bactria and Kabul.

The art of perpetuating books by engraving characters upon wood or stone and then printing from the plates, can be traced back in China as early as A.D. 593, but it is probable that an invention of this kind to multiply writings existed there much
earlier.\textsuperscript{4} It is certain that the Chinese enjoyed at least 800 years earlier than European nations these advantages of diffusion of literature and preservation of ancient records and documents. This circumstance has done much to prevent the loss of many ancient native writings, which render the study of Chinese literature so useful and interesting for European antiquaries.

The early history of the botanical knowledge of the Chinese is closely connected with the history of their Agriculture and Medicine; and their acquaintance with plants dates back from the period when they first began to employ plants for economical and medical purposes.

According to Chinese tradition the semi-mythical Emperor 神農 Shen nung, who is said to have reigned in the 28th century B. C., is the Father of Husbandry and Medicine. The 

Li hi (one of the Classics, see further on) states that Shen nung was born near the 堯山 Li shan (Sui chou, Northern Hupeh). He is said to have subsequently dwelt in 陳 Ch'en (Western Honan), and then moved to 魯 Lu (Southern Shantung). See the last edition of the Shi ki (Historical Records), in the first pages of which the ancient traditions regarding this Emperor have been brought together. 13 li north of 魯 an fu (Southern Shansi) there is a mountain called 百穀山 Po ku shan, mountain of the cereals,\textsuperscript{5} with a temple on its top, where, according to the 1 t'ung chi or Great Geography of China, Emperor Shen nung is still worshipped. This temple was founded in the 6th century of our era. At the foot of the mountain is the po ku ta'\textsuperscript{uan}, or fountain of the cereals. Here tradition makes Shen nung first teach his people how to till the ground and raise grain. Hence it was that his grateful subjects called him Shen nung or Divine husbandman.

It has also been handed down by tradition that Shen nung first tested the medical qualities of herbs and discovered medicines to

\textsuperscript{4} Compare Dr. W. Williams' interesting article on the subject in the "Chinese Recorder," 1875, p. 22.

\textsuperscript{5} The term po ku, which occurs first in the Classics (Shi king, Shu king), properly means "the hundred cereals," but the Chinese frequently use the numeral "hundred" in a general sense.
cure diseases, and the city of Wen hien (Huai king fu, Honan) claims to be the spot where this happened. In the Wen hien chi (topography of this city) it is stated that the 神農澗, rivulet of Shen nung, is situated inside the eastern gate. Here according to tradition Shen nung collected medicinal herbs, tested them and touched the soil with his staff, whereupon the water sprung forth. The earliest writings on medicinal plants and dietetics are ascribed to him. 2697 B. C. is given as the year of his death.

Shen nung’s successor, the Emperor 黃帝 Huang ti, who reigned in the 27th century B.C., is said to have established his residence in 涓鹿 Cho lu (Pao an chou, west of the present Peking). He is considered the author of the first Chinese works on the art of healing. See Alph. list of works 204.

THE MATERIA MEDICA OF EMPEROR SHEN NUNG.

The well known Chinese Materia medica, Pen ts'ao khang mu, of which I shall offer a detailed review in the proper place, in giving an opening sketch of the principal treatises of this class, begins with the 神農本草經, Shen nung Pen ts'ao king, or Classical work on Medicines of the Emperor Shen nung. We find there the following account of this ancient document, which we know only from the quotations of it in other succeeding ancient works of the same kind, to which it has served as a model.

Chang Yu si (who lived in the first half of the 11th century) says: According to ancient tradition this treatise was in 3 books and Emperor Shen nung was the author of it. But no ancient author states that he has seen it himself. In the section on literature in the Ts'tien Han shu (History of the Former Han dynasty, 202 B.C.—25 A.D., where many medical works extant in the first century B.C. are enumerated) no mention is made of this book. But in the biography of Emperor P'ing ti, 4th year of his reign (A.D. 4), we find a statement that the Emperor ordered all men in the Empire, familiar with medical prescriptions

6 Li Shi chen, the author of the Pen ts'ao khang mu, explains that the term Pen ts'ao properly means “Herbal,” but, as the majority of medicines are derived from the vegetable kingdom, it is used to designate a treatise on drugs in general.
and the Pen ts'ao (see note 6), to assemble in the capital.—In the biography of 精深 Lou Hou (Ts'ien Han shu, 92) it is said that, when he was yet but a boy, he knew by heart the 医经, I king (treatise on medicine), the Pen ts'ao and several thousands of medical prescriptions. Thus there can be no doubt that at that time there existed a Pen ts'ao.

Li Shi tsi (an author of the T'ang period, 7th century), and before him the 七 録, Tsi lu, a work of the Liang dynasty (6th century), speak of the Shen nung pen ts'ao in 3 books; suggesting that it was probably committed to writing during the Han dynasty, for there occur in the book names of places in China referring to the time of the After Han (25—221 A. D.). According to these authorities Chang Ki or Hua T'o 7 may be the authors of it. But Chang Yü si (who quotes the above statements) does not agree with this opinion. He admits an early existence of the Pen ts'ao king and adduces the Huai nan tzu (2nd century B. C.), which records that Emperor Shen nung in the space of one day tasted the plants and experimented on their efficacy. He found among them 70 to be poisonous. This was the beginning of medical art in China.

Chang Yü si continues: In remote times, when the art of writing was not yet known, science was transmitted from generation to generation by oral tradition, and what was called Pen ts'ao then was not a written book. From the period of the Han dynasties (B. C. 202—A. D. 221) medical art began to develop. Chang Ki and Hua T'o 7 largely contributed to the diffusion and completion of medical knowledge, commented on previous writings, and added new information, arranging the whole into a system. This was probably the time when the Materia medica of Shen nung first appeared as a written treatise.

K'ou Tsung shi (about 1115 A. D.) says: In the History of the Han dynasty it is stated that it is not certain who first compiled the Pen ts'ao. The Shi pen (written before the Han period) and the Huai nan tzu duly record that Shen nung tasted plants and examined their medical virtues, but they do not speak of a Pen

7 Celebrated physicians in the third century of our era. See further on note 12 (5 and 6).
ts'ao. There is however a statement in the Tiwang shi ki (History of the early Emperors, compiled in the 3rd century) that Huang ti (the successor of Shen nung) ordered his minister K'i po (see note 12) to examine the efficacies of plants, to compose a Pen ts'ao king (a standard herbal), and to lay down prescriptions for curing diseases. This proves that the appellation of Pen ts'ao can be traced back to the time of Huang ti. Nature had bestowed on the ancient sages peculiar faculties for recognizing instinctively, by the taste of natural productions, what was their efficacy in curing sickness. The rules they established were followed by the sages of later times who tried to complete and to enlarge the original matter.

According to Li Shi chen (the author of the Pen ts'ao kung mu), the Shen nung Pen ts'ao king was originally a treatise in three parts treating of 365 different drugs. It was first commented on by T'ao Hung king (A.D. 452-536) who wrote also a supplement to it (see further on Ming yi pie lu).

In the great catalogue of the Imperial Library, book 104, fol. 51, we read that the Shen nung Pen ts'ao king does not exist now-a-days as a separate treatise and that we know it only from the T'ang Shen wei Pen ts'ao (a Materia medica of the Sung dynasty; see further on No. 26.) in which the passages printed in white letters on black ground all refer to the text of the Shen nung Pen ts'ao.

The Pen ts'ao kung mu reproduces also to some extent the text of the Materia medica of Shen nung and generally quotes this treatise under the abbreviated title of 木经 Pen king. Under the head of "the celebrated arrangement of drugs by the Emperor Shen nung" the Pen ts'ao kung mu, in the first book, first part, fol. 43 sq., gives the text of a part of the Shen nung Pen ts'ao relating to the qualities, the use, the gathering of drugs, etc. That ancient document arranges the drugs under 3 classes and reads as follows:

Of the first class of drugs there are 120 sorts which are considered to perform the functions of 王 Kûn or Sovereigns. They support human life, and thereby resemble Heaven. They are not poisonous. Whatever quantity you take, or howsoever long you
use them, they are harmless. If you wish to have the body light, to improve the breath, to live to an old age, without growing old, make use of these drugs of the first class.

Amongst the drugs of the first class are reckoned: Ginseng, Rad. Nelumbi speciosi, Euryale ferox (semina), Jugulares, Orangia, John- tewara, Dioscorides, Benincasa cerifera, Amaranthus blitum, Capella burns pastoria, Sonchus arenatus, Cannabis sativa, Ummus pumila (bark eaten as food). Fuchynia pinetorum, Mushrooms, Cassia bork, Liquorice, Rehmannia glutinosa, Kochia scoparia, Tribulus terestris, Kadsura, Alisma plantago, Acorus, Typha, Plantago, etc.

There are 120 sorts of drugs of the second class, which are considered to perform the functions of ch'en or Ministers. They support human nature, and thereby resemble man. Some of these drugs are harmless; others are poisonous. They ought to be used with discretion.

If you wish to lessen the violence of diseases and re-establish decayed strength, use the second class of drugs.

Amongst the drugs of the second class we find: Ginger, Paeonia Montana, Paeonia albiflora, Lilium tigrinum, Xanthium strumarium, Gentiana, Polygonum Barometz, Niphobolus Lingus, Zanthoxylum, Trichosanthes, Thladiumtha dubia, Lemma, etc.

There are 125 sorts of drugs of the third class which are considered to perform the functions of ts'o, Assistants and shi, Agents. They cure diseases, and thereby resemble earth. They are very poisonous and ought not to be used continuously. If you wish to drive out cold or heat from the body, or to correct the breath, or to open obstructions, or to heal diseases, use the drugs of this class.

Among the drugs of the third class are reckoned: Rheum palmatum, Physostegia acinosa, several species of Euphorbia, Aconite, Veratrum Rhododendron, Croton, Peach kernels.

The drugs of these three classes make in all 365, corresponding in number to the number of degrees of the zodiac; each degree answering to one day of the year.

It does not come within the province of our investigations to translate the whole chapter which explains the system of that primeval Emperor regarding the qualities and efficacy of medicines, and illustrates the views entertained up to this time on the subject in China. A translation of the greater portion of this curious document will be found in Du Halde's la Chine III 444-452, and also in Bridgman's Chin. Chrestomathy 508 sq. (translated by Dr. W. Williams).
Li Shi chen in the Pen ts‘ao kang mu mentions only 347 of the (385) drugs specified in the Shen nung Pen ts‘ao, 239 of them belong to the vegetable kingdom, 65 refer to animals, 43 are obtained from minerals.

As to the medicinal plants enumerated in Shen nung’s Materia medica, they are up to the present time known to Chinese physicians by the same ancient names. As the greater part of them are natives of North-China and known to me, I shall give here the botanical names of those plants of the Shen nung Pen ts‘ao which I have been able to ascertain. I omit the Chinese names, which will be given at the proper places in the second part of my work.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ranunculus sceleratus</th>
<th>Sophora japonica</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aconitum, several spec.</td>
<td>S. flavescens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paonia Montan.</td>
<td>S. angustifolia ?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. althiflora.</td>
<td>Gleditschia sinensis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnolia Yulan.</td>
<td>Cassia Sophora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. hypoleuca ?</td>
<td>Acacia Julibrissin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schizandra chinensis.</td>
<td>Prunus japonica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Akebia quinata.</td>
<td>Pr. several species.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aceranthus sagittatus,</td>
<td>Amygdalus persica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nelumbium speciosum</td>
<td>Rubus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Euryale ferox.</td>
<td>Potentilla, several spec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chelidonium ?</td>
<td>Poterium officinale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sisybrium.</td>
<td>Rosa indica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capsella bursa pastoris.</td>
<td>Sedum alboroseum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polygala sibirica.</td>
<td>Trichosanthes palmata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. tenuifolia,</td>
<td>Lagenaria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dianthus seguieri.</td>
<td>Benincasa cerifera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malva verticillata.</td>
<td>Thladiantha dubia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tribulus terrestris.</td>
<td>Bupleurum falcatum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zanthoxylum, several spec.</td>
<td>Cicuta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrus aurantium,</td>
<td>Siou Ninsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angie separia ?</td>
<td>Seseli Libanotis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medis Azedarach.</td>
<td>Cnidium Monieri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Euonymus Thunbergianus.</td>
<td>Levisticum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zizyphus vulgaris.</td>
<td>Angelica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z. Lotus.</td>
<td>Peucedanum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitis vinifera.8</td>
<td>Aralia japonica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. seriansetolia.</td>
<td>Panax Ginseng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koelreuteria paniculata.</td>
<td>Hedera scandens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhus vernicifera.</td>
<td>Sambucus ?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glycyrrhiza glandulifera.</td>
<td>Gardenia floridia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soja hispida.</td>
<td>Rubia cordifolia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pueraria Thunbergiana.</td>
<td>Patrinia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhynchosia volubilis.</td>
<td>Dipsacus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8 It is evidently by a mistake which crept into the ancient tradition, when it first began to appear as a written document (in the second century, as the Chinese authors believe), that the Vitis is mentioned in the Shen nung Pen ts‘ao. For we have evidence from other ancient native records that this plant was first introduced into China in the second century B.C.
Polygonum ariculare.
Rumex crispus.
Asarum Thunbergii.
Aristolochia recurvilabra.
Cinnamomum Cassia.
Daphne.
Viscum or Loranthus.
Euphorbia helioscopia.
E. other species.
Elseaococa verrucosa.
Croton tiglium.
Ulmus pumila.
Cannabis sativa.
Morus alba.
Salix babylonica.
Thuja (Biota) orientalis.
Zingiber officinale.
Alpinia.
Bletia hyacinthina.
Dendrobium moniliforme.
Iris oxypetala.
Iris, other spec.
Pardanthus chinensis.
Dioscorea sativa.
Ophiopogon japonicus.
Paris quadrifolia.
Polygonatum officinale.
Lilium tigrinum.
Anemarrhena asphodeloides.
Asparagus lucidus.
Veratrum album.
Arum pentaphyllum.
Fineshia tuberifera.
Acorus.
Typha angustifolia.
Lemna minor.
Alisma plantago.
Bambusa.
Coix Lachryma.
Imperata.
Equisetum arvense.
Selaginella involvens.
Niphobolus Lingua.
Polypodium Barometz.
Ferus.
Pachyuma pinetorum.
Mytilta lapidecensa.
Various Mushrooms.
Sargassum.

THE CHINESE CLASSICS.

Important documents relating to the plants with which the Chinese were acquainted in early ages are found in the Chinese classics and especially in the Shu king, the Shi king, the Chou li, the Li ki and the Rh ya, regarding which I shall here offer a few remarks.
The 书经 Shu king or Classical Book of Historical Records, the most ancient historical work in China, was compiled by Confucius about 500 B.C. Besides some scattered notices on Chinese plants this Classic contains a chapter entitled 周官 Yü kung or Tribute of Emperor Yü, which presents a peculiar interest for us. This is a geographical description of ancient China, referring to about 2200 B.C., in which are enumerated the principal natural productions of each of the nine provinces into which China was then divided.

The 詩經 Shi king, or Book of Odes, likewise compiled by Confucius, is replete with names of plants, which however are often difficult to ascertain. There are even special Chinese works dealing with the plants and animals mentioned in the Shi king and the commentaries on them. The oldest work on the subject is the 毛詩 詩 Raises Mao Shi ts'ao mu niao shou ch'ung yü shu, Commentary on the herbs, trees, birds, beasts, insects and fishes mentioned in 毛詩 Mao Ch'ang's version of the Shi king, in 2 books, by 陸機 Lu ki, literary name 士衡 Shi heng, of the kingdom of Wu, 260-303 A.D. The original work was lost and that now current was compiled, it is not known when and by whom, mainly from K'ung Ying ta (Dr. Legge, Shi king).

In quoting the Shu king and the Shi king I always refer to the splendid translations by Dr. Legge.

The 周禮 Chou li, or Ritual of the Chou dynasty, B.C. 1122-249, gives a good deal of interesting information on Chinese plants, domestic and others. It was written about 1100 B.C. A good French translation of this classic was published by Biot, 1851.

The 禮記 Li ki, Book of Rites. Although the matter contained in it is of early origin like that of the other classics, it came to light in its present form about the close of the first century B.C. It is especially the section entitled 月令 Yue ling, Rules for every month of the year, in which names of plants frequently occur and which is often quoted in Chinese botanical works. The Li ki has been commented upon by 鄭玄 Cheng hsiian, A.D. 127-200.
This classic has never been completely translated into any European language. The translation of the Li ki by Callery into French, 1858, is only an abstract of the work.

**THE 爾雅 RH YA.**

This seems to be at first sight the most interesting among the classics for our purposes of research. It is a Dictionary of terms used in Chinese ancient writings generally ascribed to 周公 Chou kung, the Duke of Chou, about 1100 B.C. It was completed by 子夏 Tsé' Hia, a disciple of Confucius, nearly 700 years later, and remodelled into its present shape by 郭璞 Kuo P'o in the 3rd century. It seems that the Rh ya was principally intended to explain terms occurring in the Shi king (of which, as is known, a considerable part has been lost.) In his commentaries Kuo P'o frequently quotes the Book of Odes and also the Li sao, the famous poetical production of 賈 Yuên, 4th cent. B. C. and the Kuang ya, an ancient dictionary, the author of which lived in the middle of the 3rd. cent. (See alph. list Nos. 445, 383.)

The greater half of the matter in the Rh ya, arranged under 19 sections (釋 shi, properly: explanation), treats of natural objects. The names of plants are found in the 13th and 14th sections under the heads of 草 ts'ao, Herbs and 木 mu, Trees. Nearly 300 plants are enumerated there and in other sections as many animals. In some editions the text is accompanied with drawings. In the preface of the illustrated edition of 1802 it is stated that these wood-cuts originally date from the time of the Sung dynasty and that they have been carefully reproduced from a manuscript copy made by one who lived in the time of the Yüan or Mongol period (13th or 14th cent.). According to the History of the Sui dynasty (section on literature, book 32) there existed in the Liang period (6th cent.) two volumes of drawings illustrating the Rh ya, which were made by Kuo P'o, but they had been lost. Subsequently to the time of Kuo P'o 江灌 Kuang kuan prepared

---

9 An excellent account of the Rh ya by E. C. Bridgman is found in the Chinese Repository XVIII (1849), p. 169.

10 The earliest original drawings of plants extant in European collections are those accompanying a manuscript copy of Dioscorides' Materia medica, dating from the 5th century and preserved in the Great Vienna Library.
a volume of drawings illustrating the Rh ya. See T'ang shu, section on literature. Kiang kuan lived in the 4th cent. (see his biography Tsin shu 83), according to some authorities in the 6th cent. The drawings of the Rh ya now extant are generally very rough and, so far as plants are concerned, seldom enable one to recognize what particular plant is intended.

The original information given in this ancient dictionary with respect to natural objects is extremely aphoristic and fragmentary, not more than three, sometimes four characters being devoted to each name, and as I understand, these characters represent the book names and the popular names of the plants and animals without other explanations. Each phrase of the Rh ya is followed by the commentary of Kuo P'o. The sounds of uncommon words are always given.

The Rh ya had already been commented upon by several Chinese scholars previous to Kuo P'o. In the History of the Sui (section on literature) three authors of the Han period are mentioned, who had written commentaries on this dictionary, viz: 樊光 Fan Kuang, 劉歎 Liu Hin (first cent. B. C.) and 李淳 Li Sun.

郭璞 Kuo P'o was a celebrated scholar and expositor of the Taoist doctrine who lived A. D. 276-334, a native of Wen hui hien (Kiang chou, Shansi). His literary appellation was 廣學 King ch'iu. He was invested with the posthumous title 弘農郡守 Hung nung k'un shou (Prefect of the ancient department of Hung nung, in the present Ho nan). See his biography Tsin shu 72. His preface to the Rh ya reads as follows: (see Bridgman l. c.)

This book, the Rh ya, is designed to exhibit the general scope of education, to point out the sources of poetic composition, to collect and arrange the phrases of past generations, and to discriminate the real distinctions between things that seem to be identical.

It is in deed a safe conduct for men of all professions, a key to all arts, a deep fountain for the scientific reader, and a flower garden for the "belles lettres" writers.

If a work be desired that will enlarge our knowledge of all things, free us from every delusion, and extend our acquaintance with the various departments of natural history, there is none so useful as the Rh ya.
The Rh ya had its origin in middle antiquity and was in the highest repute during the Han, when its varied uses were unfolded on the occasion of the disquisition regarding the Leopard rat (豹鼠)\(^1\)

Then the illustrious and erudite scholars, the elegant and master writers of the age, all honored, esteemed and highly appreciated both its principles and its lessons of instruction.

Regardless of my inability and want of knowledge, I commenced the study of it while yet but a young man and zealously and assiduously continued the same twice nine years.

Although many commentators had exercised their talents upon it, yet none of their works were complete. Much in them was confused and erroneous, and some things were omitted and still wanting.

For these reasons I have in my turn undertaken to bring together the meanings of the words and to collect all the ancient explanations. I have extended my researches to the dialects of all the different states of the Empire and made collections from the popular songs and sayings. Having thus collected a great variety of terms and by careful examination ascertained their correct and popular use, I have endeavored to remove all defects and inaccuracies and to put away all that is low and vulgar.

When quotations, which were not common or well understood, have been made, they have been supported by requisite proofs, but all such as seemed plain and easy have been passed over without comment.

Moreover, with a view to prevent all misunderstanding, I have in separate parts indicated the sounds and added drawings.

Thus I have labored hard to make clean and plain the path of learning, earnestly hoping that, by this work, the progress of scholars in future times may be greatly facilitated.—

Some of the ancient names of plants found in the text of the Rh ya are still in use, but the majority of them were unknown even at the time when Kuo P'o lived and he tried therefore to explain what plants were meant, giving their popular names. In

---

all probability he utilized previous commentaries for his explanations. Chinese writers on botany place absolute confidence in the identifications given by Kuo P'o. But a closer investigation of the subject has convinced me that in this respect he proceeded as arbitrarily as the swarms of other Chinese commentators of the classics, and that his statements must be accepted with caution. I have the same mistrust with regard to Chinese identifications of the archaic names of plants as found in the Shi king and other classical writings.

Another commentary of the Rh ya was published with the title of 爾雅正義 Rh ya cheng i by 孫炎 Sun Yen, styled also 孫叔然 Sun Shu yen, a contemporary of Kuo P'o. Comp. Biograph. Dict. Shang yu lu.

Subsequently to the time of Kuo P'o the Rh ya was commented upon by 邢昺 Hsing Ping A. D. 932-1010, and by 鄭樵 Cheng Ts'iao, A. D. 1108-1162. Compare Sz' k'u ts'üan shu ming mu lu IV, 16. Mayers' Chin. Read. Man. p. 52.

In the 11th century a work on the plan of the Rh ya, an appendix to it, with the title 椿雅 P'i ya, in 20 books, was composed by 陸佃 Lu Tien, A. D. 1042-1102. Comp. Sz' k'u etc. IV, 17. Mayers l. c. p. 140.

A similar appendix appeared a century later with the name of 爾雅翼 Rh ya i, in 32 books. The author of it was 羅願 Lo Yuan, styled also 端眞 Tuan liang and 存齋 Ts'ün ts'i. He lived in the 12th century. Sung shi 380.—Sz' k'u etc. IV, 17.

I may finally mention here the 山海經 Shan hai k'ing, Classic of the Mountains and Seas. It is an ancient geographical description of China of a somewhat fabulous and mythical character. The authorship is generally ascribed to the Emperor Yu, B. C. 2200. According to Mr. Wylie (Notes on Chin. lit. p. 35) it is at least as old as the Chou dynasty and probably of a date even anterior to that period. We meet in it with a profusion of names of mountains and rivers unknown now-a-days, and the position of which is indicated only in a general way. Many plants and animals are likewise mentioned in it, but in many cases we can make nothing of these names.

The Shan hai k'ing in 13 books is noticed in the bibliographical
section of the History of the Former Han in the catalogue compiled in the 1st century B.C. *Kuo P'o* wrote a commentary on it. The edition now current is in 18 books. Compare *Journal Asiatique*, 1839: Notice du Chan haï king par M. Bazin (ainé), where some specimens of the work are given.

**THE 南方草木狀 NAN FANG TS'AO MU CHUANG.**

This is the earliest Chinese treatise dealing with plants and bearing a purely botanical character. The title means: Account of the Flora of the Southern Regions. The author was 稽含 *Ki Han*, a Minister of State under Hui ti of the Tsin dynasty, A.D. 290—307. He had been previously Governor of Canton. See his biography, Tsin shu 89. This small treatise is not a rare book, it is found in the Han Wei ts'ung shu (Wylie l.c. 209) and other collections of reprints. It is also reproduced in the botanical section of the famous T'u shu tsi ch'eng, books 3, 5, 15, 186. We meet in it with interesting accounts of some trees and other plants known at that time in South-China, some of them brought from distant foreign countries. The plants are treated under the four classes of herbs, forest-trees, fruit-trees, and bamboos, including in all 80 species. Among the plants described there the following can be ascertained:

| The Bananas. | Lawsonia (Henna). |
| Jasmine officinale. | Alloexylum Agallochum. |
| Jasminum Sambac. | Cloves. |
| The Nutmeg-tree. | Caryota. |
| Canna indica. | Terminalia Chebula. |
| Sweet-potato (Batatas). | Cesalpinia Sappan. |
| Betel-leaf. | Glyptostrobus heterophyllus. |
| Long Pepper. | Cunninghamia sinensis. |
| Acorus. | Vitex Negundo. |
| Quisqualis indica. | Rattana. |
| Sugar-cane. | Areca Catechu. |
| Phyllocladus placentaria, Lour. | Cocoa-nut. |
| Livistona chinensis. | Myrica sapada. |
| Clerodendron squamatum. | Nepheleum Litchi. |
| Brasica napus. | Nepheleum Langan. |
| Ipomoea reptana. | Canarium Fimela. |
| Cymbidium ensifolium. | Canarium album. |
| Liquidambar formosana. | Coco de Mer. |
| Olibanum (brought from western countries). | Averrhoa Carambola. |
| Ficus retusa. | Various Oranges. |
| Bitter-seeded Cardamom. | Phyllanthus Emblica. |
| Cinnamonum Cassia. | Aleurites trifoliata. |
| Hibiscus syriacus. | Spondias. |
| | Various Bamboos of South-China. |
Besides the 80 plants described under separate headings, several other Chinese plants are mentioned "en passant" under the same Chinese names by which they are still known in this country, viz.:

Hibiscus mutabilis. | Arundo phragmites.
Vitis vinifera. | Dendroebium moniliforme.
Nelumbium speciosum. | Diospyros Kaki.
Zingiber officinale. | Pomegranate.
Dioscorea sativa. | Eriobotrya japonica.
Caladium esculentum. | Althea sinensis.
Gardenia florida. | Sophora japonica.
Sterculia planifolia. | Juniperus chinensis.
Rhapia flabelliformis (perhaps Chamaerops?) | Cedrela sinensis.
Sagittaria chinensis. | Acacia Julibrissin.

A short record of a similar character to the Nan fang ts‘ao mu chuang is the 魏王花木志 Wei wang Hua mu chi, Notice of the Flowers and Trees of the Prince of Wei (perhaps the Prince of Wei is the author). It has likewise been reprinted in the T‘u shu ts‘i ch‘eng I c. book 5, and as I can infer from the place assigned to it in that Encyclopaedia, it seems to belong to the same period (perhaps a century earlier) as the Nan fang ts‘ao mu chuang. It is sometimes quoted in the Pen ts‘ao kang mu. I have not been able to gather any other information regarding its author or time of publication in any Chinese bibliographical work. Among the 15 plants recorded in it I may mention the following:

The 思惟 Se‘wei or 貝多 Pei to tree, the seeds of which are said to have been brought from India at the time of the Han dynasty, is Borrassus flabelliformis.—Magnolia Yulon.—Camellia japonica.—Hibiscus syriacus.—Cinnamomum Cassia.—Citrus japonica.—Rhododendron.—Quiquidnilis sinensis.

CHINESE STANDARD WORKS ON MATERIA MEDICA.

I now proceed to review briefly in chronological order the Chinese works on Materia medica (and Natural History) which at different times have been considered the capital treatises in this department. My information regarding these compilations and their authors has for the greater part been derived from the bibliographical notices already mentioned, given by Li Shi chen in the introductory part of the Pen ts‘ao kang mu. From these accounts I select the more important statements, occasionally elucidating them by extracts drawn from other quarters. Li Shi
chen reviews in all 42 of such works of note on Materia medica. The Shen nung Pen ts'ao king (1.), which we have already dwelt upon and which forms the nucleus of all subsequent Chinese treatises on the subject, is placed at the head of the 42 works reviewed, the earlier of which, having long been lost, were known to Li Shi chen only from the accounts and quotations given of them by previous authors. After the Shen nung Pen ts‘ao the next in order of time is

2. The 采藥錄 Ts‘ai yao lu, directions for gathering drugs, in 2 books, by 桐君 Tung k’un, one of the ministers of the Emperor Huang ti. This treatise gives also some descriptive accounts of medicinal plants.

3. The 雷公藥對 Lei kung Yao tui, Materia medica of Lei kung, who was one of the sages employed by the Emperor Huang ti in his labours to perfect the art of healing. This treatise, to which tradition ascribes a high antiquity, was published (from an ancient manuscript, I understand) in 2 books with additional remarks and commentaries by 徐之才 Sū Chi ts‘ai, a celebrated physician living in the second half of the 6th century, a native of Tan yang (Chin kiang fu). See his biography Pei Tsi shu 33.

4. The 李氏藥錄 Li shi Yao lu, Materia medica of Li or 李當之 Li Tung chi, a subject of the Wei dynasty, in the first half of the 3rd century. He was a disciple of the celebrated Hua T'o (see note 12).

5. The 吳氏本草 Wu shi Pen ts‘ao, Materia medica of Wu or 吳普 Wu P‘u, a native of Kuang ling (present prefecture of Yang chou fu in Kiang su), likewise a subject of the Wei, first half of the 3rd century, and a disciple of Hua T'o. He compiled his treatise, one book, from the works of the Emperors Shen nung and Huang ti, and the writings of Ki Po, Tung k’un (see above 2), Lei kung (see above 3), Pien Ts‘iao, Hua T‘o,12 Li Tung chi (see above 4).

12 The above names refer to ancient celebrated Chinese physicians. Besides the primeval Emperors—神農 Shen nung (styled also 藥聖 Yao sheng, the sage of
6. The 炮灸論 P'ao chi lun by 雷公 Lei kung or properly 雷儆 Lei Huao, who is not to be confounded with the Lei kung

medicines) and 黃帝 Huang ti (styled also 軒轅 Hien yüen and 藥王 Yao wang, prince of medicines), already spoken of—the 十大名醫 shi ta ming i or ten celebrated Doctors are worshipped in the chief medical temple in Peking, called 藥王廟 Yao wang miao, and in other temples. See Dr. J. Dudgeon's interesting paper on Medical Divinities, Chin. Recorder 1870 III, p. 40. On the tablets in that temple we find the following names of famous physicians. I add some biographical notices gathered from various sources.

1. 岐伯 K'i Po, styled also 藥祖 Yao tsu (ancestor of medicines), a native of Northern China, one of the assistants of Emperor Huang ti, his tutor in medical investigations and the reputed founder of the art of healing. Hence the phrase 岐黃術, the science of K'i po and Huang ti for medical skill. See Mayers' Chin. Read. Man. p. 57. The Pen ts'ao kang mün, I. b. fol. 12 sq., gives some specimens of K'i Po's views on the nature of the drugs. In the section on literature in the Sui shu mention is made of a work named 岐伯經 K'i Po king.

2. 雷公 Lei kung, a physician of the time of Huang ti. See above No. 8.

3. 扁鵲 Pien Ts'iao, likewise one of the physicians of Huang ti, but according to another tradition a famous physician of the 6th century B. C. See his biography in the Shi ki (Histor. record) book 105, and Mayers' Chin. Read. Man. p. 172. Pien ts'iao, known also under the name of 秦越人 Ts'in yü jen, was a native of 濱海 Po hai (in the present province of Chihli, Ho kien fu), but subsequently took up his abode in the state of Lu, wherefore he is sometimes styled 魯醫 Lu i (the physician of Lu). He is said to have first gained a knowledge of the internal parts of the body. The theory of the pulse is likewise derived from his discoveries. A medical treatise nan king (on difficult medical questions) is attributed to him. See alphab. list of works, 562.

4. 淳于意 Chun Yu i, an official of the time of Emperor Wen ti (179-156 B. C.), having charge of the public granaries in Ts'i, and hence entitled 太倉公 T'ou tung kung. See Mayers' Chin. Read. Man. p. 37; Shi ki, book 105, where his biography is found. He devoted himself to the study of the art of medicine, in which he attained to wondrous skill. He has left a collection of medical prescriptions. See alph. list of works, 849.

5. 張仲景 Chung Ching king, sometimes styled also 機仲景 Ki Ching k'un or 張機 Chung Ki. Wen hien t'ung k'ao 222, Wylie, Chin. lit. 80, 82. He was a native of 南陽 Nan yang (province of Honan) and prefect of Ch'ung shah (Hu nam) during the later Han, it seems end of the second century. He was a celebrated physician and has left a treatise on fevers and several other medical writings. See alph. list of works, 678, 328, 329.

6. 華陀 Hua T'o, literary appellation 元化 Yüan hua, second century and first half of the third. A native of 沛國譙 Pei kuo t'iao (present Po chou, An hui), a renowned physician, the Esculapius of China. Mayers' Chin. Read. Man. p. 68; Chin. Repos. II. 275; Hon Han shu, book 112b. Hua t'o is said to have been versed in all the secrets of Taoism, and to have been especially successful in surgical operations. He is reputed to have relieved the great Ts'ao ts'ao (the founder of the Wei dynasty, died 220) from a cerebral disease by means of an operation. He was also in possession of an anaesthetic agent for producing insensibility during surgical
of Huang ti's time (see above 3), for Lei Hiao with the title Lei hung was an author of the Liu Sung dynasty (A.D. 420—477). The P'ao chi lun was a treatise in 3 books, explaining the medical virtues of 300 drugs and giving directions for the preparation of medicines.

7. We now come to one of the most important ancient treatises on Materia medica, the 名醫別錄 Ming i pie lu,—as this title implies, an account of drugs or medicines recommended (after the time of Shen nung) by eminent physicians. In the Pen ts'ao kung mu this work is generally quoted with the abbreviated title of Pie lu. The author of it was 陶弘景 T'ao Hung king, A.D. 452—536 (see his biography Liang shu 51), one of the most celebrated adepts in the mysteries of Taoism and a distinguished operations. In his biography this medicine is called 麻沸 散 ma fei san, which has been erroneously translated by Stan. Julien, Tatarinov and others by “a preparation of Hemp.” The character ma means indeed Hemp, but is also used to designate in the popular language “insensibility,” and 麻藥 ma yao is to be translated by “anesthetic prescription.” The prescriptions which in Peking go by the name of ma yao contain Aconite, the tubers of some poisonous plants of the Arum family. Henbane, sometimes Datura. Hua to fell afterwards a victim to political intrigue and perished by Ts'ao ts'ao's command, more than a hundred years old. Several medical treatises are attributed to him. See alph. list 99, 169.

7. 王叔和 Wang Shu ho, according to the Wen hien t'ung k'ao a native of 高平 Kao ping (province of Shantung). He was Court physician during the Western Ts'in dynasty (A.D. 265—317). He wrote a celebrated treatise on the pulse. See alph. list 528.


9. 皇甫 Huang Fu, and 10 李士真 Li Shi chen. I have not been able to find these names in Chinese biographical dictionaries or medical works. Perhaps 皇甫gresql. 215—282, who has also left some works on medicine, and 李時珍 Li Shi chen, the author of the Pen ts'ao kung mu.

In the temple Tung yu miao, near Peking, there are also tablets of the ten celebrated doctors, and here we find instead of Huang fu and Li shi chen two other names, viz.: 孫思邈 Sun Sse mo and 韋慈獻 Wei Tse' tsung. The first was a celebrated Taoist and physician of the 7th century (see further on works on Materia medica No. 9), the second a famous Court physician in the beginning of the 8th century. He is mentioned in the K'iu T'ang shu 121.

For biographical notices regarding other celebrated Chinese physicians (Bridgman’s Chin. Chrest. p. 498, 429) see the alph. list.
physician, a native of 萩陵 Mo ling (near the present Nan king). The Emperor Kao ti of the Ts'i dynasty, 479—482, made him preceptor of the Imperial princes; and the Emperor Wu ti of the Liang, 502—550, was at one time among the number of his disciples. T'ao Hung king subsequently retired into seclusion among the recesses of the mountain 仰曲山 Kou k'ü shan,12a where the eighth of the haunted grottoes of the Taoists, the 華陽洞 Hua yang tung is situated, and devoted himself to meditation and study. The Emperor Wu ti endeavoured in vain to attract him into public life, and was accustomed to consult him. (Mayers' Chin. Read. Man. p. 214). T'ao Hung king is also known under the name of 陶隱居 T'ao yin k'u (T'ao the hermit) or 華陽真人 Hua yang ch'en jen (the saint of Hua yang). Besides this he is sometimes styled 通明 Tung ming (his literary appellation).

Li Shi chen states that the Shen nung Pen ts'ao king specifies in three books 365 drugs in accordance with the number of days. T'ao Hung king in the Pie lu added 365 new medicines recommended by famous physicians of the Han and Wei dynasties. This treatise comprised seven books. The text of Shen nung's Materia medica was represented in it by red characters, whilst T'ao Hung king's additions were written in black characters. He presented his composition to the Emperor Wu ti of the Liang. One chapter of the Pie lu, treating of the preparation of medicines, is reproduced in the Pen ts'ao kang mu, book 1a fol. 55 sq., and was translated into French by Visdelou. Cnf. Du Halde: La Chine III, 453—459.

8. The 藥緒訣 Yao tsung küe, another treatise on medicines, in two books, is a production of the same author.

9. The 千金食治 Ts'ien kin shi chi, a treatise on articles of food and the preservation of health by 孫思邈 Sun Sc' mo, an erudite scholar deeply versed in Taoist lore and in the art of healing, who flourished at the commencement of the 7th century A. D. Mayers' Chin. Read. Man. p. 194. He was a native of

12a The Kou k'ü shan, called also 茅山 Mao shan, is one of the reputed mountains of the Taoists. According to Chinese maps it is situated south-east of Kù yung hien (Kiang nung fu [Nanking], Kiang su).
華原 Hua yünn (the present Yao chou, Si an fu, Shensi) and retired into seclusion on the 太白山 T'ai po shan.\footnote{The T'ai po shan, where one of the haunted grottoes of the Taoists is situated, lies in the south-western corner of the prefecture of Si an fu.} He was induced circa A. D. 630 to leave his mountain hermitage for the court of Emperor T'ai Tsung, where he performed many miracles. Sun Sz' mo is the author of numerous medical treatises. See alph. list 31, 707, 934—937. He is one of the celebrated doctors of China and is worshipped in the state temples among the divinities of the healing art. He is styled also 孫真人 Sun ch'en jen.

10. The 藥性本草 Yao sing pen ts'ao, on the medical virtues of drugs, in four books, by 鄭權 Chen Kuan, a native of HÜ chou (Honan), end of the 6th and first half of the 7th century. He died under the reign of T'ai tsung (A. D. 627—50) at the age of 120 years. See his biography in the T'ang shu 252. He also wrote a treatise with the title 藥性論 Yao sing lun and other medical works.

11. The 唐本草 T'ang Pen ts'ao, or Materia medica of the T'ang dynasty. The Emperor Kao tsung issued about A. D. 650 a mandate for the revision and completion of the Shen nung Pen ts'ao and T'ao yin hÜ's commentaries and additions (see above 7). This was undertaken by a commission under the superintendence of 李勣 Li ts'ai, a high officer. The new work comprised seven books and was generally styled 英公唐本草 the T'ang Pen ts'ao of Ying kung, the latter being a title of Li ts'ai. A few years later 蘇恭 Su Kung, another high official, was appointed to revise and to complete it once more. 長孫無忌 Chang Sun wu ki and 22 others were associated with him in the work. They added 114 new objects, and classed the whole under the heads of Minerals, Man, Quadrupeds, Birds, Insects, Fishes, Cereals, Vegetables, Fruits, Trees, Herbs, and natural objects not employed in medicine. This was called the 唐新本草 T'ang Sin pen ts'ao or New Pen ts'ao of the T'ang. The descriptive part of it extended to 20 books, with one book for the index. To this were added
25 books of pictorial illustrations representing natural objects, and 7 books of annotations explaining the drawings.\(^{14}\)

12. The 食療本草 Shi liao pen ts'ao, in 13 books, by 孟舘 Meng Shen, a functionary of the T'ang, in the second half of the 7th century, a native of Ju chou (Honan). See his biography T'ang shu 252.

13. The 本草拾遺 Pen ts'ao shí i, in 10 books. This title may be translated by: Omissions in previous works of Materia medica, supplied by 陳藏器 Ch'en Ts'ang k'i, a functionary in San yian hien (Si an fu, Shensi). He lived in the first half of the 8th century.

14. The 海藥本草 Hai yao pen ts'ao, an account of the drugs of southern countries in 6 books, by 李勣 Li Sün. Second half of the 8th century.

Li Shi chen mentions yet another treatise, of the same period it seems, dealing with foreign drugs, which has been lost. Its title was 胡本草 Hu Pen ts'ao, Materia medica of the Hu (western nations or India), in 7 books, by 鄭虔 Cheng K'ien.

15. The 四聲本草 Sz' sheng pen ts'ao, in 5 books, by 萧炳 Siao Ping, a scholar of the T'ang period (7th to 9th century). In this treatise the matter is arranged according to the four sounds (sz' sheng) of Chinese pronunciation.

16. The 則繁本草 Shan fan pen ts'ao, in 5 books, by 楊損之 Yang Sun chi, a physician and functionary in the second half of the 8th century, a native of 润州 Jun chou (the present Chin kiang fu, Kiangsu). The author endeavours to eliminate all useless matter found in the previous treatises on Materia medica.

17. The 本草音義 Pen ts'ao yin i, in 2 books, by 李含光 Li Han kuang, a subject of the T'ang dynasty (A. D. 618—907).

---

\(^{14}\) These drawings are not the first pictorial attempt of the Chinese in this department. As we have seen the Rh ya, commented upon by Kuo Po in the 3rd century, was accompanied with drawings.

19. The 食性本草 Shi sing pen ts‘ao, in 10 books, by 陳士真 Ch‘en Shi liang, a learned physician of Kien chou (P‘ao ning fu, Sz‘ ch‘uan) in the 10th century. This is a compilation from previous works on Materia medica, with some additional matter on dietetic food.

20. The 蜀本草 Shu Pen ts‘ao was compiled about the middle of the 10th century by order of 孟昶 Meng Ch‘ang, prince of Shu (the modern Sz‘ ch‘uan, then governed by an independent ruler). The prince entrusted with this task 韓保昇 Han Pao sheng, a Doctor of the Academy, and some distinguished physicians, and wrote himself the preface to the work, which was published in 20 books, illustrated by wood-cuts. It professes to be a revision and an amplification of the T‘ang Pen ts‘ao (see 11).

21. The 日華諸家本草 Ji hua Chu kia pen ts‘ao, published about A. D. 970, in 20 books, by 大明 Ta Ming (literary appellation Ji hua), a native of Tung lai (Shantung province).

22. The 開寶本草 K’ai pao Pen ts‘ao, or Materia medica of the period K’ai pao (A. D. 968—976) of the Sung dynasty, drawn up by command of the first emperor of this dynasty by 劉翰 Liu Han, Court physician, and 馬志 Ma Chi, a Taoist scholar and physician, who were assisted in the completion of their task by nine other scholars. They brought together in this work the principal matter of all previous treatises on Materia medica, and described 133 new specimens. In all there are 983 objects detailed in it.

23. The 嘉祐補註本草 Kia yu Pu chu Pen ts‘ao, the Pen ts‘ao revised and commented upon, published during the period Kia yu (of the Sung). It was compiled in compliance with an
Imperial order in A. D. 1057, in 20 books, by Chang Yu si, a high functionary, assisted by Lin i, another high official, and several physicians of note. Chang Yu si, a distinguished scholar, was a native of Yen ch'eng hien (Hü chou, Honan). 1082 articles are detailed in this treatise, 82 of them being new.

24. The 圖經本草 Tu k'ing pen ts'ao, or illustrated Pen ts'ao, in 21 books, published by Imperial order, was compiled by Su Sung, a high functionary and distinguished scholar, a native of Ts'üan chou in Fu kien, after the Kia yu pen ts'ao (see 23) had been completed. The drawings of the natural productions of China in this work had been executed by Imperial command from nature in the various districts of the Empire. Use had also been made of similar earlier drawings dating from the T'ang period (see above 11). This illustrated Materia medica comprised 21 books.

25. The 本草別説 Pen ts'ao pie shuo, the production of Ch'en Ch'eng, a distinguished physician, was published about A. D. 1090. It is a revised combination of the Pen ts'ao and the Tu k'ing (24).

26. The 徵類本草 Cheng lei pen ts'ao, known also under the name of 大観本草 Tu kuan Pen ts'ao, for it was compiled in the second year of the reign of Ta kuan, A. D. 1108, by T'ang Shen wei, a physician of Shu (the present Sz' ch'üan). This work unites all that was most valuable in the earlier treatises on Materia medica. The matter is arranged in 31 chapters under the heads of: Precious stones, Metals, Herbs, Cereals, Vegetables, Fruits, Trees, Insects, Fishes, Birds, Quadrupeds, Man. In all 1455 objects are described. 294 plates of drawings are added. The Ta kuan Pen ts'ao is still extant, but I have not come across it. Klaproth was in possession of the first book of it. See Catalogue des livres (chinois etc) de Klaproth No. 144, and Sz' k'u ts'üan shu 103, fol. 35. Klaproth’s edition was of 1469 A. D.
27. The 本草衍義 Pen ts'ao yen i, published about A.D. 1115, in 3 books, by 邊宗奭 K'ou Tsung shi, a celebrated physician of the Sung dynasty.

28. The 潔古珍珠囊 Kie ku Chen chu nang (Kie ku's Bag of pearls), one book. Kie ku is the literary name of 張元素 Chang Yuan su, a celebrated physician during the Kin dynasty (A.D. 1115—1234). See his biography Kin shi 131. He was a native of 易州 I chou (Chihli province) and wrote several other medical treatises.¹⁵

29. The 用藥法象 Yung yao fa siang, one book, on the use of drugs, by 李杲 Li Kao, a celebrated physician of Chen ting (Chihli). Literary appellation: 明之自 Ming chi ts'ê. He is more generally known by his pseudonym 東垣 Tung yüan and flourished in the 12th and 13th centuries. He was a pupil of Kie ku (see 28), and is the author of many other medical treatises. See alph. list 222, 414, 612, 616, 737, and his biography, Yuan shi 203.

30. The 湯液本草 T'ang i pen ts'ao, in 2 books, by 王好古 Wang Hao ku, a learned physician in the first half of the 13th century, the author of several medical treatises. See alph. list 225, 228, 969, 1093, and Wylie l. c. 79. His literary appellation was 進之 Tsin chi, his pseudonym 海藏 Hai ts'ang.

31. The 日用本草 Ji yung pen ts'ao, in 8 books, by 吳瑞 Wu Shui, a physician of Hai ning chou (Hang chou fu, Chekiang) of the Mongol period.

32. The 本草譔括 Pen ts'ao ho hua. Judging from the title it seems to be a Materia medica arranged in verses. The author of it was 胡仕 Hu Shi, a physician of the Mongol period.

¹⁵ He is not to be confounded with a famous physician of the same name, Chang Kie ku, also a native of North-China, who lived during the Ming dynasty. See his biogr. Ming shi 299.
33. The 本草衍義補遺 Pen ts'ao yen i pu i, a revision and amplification of No. 27, by 朱震亨 Chu Chen heng, a celebrated physician and Taoist scholar, who lived in the second half of the 14th century. Literary appellation 彦修 Yen shiu, but he is more generally known under the name of 丹溪 Tan k'i. He was a native of Yi wu (Kia hua fu in Chekiang). His biography is given in the Yüan shi, 189. For his other medical treatises see alph. list 217, 348, 369, 788.

34. The 本草發揮 Pen ts'ao fa hui, in 3 books, by 徐彥純 Sù Yen shun. Literary appellation 用誠 Yung ch'eng. He was a pupil of Chu Chen heng (see 33).

35. THE 救荒本草 KIU HUANG PEN TS'AO.

This is a treatise on the plants fit for supporting life in time of scarcity by 周定王 Chou ting wang (literary appellation 朱禡 Chu siao; pseudonym 誠齋 Ch'eng ch'ai), an Imperial Prince, the fifth son of the first Ming Emperor Hung Wu, who reigned A. D. 1368—1398. See Ming shi 116, Biographies of the Imperial princes. Chou ting wang is noticed there as the author of the above work. But the author of the Pen ts'ao kang mu attributes the authorship to 周憲王 Chou hien wang, who was a son of Chou ting wang. As the great Catalogue Sz' k'u ts'üan shu explains, C. II. 8, this error arose from the circumstance that Chou ting wang's name does not appear in the original edition.

We learn from Chou ting wang's biography that he dwelt for a long time, from 1382 to about 1400, in K'ai feng fu (Honan), where his appanages were situated; and then removed to the province of Yün nan. He died in 1425; his son Chou hien wang in 1439.

Chou ting wang, who is also known as the author of several writings on medical subjects (see alph. list 642, 793), took a great interest in botany and made special study of the wild and cultivated plants suitable for food; his information on the subject having chiefly been derived from the experience of peasants and farmers. The original edition of the Kiu huang pen ts'ao was first published in the beginning of the 15th century, in 2 books;
a second edition in 4 books, the one now current, appeared in 1559 with a preface by 陸東 Lu tung. This edition was in the possession of Klaproth (see the catalogue of his Chinese and other books No. 145). It was reprinted at the end of the well-known Thesaurus of Agriculture, the Nung ch'eng ts‘ian shu, of which we shall speak further on.

The Kiu huang pen ts‘ao is not a simple compilation from earlier treatises, but for the greater part an original work based upon the author's own experience. As his principal abode was in K’ai feng fu, all the plants recorded in his treatise belong to the Flora of Honan, or are cultivated there. The districts and mountains mentioned in it are generally situated south of the Yellow River, and west and south-west of K’ai feng fu. The name of the district of 密 Mi (hien) occurs frequently, and also that of 良 Hui (hien), which is north of the Yellow River. The province of Honan seems to be very rich in interesting plants, especially mountain plants, drugs, but has never been explored by western botanical collectors.

The Kiu huang pen ts‘ao describes in all 414 plants, 138 of which were recorded in previous works on Materia medica, 276 being new. The matter is arranged in five classes, viz.: Herbs, Trees, Cereals, Fruits, and Vegetables. Each plant is represented by an original drawing. As far as I can judge from the plants known to me these drawings are tolerably true to nature. It must not be forgotten that the original wood-cuts date from a time when engravings on wood were altogether unknown in Europe. 16 Many of the delineations in this Chinese work are certainly superior to some European wood-cuts of the 17th century, as, for instance, those in Bontius' Hist. nat. Indiæ orient. 1629.

Among the plants depicted and described in the ancient Chinese treatise the following can be ascertained. I enumerate them in the order followed in the Kiu huang pen ts‘ao, grouping the species according to the parts of the plant used for food.

16 According to E. Meyer's Geschichte der Botanik, IV, 278, the earliest European wood-cuts representing plants are found in Cunrat von Megenberg's Buch der Natur, the first edition of which was printed in Augsburg, in 1475.
### A. Herbs.

#### a. Leaves used for Food.
- Cnicus
- Carduus
- Petasites japonicus
- Polygonum aviculare
- Isatis indigofera
- Dianthus Seguieri
- Hemerocallis graminea
- Plantago major
- Polygonum orientale
- Astragalus
- Aristolochia recurvilabra
- Inula chinensis
- Oxalis corniculata
- Cudium Montieri
- Foniculum vulgare
- Buyleurm falcatum
- Gentiana
- Poterium officinale
- Angelica
- Humulus japonicus
- Incarvillea sinensis
- Platycodon grandiflorum
- Aster
- Siegesbeckia orientalis
- Alisma Plantago
- Commelina communis
- Scorzonera
- Viola
- Artemisia vulgaris
- Calendula officinalis
- Sedum
- Rausmine hortensis
- Chelidonium majus
- Ranunculus
- Cuscuta chinensis
- Agriophyllum?
- Epilobium
- Potentilla
- Rosa
- Synnlessis aconitifolia
- Vitta hetero-hyia
- Hibiscus tenuis
- Metaplexis Stauntonii
- Geranium

#### b. Roots.
- Lilium tigrinum
- Polygonatum officinale
- Asparagus lucidus
- Phytoleca acinosa
- Ophiopogon japonicus
- Boehmeria nivea
- Atractylis chinensis
- Acorus
- Barnardia scilloides
- Dioscorea (wild species)

#### c. Fruits or Seeds.
- Coix Lachryma
- Tribulus terrestris
- Sida pilasia
- Echinochloa Crus galli
- Eleusine Coracana
- Thladiantha dubia
- Luffa aegyptiaca
- Vincetoxicum sibricum
- Momordica Charantia
- Duchesnia fragaroides

#### d. Leaves and Fruits.
- Rumex crispus
- Xanthium Strumarium
- Physalis Alkekengi
- Rubia cordifolia
- Silene
- Vincetoxicum
- Solanum?
- Sphaerophyta

#### e. Roots and (generally young, tender) Leaves.
- Rehmannia glutinosa
- Arctium Lappa
- Polygonum sibirica
- Adenophora
- Endotropis caudata
- Alge varia
- Scirpus lacustris
- Typha
- Arundo phragmites
- Imperata
- Polygonum multiflorum
- Trichosanthes palmata
- Chrysanthemum indicum
- Loniceru chinensis
- Cassia Sophra
- Sparganium

#### f. Stem.
- Limnanthemum nymphoides
- Sagittaria

#### g. Sprouts and Seeds.
- Hydrophyrum latifolium
B. Trees (and Shrubs).

a. Leaves.
Camellia Thea. | Lignstrum.
Acacia Julibrissin. | Quercus.
Hibiscus syriacus. | Populus suaveolens.
Populus alba. | Zanthoxylum Bungei.
Rhus Cotinus. | Kiedreuteria paniculata.
Cedrela sinensis. | Tilia.

b. Fruits.
Zizyphus Lotus. | Ficus Carica.
Quercus chinensis. | Hovenia dulcis.
Vitex. | Galla of Celtis sinensis.
Crataegus pinnatifida.

C. Cereals and the like. Young Leaves and Seeds used for Food.

Various wild leguminous plants. | Sesamum indicum.
Vicia Faba. | Soja hispida.
Fagopyrum emarginatum. | Perilla ocimoides.
Papaer Rhoma. | Dolichos sinensis.
Cannabis sativa. | Chenopodium.

D. Cultivated Fruits and Tubers.

a. Fruits.
Prunus pseudocerasus. | Cydonia sinensis.
Juglans regia. | Eriobotrya or Mespilus.
Diospyros Kaki. | Prunus japonica.
Pyrus sinensis. | Trapa.
Vitis vinifera. | Diospyros Lotus.
Prunus domestica. | Wild Vine with edible fruit.

b. Fruits and Leaves.
Punica granatum. | Amygdalus Persica.
Prunus Armeniaca. | Pyrus spectabilis.
Zizyphus vulgaris.

c. Roots (Tubers).
Colocasia esculenta. | Eleocharis tuberosa.

d. Roots and Fruits (Seeds).
 Nelumbium speciosum. | Euryale ferox.
E. Vegetables.

a. Leaves.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Brassica chinensis, var. oleifera.</th>
<th>Medicago sativa.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amaranthus Blitum.</td>
<td>Mentha arvensis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sonchus arvensis.</td>
<td>Mentha, other spec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portulacca oleracea.</td>
<td>Amaranthus tricolor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactuca denticulata.</td>
<td>Allium victoriae.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beta vulgaris.</td>
<td>Thla-pi arven-e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chrysanthemum coronarium.</td>
<td>Lactuca squarrosa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malva verticillata.</td>
<td>Taraxacum officinale.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Roots.

| Stachys affinis. |

| c. Roots and Leaves. | Viviparous cultivated Allium and other wild species. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chenopodium album.</td>
<td>Ocimum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dioscorea sativa.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

36. The 康辛王冊 Keng sin yü ts'ê, in 2 books, compiled about 1430 from various Taoist works, enumerating under 541 heads the natural objects employed in alchemy. The author of it was 寧獻王 Ning hien wang, also an Imperial Prince, the 17th son of Hung Wu. See Ming shi 117, Biographies of the Princes. His pseudonym was 显微 K'iü sien. He was a man of great learning and well versed in Taoism, Alchemy, Medicine, Agriculture and Horticulture. He wrote many works, which in all extend to several hundred books. See alph. list 318, 319, 697, 742.

37. The 本草集要 Pen ts'ao tsi yao, in 8 books, an epitome of the Pen ts'ao, published towards the end of the 15th century by 王纶 Wang Lun, a native of Tsz' ki (Ning po fu). See his biography, Ming shi 299. Literary name 汝言 Ju jen; pseudonym 節齋 Tsie chai.

38. The 食物本草 Shi nu pen ts'ao, in 2 books, by 汪穎 Wang Ying, a native of Kiang ling (King chou fu, Hupei), prefect of Kiu kiang during the Ming. It was published in the beginning of the 16th century and is based upon a previous work
by 鲁和 Lu Ho: On the substances employed for food. ¹⁷ About Lu Ho see list of works 857.

39. The 食鉴本草 Shi kien pen ts‘ao, a treatise of the same character as the preceding, by 宁原 Ning Yuan, published during the reign of Kia tsing (1522—67).


41. The 本草蒙筌 Pen ts‘ao meng ts‘uan, in 12 books, published towards the end of the Kia tsing period, about 1567, by 陈嘉谟 Ch‘en Kia mo, likewise a physician of K‘i men. Literary appellation 廷采 T‘ing ts‘ai.

42. THE 本草纲目 PEN TS‘AO KANG MU.

This celebrated Chinese Materia medica, written more than 300 years ago, which we are now about to review, is well known also in Europe. Translations from it have frequently been published by European sinologues. It forms the type of all the Chinese productions of this class, is held in high esteem by the Chinese, and represents indeed the most important native work on Materia medica and Natural History. It is the first treatise of this kind in which the matter is more critically treated.

李时珍 Li Shi chen, the famous author of the Pen ts‘ao kang mu, was born at 郫州 K‘i chou in Hu pei, probably in the first quarter of the 16th century, and died towards the close of the same century. His literary name was 東壁 Tung pi. He wrote also under the pseudonym of 頻湖 Pin ku. As was the case with the majority of the early Chinese physicians of note, Li Shi chen was not a professional medical man, but a civil functionary and magistrate of the district of 滁溪 Pieng k‘i (T‘ung

¹⁷ There is another treatise with the same title by 胡文焕 Hu Wen huan, also of the Ming period. See the catalogue Hui k‘o shu mu 11, 37.
Besides his principal work, the Pen ts'ao kang mu, he left several medical treatises mentioned in the catalogue Sz' k'un ts'uan shu ming mu lu X, 17, 18. See also alph. list 218, 916, and Li Shi chen's biography, Ming shi 209.

Li Shi chen began the compilation of the Pen ts'ao kang mu in 1552, and after 26 years' labour he completed it in 1578. He wrote out the manuscript three times before he was satisfied to give it out as complete. The author died before it was published, and his son 李建元 Li Kien yüan presented the manuscript to the Emperor, in 1596, who ordered it to be printed. Several editions have successively been issued. The earliest now extant is, it seems, that of Shun chi 15 (A. D. 1658). All editions which I have had an opportunity of examining are printed on indifferent paper and are full of misprints, which make the book very inconvenient for reference. The original edition of the Pen ts'ao kang mu was headed by a preface from the pen of 王世貞 Wang Shi chen, and dated 1590. It is followed by another preface by Li Shi chen's son, dated 1596, and after this by a general index of the 52 books (chapters) of the work, enumerating the 16 divisions and the 62 classes under which the whole matter is arranged.

We find next two books of pictorial illustrations which, it would appear, have been borrowed from previous works. These wood-cuts, amounting in number to more than 1100, represent minerals, plants, and animals. But they are so rude that it is very seldom that any conclusion can be drawn from them.

The first chapter is taken up with a list of the works and authors, from whom extracts have been made by Li Shi chen for the compilation of the Pen ts'ao kang mu. It begins with a critical review of the 42 capital works on Materia medica published at different times, and then gives a dry list of medical authors and works, and miscellaneous historical, geographical, and other publications, 950 in number. I shall speak more in detail of this list in another chapter.

The next chapter is devoted to introductory observations on

---

18 Previously he had been Offerer of Sacrifices at the Court of one of the Imperial princes (楚王府奉祠).
Materia medica, the nature and properties of medicines, and to general directions for their prescription. The Chinese system of Pharmacology is explained in this chapter. Many quotations from the early writers on the subject are given, illustrating the views entertained up to the present time by the Chinese on the medical virtues of drugs.

The 3rd and 4th chapters comprehend an enumeration of the various diseases, and the medicines suitable for their treatment (百病主治藥).

The rest of the Pen ts‘ao kang mu, chapters 5—52, is occupied by accounts of drugs and natural objects, and their use as medicines. These are arranged under 16 部 pu or divisions, and 62 類 lei or classes, which comprise in all 1892 種 chung or species. 374 of the latter are recorded for the first time by Li Shi chen. 8160 prescriptions are given in connection with these drugs.

The 16 pu or divisions are:

A. Inanimate substances.

1. Water.
2. Fire.
3. Earth.
4. Metals and Stones.

{ Chap. 5—11.}


1. Herbs.
2. Grains.
3. Vegetables.
4. Fruits.
5. Trees.

One chapter (37) is devoted to garments and domestic utensils appertaining to medicine.

C. Animals. Chap. 38—52.

1. Insects.
2. Scaly Animals (Dragons, Serpents, Fishes).
3. Shelly Animals (Tortoises, Mollusks).
5. Quadrupeds.
To convey some idea of the manner in which plants are grouped in the Pen ts'ao kang mu I subjoin a synoptical table of the botanical section of the work, giving the scientific names of some of the plants recorded there under the different divisions.

I. 草部 Ts'ao pu. Herbs.

1. 山草 Shan ts'ao. Mountain plants. 78 species.
   - Ginseng.
   - Liquorice.
   - Sophora flavescens.
   - Adenophora.
   - Platycodon grandiflorum.
   - Polygonatum officinale.
   - Anemarrhena asphodeloides.
   - Orobanche, various spec.
   - Atractylica chinensis.
   - Polypodium Barometta.
   - Other Ferns.
   - Polygala sibirica and tenuifolia.
   - Serophralaria.
   - Petasitum officinale.
   - Salvia miltiorrhiza.
   - Lithospermum erythrorylum.
   - Scutellaria viciafolia.
   - Bupleurum falcatum.
   - Angelica.
   - Dictamus Fraxinella.
   - Narcissus Tazetta.
   - Gentiana.
   - Asarum.
   - Polygonum Bistorta.

2. 芳草 Fang ts'ao. Fragrant plants. 60 species.
   - Peonia albiflora.
   - Peonia Moutan.
   - Various kinds of Cardamom.
   - Long Pepper.
   - Betel Pepper.
   - Nutmeg.
   - Turmeric.
   - Galangal.
   - Cyperus rotundus.
   - Jasminum Sambac.
   - Jasminum officinale.
   - Lawsonia alba.
   - Blumea balsamifera.
   - Mentha arvensis.
   - Perilla ocimoides.

3. 閣草 Shi ts'ao. Marsh plants. 137 species.
   - Chrysanthemum indicum.
   - Aster, various spec.
   - Artemisia vulgaris.
   - Artemisia annua.
   - Inacervilla sinensis.
   - Leonurus sibiricus.
   - Inula chinensis.
   - Carthamus tinctorius.
   - Saffron.
   - Carduus crispus.
   - Boehmeria nivea.
   - Sis\'; tiliatolfa.
   - Trigonella Fornum griseum.
   - Iris oxyptela.
   - Arctium Lappa.
   - Xanthium Strumarium.
   - Carpesium abrotanoides.
   - Siegesbeckia orientalis.
   - Arundo Phragmites.
   - Muss sapientium.
   - Equisetum arvense.
   - Juncus effusus.
   - Rehmannia glutinosa.
   - Achyranthes aspera.
   - Ophiopogon japonicus.
   - Hemerocallis graminea.
   - Commelina communis.
   - Malva verticillata.
   - Althaea rosea.
   - Solanum nigrum.
   - Physalis Alkekengi.
   - Jasminum nudiflorum.
   - Petasites japonicus.
   - Cassia Sophera.
   - Kochia scoparia.
   - Dianthus Segreri.
   - Lychnis grandiflora.
   - Calendula officinale.
   - Plantago major.
   - Various Indigo plants.
   - Polygonum orientale.
   - P. aviculare.
   - Tribulus terrestris.
   - Fragaria.
   - Bidens.
4. 毒草 *Tu ts'ao.* Poisonous plants. 54 species.
- Rhubarb.
- Phytolacca acinosa.
- Euphorbia, various spec.
- Ricinus communis.
- Veratrum album.
- Aconitum, various spec.
- Arum.
- Pinellia tuberifera.
- Pardanthus chinensis.
- Funkia alba.
- Ralsamine hortensis.
- Datura alba.
- Rhododendron.
- Hyosciamus niger.
- Ranunculus sceleratus.
- Rhus.

5. 藤草 *Wan ts'ao.* Climbing or creeping plants. 113 species.
- Cuscuta.
- Schizandra chinensis.
- Rubus.
- Duchesnea fragaroides.
- Quisqualis indica.
- Muricia cochinchinensis.
- Aristolochia.
- Pharbitis triloba.
- Ipomoea.
- Bignonia grandiflora.
- Rosa indica.
- Monthly Rose.
- Trichosanthes palmata.
- Thladiantha dubia.
- Pueraria Thunbergiana.
- Wisteria chinensis.
- Asparagus incidus.
- Roxburghia.
- Polygo. um multiflorum.
- Smilax China.
- Rubia cordifolia.
- Akebia quinata.
- Metaplexis Stauntonii.
- Humulus japonicus.
- Ficus stipulata.
- Lonicera chinensis.

6. 水草 *Shui ts'ao.* Water-plants. 29 species.
- Alisma Plantago.
- Acorus Calamus.
- Typha.
- Hydropyrum latifolium.
- Lémna minor.
- Marsilea quadrifolia.
- Pistia stratiotes.
- Limnanthemum peltatum.
- L. nymphaeoides.
- Myriophyllum spicatum.

7. 石草 *Shi ts'ao.* Plants growing on rocks or in stony places. 27 species.
- Dendrobium moniliforme.
- Niphobolus Lingua.
- Lycopodium, various spec.
- Sedum alboeusem.
- Sedum, various spec.
- Saxifraga sarmentosa.
- Oxalis corniculata.

8. 苔 *Tai.* Various Mosses. Lichen, and the like. 18 species.
- Selaginella involvens.

9. 雜草. Miscellaneous plants not used in medicine. 162 species.

II. 穀倉 *Ku pu.* Grains.
1. 麻麥稻類 *Ma mai tao lei.* Hemp, Wheat, Rice, and the like. 9 species.
- Sesamum indicum.
- Cannabis sativa.
- Wheat.
- Barley.
- Ruckwheat.
- Rice.
2. 稷粟類 *Tsai su lei.* Millet, and the like. 17 species.

Panicum miliaceum. Echinochloa crus-galli.
Sorghum. Agriophyllum gobicum.
Maize. Coix lacryma.
Panicum italicum. Papaver rhoeas.
Eleusine coracana. Opium.

3. 豆蔬 *Shu tou.* Leguminous plants. 13 species.

Soja bean. Vicia faba.
Phaseolus radiatus. Dolichos sinensis.
Pisum sativum. Lablab.

4. Articles of food prepared from grains and pulse. Bean-curd, boiled rice, wine, yeast, bread and congee.

III. 菜部 *Ts'ai pu.* Kitchen herbs.

1. 留辛類 *Hun sin lei.* Strong smelling or pungent Vegetables. 38 species.

Allium odorum. Ginger.
A. fistulosum. Chrysanthemum coronarium.
Garlic. Coriandrum sativum.
Brassica chinensis. Daucus carota.
Br. napus. Fennel.
Sinapis. Star Anis.
Raphanus sativus.

2. 柔滑類 *Jou hua lei.* Soft and mucilaginous Vegetables. 46 species.

Spinacia oleracea. Houttuynia cordata.
Ipomoea reptans. Edible Fern (*Pteris aquilina*).
Beta vulgaris. Chenopodium album.
Capsella bursa pastoris. Colocasia esculenta.
Medicago sativa. Dioscorea sativa.
Amaranthus Blitum. Batatas edulis.
Portulaca oleracea. Liliim tigrinum.
Senechus arvensis. L. concolor.
Lactuca sativa. Stachys affinis.
Taraxacum officinale. Bamboo-sprouts.
Basella rubra.

3. 风菜 *Lo ts'ai.* Vegetables producing fruits on or near the ground. 12 species.

Brinjals. Gourds.
Bottle-gourd. Cucumber.
Benincasa cerifera. Luffa *egyptiaca.*
Pumpkins. Momordica charantia.

4. 水菜 *Shui ts'ai.* Aquatic Vegetables. Fuci, Algæ, etc. 6 species.

5. 茶柑 *Chi rh.* Mushrooms. 31 species.
IV. 果部 Kuo pu. Fruits.

1. 五果 Wu kuo. The five fruits.\(^\text{19}\) Cultivated or garden fruits. 16 species.
   - Plum.
   - Apricot.
   - Peach.
   - Chestnut.
   - Zizyphus vulgaris.

2. 山果 Shan kuo. Mountain fruits. 36 species.
   - Pyrus sinensis.
   - P. baccata.
   - P. spectabilis.
   - Cydonia sinensis.
   - Crataegus pinnatifida.
   - Diospyros kaki.
   - D. lotus.
   - Punica granatum.
   - Various Oranges.
   - Pumelo.
   - Citrus digitata.
   - Citrus japonica.
   - Eriobotrya japonica.
   - Myrica sapada.
   - Prunus pseudocerasus.
   - Pr. tomentosa.
   - Salisburia adiantifolia.
   - Walnut.
   - Corylus.
   - Quercus chinesis.
   - Other species of Quercus.

3. 夷果 I kuo. Foreign fruits.\(^\text{20}\) 40 species.
   - Nephelium litchi.
   - N. longan.
   - Canarium album.
   - C. pimela.
   - Phyllanthus emblica.
   - Averrhoa carambola.
   - Torreya cineifera.
   - Pinus koraiensis (Seeds).
   - Areca catechu.
   - Cocos nucifera.
   - Borassus flabelliformis (Palm-wine).
   - Persian Dates.
   - Caryota urena.
   - Artocarpus integrifolia.
   - Ficus carica.
   - Various other Figs.
   - Nephelem lappaceum.
   - Hovenia dulcis.

4. 味類 Wei lei. Aromatics. 17 species.
   - Zanthoxylum Bungei.
   - Z. piperitum and other spec.
   - Black Pepper.
   - Daphnidium cubebara.
   - Rhus seminalata.
   - Tea shrub.

5. 麦類 Lo lei. Plants producing their fruits on (or near) the ground. 10 species.
   - Melons.
   - Water-melons.
   - Grapes.
   - Wild Vine.
   - Sugar-cane.

---

19 According to Li Shi chen the term su kuo, the five (principal, cultivated) fruits of China occur first in the 素問 Su wen, the oldest medical treatise attributed to Emperor Huang ti.

20 At first sight it would seem singular that Li-chi's and Lungana, Canarium album and C. pimela and other species, growing exclusively in China and not found elsewhere, are classed among foreign fruits. But this arrangement dates evidently from an early time, when the southern provinces of modern China were first conquered (3rd century B.C.) and their productions became first known in the Empire. Compare above note 3a,
6. 水果 Shui kuo. Aquatic fruits. 6 species.
    Nelumbium speciosum. | Trapa.
    Euryale ferox.       | Eleocharis tuberosa.

7. Various fruits not used in medicine. 22 species.
    Spondias. | Coccinia punctata.

V. 木部 Mu pu. Trees.

1. 香木 Hiang mu. Aromatic trees. 41 species.
    Thuja orientalis.
    Pinus sinensis.
    Cunninghamia sinensis.
    Cassia-hark, various spec
    Magnolia Yülan and other spec.
    Cloves.
    Sandalwood.
    Persea nanmu.
    Laurus camphora.
    Daphnidium myrrha.
    Liquidambar formosana.

    Olibanum.
    Myrrh.
    Dragon's-blood.
    Sticklac.
    Rose mallow.
    Borneo Camphor.
    Chinese Camphor.
    Asafetida.
    Aloēs.

2. 喬木 K'iao mu. Stately trees. 60 species.
    Magnolia hypoleuca ?
    Cedrela sinensis.
    Ailanthus glandulosa.
    Rhus vernicifera.
    Catalpa Bungei.
    Elaeococca verrucosa.
    Melia Azedarach.
    Sophora japonica.
    Acacia Julibrissin.
    Gleditschia sinensis.
    Gymnocladus chinensis.
    Sapindus Mukorossi.
    Koelreuteria paniculata.
    Galle turcice.
    Terminalia Chebula.

    Salix babylonica.
    Tamarix chinensis.
    Populus alba.
    P. suaveolens.
    Ulmus pumilla.
    Cespitosa sappan.
    Ebony.
    Betula.
    Rosewood.
    Cameropos Fortunei.
    Stillingeria bibifera.
    Croton tiglium.
    Gynnocardia odorata.
    Abrus precatorius.

3. 灌木 Kuan mu. Trees with dense foliage. 53 species.
    Morus alba.
    Broussonetia papyrifera.
    Aegle septaria ?
    Gardenia floridea.
    Zizyphus lotus.
    Rosa sinica.
    Prunus japonica.
    Ligustrum lucidum.
    Hedera scandens.

    Lycium chinense.
    Vitex incisa.
    Hibiscus syriacus.
    H. mutabilis.
    Camellia japonica.
    Chimonanthus fragrans.
    Gossypium.
    Eriodendron anfructuosum.
    Buxus.

4. 寓木 Yu mu. Parasitic plants on trees.
    Pachyma pinetorum.
    Myllita lapidescens.

    Viscum or Loranthus.

5. 苍木 Pao mu. Bamboos.

6. Miscellaneous trees. 27 species.
The Pen ts'ao kang mu being properly a Materia medica, the greater part of its chapters, devoted apparently to natural history, is filled with medical discussions and prescriptions; the notices regarding the habits, form and locality of natural products, and their application for economic purposes, the only items which have any interest for us, are merely appendages to them.

Li Shi chen, in treating of the several kinds of natural objects, minerals, plants, animals, etc., follows in every case the same system. Each drug is headed by its most common name, written in large characters. The names of the authors and works quoted are for the most part in brackets. The matter relating to each article is divided into paragraphs. The first contains the name and the synonyms of the plant, indicating the works where these names first occur. The second, 集名 (explanation of names), gives the etymology of the names. In the third, 集解, we find, besides the botanical description, statements regarding the history and the native locality of the plant, its use for economical or industrial purposes, and other particulars of interest. In some cases, under the heading 正誤, there are corrections of errors and instructions for preventing the improper use of the article as a medicine. In the fourth paragraph, 修治, the mode of preparing the officinal parts of the plant for medical use is detailed. In the fifth, 氣味, taste and smell, the qualities of the air and the nature of the drug are noticed.\textsuperscript{21} It is also stated here whether

\begin{itemize}
\item **塞** hui, cold
\item **熱** je, heat
\item **溫** hang, coolness.
\end{itemize}

But other ancient medical authorities understand by *sz' k'i* the four smells. K'ou tsung shi (12th century) observes that cold, heat, warmth and coolness are properly the 四性 *sz' singing*, or four natures. The four smells are the following:

\begin{itemize}
\item **腥** sing, frouzy (?)
\item **臊** tian, rank (?).
\end{itemize}

The following examples are adduced:

- Gypsum is considered a drug of a cold nature; Cassia-bark is hot; Pinellia tuberifera is warm; Peppermint is cool.
- Fragrant smell: Aloe-wood, Sandal-wood, Camphor, Musk.
- Fetid smell: Garlic, Anufetida.
- Frouzy smell: Fowls, Fish, Ducks, Snakes.
- Rank smell: Foxes, Human excrement.
the drug possesses poisonous properties or not. In the sixth paragraph, 治, masterly operations, the specific virtues of the drug as a medicine are enumerated. In the seventh, 明, is given a clear exposition of its uses. In the eighth, 方, there is a list of recipes, with the names of the maladies for which the drug is used as a remedy.

It may be well to say here a few words on Chinese names of Plants. These names consist generally of one character, but frequently of two or three characters. 15 out of the 214 Radicals under which all the Chinese characters are grouped in Chinese dictionaries, denote plants or parts of them; and their combinations with other characters form the greatest part of the names of plants occurring in Chinese books. These botanical radicals are:

艸 or 草 ts'ao, Herb (140). This has 1423 combinations. For instance: 草 ai, Artemisia; 茗 ming, the book name of Tea; 茜 ts'ien, Rubia cordifolia.

木 mu, Wood (75).—1232 combinations. The names of most trees are to be found under this radical.—作 tao, Oak; 榛 chen, Hazelnut.

The radical characters 禾 ho, Paddy, Corn (115), 米 mi, Rice, (119), 麦 mai, Wheat (199), and 禾 shu, Millet (202), and their combinations, form the names of most kinds of corn. For instance: 稻 tao, Rice; 粟 su, a kind of Millet; 稷 mou, Barley.

The radical 豆 kua (97) and its compositions relate almost exclusively to Cucurbitaceous Plants, Cucumbers, Melons, Gourds; whilst the radical 豆 tou (151) is appropriated to Leguminous Plants.

The radical 麻 ma (202) denotes Hemp; the radical 竹 chu (118) Bamboo; the radical 韭 kiu, Leeks; the radical 支 chi, Branch; the radical 蓮 ch‘ung, Fragrant Herbs.

As has been stated, each plant is usually denoted by a peculiar character; e. g. 柿 shi, Diospyros Kaki; 炎 k‘ien, Euryale ferox;

The Shen nung Pen ts‘ao king enumerates also the 五味 wu wei, or five tastes of drugs, viz.:

酸 suan, sour.  苦 k'u, bitter.  辛 sin, pungent.

酸 hien, salt.  甘 kan, sweet.
The Jujube is denoted by the character 柿 tsao, which is formed by two characters 木 ts'z', meaning thorn. It is, as the Pen ts'ao kang mu explains, on account of the prickled appearance of the tree.

The plants, which enjoy a great renown for their utility, have even peculiar characters for their distinct parts. According to the ancient dictionary Rh ya (see above) the root of Nelumbium speciosum is called 莲 ou—the leaves and the stalks together 荷 ho—the stalk 茎 kia—the lower part of the stalk, being in the mud, 苗 mi—the leaf 苗 hia—the bud of the flower 苗 t'an—the seeds with the spongy testa 適 lien—the white seed without the testa 茁 ti—the cotyledons with the plumule within the seed 慧 i. As is known the common name of this plant is 適花 lien hua.

The male plant of the common hemp, Cannabis sativa, 麻 ma, is designated by the character 棉 si; whilst the female (seed bearing) plant is 直 tsii.

The characters which express the name often relate to the appearance of the plant, its properties, etc. Thus Physalis Alkekengi, the winter-cherry, is 紅姑娘 hung hu niang, red girl, on account of the red leafy bladder which encloses the ripe fruit. —Celosia cristata, Cockcomb, bears a name of the same meaning in China, 鶏冠 ki kuan.—Arachis hypogea, the ground-nut, is called 落花生 lo hua sheng (the flowers fall down and grow), as its Greek specific name also denotes; the fruit growing (seemingly) in the ground. After the fall of the flower the fruit curves downwards and the pod ripens in the ground.—The Chimonanthus fragrans is termed 臘梅 la mei, prunus of the 12th month, for in China its flowers appear in winter.—On account of the early appearance of its flowers in spring, Jasminum nudiflorum is called 迎春花 ying ch'un hua (flowers which go to meet the spring).—Lilium tigrinum bears the Chinese name 百合 po he (hundred together), owing to the numerous scales which form the bulb. This bulb is largely used for food in China.—The common name of Euryale ferox is 鶏頭 ki t'ou (fowl's head). Anybody who has seen the fruit of this plant will agree that the Chinese name is very significative.—The name of 絹花樹 jung hua shu (silk-
flower tree) is applied to Albizzia Julibrissin. The latter specific name is a corruption of the Persian *gul i abreshum*, meaning also silk-flower. This name is given on account of the silky appearance of the long stamens.

There are in China a considerable number of cultivated plants which have been introduced from foreign countries, especially from India, Central and Western Asia. The Chinese have often tried to render the foreign names of these plants by Chinese sounds. The Pen ts‘ao kang mu frequently quotes Sanscrit names (梵 fan). Thus the 姿羅 so lo is the Shorea robusta, *sal* or *sāla* in Sanscrit. Buddha is said to have died under a Sal tree, for which reason the tree is also styled 天師粟 *t‘ien shi li* (Chestnut of the heavenly preceptor). But as there are no Sal trees in China the Buddhist priests in the temples usually cultivate Aesculus chinensis under the above names.—The Sanscrit name of Sandalwood, *chandane*, is rendered in the Pen ts‘ao kang mu by the sounds 旃檀 *chan tan*.—The Jack-fruit, Artocarpus integrifolia, is termed 波羅密 *po lo mi* in Chinese. This is evidently a transcription of the Sanscrit *paramita*, excellent.—The Pen ts‘ao kang mu speaks of a Western Asiatic plant 撒法郎 *sa fa lang*, and the particulars given about this plant leave no doubt that Saffron is meant.

The plant 胡盧巴 *hu lu pa*, cultivated in China and said to be of foreign origin, is apparently *Trigonella foenum graecum*, *hulba* in Arabic.22

The descriptive details of plants as found in the Pen ts‘ao kang mu and other treatises of this class are generally meagre and unsatisfactory. The time of flowering and the colour of the flowers are always noted; but the other particulars are insufficient, because the Chinese, in speaking of the parts and organs of plants, have no botanical terminology, the leaves, flowers, fruits, etc. being described by comparison with the same organs of other Chinese plants, frequently unknown to European readers. This was however also the mode of describing plants adopted by the celebrated Dioscorides (first century of our era), and followed by our

22 At least in Japan the above Chinese name is applied to a variety of *Tr. foenum graecum*. Franch. Sav. Enum. pl. japon. I. 95.—So mo kon XIV. 18, 19.
botanists down to the time of Linnaeus. Comp. e. g. Plukenet’s Amaltheum botan. 1705.

The descriptions of plants given by Li Shi chen consist for the most part of successive quotations from authors of various times, and in this regard again present an analogy to the treatises on Materia medica of early Western authors. See for instance Ebn Baithar’s (13th century) great work on Medicines and Aliments (German translation by Sontheimer, 1840). Finally Li Shi chen gives also his own opinion on the subject treated of; and it may be said that his view is generally the most reasonable of all.

The Chinese possess very little talent for observation, or zeal for truth, the principal requirements of the naturalist. The Chinese style is inaccurate and often ambiguous. In addition to this they have an inclination to the marvellous, and their opinions and conclusions are frequently puerile. But notwithstanding these deficiencies, met also in all the other branches of Chinese literature, their works on botany, if critically studied and rightly understood and appreciated, will be found to be replete with interest, and to present much valuable information, especially in elucidating the history of cultivated species. These treatises have no less claim to be translated into European languages and to be commented upon than the works of Theophrastus, Dioscorides, and Plinius.

Let me now consider the difficulties which the student of the Pen ts’ao kang mu must overcome in order to understand clearly the information furnished in this and other Chinese botanical works.

The first difficulty that arises is to find out where to look for the plant about which information is required. Chinese botanical works note from 5000 to 6000 names of plants, the synonyms of each plant being for the most part numerous. The Chinese have nothing similar to the alphabetical indexes of our comprehensive works. I have therefore been obliged to draw up for the convenience of my own studies alphabetical indexes of all Chinese names of plants and synonyms, according to the sounds of the Chinese characters, not only for the Pen ts’ao kang mu, but also for the other more important Chinese treatises on Botany.

It cannot be said that the style of Chinese writers on botanical
matters presents difficulties to European readers acquainted in some degree with the language. In describing plants the authors use for the most part always the same terms. The chief obstacles encountered by European inquirers studying these writings will be found to consist in the right interpretation of geographical names which occur, and in ascertaining the time when the quoted works were composed. The satisfactory elucidation of these important questions requires extensive preliminary studies in Chinese Geography, especially Historical Geography, and Bibliography. I need hardly say that for investigations of this kind very little assistance can be expected from our Chinese teachers, whose erudition seldom extends beyond the classics.

Li Shi chen compiled the Pen ts'ao kang mu from about 1000 ancient and more recent works, not only medical and botanical, but also historical, geographical, philosophical, poetical, etc. As I have stated above the author gives a dry list of these works without other explanation; and in mentioning works or authors he never gives the whole title, but frequently only one character of the author's name is quoted. In consulting the Pen ts'ao we meet frequently in brackets with the characters 頒日 Sung yüe (Sung says). The character sung means properly a eulogy, but here it denotes the author 蕪頒 Su Sung, who wrote the Tu king pen ts'ao (see above No. 24). More examples of this kind, quoted from the Pen ts'ao, will be found in another chapter of this paper, where I shall give an alphabetical list of works and authors appearing in that treatise.

On a previous page we have already drawn attention to the importance for our investigations of knowing the time when the quoted works were written. We may add here that this question must be also elucidated for the purpose of determining the localities mentioned in Chinese botanical writings. At all times the Chinese have endeavoured to complicate all branches of their knowledge, so that they themselves do not find their way easily. They seem to place the value of their sciences in this intricacy. It is known that from ancient times each of the Chinese Emperors bore, besides his dynastic name, a name for his reign, and this latter was often changed. There are Emperors who are registered in history with from 10 to 15 names, each composed of at least
two characters. The Chinese authors, in citing dates, refer to these reign-names of the Emperors, which correspond to our ciphers, to designate the dates. In the same manner the Chinese have at all times liked to change the names of their provinces, cities, etc. Almost every dynasty, on succeeding to the throne, has changed the names of most of the cities and also of the provinces of China. Thus every city has borne different names at different periods. But as the number of characters to designate geographical names is limited, and as certain characters are particularly in favour for names of departments or districts, it happens very often that one geographical name is applied to a great number of places. For instance 西平 Si ping is now-a-days the name of a district in the province of Honan. At the time of the Han it was the name of a district in the present Anhui; at the time of the Tsin a district in Kansu. During different periods of Chinese history the same name was applied to districts in Yün nan, Ss' chüan, and Hu pei.—永昌 Yung ch'ang, now-a-days a prefecture in Yün nan, has borne this name since the 5th century. During the Mongol period the same name was given to a prefecture in the province of Kansu. There are several other cities in China which at different times have borne the name of Yung ch'ang.

—The name of a province 江南 Kiang nan (the two characters meaning south of the river) occurs frequently in the pages of the Pen ts'ao. Here it does not mean the country south of the Yellow River, so called under the present dynasty (provinces of Anhui and Kiang su), but it is to be understood as the Kiang nan province of the T'ang dynasty, south of the Yang tsz' kiang, comprising the greatest part of the modern provinces of Fukien and Kiang si.—In like manner the province of 河南 Ho nan of the T'ang period does not correspond to the province of this name to-day, for it occupied the greater part of the modern Shan tung. Ho nan likewise means south of the river, but here the Yellow River is intended, which then emptied itself into the Gulf of Pechili, as it has done for some thirty years past.—The name 南海 Nan hai (Southern Sea) referred in ancient times to the Eastern part of the modern Kuang tung province, but sometimes the Chinese also understand by this name the Archipelago and the Indian Ocean.
It is clear that the greatest geographical errors can be committed by the reader unacquainted with the time at which the respective Chinese author, referring to names of countries and places, wrote. In the year 1842 E. Biot published a useful book, *Dictionnaire des noms anciens et modernes des Villes etc. dans l'Empire Chinois*. It is translated from the 廣輿記 Kuang yü ki, a small geographical account of the Empire, and arranged in alphabetical order; but it proves to be insufficient for determining the geographical names, occurring in the Pen ts'ao. As far as only the names of Chinese cities at different times are concerned I would recommend for reference a very complete Chinese Geographical Dictionary, the 歷代地理志韻編今釋 Li tai ti li chi yün pien hin shì, in 20 books, published in 1837. The names of Chinese cities, ancient and modern, are arranged in it according to a Chinese system under about 1600 characters. It is not quite easy to find a name in this book, but by arranging these 1600 characters according to the radicals (as I have done for my own use) it can be made more practicable for consultation. But in this work we find only ancient and modern names of Chinese departments and districts, whilst ancient Chinese writers on botany in giving the stations of plants frequently mention provinces, the names of which have also been repeatedly changed in course of time. This want is in some degree met by the new edition of the Li tai ti li chi, etc., published in 1872, by 李鴻章 Li Hung chang, the well-known Viceroy of Chihli. In this edition a series of historical maps referring to the political divisions of China under the different dynasties has been added. More detailed information on the subject may be found in an elaborate compilation of historical maps of China, which came to light in 1879 (Tung hu hien, Hu pei) with the title 歷代輿地沿革要圖 Li tai yü ti yen ko hien yao t'u. It comprises 68 maps drawn up according to the geographical sections in the Dynastic Histories.

In the Pen ts'ao occur also frequently names of ancient countries not included in China. These must be sought for in the Histories of the various Chinese Dynasties, which generally contain at the end notices of foreign countries.
THE 廣 聲 芳 謳 KUANG K'UN FANG PU.

This work, the Chinese title of which may be translated: Enlarged Thesaurus of Botany, is a very valuable treatise on Botany, dealing with cultivated as well as with wild plants. The original work was published in 1630 under the title of 羣 聲 芳 謳 K'un fang pu, Thesaurus of Botany, in 30 books, by 王 象 馨 Wang Siang ts'en. In 1708 a revised and enlarged edition was completed and printed by Imperial order with the above title Kuang K'ün fang pu, in 100 books. This is divided into 11 sections (部 pu) under the following heads:

1. 天時 T'ien shi. The Heavens, the Seasons of the year.
2. 草 Ku. Grains, Beans.
3. 棉桑麻 Sang ma (literally: Mulberry-tree and Hemp). Textile Plants.
4. 蔬 Shu. Vegetables.
5. 茶 Ch'a. Tea.
6. 花 Hua. Flowers.
7. 果 Kuo. Fruits.
8. 木 Mu. Trees.
10. 青 Hui. Herbs.
11. 藥 Yao. Medicinal Herbs.

The number of species described in the Kuang K'ün fang pu amounts to about 1700. It contains much new information not found in the Pen ts'ao, drawn from ancient and later authors. There are no illustrations in it, but its great superiority lies in the splendid type. The matter is treated in much the same way as in other Chinese works of this kind. The author gives first some short original account of each plant, which is followed by a series of quotations from authors and works of various times on the subject. These quotations are arranged under three heads, printed in white characters on black ground, and numerous subdivisions, in brackets, as also the names of works and authors quoted.

1. 彙考 Hui k'ao. Under this head are comprised quotations from the Classics, Histories of the Dynasties, Biographies, the
works of the Chinese philosophers, Geographical works, Descriptions of the Chinese provinces, departments, etc. The time of these publications is never given, nor are the quotations arranged chronologically.

2. 集藻 Tsi tsa. Fine composition, elegant writing. Under this head, which comprises the greater part of the extracts given, we meet with quotations from a great number of poetical compositions. The matter is arranged in chronological order, and the dynasties during which the quoted authors wrote are always indicated. For the headings of the numerous subdivisions under which the quotations appear see Mr. Wylie's Notes on Chinese Literature, p. 188—192, where the various forms of Chinese poetry are detailed.

3. 別錄 Pie lu. This comprises principally quotations from authors on agriculture and on the economic use of plants.

The characters 原 and 增, likewise printed white on black ground, indicate, the first the original matter of the K'ün fang pu, the second the additional information given in the Kuang K'ün fang pu.

THE BOTANICAL SECTION OF THE 圖書集成 TU SHU TSI CH'ENG.

Eighteen years after the publication of the Kuang K'ün fang pu, in 1726, the vast Compendium of Chinese Literature known under the above name, was drawn up under Imperial authority.

The Botanical Section of this gigantic compilation, 草木典 Ts'ao mu tien, comprises 320 books. As it exists in the library of the Russian Legation at Peking, I have had ample opportunity

23 This term is not to be confounded with the Pie lu frequently quoted in the Pen ts'ao. As we have seen above (No. 7) this is the abbreviated title of an ancient Materia medica.

24 Readers who are desirous of further information about this magnificent work may find it in W. F. Meyers' paper: Bibliography of the Chinese Imperial Collections of Literature, the last publication from the able pen of this distinguished and lamented scholar. It appeared in Vol. VI of the China Review, 1878. On p. 218 the author gives a review of the Tu shu tsi ch'eng, or as its full title reads 古今圖書集成 Ku hsin Tu shu tsi ch'eng, i. e. Compendium of Literature and Illustrations, Ancient and Modern. A complete copy of the work was acquired in 1878 by the British Museum. The Great Library at Paris is said to possess some portions of it.
of referring to it. It has a good claim to be regarded as the most complete collection of Chinese records on botanical matters extant, and its having been printed with large moveable copper types on excellent paper renders it especially useful for reference. A great number of rare or now lost ancient botanical records and treatises on agriculture have been reproduced in it; and the whole matter of the Pen ts‘ao kang mu, cleared from mistakes, is also found there. The pictorial illustrations accompanying the accounts of the various plants seem to have been drawn from all available sources in previous Chinese pictorial works on botany. They are much better than those in the Pen ts‘ao, but with a few exceptions they have no great value. Some of them can be traced to the Kiu huang pen ts‘ao (see above No. 35).

The matter under each plant is invariably arranged in the following order—not very intelligible to European minds.

1. Under the head of 彙考 Hui k‘ao the respective text of the principal works on Materia medica, Botany, Agriculture, Horticulture, etc. are reproduced, and generally in extenso, for each plant.

2. The head of 藝文 I wen deals with literary compositions, poetical works, etc. in which plants are mentioned.

3. 遼句 Suan ku. Elegant extracts.

4. 紀事 Ki shi. Minor historical notices.

5. 雜錄 Tsa lu. Miscellaneous notes.

6. 外編 Wai pien. Appendices.

Plants in the T‘u shu tsi ch‘eng are treated in 700 部 pu (divisions). It is to be regretted that the time of publication of the quoted works is only given in the case of the literary compositions and poems, although the reason for this omission is not apparent. As regards the quotations under the other heads neither the time is noticed, nor are they chronologically arranged according to date of publication.

THE 植物名實圖考 CHI WU MING SHI TU K‘AO.

This, the most recent work of note on Chinese Botany, and especially remarkable for its drawings, was published in 1848.
It has much attracted the attention of European botanists and sinologues in China, and is now to be found, I think, in all the great libraries of Europe.\textsuperscript{25}

呉其濁 Wu K'\textquoteleft i s\textacute{u}n, the author of this elaborate botanical work, was a scholar and functionary of high distinction during the present dynasty.\textsuperscript{26} He was a native of 固始 Ku sh\textquotesingle i kien, in Southern Honan. His literary name was 湘齋 Yu chai, but in his work he generally styles himself 雲麓農 Yu lou nung, the husbandman of Yu lou.\textsuperscript{27} He entered public life in 1817. After taking his degree as first-class graduate he commenced his career as Han lin compiler. In 1819 he was appointed Chief Examiner in Kuang tung. In 1831 he entered the Imperial College of Inscriptions; in 1832 he was sent to the province of Hu pei as Provincial Director of Education; and in 1834 he returned to Peking where he successively held several high offices (Director of the State Ceremonial, Sub-Chancellor of the Grand Secretariat, Vice-President of the Board of Rites). In 1837 he was appointed Provincial Director of Education in Kiang si, and in 1838 Provincial Examiner in Che kiang. Subsequently we find him again in the capital as Senior Vice-President of the Board of War, and a year later he held the same office in the Board of Revenue. In 1840 he had risen to be Acting Governor General of Hu kuang, and in the same year he was made Governor of Hunan. In 1842 he fought successfully against the rebels in his province, and soon after this fell ill. In 1843 he was transferred as Governor to Che kiang, and in the same year appointed Governor of Yün nan. He subsequently administered the provinces of Yün nan and Kwei chou as Acting Governor General, but in 1845 he was again removed and transferred to Fu kien as Governor. Soon after he held the same office in Shansi. In 1846

\textsuperscript{25} I have myself procured at different times in Peking several copies of it, which were sent to London, Paris, Berlin, the United States of America, etc. Fifteen years ago its price in Peking was $13, but now it can hardly be obtained here for less than $30, although it is not a very rare book.

\textsuperscript{26} The biographical details here presented are drawn from a memorandum compiled from official sources and communicated to one of my friends in Peking by an officer of the Tsung li ya men.

\textsuperscript{27} Yu lou is an ancient name of a district in the province of An hui (Lu kiang hien).
he was again attacked by illness and allowed to retire from his public duties. He died a short time afterwards. The Emperor gave him a posthumous title.

It appears from this dry *curriculum vitae* that Wu K'i sün displayed great activity in his public life. The opportunity he had of making himself acquainted with many provinces of the Empire qualified him to investigate the Chinese Flora. It is however not easily understood how he found leisure to prosecute his favourite studies and to write an extensive work on Botany, illustrated with a large number of drawings.

The Chi wu ming shì t'u k'ao is generally in 8 tomes (t'ao). One-half of them, 4 t'ao or 22 (rather voluminous) books, comprise the descriptive portion of the work, and are styled 長篇 *Chang pien* by the author. They contain accounts of plants compiled as usual from previous authors, but Wu K'i sün introduces also a good deal of new and interesting matter not found in the Kuang K'ün fang p'u or the T'u shu ts'i ch'eng.

The second part, in 38 books, forming also 4 t'ao, is devoted to pictorial illustrations of plants accompanied with short, sometimes also detailed descriptions. These drawings, nearly 1800 in number, are tolerably well executed, especially those delineated by the author himself, apparently from nature. One part of the engravings can be traced to the Kiu huang pen ts'ao (see above No.35). Although the wood-cuts in the Chi wu ming shì t'u k'ao cannot be compared, as far as scientific accuracy in delineation is concerned, with those of some Japanese botanical works (of which I shall speak further on), it is undoubtedly the best Chinese pictorial work of this class, and entitled to special attention on the part of students of Chinese Botany.

The Chi wu ming etc. was revised and published, it seems soon after the death of the author, by 陸應瑩 *Lu Ying ku*, a native of the province of Yün nan, who wrote also the preface, which is dated T'ai yüan fu (Shansi) 1848. He states that Wu K'i sün, having held public offices in different parts of the Empire, had many opportunities of making observations with respect to plants, and of comparing his own experiences with the statements of previous authors. He had at an earlier period composed the first
part of the work, the *Chang pien*, but subsequently was induced
to draw up the second or supplementary part, accompanied with
drawings, in which the author endeavoured to give the results of
his personal observations.

Among the works and authors frequently quoted by Wu K‘i
sün I may notice the *Kiu huang pen ts‘ao* (see above),—the 花鏡
*Hua king*, published 1688,—the 南越筆記 Nan yue pi hi, an
account of the Southern provinces of China, written during the
present dynasty,—the 滇南本草 *Tien nan pen ts‘ao*, a Herbal
of the province of Yun nan (unknown to me).

With this my sketch of the History of Chinese Materia medica
and Botany may be brought to a close. I have reviewed only the
more important works of this class. Chinese writings on plants
are very numerous, both general treatises and monographs on
particular plants. These will be shortly noticed in another
chapter devoted to Bibliography.

---

2. CHINESE WORKS ON AGRICULTURE.

The primeval Emperor *Shen nung*, whom the Chinese believe
to have composed the first treatise on Materia medica, is also
credited with having laid the foundation of Chinese Husbandry.
His name implies this tradition, for *Shen nung* means: the
Divine Husbandman. It is related in the early records that the
people of his age were rude and wholly unacquainted with the
advantages of agriculture. They subsisted on fruit, vegetables,
and the flesh of birds and beasts. *Shen nung* examined first the
quality of the soil, fashioned timber into ploughs and taught the
people how to till the ground and raise grain. On a previous page
I referred to the mountain in Shan si, where tradition makes him
first teach his people the fundamental processes of agriculture.
Sz‘ ma Ts‘ien (B. C. 163—85) records in the Shi ki (book 1) that
Shen nung sowed the five kinds (種五穀).— 莊玄 Cheng hian,
a celebrated scholar of the Han dynasty, A.D. 127—200, explains
that the five kinds of cereals, the 五穀 *wu ku*, are meant, namely:
穀 *tao* (Rice), 麥 *mai* (Wheat), 茬 *liang* (Panicum italicum), 黍
shu (Panicum miliaceum), and 敢 shu (Soja bean). The same are also mentioned in the Classics.

It is known that at the time of the vernal equinox the ceremony of ploughing the soil and sowing the five kinds of corn is performed by the Emperor, assisted by the Imperial Princes and the Presidents of the Boards. According to the 大清會典事例 Ta T'ing hui tien shi li, the great work on the institutes of the government, book 250. 1, where this ceremonial is described, the same cereals are mentioned in connection with it. The Emperor sows the rice, the Princes and the Presidents of the Boards sow the remaining cereals.

Shen nung’s son 桂 Chu held the office of 穀正, Minister of Husbandry. More than 400 years later 楚 K'ü, a son of the Emperor K'un, filled a similar office. The Emperor Yao, B.C. 2566, made him 農師, Director of Husbandry. He is more generally known under the name of 后稷 Hou ts'ai, Sovereign Millet. The house of the Princes of Chou traced their lineage to him. After his decease he became worshipped like Chu as patron of Agriculture (Mayers’ Chin. Read. Man. p. 223).

An interesting sketch of the state of ancient Chinese agriculture during the Chou dynasty has been drawn up by E. Biot from the scattered references to the subject found in the Book of Odes. An English translation of this article is found in Dr. Legge’s Shi king, proleg. p. 149.

As in China agriculture has always been held in the highest estimation, Chinese literature relating to husbandry is represented by a great number of general treatises and monographs on the subject, composed at various times.

THE 種植書 CHUNG CHI SHU.

This seems to be one of the earliest treatises of this class. The author of it was 池勝之 Fan Sheng chi. In the biographical section of the Ts’ien Han shu, book 30 (husbandry), will be found a short notice regarding the author. Liu Hiang, the librarian of the Imperial library (first century B.C.) reports that Fan Sheng chi held successively several offices during the reign of Ch‘eng Ti, B.C. 32—6, and that the Emperor appointed him to teach hus-
bandry in the prefectures surrounding the capital (Ch‘ang an near the present Si an fu in Shensi).

The work was in 18 sections (pien). Some quotations from it, found in other ancient works, are all that has come down to us of this ancient treatise, the title of which means "the Book on the Art of Sowing and Planting." Extracts from it are given in the Ts‘i min yao shu (see the next), but they only refer to the following cultivated plants:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Rice.</th>
<th>Soja bean.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wheat.</td>
<td>Other leguminous plants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barley.</td>
<td>Lagenaria.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panicum miliecum.</td>
<td>Common Hemp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echinochloa crus gali.</td>
<td>Caladium esculentum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two varieties, still cultivated in North-China, are mentioned, one of them cultivated in water, the other in dry soil.</td>
<td>Mulberry-tree.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THE 齊民要術 TS‘I MIN YAO SHU.

This title may be translated: Important Rules for the people to gain their living in peace. It is a work on husbandry, still extant, by 賈思勰 Kia Sz’ niu (thus the Pen ts‘ao, list of works 26, gives the pronunciation of the last character, generally pronounced hie). We learn from the Sz’ k‘u ts‘ian shu, C. II. 2, that he was a subject of the After Wei (A. D. 386—534) and prefect of 高平 Kao p‘ing. (Several cities of this name existed during the Wei in different parts of the Empire.) He seems to have lived in the 5th century. The original work was in 92 pien (sections). A part of it was lost a long time ago, and much additional matter by later authors is found in the edition now current, which is in 10 books. It seems that the T‘u shu ts‘i ch‘eng reproduces in books V and XV (on planting and felling trees, and cultivating fruits), and under the heads of the respective plants the whole matter of the work, together with the additional notes; but the latter are always separated there from the original text. According to an author of the 12th century, quoted in the Wen hien t‘ung k‘ao, the edition then extant was already provided with the interpolated notes; and according to 李藻 Li Tao (also an author of the Sung) these notes had been added by 孫公 Sun Kung (Sung dynasty).
The work of Kia Sz’ niu contains many interesting particulars regarding the cultivation of the cereals, vegetables, fruits, trees, etc. then grown in China. It is also of interest on account of its numerous quotations from previous ancient writings now lost.

The following plants treated of in the Ts’ai min yao shu can be identified:

Common Rice.
Mountain Rice.
Panicum milicaceum. (Two varieties still cultivated in China.)
Setaria italica.
Sorghum vulgare.
Burley.
Wheat.
Avena nuda.
Buckwheat.
Soja hispida.
Abrus precatorius?
Raphanus sativus.
Brassica Napus.
Br. chinensis.
Br. chin. oleifera.
Various species of Sinapis still cultivated in China.
Lactuca sativa.
Thlaspi arvense?
Benincasa cerifera.
Various Pumpkins and Gourds still cultivated in China.
Bottle-gourd.
Cucumis sativa.
Solanum Melongena.
Batatas edulis.
Caladium esculentum.
Hydropyrum latifolium.
Allium sativum.
A. fistulosum.
A. odorum.
Other species of Allium.
Malva verticillata.
Rehmannia glutinosa.
Medicago sativa.
Polygonum orientale.
Pteris aquilina.
Various Mushrooms.
Nelumbium speciosum.
Limnanthemum nymphaeoides.
L. peitatum.
Typha (sprouts eaten).
Sea-weed.
Bignonia grandiflora.
Akebia quinata.
Rhododendron.
Poterium officinale.
Celery.
Coriandrum sativum.
Perilla ocimoldes.
Zingiber officinale.
Z. Mioga?
Amomum Cardamomum.
Bitter-seeded Cardamom.
Other species.
Betel-pepper.
Zanthoxylum, various species.
Sesame.
Cannabis sativa.
Sida tinifolia.
Plants yielding Indigo.
Carthamus tinctorius.
Lithospermum erythrorhizon.
Gardenia floridana.
Varnish-tree (Rhhus).
Stillingia sebifera.
Peach.
Apricot.
Prunus domestica.
Pr. pseudocerasus.
Pear.
Crab-apple.
Pyrus betulifolia.
Diospyros Kaki.
Nepherilium Litchi.
N. Longan.
Myrica sapida.
Eryobotrya japonica.
Pomegranate.
Oranges.
Cydonia sinensis.
Hovenia dulcis.
Vitis vinifera.
Wild Vine with edible fruits.
Zizyphus vulgaris.
Chestnut.
Hazelnut.
Banana.
Sugar-cane.
Phyllanthus emblica.
Canarium Pimela.
C. album.
Cocoa-nut.
Areca Catechu.
Morus alba.
Broussonetia papyfera.
Salix babylonica.
Populus alba.
Ulma pumila.
Catalpa Bungei.
Sophora japonica.
THE 種 树 書 CHUNG SHU SHU.

This is another work on husbandry, published some centuries later, which has survived in the form of quotations preserved in later works of that class. The name of its author is 郭 季 駝 Kuo To t'oo, who seems to have lived in the 7th or 8th century. All that we know of him is found in a short biographical notice written by the poet Liu Tsung yüan (A. D. 773—819). See alph. list 478), who perhaps was his contemporary. This biography is reproduced in the T’u shu tsi ch‘eng, book VI. Kuo T’o t’o was a villager experienced in husbandry. His village was situated in the vicinity of Ch‘ang an, the metropolis of China during the T‘ang period. His true cognomen is unknown, T’o t’o (Camel) being his pseudonym.

The T’u shu tsi ch‘eng seems to reproduce the whole matter of the Chung shu shu. See books V, X, XV, and under the heads of the respective plants. It would be presumed from the title of the work, which means: the Book on the Art of Planting Trees, that it deals only with trees; but in reality it treats also of cereals, vegetables, and fruits; and gives notices of nearly the same plants as the Ts‘i min yao shu. The following are new:

- Phaseolus radiatus.
- Melon.
- Sjánach.
- Beta vulgaris.
- Papaver Rhoeas.
- Peonia Moutan.
- P. albiflora.
- Jasminum Sambac.
- J. officinale.
- Olea fragrans.
- Mandarin-Orange.
- Cooie-Orange.
- Other Oranges.
- Pyrus malus.
- Salisburi adiantifolia.
- Pinus sinensis.
- Lycium chinense.

The Chung shu shu presents a peculiar interest with respect to some curious accounts found in it regarding the art of grafting trees. It has been asserted that the Jesuit missionaries first taught the Chinese to graft trees (see Chambers’ Encycl., article: Grafting). But that is a mistake. Grafting was probably practised in China in early times. The ancient Dictionary Shuo wen, published A. D. 121, explains the character 桃, even now-a-days
the proper term for grafting (sometimes also written 接), by 維木, which can only be translated by grafting. But in Chinese works on husbandry now extant Kuo T'o t'o is the earliest author quoted with respect to grafting.

The ancient Greek and Roman authors assert that the vine, the fig-tree, the walnut-tree, the olive-tree, the pomegranate and other heterogeneous trees can be grafted together (see Pliny's Natur. hist.). Although in our days no credit is given to these statements, as all attempts of grafting have failed except among plants of the same genus, or at least of the same natural family,—it is a curious fact that in ancient Chinese writings on agriculture we meet with statements similar to those made by Pliny. Kuo T'o t'o asserts, besides the successful grafting of Broussonetia papyrifera on Morus alba (which is not improbable at all), that Plum-trees yielding sour fruits and Pear-trees can be grafted on the Mulberry-tree, and that by this way a sweet plum and a sweet delicate pear are obtained. He states further that Prunus domestica can be grafted on the Peach-tree and vice versa—or the Apricot-tree on the Peach-tree, which causes the apricots to increase in size. A Peach-tree grafted on Diospyros Kaki is said to produce gold-coloured peaches. Finally we are told in that ancient book that the Pomegranate can be successfully grafted on Oleafragrans, and Prunus on Melia Azedarach. I find also there a statement to the effect that if a Vine be planted so close to a Jujube-tree that the roots of both plants come into contact, the grapes will assume the flavour of the jujube. It is remarkable that a sympathy was supposed to exist between the Vine and the Zizyphus Lotus by the gardeners of ancient Babylon. Compare Meyer's Geschichte der Botanik, III, 74, Husbandry of the Nabathaëans. See also the observations of the Jesuit missionaries in China on the same subject, i.e. on the grafting together of heterogeneous trees by Chinese gardeners (My "Early Europ. Res. into the Flora of China," p. 29, 125 [21, 21]).

The 四時纂要 Sz' shi tsuan yao. Important Rules for the Four Seasons, in 5 books, is also a production of the T'ang period and frequently quoted in Chinese works on husbandry. The
Wen hien t’ung k’ao, CCXVIII, 3, gives a short bibliographical notice with respect to this work. It is stated there that 韓 0, the author, in compiling these Rules for Husbandry, made use of all preceding writings on the subject.

The 农书 Nung shu is a treatise on husbandry in 3 books, written by 陳勇 Ch’en Fu, in 1149 A.D. The first part treats of Agriculture, the second of Breeding Cattle, the third of Rearing Silkworms. See Wylie’s Notes on Chin. Lit. p. 75. According to the Wen hien t’ung k’ao, CCXVIII, 6, the author was a hermit living in the Western mountains, about the middle of the 12th century.

Another work with the same title 农书 Nung shu, in 22 books, by 王椂 Wang Cheng, was published during the Yuan period (13th or 14th century). This treats with great minuteness of the details of husbandry, and is illustrated by plates, each accompanied by a stanza of poetry. The first six books, 农桑通訌 Nung sang t’ung küe, consist of general rules for agriculture. This section is frequently quoted in the Kuang k’ün fang pu and in later works on husbandry, as a separate work. It is followed by the 穰譜 Ku pu, on Cereals, 4 books, and then by a series of plates illustrating agricultural implements. See Wylie l. c. p. 76.

Wan Cheng also wrote two monographs on Textile plants, both illustrated by plates, viz.:

The 木棉圖譜 Mu mien t’u pu, a treatise on the Cotton plant, and

The 麻苧圖譜 Ma Ch’ü t’u pu, on Hemp and Grass-cloth plants. This is found reproduced in the Chi wu ming shi t’u k’ao, descr. part IX, 53.

A third work with the same title appeared in the beginning of the present dynasty. It was compiled by 張履祥 Chang Li shiang. It is reprinted in the collection Chao tai t’ung shu (Wylie l. c. 137).
The 农桑辑要 Nung sang tsi yao, another work on the Agriculture of the Yuan period, in seven books, was drawn up by order of Kublai Khan, in 1273. It was then considered a treatise of great importance, and has been several times republished. There are ten divisions on the following subjects: Precepts, Ploughing, Sowing, Planting Mulberry-trees, Rearing Silkworms, Vegetables, Fruits, Bamboo and Forest-trees, Medicinal plants, and Breeding Cattle. (See Wylie l. c. 76.) The preface of the work is by 王磐 Wang P'an.

The 农桑衣食撮要 Nung sang i shi tso yao is a small treatise, in two books, on the same subjects as the preceding, and intended to supplement the information contained in it. It was written in 1314 by 鲁明善 Lu ming shan, an Ouigur by birth, and reprinted in 1330 (Wylie l. c. 76).

THE 农政全书 NUNG CHENG TS'UAN SHU.

This work, the title of which may be translated by "Complete Treatise on Agriculture," is one of the most important and interesting works on Chinese husbandry extant. It was written by 徐光启 Sū Kuang k'i—literary name: 元思 Yüan hu; posthumous title: 文定公 Wen ting kung,—A. D. 1562—1633, a native of 上海 Shang hai. See his biography Ming shi 251, and Mayers' Chin. Read. Man. p. 197. Sū Kuang k'i was a distinguished scholar and Minister of State during the reign of Ming Wan li. His interest in scientific inquiry brought him in contact with the Jesuit missionaries at Peking, whom he warmly supported. Mention is repeatedly made of Sū Kuang k'i in Du Halde's Description de la Chine (III. 76, 79, 82), where he is styled Paul Siu, Colao, Premier Ministre d'État. His portrait is also given there. He was a friend of Matteo Ricci and was baptized at Nanking. Paul was his Christian name.

The Nung cheng ts'uan shu is an excellent and elaborate work on Chinese Husbandry, in sixty books, illustrated by numerous plates. When the author died, in 1633, it was not yet complete.
A certain 子 龍 Tse' lung received the manuscript from the author's grandson, and with the assistance of other scholars, he arranged the matter, added some new information, and published the whole in 1640.

The first three books are occupied with quotations from the Classics and other works.

Books 4—5. On the Division of Land.
Books 25—30 are devoted to the Art of Planting. Here we find short but characteristic descriptions of cultivated plants and directions for growing them.


Fruits (29, 30): Jujube, Peach, Plum, Apricot, Pear, Chestnut, Hazelnut, Crab-apple, Diospyros Kaki, Diospyras Lotus, Pomegranate, Neplium Litchi and Longan, Canarium album and Pinela, Prunus pseudocerasus, Myrica sapida, Vitis vinifera, Salisburia adiantifolia, Eriobotyra japonica, various Oranges, Citrus decumana, Citrus digitata, Citrus japonica, Mulberry, Cydonia sinensis, Crateagus pinnatifida and other species, Sugar-cane.

Books 31—34. On Rearing Silkworms.

Cotton, Bohmeria nivea, Cannabis sativa, Sida tinifolia, Pueraria Thunbergiana.


Ulmus pumila, Catalpa Bungeana, Pinus sinensis, Cunninghamia sinensis, Thuja orientalis, Junijerna chinensis, Cedrela sinensis, Zanthoxylum, Broussonetia papyrifera.

30 The chapter on the cultivation of Cotton was translated by C. Shaw, in the Chinese Repository XIV (1849) p. 449—469.

Books 39—40. On the cultivation of various plants.


Book 41. Breeding Animals.

Book 42. Manufacture of Food.

Books 43—60. Provision against times of scarcity. In this section the whole matter of the Kiu huang pen ts'ao (see above No. 35) with all the drawings is reproduced (books 46—50).

In the last book (60) the 野菜譜 Ye ts'ai pu, a small treatise on wild growing Vegetables (60 species), is reprinted. (See alph. list 1077.

THE 手時通考 SHOU SHI T'UNG K'AO.

This is a comprehensive work on Agriculture and Horticulture and kindred industrial sciences, with numerous illustrations, the most recent work of note of this class. It was compiled by Imperial command and published in 1742, in 78 books. It is well known also in Europe, the great sinologue Stan. Julien having frequently made translations from it. The Shou shi t'ung k'ao, however, is nothing but a compilation, made without much critical judgment, from previous works; and very little original matter is found in it. It seems to me that the Nung-cheng ts'ian shu, reviewed above, has a much higher value in this regard, but the Shou shi t'ung k'ao is important as a vast mine of quotations. The engravings relating to plants are very rude.

A synopsis of the work has been given by Baron (now Marquis) L. d'Hervy de St. Denys in his Recherches sur l'Agriculture et l'Horticulture des Chinois. It is divided into eight sections comprising 78 books.


II. On the Nature of the Soil, Division of Land, Irrigation. Books 7—15. In the eighth book we find geographical maps of the 18 provinces of the Empire.


Rice, Panicum italicum, Panicum miliaceum, Sorgho, Maize, Wheat, Barley, Rye (from Russia), Buckwheat, Oat.—Soja bean, Phaseolus radiatus, Pluim sativum, Vicia Faba, Dolichos sinesis, Lablab vulgaris and other leguminous plants.—Hemp, Agrophiylum gobicum, Ricinus communis, Echinochloa crus galli, Eleusine Coracana, Coix Lachryma.


VII. Additional matter on Agriculture. After some remarks on Fences and on Grafting trees (58) short accounts of cultivated plants are given, accompanied with drawings.


Additional section on Textile plants. Books 77—78.
Cotton, Hemp, Boehmeria nivea, Sida tiliasfolia, Pueraria Thunbergiana, Musa.


A vast part of native literature is devoted to the Geography of China proper and the adjacent countries. The Chinese are accustomed to give in their topographical works more or less detailed accounts of the Natural productions. Thus in the 谷倉 Yü kung, already mentioned (see above Shu king), the earliest description of China extant, the productions of the soil are enumerated for each of the nine provinces of the Empire.

The next General Description of China, which has been handed down to us, is the 太平寰宇記 T'ai p'ing Huan yü ki, in 193 books, by 樂史 Lo Shi, published during the period T'ai p'ing, A. D. 976—983. The natural productions are given for each prefecture.

The 元一統志 Yüan I t'ung chi, or Great Geography of the Yüan or Mongol dynasty, seems to have survived only in some

33 These five books were translated by Stan. Julien. Sur la Culture des Muriers et l'Éducation des Vers à soie. 1837.
34 The articles on the cultivation of Boehmeria nivea and Pueraria Thunbergiana were translated by Stan. Julien. See: Industries de l'Empire Chinois I. c. 162, and Comptes rendus de l'Académie des sciences XVII, 1843, p. 421.
35 In 1842 Prof. W. Schott, Berlin, published in the "Abhandlungen der Kgl. Akademie der Wissenschaften," p. 245—285, a paper: Skizze zu einer Topographie der Produkte des Chinesischen Reiches. After some bibliographical notices of the Pen ts'ao kang mn and other native works on Natural History, the author enumerates the Natural Products of China according to their geographical distribution. His information was drawn from the T'ai p'ing Huang yü ki and another descriptive account of China, the Kuang yü ki, which we have mentioned on a previous page.
quotations drawn from it, and preserved in the writings of authors of the Ming; but the General Description of China referring to this latter dynasty is still extant and is not a rare book. It was published by 李賢 Li Hien, with the assistance of others, in 90 books, with numerous maps, in 1461, under the title 大明一統志 Ta Ming I t'ung chi.

The Great Geography of the Empire of the present dynasty, the 大清一統志 Ta Ts'ing I t'ung chi, was compiled by Imperial command, and the first edition of it was published about the middle of last century. In this well known work, in 500 books, the matter is arranged on the same plan as that adopted for previous works of this class. The different provinces are taken up seriatim, and the descriptive accounts, given systematically for each prefecture, conclude with an enumeration of the natural productions.

Besides this there exist many detailed descriptions of single provinces of China, and special works treat even of the greater part of the prefectures and districts. One or more books in these topographies are always devoted to an account of the natural productions, 土產 t'u ch' an or 物產 wu ch' an. In some cases these are specified in great detail, accompanied by interesting remarks derived from local observers. I subjoin in the sequel a list of those native topographical works, or 志 chi, of the present dynasty, which I have had an opportunity of consulting, and which are frequently quoted in native botanical treatises. They have been published, for the most part, by Imperial authority, and the majority of them are based upon previous compilations, bearing sometimes the same titles. Some of these original accounts of the topography of the provinces, prefectures, or districts of the Empire can be traced back to a period as early as the 11th or 12th century. A great number of them were published for the first time during the Ming period.

The 鈞輔通志 Ki fu t'ung chi, or Topography of the Province of Chihli, published in 1729, in 120 books. But a description of this province was drawn up much earlier, in 1672. The natural productions are enumerated in books 56 and 57.


The 承德府志 Ch'eng te fu chi, in 60 books, 1831. The prefecture of Ch'eng te fu in Northern Chihli, beyond the Great Wall, is known also under the name of 熱河 Je ho (hot river), where one of the summer palaces of the Emperor is situated (Je hol in European works). This compilation is partly based upon the 熱河志 Je ho chi, in 80 books, published in 1781. It contains very interesting details relating to plants and animals of Mongolia, in books 28, 29.

The 盛京通志 Sheng k'ing t'ung chi. This is properly a Topography of Sheng k'ing or Southern Manchuria, but it contains also accounts of the Northern part of Chinese Manchuria (Girin, Tsitsihar, etc.). The original edition of this work is in 32 books; the second, 1736, in 48 books. The last edition, much enlarged, issued in 1779, comprises 120 books. The natural productions of Manchuria are detailed in several books. Book 106 is devoted to plants, cultivated as well as wild, and gives many interesting particulars with respect to the Flora of these little-known tracts. Manchurian names of plants are occasionally given together with the Chinese appellations.

The 山西通志 Shan si t'ung chi, 1734, in 230 books, a Topography of the province of Shansi. Natural productions, book 47. There is a description of the same province, the 山西志 Shan si chi, in 16 books, published in 1474. See Sz' k'u ts'ūan shu LXXIII, 1.

The 山東通志 Shan t'ung t'ung chi, or Topography of the province of Shantung. The first edition was published about the middle of the 16th century and is still extant. Sz' k'u ts'ūan shu

The 陝西通志 Shen si t'ung chi, or Topography of the province of Shensi. First edition during the reign of Kang-hi. Another edition, 1735, in 100 books. Natural productions in books 43, 44. There is a similar work, entitled 陝西志 Shen si chi, in 30 books, published in 1517. See Sz' k'u ts'üan shu LXXIII, 4.

The 甘肅通志 Kan su t'ung chi, or Topography of the province of Kansu, in 50 books, 1736. Natural productions, book 12.

The 河南通志 Ho nan t'ung chi, or Topography of the province of Honan. A work of this name existed in the Ming period (Kia tsing). During the present dynasty one edition of the Ho nan t'ung chi was published at the end of the 17th century. Last edition 1744, in 80 books. Natural productions in book 29.

The 江南通志 Kiang nan t'ung chi. Kiang nan is the old general name for the present provinces of An hui and Kiang su. The work was published in 200 books, in 1736. Natural productions in book 86.

The 安徽通志 An hui t'ung chi, or Topography of the province of Anhui, in 260 books, 1830. Natural productions in book 64.

The 蘇州府志 Su chou fu chi, or Topography of the prefecture of Su chou in Kiang su. Two works of this name were published during the Ming, and several editions of it appeared during the present dynasty. See Wylie's Notes on Chin. Lit. 37. The last edition of 1824 is in 150 books. Natural productions in book 18.

The 湖廣通志 Hu kuang t'ung chi. The two provinces of Hu pei and Hu nan are known under the general name of Hu kuang. During the reign of Ming Wan li (end of 16th century) a description of these regions appeared with the title 湖廣總志
Hu kuang tsung chi, in 98 books. See Sz' k'u ts'üan shu LXXIV, 10. The first edition of the Hu kuang t'ung chi was published in 1684. The last edition, 1733, is in 120 books.

The 湖北通志 Hupei t'ung chi, or Topography of the province of Hu pei, in 100 books, 1757. Natural productions in book 23.


The 江西通志 Kiang si t'ung chi, Topography of the province of Kiang si, in 162 books, 1729. Natural productions in book 27.

There is a work of the same name in 37 books, published during the Ming, Kia tsing period. See Sz' k'u ts'üan shu LXXIII, 8.

The 浙江通志 Che kiang t'ung chi, Topography of the province of Che kiang. The original work, in 72 books, dates from the time of the Ming, first half of the 16th century. Several editions have been issued during the present dynasty, one in 1684, in 50 books, natural productions in book 17; another one, much enlarged, in 120 books, was published in 1736. Natural productions in books 101—107.

The 福建通志 Fu kien t'ung chi, Topography of the province of Fu kien, in 78 books, 1737. Natural productions in books 10—11. A supplement to the work was published, in 92 books, in 1768, with the title 福建續通志 Fu kien sii t'ung chi. Natural productions in books 9—10.

A similar description of the province of Fu kien was published in 87 books with the title of 八闽通志 Pa Min t'ung chi, towards the end of the 15th century. Sz' k'u ts'üan shu LXXIII, 4.

The 臺灣府志 T'ai w'an fu chi, a Topography of the portion of the island of Formosa belonging to the Chinese Empire. First
edition 1694, a second 1741, a third 1747, in 25 books. See Wylie l.c.38. In "Notes and Queries on China and Japan," 1868, p. 134, is a paper: Notes on the Vegetable kingdom of Formosa from the T'ai wan fu chi.

The 廣東通志 Kuang tung t'ung chi, or Topography of the province of Kuang tung. A work of this name was first published during the Ming reign of Kia tsing, in 40 books; and another during the reign of Wan li, in 72 books. See Sz' k'u ts'üan shu LXXIV, 2, 12. During the present dynasty the first edition of the Kuang tung t'ung chi appeared in 1698; another edition, in 64 books, in 1731. A thoroughly revised edition was issued in 1822, in 334 books. Natural productions in books 94—99. There is a new revised edition published in 1864.

The 廣西通志 Kuang si t'ung chi, or Topography of the province of Kuang si. A work of this name, according to the Sz' k'u ts'üan shu LXXIII, 16, first appeared during the reign of Ming Kia tsing, in 60 books. In 1733 the Kuang si t'ung chi was published in 128 books. In 1801 a new revised edition was published in 279 books. Natural productions in books 89—93.

The 貴州通志 Kui chou t'ung chi, or Topography of the province of Kui chou. A work of this name was first published in 12 books, in 1541. See Sz' k'u ts'üan shu LXXIV, 7. The Kui chou t'ung chi of the present dynasty appeared in 1741, in 46 books. Natural productions in book 15.

The 四川通志 Sz' ch'üan t'ung chi, or Topography of the province of Sz' ch'üan. First edition, in 47 books, 1729. A new edition, in 200 books, 1816. Natural productions in books 74, 75. There is a work, 四川總志 Sz' ch'üan tsung chi, in 34 books, published during the Ming, Wan li period. Sz' k'u ts'üan shu LXXIV, 13.

The 雲南通志 Yün nan t'ung chi, or Topography of the province of Yün nan. A work of this name, in 18 books, is mentioned in the bibliographical section of the Ming history.
There are also noticed several other descriptions of Yün nan. The Yün nan t'ung chi of the present dynasty appeared first in 1691, in 17 books. Another improved edition was issued in 30 books, in 1729.

Another descriptive account of the province of Yün nan was published in 1808, with the title Tien hi (Tien being an old name of that province). 40 books. Natural productions in book 5.

The 琉球國志略 Liu kiu kuo chi lio, in 16 books, published in 1757. This is a topographical account, etc. of the Liu kiu (Lew chew) islands. Natural productions in book 14. Very interesting is the chapter on the plants of the islands.

I may finally mention here the 南越筆記 Nan yüe pi ki, by 李調元 Li Tiao yüan, a native of Mien chou (Siz' ch'uan), of the present dynasty. It is a descriptive account of remarkable objects in the province of Kuang tung, in 16 books, containing interesting notes on Southern Chinese plants.

This record is found reproduced in the 函海 Han hai collection of reprints, 1783.

4. Early Acquaintance of the Chinese with Indian and Western Asiatic Plants.

After Buddhism was introduced into China, A. D. 68, a frequent intercourse between this country and India commenced and did not cease for many centuries. Chinese Buddhist priests visited the land of Buddha, and Hindoo priests were invited by the Chinese Emperors to translate the Sacred writings from Sanscrit. Sanscrit names of Indian natural objects are frequently met in Buddhist works. These names appear in the Chinese translations rendered by Chinese characters, imitating the foreign sounds. Early attempts have also been made by the Chinese to explain the Sanscrit names of plants, animals, minerals and other objects, and to identify them with the corresponding Chinese terms. Although
it does not seem that the Indian or Persian systems of medicine have ever influenced Chinese views on the art of healing or modified the sacred rules established in this respect by their primeval Emperors, it can nevertheless be concluded from some early Chinese works on Indian or Western medicines, the titles of which have been preserved, that the Chinese took an interest in the subject. In the History of the Sui dynasty (589—618), book 34, Section on Literature, the following titles of collections of foreign medical prescriptions are mentioned:

The 婆羅門藥方 Po lo men Yao fang, in 5 books. Medical Prescriptions of the Brahmans (Hindoos).


The 乾陀利治鬼方 Kan t'o li Chi hui fang, in 10 books. Medical Prescriptions for curing those possessed by demons; used in Kan t'o li.36

The 西域名醫所集藥方 Si yu Ming i su tsi yao fang, in 4 books. Medical Prescriptions of celebrated physicians in the Countries of the West.

The 西域諸仙所說藥方 Si yu Chu sien su shuo yao fang, in 23 books.

The 出胡國方 Chi'u Hu kuo fang. Prescriptions from the Hu kingdoms, in 10 books, by 摩訶 Mo ho, who was a 胡沙門 Hu sha men, or priest of the Hu.37

The Pen ts'ao kang mu notices a 胡本草 Hu Pen ts'ao, or Materia medica of the Hu. See above History of Materia medica No. 14.

Stan. Julien (Mél. de Géographie asiat. p. 144) mentions a Chinese work 翻外國語 Fan nai kuo yu, of the 6th century, which he believes to be a translation of the well-known Sanscrit vocabulary Amara Cosha (first century B. C.).

During the T'ang dynasty (618—907) the Chinese took a great interest in the kingdoms of India, which they then reached by land as well as by sea. They became acquainted with many vegetable productions of those countries as well as of

---

36 According to the History of the Liang dynasty (502—557) Kan t'o li was an island in the Southern Sea, somewhere near Annam it seems.
37 By Hu the Chinese generally understand Western Asia, sometimes also India.
the Indian Archipelago, much valued in China up to the present
day. Thus in the Chinese works of that period on Geography
and Natural History we often meet with Indian names of plants.
Under the Sung dynasty (10—12th century) regular Sanscrit
schools with Hindoo priests teaching the language were es-
established in China. A Glossary of Sanscrit proper names
occurring in the sacred writings, published during that period,
has come down to us. It bears the title 翻譯名義 Fan i ming i
and was written by a priest named 法雲 Fa yun, in 1143, in 20
books, one of which is devoted to minerals, animals and plants.
75 Sanscrit names of plants are given there, rendered by Chinese
sounds, and explained and identified, as far as possible, with the
respective Chinese equivalents. About one-half of these names
of plants may be found in Dr. Eitel's Handbook of Buddhism
(1871), with the scientific botanical names added. 38

The term 植書 fan shu (fan books), frequently met in the
Pen ts‘ao kang mu, in connection with Sanscrit names of natural
objects, apparently denotes Sanscrit writings in general. Fan or
properly 無摩 fan mo means Brahma.

From the 6th century the Chinese maintained frequent in-
tercourse not only with India, but also with Persia, and during

38 It may not be out of place to say here a few words on the attempts made by
European Sanscrit scholars and botanists to ascertain the botanical names of plants
noticed in the ancient Sanscrit Vocabulary, Amara Cosa, and other writings in the
classical language of the Hindoos, which was a dead language, not spoken even at the
time of Buddha. The results of these investigations have been brought together in
J. F. Watson's Index to the native and scientific Names of Indian and other Eastern
Plants, 1868, and also in E. Balfour's Cyclopedia of India, the second edition of which
appeared 1871—1873. The latter is a comprehensive work in five bulky volumes,
generally compiled from good sources, but without much critical judgment and without
thorough acquaintance with the immense and varied matter embraced in the Cyclopedia
of India. Thus the author does not hesitate to admit the existence of Sanscrit names
for such plants as Agave americana, Anacardium occidentale, Anona squamosa and
reticulata, Helianthus annus, Mirabilis Jalapa, Nicotiana Tabacum, Zes Maya and
other plants, which, as is well known, have been introduced into Asia from America,
since the discovery of the New World. This fact induces me to doubt whether the
identifications of ancient Sanscrit names of plants, as given in the above-mentioned
works and Sanscrit dictionaries, are at all reliable. With respect to the author of
the above-mentioned Amara Cosa, Mr. Balfour states that he was one of the nine poets at
the court of Vicramaditya, and that he is supposed to have lived about A. D. 948. But
under Vicramaditya we read that he reigned B. C. 36. Such contradictory statements
on the same subject under different heads are not uncommon in the Cyclopedia.
the T'ang dynasty, in the 8th and 9th centuries, with the Empire of the Kalifs, it seems by sea as well as by the overland route. In Chinese works of that period we find not infrequent accounts of remarkable natural productions of Western Asia. I may only notice here the 靡陽雜俎 Yu yang tsa tsu, in 20 books, written by 明成式 Tuan Ch'eng shi, towards the end of the 8th century (Wylie l. c. 155). According to Mayers (Chin. Read. Man. p. 211) the author died in 863. The Yu yang tsa tsu contains much information regarding the productions of China and of foreign countries, especially India and Persia.

There is a Chinese Vocabulary of Foreign Languages, published by the 四夷館 Sz' i huan, or Department of Interpreters, apparently in the 15th century, in which amongst other terms are given also the names of the most common plants in Chinese and in Persian Uigur, Siamese, Tibetan, Burmese and two other languages of some tribes at the Southern border of China. The words are all written in the original letters of the respective nations, and their pronunciation is indicated by Chinese characters. These vocabularies form an interesting contribution towards our knowledge of Asiatic names of plants. The Uigur names present a peculiar interest, as very little is known of this language. I may here mention that Mr. Scully has lately published two Turki Vocabularies of Birds and Plants in Mr. R. B. Shaw's Vocabulary of the Language of Eastern Turkistan.

Let me notice finally the 西域圖志 Si yü t'u chi, a Description of Eastern Turkistan and the Chinese dependencies in the West, illustrated by a series of maps. It was published in 1756, in 52 books. In book 43 some details with respect to the natural productions of these regions are given. We find there the native (Turki) names (rendered by Chinese sounds) of more than fifty common plants, with the Chinese equivalents.

---

5. History of Materia medica and Botany in Japan.

The greater part of the information contained in this record has been derived from a very able unpublished paper, drawn up at my request from reliable native sources by Dr. Geerts, a well-known scholar residing in that country, who with rare liberality has placed at my disposal the results of his researches into the history of Medicine and Botany in Japan.

The early civilisation of Japan, as well as that of Corea and Annam, was based almost entirely upon Chinese principles of culture, freely adopted by the barbarian neighbours of the mighty Chinese Empire. Annamese speech is obviously only a dialect of Chinese. It is known that the Japanese have two modes of writing, the alphabet of 48 characters, iroha, used in the simple style of writing, and the ideographical Chinese characters employed in public documents and scientific writings. The iroha, now considered to be the modification of certain familiar Chinese characters, is said to have been introduced into Japan from Corea in the second and first centuries B.C. Previous to that time the Japanese possessed no written language of their own.

The introduction of the Chinese written language into Japan is recorded in Japanese annals to have taken place in the 3rd century of our era. During the reign of the Japanese Empress Jinggō tenno, who invaded Corea at the end of the 2nd century, Chinese books were first brought thence to Japan. About A. D. 285 Atoji (阿居岐), a son of the King of Corea, came on an embassy to the court of Japan, where he remained one year. He brought also some Chinese books, and at his instigation Wani (王仁), a distinguished Chinese scholar, was invited from Corea to Japan to teach Chinese. He arrived in 286 and was appointed Instructor of the Imperial Princes. To him the introduction of Chinese characters into Japan is attributed. He is said to have been a native of the Chinese Kingdom of Go (呉 Wu), the Eastern of the three states into which China was divided after the Han dynasty, and a descendant of the Emperors of that house. He lived in Fukusai (百 濟 Po tsai), in South-eastern Corea. From this time the Chinese Classics and Literature of all branches
gradually became the study of all higher classes in Japan, the nobles, military officers, priests and physicians. Thus from China was derived the knowledge of Agriculture, Manufactures, the Arts, Religion, Philosophy, Ethics, Medicine, etc.

As to the art of healing some native system of curing diseases existed no doubt in Japan in ancient times. Onamuchi-no-Mikota and Sukuna Hikona no Mikota, two famous Japanese physicians, are both worshipped as medical divinities and as founders of the art of healing. But at an early period the Chinese principles of medicine were entirely adopted in Japan and have maintained themselves in that country up to the present time.

Japanese annals record that A. D. 420 a Chinese physician, by name 金波鶴飛 (in Chinese Kin po chen han hi ru), was invited by the Japanese Emperor from Corea to Japan. He came from the Corean kingdom Shin ro (新羅 Sin lo).

In 554 Tei yu da (丁有陀) and Han riyo (漢量), two apothecaries, natives of the Corean kingdom of Kudara, arrived in Japan to teach Chinese medicine there. Six other Coreans are recorded to have been invited for the same purposes. The Chinese works on Materia medica known then in Japan were the 神農本草經 and the 名醫別錄 (see above Hist. Mat. med. No. 1 and 7).

In 686 court physicians were for the first time appointed in Japan, and in 702 a great University for the promotion of Medicine, Astrology and other Chinese sciences was established at Dai sai, the seat of the Central government at that time. This place was situated in the Northern part of the island of Kiu shiu.

About the year 850 this University at Dai sai was improved. The different branches of medical science were taught separately, viz.: Internal diseases, External diseases, Surgical operations, Infantile complaints, Diseases of the eyes, the ears, the mouth, teeth, etc., Acupuncture.

From the year 717 a Botanical Garden was connected with the University, in which medicinal plants were cultivated. From the year 787 Materia medica was taught according to the Chinese treatises 新修本草 (new revised Pen ts'ao) and the 唐本草 (see above Hist. Mat. med. No. 11).
In 794 Kiyoto became the capital of Japan, and the Emperor Kanmu tenno established there a University for the promotion of Chinese sciences. At about the same time libraries were first founded in Japan.

In 808 Hirosada, a Japanese physician, a native of the province of Idzumo, published in Japanese a Chinese work on Materia medica, entitled 大同類聚方. It was republished in 1827.

From the second half of the 11th century a considerable trade in drugs was carried on between Japan and China.

In the second half of the 15th century the leading works on Materia medica studied in Japan were the Chinese treatises 諸家本草 and the 開賓本草 (see above Hist. Mat. med. No. 21, 22).

History has preserved the names of three Japanese physicians of the 15th and 16th centuries famed for their knowledge of drugs, viz.: Takeda Sadamori (1467), Osada Tokuhon (1500), and Yoshida Sohe (1550).

The Chinese 本草綱目 Pen ts‘ao hăng mu, published as we have seen at the close of the 16th century, was known in Japan soon after its appearance. It was translated into Japanese with the Japanese title Hon zo ko mo ku, in 1714, by Ina Nobuyoski (Ina Wakasui).

The 救荒本草 Kiu huang pen ts‘ao (l.c. No. 35) was translated two years later.

The historical facts recorded in the above sketch of the development of botanical knowledge in Japan leave no doubt that the Materia medica of the Japanese was originally entirely based upon Chinese works, which have been reprinted and commented upon in Japan, especially since the 9th century. It is further known that from the 7th and 8th centuries learned Chinese and Korean physicians and Buddhist priests frequently came to Japan; whilst on the other hand Japanese physicians used to visit China with the purpose of studying medicinal plants. They thus had an opportunity of comparing Chinese and Japanese plants, and were enabled to identify the species found in both countries. Thus we find in Japanese works on Botany, besides the popular

---

40 Chinese catalogues do not mention this treatise.
Japanese appellations of plants, in many instances also Chinese names written in Chinese characters. It seems that most of these identifications can be traced back to the period of the Chinese T'ang dynasty, for the character T'ang (Kara in Japanese), frequently found in Japanese names of plants, is always used there to designate the Chinese origin of a plant. But some Chinese names applied now-a-days to Japanese plants occur for the first time in the Kiu huang pen ts'ao, and this proves that Japanese botanists subsequent to the time of publication of this work (beginning of the 15th century) continued to determine the plants of their country from Chinese botanical works. It can be said that these identifications of Chinese and Japanese plants made by Japanese botanists at different times are correct upon the whole, at least as far as the genus is concerned. Sometimes the same Chinese name is applied in China and in Japan to different species of the same genus, seldom to plants having no resemblance to each other. The tree 椂 ch'u in Chinese books is Ailanthus glandulosa; but in Japan where the tree is not found the above Chinese character is applied to Euscaphis staphyleoides. Sieb. et Zucc. fl. Japon. I, 124. We learn from Siebold that the inner bark of the root of this Japanese shrub is largely used in the country as an efficacious remedy in dysentery, just as the inner bark of the root of Ailanthus is used by the Chinese.—

馬先蒿 Ma sien hao in China is Incarvillea sinensis, not observed in Japan, where the above Chinese name designates Pedicularis resupinata.

The Chinese names of plants given in Japanese botanical works together with the popular Japanese names act there the part of our scientific botanical names.

It was in 1709 that the first original Japanese work on Materia medica was published by Kaibara Rakuten, with the title 大和本草 Yamato Honzo, in 18 books.

A small treatise on Japanese Botany was published about the middle of the last century, with the title 花彙 Kwa wi, by the Japanese botanist Yo nan shi, assisted by his pupil Ono Ranzan. The Kwa wi comprises eight books, in which 200 plants are described. The drawings accompanying the text are not of a high
order. This treatise was translated into French by Dr. L. Savatier in 1873.

Ono Ranzan, the collaborator of Yo nan shi, subsequently became a celebrated botanist,—not only from a Japanese point of view. In his writings we first observe the influence of European science upon Japanese views on botany. The Dutch, after the expulsion of Europeans in 1639, were during more than two centuries the only European nation allowed to carry on trade with Japan; but they were not allowed to see more of Japan than the little island of Decima (Nagasaki). Notwithstanding this restriction they succeeded in awakening among the Japanese an interest in European science, especially natural history; and since the middle of the last century we find in Japan many native botanists who have studied botany from European books.

Ono Ranzan, whom Siebold styles the Linnaeus of Japan, wrote an important commentary on the Pen ts‘ao kang mu, with the title 本草綱目啓蒙 Hon zo ho moku hei mo, in 35 books, in which he displays a considerable critical judgment. He proves also that the majority of the natural productions of China are likewise found in Japan. This work was published in 1804, after the death of the author, by his grandson, who in 1847 issued another revised and enlarged edition.

Further particulars with respect to Japanese botanists and their scientific productions may be found in the introductory part of Dr. A. I. C. Geerts’ „Produits de la nature japonaise et chinoise,” 1878. I shall confine myself to saying a few words on some more recent Japanese botanical works, which I myself possess and from which I have derived great assistance in determining plants described and depicted in Chinese botanical works.

The 本草圖譜 Hon zo dzu fu, published in 1828, in 96 books, by Iwasaki Tsunemasa of Yeddo, describes 1795 plants and gives as many coloured drawings. It is now very difficult to obtain a complete printed copy of the work, the greater part of the edition having probably been destroyed by fire. I possess only the first ten books of it, but have had an opportunity of consulting a complete copy in the Library of the Imperial Academy at St. Petersburg. The arrangement followed in it is that of the Pen ts‘ao kang mu.
Another Japanese general work on Botany of much higher claim than the above-mentioned, was published in 1856, with the title 草木圖說 So moku dzu setsu, by Inuma Chojun, a pupil of Dr. Siebold. But only 20 books of this Japanese Flora japonica have been issued. They comprise the first section, Herbaceous plants (with the exception of Grasses), wild and cultivated, arranged according to the system of Linnaeus, and accompanied with 1215 admirably executed drawings, made from nature and answering perfectly all scientific purposes. It has full claim to the accuracy of a scientific work. Besides the Japanese name for each plant, the Chinese names are also given, if such exist, and in many cases we find also the Linnean or popular Dutch names added. This work is frequently quoted in Maximowicz’s numerous publications on the Flora of Japan. He quotes it (after Miquel) with the incorrect title Soo bohif. I have heard that in 1875 a new enlarged edition of the So moku dzu setsu has been published by Tanaka. Dr. Savatier has attempted, with the assistance of Franchet, to determine the plants not only of the So moku dzu setsu, but also as far as possible those represented on the plates of the Hon zo dzu fu. See their “Enumeratio Plantarum in Japonia sponte crescentium,” 1876.

I possess also a short but very valuable Japanese treatise on Poisonous plants, the 有毒草木圖說 Yu doku zo moku dzu setsu, illustrated by fine wood-cuts, in two books, with 123 plates. This was published in 1827 by the Japanese Horticultural Society of the province of Owari.

6. ON THE BOTANICAL KNOWLEDGE OF COREANS, MANCHOOS, MONGOLS, AND TIBETANS.

Tributary to China for ages, Corea at an early period universally adopted the Chinese form of civilisation, and it was in Corea that the Japanese first became acquainted with the Chinese language, mode of writing, and literature. Although the Coreans, like the Japanese, possess their own alphabet, there is no national literature in their country, all literary works composed by Coreans
having been written in Chinese. One of the best Chinese works on Medicine is of Corean origin. The 東醫秉鑑 *Tung i pao kuen,* or Precious Mirror of Eastern Medicine, written during the Ming, at the end of the 16th or beginning of the 17th century, by 許跋 *Hu Pa,* a native of 陽平 *Yang p'ing* in South-western Corea, embraces the whole compass of medicine, as well as *Materia medica.* It comprises 28 large books and has been several times republished in China. Although it claims in some respects to be original, this originality refers more to the arrangement of the matter, and as can be concluded from the quotations, it was compiled from Chinese authors. It does not seem that Corean Medicine and *Materia medica* differ from Chinese works on the subject. As in the Corean language a large portion of Chinese words and phrases, even for common expressions, have been borrowed from the Chinese, we need not be surprised to find that many plants grown in Corea are known to the natives only by their Chinese names. Corean names for the most common plants in that country may be found in Dr. Siebold's 類合 *Lui ho,* or *Vocabularium sinense in koraianum conversum,* opus sinicum origine in peninsula Koraí impressum, 1838; and also in Putzillo's *Russian-Corean Dictionary* (in Russian), 1874.

Lately a more complete Corean dictionary has been published with the title: *Dictionnaire Coréen-Français,* par les Missionnaires de Corée. Yokohama, 1880.

There is also no original Manchoo system of Medicine or *Materia medica* extant. As is known, Manchoo literature dates only from the end of the 17th century and consists of translations from Chinese works, such as *Dictionaries,* the *Classics,* Histories of China, novels, etc. As far as I know the only Manchoo work on Medicine is a treatise on Anatomy, translated from a European work by the Jesuit Father Parennin, in 1723. My colleague and friend, Dr. Dudgeon, possesses a manuscript copy of this translation, illustrated by beautifully executed drawings. (See his "Report of the Peking Hospital for 1878 and 1879," p. 46.) A manuscript copy of the same, but without drawings, is likewise found in the Library of the Russian Legation at Peking.
An interesting list of Manchoo names of plants and drugs, with the equivalent Chinese names added, is found in the great Comparative Dictionary in Chinese and three other Eastern Asiatic languages, of which we shall speak further on. The Manchoo names referring to Chinese plants not found in Manchuria are frequently forged.

The system of medicine adopted by the Mongol physicians in Mongolia seems to be based on Tibetan principles of the art of healing. The majority of medicines used in Mongolia are compounded of Tibetan drugs. Very little on the subject has hitherto come under the notice of investigators into Eastern Asiatic medicine. There are several Tibetan treatises on the art of healing and Materia medica. Cosma de Kōros has given the Analysis of a Tibetan medical work in the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal, IV, p. 1, but he does not say much regarding Tibetan medicines. I had once an opportunity of seeing in Peking a kind of Tibetan Natural history, with rude drawings, in which the Tibetan names of natural objects were accompanied with the corresponding Chinese names. The book was styled 本草 Pen t'ao in Chinese.

Dr. J. Rehmann, a Russian physician, procured in 1805 in Maimaicheng (on the frontier of Mongolia, opposite Kiakhta) 60 Tibetan (or Chinese) drugs used by the Mongol physicians. He examined these specimens with the assistance of the botanist Redowsky and described them (in German) in a small pamphlet entitled: Beschreibung einer Tibetanischen Hand-Apotheke. St. Petersburg, 1811. Rehmann gives also the Tibetan names of each drug in Tibetan letters and the pronunciation in German.

41 There is in the city of Urga, in Northern Mongolia, an old Tibetan Lama priest, Cho in den famed for his skill in curing diseases. His reputation has even spread over Siberia, and Russians from Kiakhta or Irkutsk are not unfrequently seen in Urga submitting to the medical treatment of the old Mongolian Aesculapius, whose medicines are all derived from Tibet. It seems to me that in the majority of cases his success must be attributed to the healthy mountain air of Urga.

42 Dr. Rehmann accompanied in 1805 the Russian Embassy under Count Golovkin to China. To the same Embassy were attached Redowsky, Adam and Helm, as naturalists; the celebrated Klaproth as orientalist. As is known Golovkin was obliged to return from Urga to Russia.
As to the drugs derived from the vegetable kingdom, he was of course only in a few cases able to determine the botanical origin of these medicines.

A more complete collection of drugs used in Mongol or Tibetan medicine can be found in Peking in the shop of 萬億號 Wan I hao, a rich Chinese firm, well known among the Mongols, Tanguts and Tibetans, as it carries on a great commercial intercourse with these nations and supplies the wants of the merchants and Lama priests who are accustomed to repair to Peking in winter. This shop is situated between the British and Russian Legations, near the so called Mongol market. The proprietor has published a list of 305 drugs obtainable at his store, giving the names in Tibetan and Chinese and adding the pronunciation of the Chinese characters in Tibetan letters. The list is preceded by a short preface and followed by a postscript, both in Mongol and Tibetan. The preface invites ecclesiastics—lama as well as laymen—especially those living in Mongolia and desirous of alleviating the suffering of their fellowmen, to apply to the aforesaid shop for the drugs enumerated in the list in two languages, Tibetan and Chinese. For selecting and arranging this assortment several medical treatises of celebrated physicians are stated to have been consulted. In the postscript it is stated that the drugs offered for sale in the shop of Wan I hao under the above Tibetan names, are not always exactly the same as the original productions of Tibet bearing these names in that country; but their medical virtues are stated to be similar. Purchasers are requested not to suppose that these drugs have been collected without judgment. Besides this the seller directs the attention of the public to the advantage of procuring drugs from a great firm instead of buying them in retail shops. The postscript is signed by Gonbedjan, Professor of the Tibetan school at Peking.

Among the drugs enumerated in this catalogue there are 74 minerals, 22 articles derived from the animal kingdom; the remaining 269 belong to the vegetable kingdom. The greater portion of them can be determined.

The most important guide for identifying Mongol, Tibetan and Manchou names of natural productions, and especially economic
plants and drugs, is without doubt the great Dictionary in four languages, the 四體清文鑑 Sè t’i ts’êng wen hien, published by Imperial command during the reign of Kang-hi. A revised edition of it was issued by order of the Emperor K’ien-lung about the middle of last century. The books 27—29 deal with plants, and about 600 names of cultivated and wild species are enumerated there in Chinese, Manchou, Mongol, and Tibetan. The pronunciation of Manchou and Mongol names is indicated by Chinese characters. As most of the plants mentioned in this dictionary are known to me from the Chinese names given, I have thus been enabled to ascertain the Manchou, Mongol, and Tibetan names of a considerable number of common plants of Eastern Asia. Very little has hitherto been done in the way of identifying names of plants in these languages. In Balfour’s Cyclopaedia of India and Watson’s Index of native and scientific names of Eastern Plants we find occasionally some Tibetan (Ladak) names of plants; Maximowicz in his Prim. Flora amurensis gives 5 or 6 Manchurian names. In Zigra’s Dendrology of Russia we meet with some Mongol, Tartar, and Kalmuk names. Some names of common plants in the languages of the Kalmuks and the Kirghizes will be found in Professor Galstunsky’s Russian-Kalmuk Dictionary, 1860, and in Ilinsky’s Kirghiz Dictionary, 1861.

CHAPTER II.

ON THE SCIENTIFIC DETERMINATION OF THE PLANTS MENTIONED IN CHINESE WORKS.

We now come to the most important, but at the same time most difficult part of our researches. In order that Western science may profit by a study of Chinese botanical works it is necessary not only to understand the Chinese written characters but also to recognize the plants described and to ascertain their scientific names. Our knowledge of the Botany of China is still very defective, more so indeed, it may be safely said, than that
of the Flora of the interior of Africa and Australia. Those regions of the Empire especially to which the majority of plants described in Chinese books refer, have never been trodden by the foot of a botanical collector. Thus the greater part of the vegetable productions detailed in Chinese works on Materia medica and Botany are unknown to Europeans. If the plants in question are not of common occurrence in the provinces visited by them, it is generally impossible to make anything of the vague descriptions given by Chinese botanists. Occasionally the drawings found in the previously mentioned native botanical works enable us to determine at least the genus or the order to which the plants belong. On the other hand, there may be in European collections plants from China, noticed also in Chinese works, but the native names have not been added to the scientific ones.

The only exact method of ascertaining the botanical names corresponding to Chinese denominations of plants is to obtain the plants in natura and to determine them. I may however observe that, although the common cultivated plants are known under the same Chinese names all over the Empire, many other plants, especially drugs, go under different local names in different provinces. Li Shi chen, the author of the Pen ts’ao kang mu, and other authors before him, have attempted to bring these synonyms together, but perhaps they have not always been correct in their identifications. In some instances also the same Chinese names are applied to distinct plants in different parts of China. It is therefore desirable that naturalists, who collect native names of plants, should always state in what part of China these names are used.

The first difficulty we encounter in identifying Chinese names of plants with the scientific appellations, is to secure trustworthy and competent natives to procure authentic specimens of the plants desired. The majority of drugs dealt with in Chinese treatises on Materia medica are yielded by wild growing mountain plants. The mountains of Chihli, Shantung, Shansi, Honan, etc.

43 I have been informed by missionaries, who had lived for some time in Honan, that 馬家檳 Ma kia kiaio in the prefecture of Wei hui fu in North Honan is a well-
and Sz' ch'uan are especially famed for the medicinal herbs they produce. These drugs (roots, leaves, flowers, fruits, etc.) for the most part reach the apothecary's shop cut in little pieces or pulverized. The apothecary knows nothing about the plants from which they are derived, nor concerning the place whence they have been gathered. Our specialists in Europe are also seldom able to determine these fragments. It is the same with many other Chinese articles of commerce furnished by plants. It is for instance generally impossible to get any reliable information regarding the trees yielding the numerous precious woods used all over China for making furniture. It is therefore necessary to apply directly to those who collect these drugs, or who fell the trees; and this is not an easy task.

The ἰείστομω, as the gatherers of medicinal plants were termed in ancient Greece, are chiefly represented in China by Buddhist priests. They live in the temples which abound in the mountains here, and are usually well acquainted with medicinal and other plants, and with their properties and applications for domestic purposes.

It is more easy to procure authentic specimens of the cultivated vegetation of China and to ascertain the Chinese names. Great caution must however be observed in accepting these names from the statements of the natives, and in order to arrive at a reliable determination, various competent sources of information on the same subject should always be consulted. European collectors of plants in China should never omit to inquire after the Chinese names of the plants they gather, and should try to have them written on their labels in Chinese characters. This is more easy to realize in China, where every beggar knows how to write, than European readers might imagine. Chinese names of plants, rendered only by European spelling, have little value, as errors will frequently creep in, and they are generally unintelligible even for sinologues.

Having obtained specimens of plants and ascertained their native names, the next step essential to the success of our investigations will be to have them determined by a competent botanist.

known market for drugs. The drugs of the province of Chihli are exported from T'ien tsin. See Customs Report 1865, p. 28.
Although Europe abounds in botanists, the number of those from whom a reliable determination of Chinese plants may be expected is very limited. For not only a thorough knowledge of the Flora of Eastern Asia is required for this purpose, but the botanist who sets himself to examine plants, and especially exotic plants, must be in a position which will enable him to refer (for the purpose of identification and comparison of species) to some complete general herbaria in Europe. Now-a-days all botanists agree in the view that it is impossible to recognize and identify plants from descriptions only. To decide whether a particular plant is identical with another already described, it is necessary to compare it with an authentic specimen of the latter, and the author who proposes a new specific name, is bound to prove by direct examination of specimens of all the other species of the same genus or allied forms that the plant in question has really not been previously described.

Prof. A. Bunge, in his Enum. plant. Chines bor. (1831) No. 238, took a kind of yellow Jasmin, which he first observed in Peking, to be identical with Jasminum angulare Vahl, a plant of the Cape of Good Hope (white flowers). He evidently relied only on an imperfect description of this plant. The Peking plant was subsequently proved by Lindley to be quite a distinct species, which then was named Jasminum nudiflorum.—Owing to the same want of other collections for comparison, Prof. Bunge described Prunus trichocarpa as a new species from Peking. But this plant had long before been described by Thunberg as Pr. tomentosa (from Japan).—The same author describes l. c. No. 81 the wild growing Jujube of Peking as a spinose variety of Zizyphus vulgaris Lam. One of our first botanical authorities in Europe, to whom I had sent specimens of this thorny shrub, very common in North-China, suggested to me that it was Z. Lotus; and the specimens of this shrub of Northern Africa kindly sent to me by him prove that there is indeed no difference between Z. Lotus and Bunge’s Z. vulgaris, var. spinosa.—There are in the mountains West of Peking two species of Syringa, distinguishable at first sight by the size of their leaves. For a long time the botanists of the Botanical Gardens at St. Petersburg considered the large-leaved species to be S. villosa Vahl, first observed near Peking in the middle of the last century by
d'Incarville, whilst the small-leaved one figures in the herbaria of St. Petersburg as *S. pubescens* Turcz. But from Prof. Decaisne's elaborate memoir on *Ligustrum* and *Syringa* I learn that *S. villosa* and *S. pubescens* are the same plant (the small-leaved), and that the other species (*S. villosa* of Russian botanists) is *S. Emodi Wall.*, first observed in the Himalayas. Prof. Decaisne had of course seen authentic specimens of all these plants.

The works on systematic botany by Willdenow, Sprengel, Roemer and Schultes and others, published previous to De Candolle's *Prodromus*, have little value so far as they attempt to decide botanical questions relating to China. At least the identification and changing of names of Loureiro's plants, as laid down by these authors, were certainly not based upon an inspection of Loureiro's herbarium.

Sufficient material for determining Chinese plants can only be found in the vast store houses of botanical collections in London, Paris, and St. Petersburg, which are especially rich in Eastern Asiatic plants. We also ought not to omit mentioning in this place the extensive herbarium of Dr. Hance in Whampoa, which as regards Chinese specimens may perhaps represent the most complete collection extant. Dr. Hance possesses also a great number of Indian, Japanese, and Siberian plants, and thus is well qualified to pronounce a competent judgment on questions referring to Chinese plants.

I need not say that the determination of plants requires great experience and attention. Even the most accomplished botanists are liable to err in their diagnoses. We must not forget that in the majority of cases (especially when they have to examine collections from distant countries) they rely entirely on dried materials, and these too, often imperfect specimens which must be deciphered like hieroglyphics of a dead language. Living plants show many characteristics, and very often striking ones, which cannot be recognized in dried specimens, or at any rate are liable to alteration, as, for instance, the colour of the flowers and other organs, their odour, etc. Probably many botanists who know a foreign plant only from herbaria, would often fail to recognize the same at first sight, when met in a living state.
In order to set down a complete and correct description of a plant it is desirable, but seldom practicable, to examine a considerable number of freshly gathered specimens. For this reason botanists in Europe always try to procure seeds of exotic plants for cultivation at home. But it is generally very difficult to get ripe seeds of rare wild growing plants, and the seeds are often spoiled before reaching their destination. Sometimes plants cultivated out of their native country show considerable aberrations from the ordinary wild type. Thus Planchon (D. C. Prod. XVII, p. 173) refuses to identify the *Celtis sinensis* Pers., introduced from China in the last century and cultivated since that time in South-Europe, with the *Celtis sinensis* collected by later authors in China. Compare also Prof. Decaisne's interesting investigations regarding the native country of the Sunflower and the Topinambour (Flore des Serres, XXIII.).

As in most cases botanists, who have to describe foreign plants, cannot refer to living specimens, a critical responsibility rests with the collector who observes the plants in their wild state, and who is often therefore in a position to decide easily dubious botanical questions by examining fresh specimens. In noting down the colours of the flowers and other organs, the odour, the general appearance and the stature of the plant, the conditions under which it grows, wild or cultivated, and in adding also in the memorandum, if possible, the native name, the collector will essentially complete the descriptive details of the botanist. But in the generality of cases the collectors of plants pay little attention to these particulars; and then it is their fault and not that of the describer that the descriptions of foreign plants in systematic works are generally so unsatisfactory, and that often those characteristics, by which an observer of the living plant is struck

44 It is a good practice with some botanists who describe new plants, to preserve in the new generic or specific names the indigenous popular appellations, where known. Among Chinese names of plants introduced into our scientific botanical nomenclature, I may quote: *Magnolia Yulan*, *Paonia Moutan*, *Diospyros Shiite*, *Nandina domestica*, *Nephelium Litchi* and *N. Longan* (Lung yen). This rule should be more generally adopted. But unfortunately the fashion now-a-days cherished among botanists is to transform names of savants or other persons (who frequently have had nothing to do with the plant dedicated to them) into botanical names, which are often dissimilar and difficult to pronounce.
at the first glance, are omitted. Let me illustrate these remarks by a few examples.

*Stachys affinis* Bge., known for a long time from North-China and Japan, is at once distinguished from other species by its fleshy root resembling somewhat a turreted shell. Maximowicz, to whom I sent complete specimens some years ago, was the first author to mention the characteristic roots of the plant. See his "*Ad Floræ Asie orient. cogn. fragm.*" 1879, p. 46.

*Pinus Bungeana*, the beautiful white-barked Pine of Peking, was first described in 1847 by Zuccarini, and has been cultivated in Europe since 1862. The most remarkable feature of this tree is its white bark, as if lime-washed. But this characteristic (not found on young trees) was for a long time unknown to European botanists and gardeners, and is still little known in Europe. Koch in his Dendrology III, p. 311 (published 1875) describes *P. Bungeana*, but does not mention the white bark.

Every foreigner, who visits Peking for the first time, is struck by the appearance of a certain large orange-coloured fruit sold in the streets. It is especially remarkable for the peculiar shape it presents. This fruit, called *Shi tz’* by the natives, is flattened and shows a more or less deep circular furrow which divides it into two stories. This is the *Diospyros Schi tse*, first described by Bunge, fifty years ago. But Bunge says only in describing the fruit: bacca maxima depressa, but does not mention the furrow. Since Bunge several authors have described *D. Schi tse* (Carrière, Decaisne, Hiern, Naudin), but none of them record the peculiar shape of the fruit; and the drawing given under the above name in Naudin’s lately published memoir on the genus Diospyros shows a rather small globular fruit, like an apple, without the characteristic furrow, and represents, I believe, specimens cultivated in France, from seeds received from Peking. It seems however that the passage in Naudin’s description of the fruit: bacca interdum ad medium longitudinem quasi constrictae coronatae, alludes to the before-mentioned peculiarity of the cultivated *Shi tz’* of North-China, which is always aspermous. But the fruit cultivated in France as *Shi tz’* and represented by Naudin, exists here, although it is not common in Peking. It is not the fruit
which Bunge saw and which he describes as *bacca maxima depressa*, *asperma*, since it always contains seeds, whilst the other is propagated by grafting only.

It seems to me that Bentham's *Flora hongkongensis* can be adduced as an example of short, popular and characteristic descriptions of plants, and, although the precision and correctness in exhibiting the details is due to the experience of the eminent author, a considerable portion of the information about Hongkong plants has certainly been furnished by the collectors, and chiefly by Dr. Hance, who for many years has zealously studied the *Flora* of the island.

Occasionally the most experienced botanists are liable to errors when working on dried imperfect material, whilst on the other hand persons even with a modest stock of botanical knowledge, but having the opportunity of observing plants in their native countries, are enabled to clear up dubious botanical questions and to correct incontestably statements of professional authors.

In Turczaninow's *Enum. plant. Chine bor.* (1837) and Maximowicz's *Index Flora pekin.* (1859) we find two Peking species of *Catalpa* noticed, viz.: *C. syringaefolia* Turcz., and *C. Bungei* C. A. Mey. In D. C. Prodr. IX, 226 the first is considered a variety of the latter, distinguished by the form of the leaves. But whoever has seen these trees in Peking, where they are common, will be easily convinced that they constitute one species only, and that even a variety cannot be admitted, the leaves on the same tree being always very variable in shape, heart-shaped, entire, lobed or laciniated, triangular, sinuate, etc.

The same may be said of *Sesamum indicum* L., much cultivated in the Peking plain. In D. C. Prodr. IX, 250 three varieties of this cultivated plant are distinguished, according to the form of the leaves (grandidentatum, subdentatum, subindivisum). But this distinction is also untenable. Here at Peking at least we frequently see on the same plant entire, lobate, or trisected leaves. I have sent such specimens to St. Petersburg.

The Chinese in the Northern provinces cultivate a beautiful yellow Rose, very prickly, with small pinnated leaves. I have been told that it occurs in a wild state in the mountains of North-China and Southern Mongolia. This Rose figures in Bunge's
Enum. Chin. bor. as *Rosa pimpinellifolia* L., varietas floribus majusculis sulphureis. The specimens of the same plant in the Herbarium of the Botanical Gardens at St. Petersburg (some of them sent by myself) have been determined by Crépin as *R. pimpinellifolia*, var. *densiflora*, and in his Monography of Roses (Bull. Soc. Bot. Belg. 1874, 75) he mentions *R. pimpinellifolia* as found at Peking, without noticing however its yellow flowers (on dried specimens the flowers are white). Crépin, as well as all previous authors who speak of *R. pimpinellifolia*, attribute to this Rose, which has a large area of geographical distribution, rose-coloured or white flowers. Last year I forwarded some specimens of our yellow Peking Rose—taken from the same shrub in my garden as those sent to St. Petersburg—to an eminent French botanist, who informed me that it differs widely from *R. pimpinellifolia* of the environs of Paris, but seems to be closely allied to *Rosa xanthina* Lindl., and is perhaps the same.

Five species of *Orobanchae* have been noticed by different authors as occurring at Peking, viz.: two with white flowers: *O. macrolepis* Turcz., and *O. pycnostachya* Hce.—three with blue flowers: *O. ammophila* C. A. Mey., *O. albolanata* Steud. (O. canescens Bge.); *O. ombrocharis* Hce.—Mr. Maximowicz, who some years ago was kind enough to determine for me the species of *Orobanche* I had gathered in the Peking mountains, and who on that occasion examined all the species of this genus from Peking found in the herbaria of St. Petersburg—suggested to me by letter that the characteristics on which these species are founded (lower lip of the corolla entire or bilobate; anthers barbate or glabrous) are fallacious and inconstant, and that from dried specimens alone it is impossible to decide whether the lower lip is bilobed or not. As these plants are succulent it is difficult to press them properly, and the flowers shrivel. Maximowicz, who seems disposed to think that the five described species of *Orobanche* are to be reduced to two species, requested me to examine the flowers of the living plants. I have not yet had an opportunity of doing so, as these plants grow in the mountains; and I was not able last year to visit the regions where they are found at the proper season. But from my former experience on the subject I have no doubt that Maximowicz is right in
his supposition, and my own impression has always been that the
species only: one scentless blue-flowered, and one fragrant with
white flowers and yellow filaments and anthers.

In 1866 Dr. Hance described in the Ann. sc. nat. Advers. p. 18
(see also Journ. of Botany 1869, 295) *Sambucus Williamsii* as a
new species gathered in the neighbourhood of Peking by Dr.
Wells Williams. The inflorescence arranged in a lax compound
corymbe is given as characteristic. I myself gathered a number
of specimens of a Sambucus growing at the same place. Maxi-

mowicz declared it to be *S. racemosa* L., which is frequent
in the Peking plain and in the mountains. See also Bge. Enum.
Chin. bor. No. 193. The inflorescence of this species (generally
described as an ovoid panicle) varies in shape at Peking. On
younger plants (rarely seen in flower and distinguished by larger
leaflets) the panicle does not develop so well as on old specimens
(small trees). Although I have not seen Dr. Williams' original
specimen, I have little doubt that it was taken from a young
plant of *S. racemosa*. Dr. Hance has hardly examined a great
number of specimens of his *S. Williamsii*.

A great obstacle in the way of utilizing the results of modern
botanical research is the tendency observable among the majority
of botanists of our days to multiply unreasonably the genera and
species. They thus create a mass of new names, the greater part
of which, being rejected by more considerate authors, figure
afterwards as useless synonyms in works of descriptive botany,
and occasion a kind of scientific confusion of names which leads
to erroneous inferences. Some botanists even go so far as to
propose to change (without any botanical reason) names,
consecrated by long use, in favour of new ones, which seem to
them more appropriate. See e.g. St. Lager's Réforme de la
Nomenclature Botanique. 1880.

It is in vain, that we ask what benefit can accrue to science
from the extravagant subutilization and differentiation now pre-
vailing in systematic botany, by which the study of that science
is rendered so complicated. Nobody will, I think, now-a-days
attempt to maintain the view that it lay in the plan of nature, in
producing living beings, to create them according to a scheme
resembling the so called natural systems by which our naturalists are guided. These ingenious systems answer their purposes only in a general way. In many instances we do not find in living nature precisely defined and exactly divided Orders, Genera, and Species; but we observe more frequently gradual transitions by more or less numerous intermediaries (which often have become extinct now) from one form to another. It is even not possible to separate precisely the vegetable from the animal kingdom. These facts render the application of our systems of classification to natural objects often difficult.

When Linnaeus first attempted to group plants in a rational way, according to certain characters they possessed in common, and when he first proposed the generic and specific appellations, one of his principal objects in view was apparently to establish a reasonable rule for nomenclature. His ingenious plan was unanimously adopted, but it is to be regretted that the principles now followed in laying down the limits of genera and species widely diverge from the good sense displayed in this regard by old Linnaeus. A system of classification answering all purposes of precise distinction is a desideratum which will never be attained. Although it seems to be of primary importance to have a definite idea of what is to be understood by Genus, Species, and Variety, these terms have never been satisfactorily explained, and they have really not a very exact meaning. This question is entirely left to the judgment of the particular authors; and every botanist has his own opinion on the matter and follows generally a system of his own. Thus we find in systematic botany the greatest incongruities in the matter of distinctive characters required to justify the establishing of a new genus or species.

From a practical point of view, and for the sake of clearness, it seems to me more reasonable that the range of genus and species should be less limited, i.e. to admit less genera and more species; and on the other hand, less species and more varieties. If such a rule were adopted, the botanical names would more clearly indicate the affinities of plants than the multitude of new generic and specific appellations, separated from the names of the original genus and species — separations which are often founded on characteristics of little value. Take the genus Begonia of Linnaeus
as an example. It has been divided by Klotzch into 41 new
genera. Bentham and Hooker, in their Genera Plant. I, 842,
reject these altogether, admitting only the genus Begonia.
The number of names of plants met now-a-days in botanical
works is enormous; and it can hardly be supposed that there is a
single botanist who would be able to retain in his memory even
the generally admitted generic names, to say nothing of the
synonyms.
I know well that in entering a protest against the multiplication
of generic and specific names in botany, I tread on delicate ground.
I would never have dared, with my modest knowledge and ex-
perience in botanical matters, to profess an opinion so little
coinciding with the ideas of the majority of botanists, had not my
judgment been principally guided by the experiences laid down
in Bentham and Hooker's Genera Plantarum. The eminent
authors of this work reject about one-half of the hitherto proposed
genera (or assign to them the rank of subgenera at the most).
As regards the hitherto described species, they seem to reduce
them in a much larger proportion and throw together large heaps of
useless synonyms. Thus they reduce the species of Roses from
250 enumerated species to 30; those of Rubus from 500 to 100;
of Cinnamomum from 50 to 10; of Nasturtium from 80 to 20; of
Gossypium from 13 to 3——4, etc. Other competent botanists,
having made experiments in cultivating the various species of
Capsicum, described in systematic works, have come to the con-
clusion that all cultivated Capsica are nothing but varieties of C.
annuum L.
I would not like to be credited, however, with advocating a
superficial examination of plants, and a generalization in the de-
scriptive details; nor have I any fault to find with a minute
differentiation and dividing in systematic botany, supposing these
characters apply to subgenera and varieties, and are not intended
to raise plants unreasonably to generic or specific rank. It cannot
be denied that a careful distinction of the characters, and
numerous divisions and subdivisions in systematic works essen-
tially facilitate the determination of plants. But an extravagant
nomenclature cannot but confuse the notions which systematic bo-
tany ought to exhibit with respect to the relative affinities of plants.
I am inclined to believe that in the majority of instances the irrelevant naming of new species and genera arises from vanity in some writers, desirous of affixing their names to new scientific appellations. For this reason botanists are often in a great hurry to establish a new species, based perhaps upon the examination of a single specimen or other inadequate material, as even in case of this new name being subsequently rejected, it remains at least preserved among the synonyms. I do not think that I am exaggerating in asserting that more than one-half of the new specific names now-a-days proposed may be considered as useless synonymy ballast. Would it not be better in describing a supposed new plant to give its more prominent characters, placing it temporarily as a variety near the species to which it is most nearly allied, and to wait for further material? But there is less merit in discovering a variety than a new species!

It is really astonishing to read what characteristics are sometimes adduced as foundations for a new species. Carrière (Revue Hort. 1860, p. 30) describes Celtis Davidiana as a new species from Peking. Although he had not seen either the flowers or the fruit, but only the leaves, he declares it "une espèce très distincte par ses feuilles." Planchon (D. C. Prodr. XVII, p. 172) maintains this species, but considers it as imperfectly known. He states however: A C. sinensis differs foliis basi minus obtusis nunquam subcordatis, reticulo nervulorum laxo et vix conspicuo nec densiusculo et promineente, colore luteo viridi nec exsiccatione rufidulo —a C. Bungeana (also described as a Peking species) foliis saturatius viridibus nec exsiccatione glaucescentibus.

The authors, in founding a new species upon the colour of the dried leaves only, seem to be ignorant of the fact that the same leaves, according to the method of drying them (quickly or slowly), often assume very different colours. Old leaves are much darker than young leaves of the same tree. Sometimes, as in the case of Sophora japonica, the leaves of young specimens are quite different in shape from those of old trees. Maximowicz, who has had ample opportunity of elucidating this question with the help of the Peking specimens of Celtis in the herbaria of St. Petersburg, refers them all to C. sinensis Pers. (see his Deëas. XIII, p. 27), and identifies the latter also with Thunberg's C. orientalis of Japan.
(C. japonica Planch.). My own experience agrees with Maximowicz's view. I am not able to distinguish more than one species of Celtis in the neighbourhood of Peking; where the tree is frequently seen in the plain and in the mountains. Its leaves vary in shape on the same tree, being generally ovate, oblong, but sometimes also cordate. They are either perfectly smooth or rough to the touch (especially on young trees). I have sent specimens with variously shaped leaves on the same branch to the Muséum d'Histoire naturelle of Paris. Its drupes are always black when ripe. A specimen of the Peking tree sent in 1869 to Dr. Hance was determined as C. sinensis. The latter is mentioned also in the Flora hongkongensis.

Carrière describes also (Revue Hort. 1867, p. 340) two new Poplars from China, again only from a few leaves he had received, viz.: Populus tomentosa and P. Simoni, although it is known that the leaves of some Poplars are very liable to variation. Maximowicz thinks (Fragm. Flora Asie orient. p. 49) that the first is the common Populus alba.

In another instance Carrière does not hesitate to apply the new name of Ailantus floreascens to a young plant received from China and cultivated in Paris (Revue Hort. 1865, p. 366). But when ten years later the tree first flowered, it turned out to be Cedrela sinensis Adr. Juss., belonging to quite a different order (ibid. 1875, p. 86).

The same French botanist (ibid. 1867, p. 451; 1868, p. 10; 1870, p. 17) has named four (supposed) new species of Ampelopsis from North-China, viz.: A. palmiloba, A. dissecta, A. tuberosa, and A. napiformis. He was evidently not aware that the Flora of North-China had been previously studied by Dr. Bunge, who described the same plants under other good specific names; and thus Carrière produced four useless new names.

Botanists in Europe, when receiving cultivated specimens from foreign countries, generally have no scruples in describing them as new species, without taking into consideration the variations which cultivation may have brought about in these plants. Thus Gossypium Nanking. Meyen, Nicotiana chinensis Fisch. (D. C. Prodr. XIII, 1, 559), and Avena chinensis Steudel (Gram. 231),
have been put forward as new species cultivated in China, and not known from elsewhere. But it is a well-established fact that Cotton was unknown in China before the 6th century, and that its cultivation in this country began only in the 11th century. Tobacco, introduced from Manila in the 17th century, was previously unknown in China. *Acena chinensis*, considered by some botanists a variety of our European *A. nuda*, is even not distinguishable from the latter species.

This unhappy tendency of botanists to discover new species even among common cultivated plants renders the interesting researches into the geographical distribution of plants and the history of cultivated species very difficult, and leads to erroneous conclusions. It seems to me of greater interest to prove that the range of a known European plant extends as far as Eastern Asia, than to discover there one or more new species of the same genus.

*Artemisia indica* L., *A. igniaria* Maxim., and *A. lavandulæfolia* D. C. have been described as distinct Chinese species. Maximowicz has shown (Decas. XI, 536) that they are all identical with the common European *A. vulgaris* L., or slight varieties of it.

*Galium pauciflorum* Bge. (Peking), *G. sororium* Hance, and *G. strigosum* Thbg. (Japan), are according to the same author (D. XVI, 259) all identical with our common *G. Aparine* L.

In the same way Maximowicz considers *Ulmus pumila* Pall. (Eastern Siberia, Mongolia, North-China) as a variety of our common *Ulmus campestris* L. Planchon’s *U. Davidiana* from North-China seems also to belong to the same species.

The multiplication of synonyms, increasing every year, and the conflict of opinion of authors as to the place and rank to be assigned to a plant in the system, have become a serious evil and inconvenience to all who have to deal with modern botany. It is impossible to obtain any uniformity of view among authors in this regard. Owing to this unsettled state of nomenclature in botanical science, the original design aimed at in giving a name to a plant, i.e. to distinguish it at once from other plants, becomes quite ineffective. Sometimes it may be more intelligible to quote a popular name of a plant than a scientific one.

Collectors, who may send the same plants for determination to several competent botanists, will be struck when comparing the
lists of the determined species, by the disagreement between the botanists in many instances, which it is sometimes impossible to account for. What does this prove? Certainly not the inadequacy of the botanists who determine the plants, but rather the difficulty of drawing in every case a clear line of distinction between two or several species. In order to convince himself how widely the opinions of different authors diverge with respect to the same plant, its place in the system and its specific name, the reader has only to compare the various monographs on Roses, Allium, Iris, Diospyros, etc. published during the last few years,—or he may open any volume or page of De Candolle's Prodromus and examine the host of synonyms found there, and the errors which botanists impute to each other.

It is a remarkable fact that those botanists who dispose of vast materials, and who in their investigations can refer to a great number of species of the same genus, as for instance the authors of the Genera Plantarum in London, and the botanists of St. Petersburg, are generally inclined to generalize and, while admitting a wide range of specific variations, to restrict the number of species; for they are often called upon to compare a long series of intermediate forms standing between two seemingly quite distinct species, but connected by transitions, and they then have the alternative of combining the two species and the intermediaries into one species with several varieties, or of creating a great number of new specific names. The sound and practical view entertained in this regard by eminent and experienced authors should be more generally adopted and appreciated than is the case. The question is not to recognize a "scientific truth," but merely to assent to a "practical rule" in the way of generalizing and simplifying the intricate state of botanical nomenclature, which will render systematic botany more useful and accessible for reference.

After this digression from the main subject of our investigations let us now show what has been already done in the way of scientific determination of the plants mentioned in Chinese books.
As has been detailed in a lately published paper on the early history of botanical discoveries in China, it is to the Jesuit missionaries that we are indebted for the earliest notices of the more conspicuous plants of China and their native names; but their early publications on botanical matters contain merely popular descriptions and accounts of Chinese plants, and do not deal with scientific names. The first scientific work treating of the Flora of China which attempts to give the Chinese equivalents for the botanical names of some Chinese plants, is Loureiro's *Flora cochinchinensis*, 1788. I should also mention in this place Osbeck's *Voyage to China and the East-Indies*, published about thirty years earlier than the Flora cochin. Osbeck, in enumerating and describing 244 plants which he had collected near Canton and which had been determined by Linnaeus, occasionally gives the transliterated Chinese names, but these are generally sadly perverted. As regards the Chinese names of plants found in Loureiro's book, they are for the greater part correct, and have subsequently served as a basis for investigations of the same kind.

In 1822 Morrison gave in his *English and Chinese Dictionary*, p. 174, under the head of "Flowers," a list of plants which flower in each month of the year in Canton, containing 148 native and scientific names, for which Morrison states he was indebted to J. Reeves. J. Russel Reeves, who died in 1877, aged 73 years, resided for a long time in Canton. He was in the East-India Company's service, and seems to have arrived in China about 1815. Reeves was an able naturalist and made valuable botanical collections. He published an account of some of the articles of the Materia medica employed by the Chinese. 1826.

The 14th chapter of Bridgman's *Chinese Chrestomathy* (Macao 1841) deals with Chinese Botany. This as well as the two other chapters on Natural History (13 and 16, Mineralogy and Zoology) were prepared by Dr. S. Wells Williams, the well-known sinologue, now Professor at New Haven. We find there 445 names of Chinese plants, with the corresponding popular English or scientific appellations. A similar list, comprising 353 names of Chinese plants, is given in Dr. Williams' *English and Chinese Vocabulary* in the Court Dialect, Macao 1844, under the word "Flower." It seems
that these identifications have partly been derived from Loureiro’s Flora cochinchinensis.

In the same year Dr. Williams published the first edition of his valuable *Chinese Commercial Guide*, the 5th and last edition of which appeared in 1863. In the chapter devoted to Chinese Articles of Export a good many scientific names of Chinese economic plants are found. The first attempt to examine the Chinese articles of export, or to bring together the scattered notices of them, had previously been made by Morrison. See “Chinese Repository” II. 1834, p. 447—472. The Report of the commercial delegates attached to the French Embassy of M. de Lagrénée, 1844—46 (see *Etude pratique du Commerce d’Exportation en Chine*, par N. Rondot, 1848), was also made use of in the compilation of the later editions of Dr. Williams’ Commercial Guide. But there is a great deal of original matter to be found in this book, and a sound critical sense displayed in utilizing the material furnished by previous authors.

An article published in Vol. VII. (1848) of the “Repertorium für Pharmacie und practische Chemie in Russland,” p. 565 sq., by G. Gauger, and entitled *Chinesische Roharzneimaterialien*, may be considered as the first attempt to examine and describe Chinese drugs.45 The 54 Chinese drugs described by Gauger were placed in his hands by Dr. P. Kirilow, who from 1832 to 1840 was attached as a physician to the Russian Ecclesiastical Mission at Peking, and whose name is connected with many new Peking plants transmitted to the Botanical Gardens of St. Petersburg, or to his friend N. Turezaninov. Gauger gives a detailed description of these drugs and of their physical properties, accompanied by drawings. The Chinese names are also added, but only in European spelling. As regards the botanical origin of these drugs, Gauger ventures in a few cases only some suggestions.

Dr. A. Tatarinov’s *Catalogus Medicamentorum sinensium*, published at St. Petersburg in 1856, has a far higher value. Tatari-

45 Andr. Clever, of whom I shall speak further on, published in 1682 a small treatise: *Medicamenta simplicia Chinensis*, enumerating 289 Chinese drugs with the Chinese names according to Portuguese orthography. But this pamphlet, translated by Father M. Boym from some Chinese treatise, and without annotations or identifications, has no scientific value.
nov resided in Peking from 1840 to 1850 as physician to the Russian Ecclesiastical Mission. During his long sojourn there he zealously applied himself to the study of the Flora of North-China. He forwarded large botanical collections to the Academy and the Botanical Gardens of St. Petersburg. The Chinese names of the plants are frequently given on the labels attached to his specimens. The Catalogus contains the Chinese names in Chinese characters, with their sounds expressed both in Russian and Latin spelling, of 480 drugs, for the greater part collected by Tatarinov in the Peking apothecaries' shops, and subsequently examined and determined by Prof. Horsinov of St. Petersburg. The scientific names of the Peking plants yielding these drugs were determined from direct examination of the plants collected by Tatarinov. As to the rest the authors seem to rely upon Loureiro and Grosier (Description de la Chine, 1819). All the drugs previously described by Gauger appear also in Tatarinov's list.

Besides these collections Tatarinov presented to the Academy a beautiful set of botanical drawings representing 452 wild plants of the Peking Flora. These carefully coloured drawings, showing also the botanical details of each specimen, were executed from nature by a Chinese artist under the direction of Tatarinov, who also added the Chinese names in Chinese characters. Dried specimens of the same plants are to be found in the St. Petersburg herbaria.

In 1859 Tatarinov accompanied General Ignatiev as interpreter to Peking. He retired from service a long time ago, and now lives in Penza, his native city.

I have seen a series of illustrations of Chinese plants similar to those in Tatarinov's collection in the possession of Mr. C. A. de Scatchkoff, who was Director of the Russian Meteorological Observatory in Peking from 1850 to 1857, and subsequently Russian Consul in Kuldja and Consul-General in Shanghai. Mr. Scatchkoff, who devoted himself to the investigation of Chinese Agriculture, and who has published many interesting papers on the subject, has also transmitted valuable botanical collections (comprising many cultivated plants) to St. Petersburg, where they have been determined. In the memoranda accompanying his specimens the Chinese names are generally given. He had
engaged a Chinese artist to paint for him from nature the economic and ornamental plants cultivated at Peking. These valuable drawings give also the botanical details of each plant.

As has been stated in a previous chapter, the Japanese early adopted Chinese names for their medicinal, economic and other plants. But, although they have generally tried to apply a Chinese appellation of a plant to the same plant in Japan, it often happens that a plant in Japan bearing the same name as in China belongs to a different species; in some instances even quite dissimilar plants are designated by the same Chinese characters in the two countries.

The first attempt of a European to study the Flora of Japan was made by Andr. Cleyer, a German, who visited Yeddo in 1683 as envoy of the Dutch East-India Company, and resided in Nagasaki as chief supercargo of the Dutch factory till 1686. His letters on Japanese plants addressed to Dr. Mentzel have been published in the Academiae naturae curiosorum Ephemerides, 1686—1700. Cleyer’s descriptions as well as the drawings appended have little value. The Japanese names are sadly perverted. Sprengel in his “Geschichte der Botanik,” II. 68, gives the scientific names of as many of Cleyer’s plants as it was possible to ascertain. The botanist Ch. H. Erndtel, in a letter dated Dresden 1716 and addressed to Jac. Breyn of Danzig, refers to a collection of 1360 Japanese drawings of plants on paper of the Paper mulberry, which Mentzel had received from Cleyer and which he had subsequently presented to the Royal Library at Berlin. In 1878, when I visited Berlin, I saw these drawings and was much disappointed, for they were miserably and inaccurately executed, and have no scientific value. The paper used is of an inferior kind and not that manufactured from the bark of Broussonetia papyrifera, as Erndtel asserts.

But there is in the same Library another volume entitled Cleyer’s Flora japonica, containing only 101 coloured drawings of Japanese plants, apparently painted from nature in Japan by Cleyer’s order. These have more claim to botanical correctness. Cleyer has himself added some memoranda. The names are given in Japanese letters only. This volume was referred to Dr. Siebold, who in 1856 drew up an Index of the drawings and added the scientific botanical names.
A few years after Clever had left Japan, another German, an able explorer and botanist, arrived in that country and spent about two years there. Engelberth Kaempfer was born in 1651 at Lemgo (Lippe-Detmold). In 1683 he accompanied a Swedish Embassy to Persia as Secretary, but on its return he separated from it and proceeded to the Persian Gulf, where a Dutch fleet was stationed at that time. In 1685 he entered the service of the Dutch East-India Company as a surgeon, and arrived at Batavia in 1689. In the following year a Dutch squadron was sent out to Siam and Japan, and Kaempfer was of the party. On the 22nd September 1690 he reached Nagasaki. He had two opportunities of visiting Yeddo, performing the journey thither partly by the overland road, partly by sea. His first stay in Yeddo lasted from March 13 to April 5, 1691; the second from March 31 to April 29, 1692. He left Japan in the same year, returned to Europe in 1694, and died in 1716 in his native country. For further biographical details regarding Kaempfer see Rosny's "Variétés orientales," 1872, p. 98, where an interesting account of his life and his scientific works is found. Kaempfer was not only a skillful botanist, but an acute observer in general. He has connected his name imperishably with the history of botanical discoveries in Japan, and the accounts he noted down with respect to the Japanese Empire and other countries he visited will always stand as a model of accurate and judicious information and keen observation. In 1712 he brought out his Amoenitates Exoticae. The second fasciculus (p. 466) contains an account of the plants from which paper is manufactured in Japan; in the third fasciculus (p. 605) a treatise on the Tea-shrub is found. Besides this the whole of the fifth fasciculus (p. 767—912) is devoted to the description of more than 500 species of Japanese plants, 31 of which are represented by excellent drawings. The Japanese names of the plants are always given, and Chinese names in Chinese characters are generally added. Although these characters are often wrongly or indistinctly printed, there is no difficulty in deciphering them. Kaempfer's botanical descriptions are generally faithful, in some instances much detailed.

The Amoenitates Exoticae represents only a small portion of
Kaempfer's labours. After his death all his unpublished manuscripts as well as his herbarium, namely the plants collected in Japan and his drawings of Japanese plants, were purchased by Hans Sloane, the well-known collector and promoter of science, whose immense collections subsequently gave origin to the British Museum. In 1727 Kaempfer's valuable *History of Japan*, etc. was published in English, translated from his original (Dutch) manuscript. In 1791 Sir J. Banks edited a volume with the title: *Icones selectae plantarum quas in Japonia collogit et delineavit E. Kaempfer, ex archetyp. in Museo Britannico asservatis*. It contains 59 plates.

After Kaempfer the first botanist to visit Japan was C. P. Thunberg, a Swede, born in 1743, died in 1822. He landed at Nagasaki in 1775, and on the 4th March of 1776 proceeded by the overland route to Yeddo, where he arrived on the 30th June. As the fruit of the botanical collections made during his stay in Japan he published in 1784 his *Flora japonica*, to which 39 drawings of Japanese plants are appended. Besides this he published in 1794 his *Icones Plantarum japonicarum*, 50 plates. I have seen in St. Petersburg another unpublished volume of drawings representing Japanese plants, executed from nature by order of Thunberg. As a scientific botanical nomenclature did not exist at the time when Kaempfer wrote, Thunberg tried to name those Japanese plants described in the *Amoenitates exoticæ*, which had not been previously determined and named by Linnaeus, and to identify the native names mentioned by Kaempfer.

Much more was done in this respect by Dr. Siebold, the well-known and ardent explorer of Japan.—Ph. Fr. v. Siebold, a German, was born in 1796 in Würzburg. After having studied medicine and natural sciences he went to Holland, and entering the service of the Dutch East-India Company, set out for Batavia, where he arrived in 1822. The next year he was sent as a physician and naturalist to Japan. He lived several years in the Dutch Factory at Decima (Nagasaki). In 1826 he had an opportunity of visiting Yeddo. As the Japanese government suspected him of being in possession of a map of Japan, he was obliged to leave the country in 1830, and returned to Europe,
where he employed himself for several years in publishing the results of his researches in Japan. In 1859 he went again to that country, where he lived till 1863. He died at Munich in 1866.—Siebold had forwarded one portion of his vast botanical collections accumulated in Japan to Prof. C. L. Blume in Java, who described some of these plants in the *Museum botanicum Lugduno-Batavorum*, 1849—51. H. Zollinger published a few years later an Index of Siebold's plants in the Java Herbarium (Buitenzorg). The greater part of his dried plants, however, had been transmitted by Siebold to the Museum of Leyden, and from these materials Prof. Miquel compiled his *Prolusio Flora japonica*, 1865—67. Siebold himself, with the assistance of Prof. J. G. Zuccarini of Munich, had commenced much earlier to describe his Japanese botanical collections, but their publications were left in a fragmentary state. The most interesting of them is the *Flora japonica*, sive plantae quas in Imperio Japonico collegit, descriptis, ex parte inipsis locis pingendas curavit Dr. Ph. Fr. de Siebold, digessit Dr. Zuccarini, 1839—1844, 127 plates. Miquel attempted to continue this iconographical work and published, from 1868—1870, 23 additional plates. The original drawings to which Siebold alludes on the title pages (about 600) have been purchased, together with a set of Siebold's dried Japanese plants, from his widow, by the Academy of St. Petersburg. The drawings form eight large volumes and are beautifully executed.

Siebold always tried to ascertain the Japanese names of the plants he gathered, and also noted down the Chinese characters applied in Japan to these plants. He was assisted in this task by native botanists, and we can, I think, assume that his identifications are quite reliable.

In 1852 J. Hoffmann and H. Schultes published a small pamphlet entitled: *Noms indigènes d'un choix de Plantes du Japon et de la Chine*, d'après les échantillons de l'herbier des Pays Bas. A new enlarged edition of this list was issued in 1864. It is an

46 I know only the 127 plates published by Siebold and Zuccarini. Franchet and Savatier, Enum. plant. Japon., Pref. XIII., state that in all 175 of these plates have been published, but in the second vol. p. 665 the authors assign to the *Flora japonica* 150 plates only.
Index of 6—700 plants of Japan (not of China, as might be inferred from the title), with the scientific botanical names and their equivalents in Japanese and in Chinese characters used in Japan to designate these plants. The authors of this list depend entirely upon Siebold's identifications, and, as has been already explained, it is a mistake on their part to assert that the Chinese characters they give are always referred by the natives to the same plants, both in Japan and in China.

The late Dan. Hanbury, well known for his numerous papers elucidating the history and the botanical origin of drugs, described in the "Pharmaceutical Journal," 1860—61, a collection of Chinese drugs, received from Shanghai, under the title of Notes on Chinese Materia medica. It was reprinted, after the author's death, in 1875, by J. Ince in D. Hanbury's Science Papers, p. 209—277. This pamphlet, illustrated by numerous wood-cuts, and giving the Chinese names in Chinese characters of 141 drugs, 83 of which are derived from the vegetable kingdom, is a very valuable contribution to our knowledge of Chinese Materia medica.

The same cannot be said with respect to the Essai sur la Pharmacie et la Matière médicale des Chinois, published in 1865 by a French Pharmacologist, O. Debeaux. He was attached to the French army in China in 1860, and had an opportunity of making botanical and other collections at several places in China. He is also the author of an article on the Tinctorial Plants of China, of a Florula of Shanghai (1875), a Florula of Chefoo (1877), and a Florula of Tientsin (1879). In all these papers we meet with a profusion of Chinese names of plants expressed in French spelling, but in the majority of cases they have no resemblance to the real ones. In my article: On the Study and Value of Chinese Botanical Works (1871), p. 47, 48, I have given some specimens of the information supplied by Debeaux with respect to Chinese Botany, and shall therefore not return to the subject.

Ten years ago (1871) Dr. Fr. Porter Smith brought out a book with the title Contributions towards the Materia medica and Natural History of China, which has often been quoted as a standard work in this department by people who cannot discern its real
value, and who rely upon the assurance with which the author's information is presented. Dr. P. Smith's book indeed contains notices of a great number of Chinese drugs: Chinese and scientific names are always given and identified without any hesitation. One might believe that Chinese Pharmacology is as well known to Europeans as our own drugs are to us, and that Dr. P. Smith has left nothing to be done in this department. But if any one attempts to examine the matter thoroughly, he will soon be aware of the arbitrary character of his identifications and of the insufficiency of the knowledge we really possess with regard to Chinese drugs and economic plants. Thus, P. Smith's scientific denominations of Chinese plants, being drawn without any critical discernment from trustworthy and untrustworthy sources, have little value and render his book unreliable for any scientific purpose. It cannot however be denied that there are in it many interesting accounts, translated from Chinese works, relating to the medical virtues ascribed by the Chinese to their drugs.

Three years after P. Smith's book on Chinese Materia medica was published, a compilation of the same character appeared in French, with the title: *La Matière médicale chez les Chinois*, par le Dr. J. L. Soubeiran et M. Dabry de Thiersant, Consul de France en Chine, 1874. Although professing to be an original work, it is nothing but a compilation from P. Smith and Debeaux, made without criticism and without the Chinese characters of the native names. The best portion of the book is the able preface by Prof. Gubler.47

Such are the sources from which in Anglo-Chinese Dictionaries of later date, and also in the Reports on Trade at the Chinese

47 In a letter addressed to me by my late friend Dan. Hanbury, in Dec. 1873, I find the following passage:

"I recently forwarded to you Soubeiran and Dabry's work on Chin. Materia medica—not on account of its scientific value, which is small indeed, but because it is proper that you should have at hand all such books, good or bad. What can we say of such statements as that the Dragon's Blood of the Chinese is derived from *Pterocarpus* "Draco, a tree only known to grow in Tropical America? Or that the *Valeriana celtica* of the Styrian Alps grows in Szechuen and Shensi? or that *Santalum Freyn-cinetionum*, a native of the Sandwich Islands, is found in Cochinchina? (p. 278, 169, 157), and many, many similar assertions for which no "pieces justificatives" are offered. It is impossible to speak with commendation of this work. It is largely copied from P. Smith, whose errors it adopts and repeats."
Treaty Ports, the scientific names for Chinese plants have been derived. The authors of these dictionaries generally rely upon P. Smith, and it is to be regretted that such names as for instance *Corchorus pyriformis*, *Cucumis longa*, given by him as scientific denominations, but unintelligible to botanists, have found their way from his Chinese Materia medica even into Dr. Williams' valuable dictionary (p. 861, 466). The latter gives generally, as far as Chinese Botany is concerned, the best information obtainable.

I should not close these remarks without cautioning the student of Chinese Botany against a French essay towards identifying Chinese names of plants, which was published ten years ago, and is the worst of its kind we have had the misfortune to notice. It is from the untrustworthy pen of P. Perny, and appeared as an appendix to his *Dictionnaire Français-Latin-Chinois*, 1872, a pretentious work beautifully printed, but which, I am sorry to say, puts sinologues to blush. As to the botanical part, the author says (General Preface and Preface to the Appendix on Natural History): "La synonymie que nous donnons ici est probablement la plus complète qui ait parue jusqu'à ce jour" (he should have added "et la plus erronée"). Indeed Perny identifies 2375 names of Chinese plants. He reproduces occasionally previously-made identifications (Hoffmann and Schultes, Williams), but the bulk of the "synonymie" is peculiar to the author's "researches." We may ask how he succeeded in bringing together such a mass of erroneous notions on the most common and generally known subjects, for it is not too much to say that it is difficult to meet with one correct statement in this essay. Even a student of Chinese unacquainted with Chinese Botany knows that *麪子* *ku tse* is not Rice, as Perny asserts (1933), but *Millet* (Setaria italica); that *小米* *siao mai* is not *Rye* (2136), but *Wheat*; that *柏 po* is not *Stillingia sebifera* (2201), but *Thuja*, or sometimes the *Cypress*; that *白楊 po yang* is not the *Cypress* (852), but the *Poplar*; and that the *Water-melon* is not *絲瓜 sz' kua* (which is a *Luffa*), and also not *西瓜 (1744)*, but *西瓜 si kua*. 
CHAPTER III.

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF CHINESE WORKS AND AUTHORS.

Having given in a previous chapter a sketch of the principal Chinese treatises on Materia medica, Botany, Agriculture, etc., I now venture to offer a more complete enumeration, not only of such Chinese works as relate to that branch of literature, but of many other writings on Medicine, History, Geography, Philosophy, etc., which are frequently quoted in the Pen ts'ao kang mu and other works of the same class.

Attention has already been drawn in a previous chapter to the great difficulty which a student of Chinese botanical writings has to contend with in ascertaining the time when the numerous works quoted in these writings were composed. We have to seek information about them in numerous Chinese bibliographical works not always readily accessible. It is therefore not surprising that European sinologues, in translating Chinese botanical articles, generally confine themselves to the expression "a Chinese author says," without attempting to give the date of the publications they quote. Even in the translations made from Chinese works on Natural History and Agriculture by the great sinologue Stan. Julien (see for instance his "Culture des Muriers en Chine") we seldom find any indication of time with respect to the quotations he translates.

I have endeavoured to elucidate this question as far as possible, and to ascertain from various sources the time to which the authors and works quoted in the Pen ts'ao kang mu belong. My list will also be found to contain many other titles of Chinese works mentioned in the Kuang kün fang pu, the Chi wu ming shi t'ü k'ao, the Tu shu ts'ai ch'eng, etc. It is hoped that it will afford some assistance to those who wish to study Chinese books on Natural History, and that it will prepare the reader for the better comprehension and appreciation of these writings.

Li Shi chen, the author of the Pen ts'ao kang mu, assumes on the part of his readers a most extensive knowledge of Chinese
literature, as in quoting works and authors he never deems it necessary to give the full title, or the full names, of the authors whose patronymic appellation he frequently omits, giving only the cognomen. Thus, for instance, by 從正 he means 張從正 Chang Ts'ung cheng (an author of the Kin dynasty); by 機 he means 汪機 Wang Ki (Ming dynasty). It is known that every author, besides his patronymic (姓) and his cognomen (名), possesses also a literary appellation (字) and one or more pseudonyms (號). By all these names he is promiscuously designated, and their identity can only be proved by referring to his biography. Sometimes the name of an author is ambiguous. 大明 Tu Ming is an author's name as well as that of the Great Ming dynasty. 唐 Ts'ang and 朱 Sung are patronymic denominations as well as names applied to Chinese dynasties. Thus the authors' names 唐愷微 Ts'ang Shen wei and 朱王微 Sung Wang wei may either refer to Shen wei, an author of the Ts'ang dynasty, or to Wang wei, an author of the Sung.—There were two Sung dynasties in China; one in the 5th century, the other from the 10th to the 13th century. There was also a state called Sung in China 500 or 600 years B. C. The Chinese, when indicating the time of an author, are accustomed to give the name of the dynasty, but in the case of the character Sung we are often left in doubt what time is meant.—It sometimes occurs also that authors of different dates bear the same name. There was a celebrated author 周密 Chou Mi in the 13th century. Authors of the same name wrote in the 4th and 10th centuries. 張華 Chang Hua was an author of the 3rd century. We find the same name among the authors of the Sung.

Before giving the results of my researches into Chinese literature, I may be allowed to notice briefly the general works from which information has been derived in order to ascertain the date of publication and other particulars regarding works and authors frequently quoted in Chinese writings on Natural History and Medicine.

Li Shi chen, in the first chapter of his Pen ts'ao kang mu, puts at the head of his work a list of nearly 1000 works and authors from which he made extracts for the compilation of his Materia
medica. They are enumerated under three heads and several subdivisions, viz.:

I. History of Chinese Materia medica. Review of 42 Chinese standard works of this class (already dealt with in the first chapter of these notes).

II. Medical Treatises.
   a. Titles of 84 works quoted in the ancient Pen ts‘ao (or Treatises on Materia medica) previous to Li Shi chen.
   b. Additional list of 276 works first quoted by Li Shi chen.

III. Classical, historical, geographical, philosophical and other works.
   a. Titles of 150 works quoted in the ancient Pen ts‘ao.
   b. Additional list of 440 works first quoted by Li Shi chen.

Under the second and third heads are comprised dry lists, arranged in no intelligible order, without any indication of period, giving nothing but the name of the author together with the title of the book. Sometimes the author’s name is omitted. As there is no break between the name of the author and that of the work, it is in many cases difficult, even for a Chinese scholar, to separate them, or to decide whether the name of a book or an author is meant. There is no doubt that a large number of the works quoted in the Pen ts‘ao kang mu were already lost when it was compiled, and that Li Shi chen’s quotations were merely taken from previous works on Materia medica, especially, as he himself intimates, from the Pen ts‘ao compiled in the 12th century by T‘ang Shen wei. (See above Hist. Chin. Mat. med. No. 26.)

As regards the sources of my information on Chinese Bibliography, I would in the first place mention A. Wylie’s admirable Notes on Chinese Literature, which without doubt occupies one of the most prominent places among European scientific publications on China. It is a matter of regret that the eminent author has generally confined himself in his investigations to such works as he knew from actual examination. Thus the greater part of the works and authors met with in the Pen ts‘ao do not appear in Wylie’s book. Besides this some biographical notices referring to Chinese authors have occasionally been derived from the late W. F. Mayers’ well-known Chinese Reader’s Manual. But for the bulk of Chinese
authors and works appearing in the subsequent list, information has been drawn from Chinese bibliographical works, catalogues, collections of reprints, etc.

In the first place I consulted the 四庫全書總目 Sz' k'u ts'üan shu tsung mu (abbrev. S. K.), the great descriptive catalogue of the Imperial library, in 200 books, completed in 1790; and the abridgment of it, the 四庫全書簡明目錄 Sz' k'u ts'üan shu kien ming mu lu (abbrev. S. K. K.), in 20 books. I quote the latter, which is more accessible, in preference, and refer to the larger catalogue only for the works omitted in the abridged edition.—There is yet another abridgment of the larger catalogue, published at the same time, with the title 四庫全書目略 Sz' k'u ts'üan shu mu lio. It gives only the titles, the authors' names, and the date of publication of the works, but enumerates all works found in the large catalogue.

The well-known Encyclopædia 文獻通考 Wen hien t'ung k'ao (abbrev. W. H.), compiled in the beginning of the 14th century by Ma Tuan lin, contains 75 books (174—249), dealing with Bibliography, 經籍 king ts'i. It furnishes interesting details on many ancient Chinese works now lost.

A supplement to it was published in 1586 under the title Sz (續) Wen hien t'ung k'ao. It includes 16 chapters (172—188) on Bibliography.

Some of the Dynastic Histories give in a separate section on Bibliography lists of works existing during the respective dynasties, but generally without explanatory details or indication of date of publication.

The earliest catalogue of this kind is found in the 前漢書 Ts'ien Han shu, or History of the Former Han, book 30 藝文志 i wen chi (abbrev. HAN LIT.). It refers to the close of the first century B. C.

The next bibliographical compilation is found in the 隋書 Sui shu, History of the Sui (A.D. 589—618), books 32—35, 經籍. It enumerates the works published during this and the preceding dynasties (abbrev. SUI LIT.).

The 唐書 T'ang shu, or History of the T'ang (A.D. 618—907). There are several works of this name, the Kiu (old), and the Sin (new) T'ang shu, dating from the 9th and 11th centuries. I
always refer to the 唐書合鈔 Tang shu ho ch'ao, a combination of both, published in 1733. The section on literature, king tsi, is comprised in books 72—75 (abbrev. T'ANG LIT.).

The 朱史 Sung shi, or History of the Sung (A.D. 960—1280). Section on literature, i wen, books 202-209. (Abbrev. SUNG LIT.).

The 明史 Ming shi, or History of the Ming (A.D. 1368—1644). Section on literature, i wen, books 96—99. (Abbrev. MING LIT.).

The Great Encyclopædia 太平御覽 Tai p'ing yü lan, in 1000 books, published in 983, gives at the beginning a list of 1690 works from which quotations have been borrowed; but the time of publication is not indicated, nor are the titles arranged chronologically. (Abbrev. T. P.)

There is another Encyclopædia, 事言要元 Shi yen yao yüan, published in 1618, in which a very interesting bibliographical compilation is found. Between 2000 and 3000 works are noticed there. The list is chronologically arranged according to the dynastic periods. The names of the authors and occasionally other particulars are given. This list has been of great assistance to me in my investigations. (Abbrev. S. Y.)

Many of the minor treatises and articles quoted in the  Pens'ao kang mu are found in the numerous 叢書 Ts'ung shu, or Collections of Reprints. A catalogue of a part of these repositories was drawn up in 1799 with the title 彙刻書目合編 Huai k'o shu mu ho pien, in 10 books, enumerating all the reprinted treatises contained in each ts'ung shu. Sometimes the author's name and date of publication are given, but generally we find only the dry titles of the treatises. (Abbrev. H. K.)

Much important bibliographical information has been drawn from the following four ts'ung shu:

The 漢魏叢書 Han Wei ts'ung shu, a collection of works written during the Han, Wei, Tsin, Liang, and Sui dynasties. The last edition reproduces nearly a hundred ancient literary works. See Wylie l. c. p. 209. (Abbrev. H. W.)

The 五百家小說 Wu po kia siao shuo, published during the Ming dynasty and reproducing 480 minor treatises by authors of the Han, Tsin, Liang, Wei, T'ang, Sung, and Ming dynasties. 48 books. (Abbrev. W. P.)
The 昭代叢書 Chao tai tsʻung shu. The first edition was published in 1697; the last much enlarged edition which I have consulted bears the date of 1834. It contains 560 more or less comprehensive articles by authors of the present dynasty. (Abbrev. C. T.)

The 函海 Han hai, a collection of literary productions of various times, 160 in all, published in 1783. See H. K. V. 56. (Abbrev. H. H.)

With respect to medical authors and treatises some information, not found elsewhere, has been derived from the 東醫寶鑑 Tung i pao kien, a general work on Medicine of Corean origin, already mentioned. The author places at the head of his work some short bibliographical notices. (Abbrev. T. I.)

To determine the time of the authors I also consulted several Chinese biographical dictionaries, especially the 朋友錄 Shang yu lu,—see Mayers' Chin. Read. Man. Pref. XVII. (abbrev. SH. Y.)—and the 史姓韻編 Shi sing yün pien (abbrev. SH. S.), published in 1784, in 64 books, a phonetically arranged list of the names of all persons whose biographies are found in the 24 histories, giving also the patronymics and surnames, literary appellations, etc.

Besides the abbreviations already given the following have been introduced into the subsequent bibliographical notes.

P. = Pen tsʻao khang mu (see p. 54). The figure indicates the page of the first book of the Pen tsʻao where the title of the respective work is found.

P. MAT. MED. = list of works on Materia medica in the same Pen tsʻao.

K. = Kuang Kʻün fang pʻu (see p. 70).
T. = Tʻu shu tsʻi chʻeng (see p. 71).
CH. = Chi wu ming shi tʻu kʻao (see p. 72).

These are the sources from which the short bibliographical details furnished in the subsequent list of Chinese works and authors have been derived. The general works quoted above necessarily form the basis of all future investigation into Chinese literature and bibliography; but, as is generally the case with
Chinese books, reference to them is not easy. The reader will hardly imagine the trouble involved in bringing together the fragmentary information presented in the following pages. The bibliographical notices given there have no claim to completeness. The author's sole aim in compiling these notes was to ascertain the time when the works quoted in the Pen ts'ao kang mu and other Chinese books on Natural History, Materia medica and Medicine were published, without entering into details regarding the subjects dealt with in these treatises. It is generally impossible to say, from the mere title of a Chinese book, to what branch of literature it belongs; and even after an examination of the work itself it is often difficult to indicate in a few words its contents. This is especially the case with the writings classed in Chinese catalogues among the 雜家 and the 小説家 (miscellaneous writings and essayists in Wylie's Notes on Chin. literature), and frequently quoted in the Pen ts'ao. In many cases merely the title of the work and the date of publication are given in the following list. The authors are generally quoted only if their names appear in the quotations of the Pen ts'ao. The reader who would desire more information about these works and their authors is referred to the general works on Chinese literature which are invariably quoted.

Although I have apparently exhausted all the Chinese sources of information regarding Chinese literature obtainable in our days, I have not been able to ascertain the date of publication of all the treatises appearing in the list of the Pen ts'ao. As there are many misprints and inaccuracies in the editions of this work now extant, the titles and authors' names are occasionally misspelt. Some errors of this kind have been corrected; others may have escaped my attention. On the other hand, Li Shi chen, in quoting authors or works in his Materia medica, frequently abbreviates the title, or gives the author's pseudonym instead of his true name appearing in the list. I may be allowed to quote a few instances.

The treatise 飲膳正要 Yin shan cheng yao of the P. list med. 16 (No. 1096 of my list) is generally quoted in the text as 正要.

P. list 26 we read 沈括夢溪筆談 Ch'en Kua's Meng k'i pi t'an (see my list No. 510); but in the text of the Pen ts'ao the
title of the same work often reads 沈存中筆談 (the literary name of the author was 存中).

Thus again the work 王梅溪集 (P. list 39; my list No. 1015), writings of Wang Mei k'i, is identical with the 王禎齋集, quoted P. XIV. (sub mo li hua). The same author is also styled 王十朋.

The Pen ts'ao list of medical works gives the titles of a host of collections of medical prescriptions (方), and alchemical receipts of various periods. The origin of many of these I have not been able to ascertain. But I think that no important Chinese treatise quoted in the Pen ts'ao has been omitted in my list, where the reader who in future may investigate the History of Chinese Medicine (a field of inquiry still untrdden by European scholars), will also find a considerable amount of information on the subject.

1. 艾葉傳 Ai ye ch'uan. A treatise on the Artemisia leaf (used as moxa), by Li Yen wen (see No. 258). Ming dyn.—P. med. 16.
2. An kui t'ung chi. See p. 89.
3. 安南志畧 An nan chi liu. An account of Annam, by 黎卷 Li Tse, a native of that country. Close of the 13th cent.—Wylie 33.
4. 茶經 Ch'a k'ing. A treatise on the Tea plant, by 隴 羽 Lu Yü. Middle of the 8th cent.—P. 26.—Wylie 119.—Reprinted in the Ch. descript. part XXI. 36.
5. 茶錄 Ch'a lu. An account of the Tea plant, by Ts'ei Shang (see No. 428).—S. K. K. XII. 21.
6. 茶譜 Ch'a pu. A treatise on Tea, by 毛文錫 Mao Wen si. Sung dyn.—P. 28.—W. H. CCXVIII. 8, where the author is styled 燕文錫 Yen Wen si, a native of Shu (the present Sz' ch'uan).
7. A work with the same title, by 顧元卿 Ku Yuan k'ing of the Ming dyn. is mentioned in the H. K. III. 60.
9. 茶董補 Ch'a tung pu. Selection of extracts from ancient authors regarding Tea, by 陳甄 Ch'en Ki. First half of the 17th cent.—Wylie 119.
10. 戰國策 Chan kuo ts'e. Story of the Contending States, 481—221 B.C. Author unknown. First commented upon by 高誘 Kao Yu of the Han dyn.—P. 23.—Han lit.—Wylie 25.

11. 產乳集馳方 Ch' an ju ts'i yen jang. Medical prescriptions, by 杨歸厚 Yang Kui hou.—P. med. 15.—T'ang lit.

12. 產寶 Ch'an pao, by 慕氏 Ts' an Yin. T'ang dyn.—P. med. 15.—W. H. CCII. 14.

13. 張協賦 Chang Hie fu. Madrigal of Chang Hie (?), who lived during the Tsin period.—P. 27.—Tsin shu 55.—Sui lit.

14. 張籍詩集 Chang Tsi shi ts'i. Poetical works and memoirs of Chang Tsi of the T'ang dyn.—P. 38.—S. K. K. XV. 15.

15. 張東海集 Chang Tung hai ts'i. Collection of the writings of 張汝弼 Chang Ju pi of the Ming dyn.—P. 39.—S. Y.


17. 長慶集 Ch' ang k'ing ts'i, by the famous poet 白居易 Po Ku i, A.D. 772—846. His liter. name was 樂天 Lo t'ien.—P. 39.—W. H.—Mayers 546.

There is a work with the same title by 元稹 Yuan Cheng, A.D. 779—831.—P. 39.—S. K. K. XV. 18.—Mayers 861.

18. 長青山記 Ch' ang ts' in shan ki. Record of the mountain Ch'ang ts'ing (in Kiang nan), by 羅逸 Lo I of the Ming dyn.—Reproduced in the Yu ming shan ki.


20. 菖蒲傳 Ch' ang p' u ch' uan, written also 昌陽傳 Ch' ang yang ch' uan. A Taoist tale by an unknown author, referring to the ch'ang p' u plant (Acorus).—Sung dyn.?—P. med. 16.—Reprinted in the T. LXVIII.

21. 暢異物志 Ch' ang i wu chi, by 陳袒 Ch'en K'i.—P. 30.—T'ang lit.


23. 朝野僞載 Ch' ao ye ts' ien ts'ai, by 張巍 Chang Sho of the 8th cent.—P. 26.—Wylie 162.—Reprinted in the W. P.

25. 册府元龜 Ch‘e fu yüan hui. Encyclopædia. Commencement of the 11th cent.—P. 31.—Wylie 147.

26. 真誥 Chen kao. A Taoist work, by T‘ao Hung k’ing (see p. 42).—P. 36.—Wylie 175.

27. 真臘風土記 Chen la feng t‘u ki. A description of Cambodia, by 周達觀 Chou Ta kuan, a follower in the suite of an envoy from China to that country in the years A. D. 1295—97.—P. 30.—Wylie 47.

This has been translated into French by A. Réusmat (Nouv. Mêl. asiat. I. 134).


30. 彌異傳 Chen i ch‘uan, by 戴祚 Tai Tsu of the Tsin dyn.—P. 34.—Sui lit.

31. 枕中記 Chen chung ki, a Taoist work by Sun Sz‘ mo (see p. 43). Commencement of the 7th cent.—P. med. 13.

There are several works bearing the same title. The P. med. 15 quotes one written by 葉天師 Ye t‘ien shi (not identified).—The W. H. CCXVII. 12 mentions a work Chen chung ki, author unknown, Sung dyn.

32. 針經 Chen king. A treatise on Acupuncture by Huang fu Mi (see No. 271).

33. 陳留耆舊傳 Ch‘en liu k‘i kiu ch‘uan. Han period.—Sui lit. Frequently quoted in the K. and in the T.—Ch‘en liu is an ancient name for the present K’ai fung fu. See also No. 246.

34. 陳子昂集 Ch‘en Ts‘z‘ ang tsi. Collection of the writings of Ch‘en Ts‘z‘ ang of the T‘ang dyn.—P. 27.—W. H. CXXXXI. 5.

35. 沈氏農書 Ch‘en shi nung shu. A work on Agriculture, originally compiled by an author whose surname was Ch‘en, but published in the 17th cent. by 張履祥 Chang Li ssiang.—S. K. CHI. 16.—Reprinted in the C. T.

35a. 岑參詩集 Ch‘en Shen shi tsi. Poems of Ch‘en Shen. T‘ang dyn.—P. 38.—S. Y.

37. 證治要訣 Cheng chi yao kue, by 戴元禮 Tai Yuan li. Yuan dyn.—P. med. 18.—Tung i pao kien 7.
38. Cheng lei pen ts'ao. See p. 47.
42. 烏懷讓 Ch'eng hui lu, by Chou Mi (see No. 48). Yuan dyn.—S. K. CXXXI. 5.
43. 程氏遺書 Ch'eng shi I shu. Sung dyn.—P. 34.—W. H. CCX. 4.
44. Ch'eng te fu chi. See p. 88.
45. 直省志書 Chi sheng chi shu. Frequently quoted in the K. and in the T. It is a topography of the districts of the Chinese empire. Ming, or perhaps commencement of the present dyn.
46. Chi nu ming shi t'u k'ao. See p. 72.
47. 志怪 Chi kuai, by 祖台之 Ts'ou T'ai chi of the Tsin dyn. See his biography, Tsin shu 75.—P. 34.—Sui lit.
There are several works with the same title, but by authors of different times, Sung dyn. (S. Y.), Ming dyn. (S. K. CXLIV. 10), T. P.
48. 志雅堂雜餚 Chi ya t'ang tsu ch'ao, by 周密 Chou Mi. Latter half of the 13th cent. and beginning of the 14th.—P. 31.—S. K. CXXVII. 9.
50. Chi wen shuo. See No. 152.
52. 枝山前聞 Chi shan ts'ien wen. Ming dyn.—Reprinted in the W. P.
54. 質龜論 Chi hui lun, by Chang Shi nan (see No. 1100). Sung dyn.—P. 28.
55. 擒異記 Chi i hi. T'ang dyn.—Reprinted in the W. P.
56. 炎穀子 Chi ku tsê', by 王穀 Wang Jui. T'ang dyn.—P. 35.—S. Y. (T'ang authors).

57. 卓異記 Cho i hi. Record of matters relating to the T'ang dyn., by 陳翱 Ch'en Ao of the T'ang. Others give 李翱 Li Ao as the name of the author.—P. 34.—S. K. K. VI. 13.—Reprinted in the W. P.

58. 餘耕錄 Cho heng lu. Interesting miscellanies relating to the Mongol dynasty, published in 1366 by 趙九成 Ch'ao Shou ch'eng (see No. 762).—P. 32.—Wylie 159.—Mayers 712.

59. 周易通卦斷 Chou i t'ung kua yen. Researches into the symbols of the I king (classic).—P. 33.—Mentioned in the T. P. list (10th cent.).

60. Chou li. See p. 33.

61. 周必大集 Chou Pi ta tsi. Collection of the writings of Chou Pi ta, a celebrated scholar and functionary. A. D. 1126—1204.—P. 39.—Mayers 69.

62. 周顯仙傳 Chou Tien sien ch'üan. Biography of a miraculous individual, who lived on the Lü shan at the close of the 14th cent. (see appendix 30). Written by the Ming Emperor Hung Wu and engraved on a stone monument on that mountain.—P. 37.—S. K. CXLVII. 38.

63. 肢後百一方 Chou hou pi pu i fang. Medical prescriptions, by Ko Hung (see above note 12 [8]).—P. med. 14.—Tung i pao kien 4.

A work with the same title was published by 趙Hung king (see p. 42).—T. XXI.

64. 仇池筆記 Ch'ou chi pi ki, by Su Shi (see No. 991).—P. 32.—S. K. K. XIII. 17.

65. 竹坡詩話 Chu p'o shi hua, by 周紫芝 Chou Tsz' chi, a poet of the 12th cent.—Sh. Y.

66. 竹譜 Chu pu. Treatise on the Bamboo, by 梁凱之 Tai Kai chi of the Tsin dyn.—P. 29.—Quoted in the T'si min yao shu (q. v.).—S. K. K. XII. 24.—Reproduced in the H. W. and in the T. CLXXXVI.

67. A work with the same title by a Buddhist priest 賛寧 Ts'æn ning, who also wrote a treatise on Bamboo sprouts. End of the 10th cent.—P. 29.—Reprinted in the T. CLXXXVII.
68. A work with the same title by 李衎 Li K’an; published A. D. 1299.—Wylie 109.—S. K. K. XII. 7.

69. A work with the same title by 陳鼎 Ch’ien Ting of the present dyn.

70. 竹書紀年 Chu shu ki nien, termed also 汲塚竹書 Ki chung chu shu. Annals of the Bamboo books, which are said to have been found in the tomb of one of the Wei princes, A. D. 284. They begin with the reign of Huang Ti and extend to B. C. 299. Translated in Dr. Legge’s Shu king.—Some plants are occasionally mentioned in this ancient work.—P. 29.—Wylie 19.

71. 諸證辨疑 Chu cheng pien i, by Wu K’iu (see No. 215).—P. med. 18.


72a. Chu kia pen ts’ao. See p. 46.

73. 諸葛恪別傳 Chu ko k’o pie ch’uan. Narrative regarding Chu ko k’o of the kingdom of Wu (period of the three kingdoms).—Sui lit.—San kuo chi 64.

74. 朱子騷騷辨證 Chu tsz’ Li Sao pien cheng. Commentary on the Elegies of Ts’u (see No. 958), by Chu Hi (see No. 75).—P. 36.—W. H. CCXXX. 9.

75. 朱子大全 Chu tsz’ ta ts’u’an. Collection of the writings of the celebrated philosopher 朱熹 Chu Hi. A. D. 1130—1200.—P. 34.—Mayers 79.

76. 初學記 Ch’u hio hi, compiled by 徐堅 Sū Kien. Early part of the 8th cent.—P. 32.—S. K. K. XIV. 2.

77. 指記室 Ch’u ki shi, by 潘قدير P’ian Hüan. Ming dyn.—P. 37.—S. K. CXXXVIII. 6.

78. 模繭譜 Ch’u kien pu. A treatise on wild silk (produced on Oaks, Ailantus, and other trees). Present dyn.—Reprinted in the Ch. descr. part XXII. 72.—See my article on Chinese silk-worm trees, p. 6.

79. 傳家秘實方 Ch’uan hia pi pao fuang. Medical prescriptions, by 孫用和 Sun Yung ho, a celebrated physician of the 11th cent.—P. med. 17.—W. H. CCXXIII. 3.
80. 傳信方 Ch'uan sin fang. Medical prescriptions by 劉禹錫 Liu Yü-si. A. D. 772—842.—P. med. 13.—Mayers 423.


82. 船窻夜話 Ch'uan ch'üang ye hua, by 顧文閔 Ku Wen yen. Sung dyn.—Reprinted in the W. P.

83. 莊子 Chuang tzu', a work on Taoist philosophy, by 莊周 Chuang Chou. 4th cent. B. C. A commentary on it was written by 郭象 Kuo Siang in the 4th cent. of our era.—P. 23.—Wylie 174.

84. 娼樓記 Chuang lou hi. T'ang dyn.—Reprinted in the W. P.

85. 春渚紀聞 Ch'un chu hi wen, by 何遠 Ho Yuan. Sung dyn.—P. 38.—H. K. II. 8.—Reprinted in the W. P.

86. 春秋繁露 Ch'un ts'iu fan lu. Additions to the Spring and Autumn Annals, by 董仲舒 Tung Chung shu. B.C. 156-86.—Wylie 129.—Reprinted in the H. W.

87. 春秋考異郵 Ch'un ts'iu k'ao i yu. P. 33.—This work seems to date from the period of the Former Han.

88. 春秋題辭 Chun ts'iu t'i ts'z. This is a section of the Ch'un ts'iu wei shu (see No. 90).—P. 33.

89. 春秋左傳注疏 Ch'un ts'iu Ts'o ch'üan chu shu. The Spring and Autumn Annals and the Ts'o narrative (Classics), commented upon by 柳叔 Tu Yu. A. D. 222—284.—P. 23.—Wylie 5.—Mayers 684.

90. 春秋繚書 Ch'un ts'iu wei shu. Investigations of the Spring and Autumn Annals, written in the first cent. B. C.—S. Y. (works of the Ts'ien Han period). Frequently quoted in the T. with respect to plants.

91. 春秋元命苞 Ch'un ts'iu yüan ming pao. A section of the preceding.—P. 33.

92. 春秋運斗樞 Ch'un ts'iu yün tou ch'u. A section of No. 90.—P. 33.

93. Chung chi shu. See p. 76.

94. 種蘭訣 Chung lan hui. Directions for the cultivation of the lan flower (Cymbidium and other orchid plants), by 李奎 Li Ku'i. Present dyn.—Wylie 121.
95. 種樹書 Chung shu shu. A work on the art of planting trees, by 倪宗本 Yu Tsung pen. Ming dyn.—P. 34.—H. K. II. 36. About a work with the same title, dating from the T'ang period, see p. 79.

96. 種芋法 Chung yu fa. On the cultivation of the yu plant (Caladium esculentum), by Huang Sheng ts'eng (see No. 249). Reprinted in the T. LIII.

97. Chung hua ku kin chu. See No. 355.

98. Chung nan chi. See No. 542.

99. 中藏經 Chung ts'ang k'ing. A medical treatise (on the viscera?), by Hua To (see note 12 [6]). 3rd cent.—P. med. 13.


102. Fan i ming i. See p. 94.

103. 番禺雜記 Fan yu ts'a ki. Miscellaneous records regarding Fan yu (a district in Kuang chou fu), by 鄭熊 Cheng Hsiung. T'ang dyn.—W. H. CCV. 12.—S. Y.

The P. 26 quotes a work with the same title by an author with the surname 王 Wang. This seems to belong to an earlier period.

104. 范子詮然 Fan ts'ou k'ian, by 范蠡 Fan Li, in the 5th cent. B. C.—P. 27.—W. H. CCXIII. 1.—Mayers 127.

105. 方虛谷集 Fang Hu k'ü ts'ai. Collection of the writings of 方回 Fang Hui (liter. name Hü ku). Sung dyn.—P. 39.—H. K. III. 49.—W. P.

106. 方言 Fang yen. A comparative vocabulary of synonyms used in various districts, ascribed to 楊雄 Yang Hsiung. B. C. 53—A. D. 18. He held office as 宦官 chi ki under the Emperor Cheng Ti, and is therefore sometimes styled Yang chi ki. He is also quoted under the name of 楊子 Yang ts'ou.—P. 28.—Han lit.—S. K. K. IV. 16.—Mayers 883. The Fang yen is reprinted in the H. W.

107. 方舆勝覽 Fang yu sheng lan, sometimes also written 方舆志 Fang yu chi. A geographical work by Chu Mu (see No. 721). Middle of the 13th cent.—P. 29.—S. K. K. VII. 2.
108. 放蠟法 *Fang la fa*. A treatise on the rearing of the wax insect and on the production of white insect wax. Present dyn.—Reprinted in the Ch. desc. part XIX. 60.


110. 飛鴻亭集 *Fei Hung t'ing tsi*, by 吳鵬 *Wu P'eng*. Ming dyn.—P. 23.—S. K. CLXXVII. 7.

111. 霓雲錄 *Fei sün lu*, by 劉績 *Liu Tsi* (liter. name 孟熙 *Meng hi*). Ming dyn.—P. 33.—S. K. K. XIII. 27.

112. 風俗通 *Feng so t'ung*. A collection of miscellaneous notices of ancient matters, by 應劭 *Ying Shao*. 2nd cent. A.D.—P. 32.—Wylie 181.—Reprinted in the H. W.

113. 風土記 *Feng t'u ki*, by 周處 *Chou Ch'u* of the Tsin dyn.—P. 32.—Sui lit.—Tsin shu 58, biography.

114. Feng ts' in yang lao shu. See No. 741.

115. 蜂記 *Feng ki*, by 王允之 *Wang Yüan chi* (see No. 1018).

115a. 浮樓山水記 *Fou ch'ü shan shui ki* (see Appendix 5), by 欧陽頥 *Ou yang Siu* (see No. 867). Reprinted in the Yu ming shan ki (No. 1101a).

116. 婦人方 *Fu jen fang*. Medical prescriptions against female complaints, by 郭稽中 *Kuo Ki chung*, a celebrated physician of the Sung period.—P. med. 21.—S. K. CIII. 50.

117. 婦人方補遺 *Fu jen liang fang* by 陳自明 *Ch''en Tsz ming*. About A. D. 1237.—P. med. 21.—Wylie 79.

118. 婦人方補遺 *Fu jen liang fang pu i*, by 熊宗立 *Hong Tsung li*. Ming dyn.—P. med. 21.—Tung i pao kien 7.

119. 扶南記 *Fu nan ki*. An account of Fu nan (Cochinchina), by 鄒應 *Chu Ying*. 5th cent. A. D. or earlier.—P. 25.—The Sui lit. mentions a work 扶南異物志 *Fu nan i wu chi* by the same author.—A work *Fu nan ki*, but by another author, is quoted in the T. P.

120. 符瑞記 *Fu shui ki*, by 許善心 *Hü Shan sin* of the 6th cent.—P. 33.—Sui lit.

121. 負暄錄 *Fu hün lu*, by 頭文薦 *Ku Wen ts'ien*. Sung dyn.—P. 36.—S. Y.
122. 服椒訣  *Fu tsiao hüe*, by 吳猛 Wu Meng.—P. med. 16.—I am not aware whether this is the *Wu Meng* mentioned in Mayers' Chin. Read. Man. 868, who lived in the 4th cent.

123. 附子傳  *Fu tsz' ch'uan* is an account of the *fu tsz* plant (Aconite) of 彰明 Chang ming (in Sz' ch'uan), by 楊天惠 Yang T'ien hui. Sung dyn.—P. med. 16.—Reprinted in the Ch. descr. part XIV. 16.—T. CXXVII.

124. 附膝痛 chi. See p. 90.

125. 海槎餘錄  *Hai ch'a yü lu*, by 顧玠 Ku Kie. Ming dyn.—P. 31.—S. K. LXXVIII. 16.


127. 海內事 chou ki. See No. 724.

128. 海山記  *Hai shan ki*. T'ang dyn. Author unknown.—Reprinted in the W. P.

129. 海上方  *Hai shang fang*. Medical prescriptions, by 温隱居 Wen Yin kü (Wen the hermit), or properly 温大明 Wen Ta ming. Sung dyn.—P. med. 19.—H. K. II. 36.

There is a work of the same name by Sun Sz mo (see p. 43).—H. K. VI. 41.

130. 海上名方  *Hai shang ming fang*.—P. med. 20.—Sung lit.

131. 海上仙方  *Hai shang sien fang*, by Wen Ta ming (see No. 129).—P. med. 20.—H. K. II. 36.

132. 海上集訨方  *Hai shang ts'i yen fang*. Medical prescriptions, by 崔元亮 Ts'ui Yüan liang. Beginning of the 9th cent.—Biogr. T'ang shu 216.—P. med. 14.—T'ang lit.

133. 海棠譜  *Hai t'ang pu*. A treatise on the *hai t'ang* (Pyrus spectabilis), by 沈立 Ch'en Li. Sung dyn.—Biogr. Sung shi 333.—P. 29.—Reprinted in the T. CCXCIX.

134. A treatise with the same title was compiled by 陳思 Ch'en Sz' in A. D. 1259.—Reprinted in the T. l. c.


137. Han Wei tsung shu. See p. 135.

138. 漢武故事  *Han Wu ku shi*. A record relating to the time of the Emperor Wu Ti, B. C. 140—86, by Pan ku (see No. 941).
Others believe that it was compiled during the T'ang period.—P. 24.—S. K. K. XIV. 30.

139. 漢武帝內傳 Han Wu Ti nei ch'uan. It records the visit of Si wang mu (the mother of the King of the West) to the Emperor Wu Ti of the Han. It is attributed to Pan ku (see No. 941), but was probably written in the 3rd cent.—P. 24.—Reprinted in the H. W.—Wylie 153.

140. 韓非子 Han Fei ts'ao. The works of Han Fei, a philosopher of the 3rd cent. B. C.—Mayers 149.

141. 翰墨全書 Han mo ts'uan shu, by 劉隂季 Liu Ying li. End of the 13th cent.—P. 36.—S. K. CXXXVII. 11.—S. Y. (Yuán authors).

142. 韓詩外傳 Han shih wai ch'uan. Anecdotes of the Shi king, by 韓婴 Han Ying, who flourished between B. C. 178—156.—P. 35.—Reprinted in the H. W.—Legge's Shi king, Proli. 10.

143. 韓文公集 Han wen kung ts'ai. Collection of the writings of 韓愈 Han Yu, a philosopher and poet of the T'ang period, A. D. 768—824.—P. 38.—Mayers 158.

144. 翰苑叢記 Han yuan ts'ung ki, by 陸贄 Lu Chi. T'ang dyn.—P. 37.—S. K. K. XV. 13.

145. Han hai. See p. 136.

146. 養食散方 Han shi san fang. Medical prescriptions.—P. med. 15.—Sui lit.

147. 好事集 Hao shi ts'ai. Sung dyn. (according to the T.).

148. 浩然齋日鈔 Hao jan chai ji ch'uo, by Chou Mi (see No. 48).—P. 31.—S. K. K. XX. 8.

149. 夏小正 Hia xiao cheng. The Calendar of the Hia dynasty, B. C. 2205—1766. It is comprised in the Ta Tai Li ki, or Ritual Classic revised by the senior Tai, about the beginning of our era.—P. 33.—Wylie 5.—Frequently quoted in Chinese botanical works.

150. 達觀賦 Hia kuan fu, by Ko Hung (see No. 579).—P. 36.

151. 暮日記 Hia ji ki, by 劉籍 Liu K'i. Sung dyn.—P. 38.—S. Y.—Reprinted in the W. P.

152. 治聞記 Hia wen hi, a geographical work. T'ang period.—W. H. CCIV. 5.
The P. 38 quotes a work 治聞說 Chi wen shuo. I have some reason for believing that this is a misspelt title and that the above work is meant.

153. 香譜 Hiang pu. A treatise on fragrant substances, by Ye T'ing k'ai (see No. 126). Sung dyn.—P. 29.—Reprinted in the Ch. descr. part XVIII. 41 and T. CCCXV.

154. A treatise with the same title by 洪範 Hung Ch'u, liter. name 駒父 Kū fu. Sung dyn.—P. 29.—S. K. K. XII. 20.—Reprinted in the Ch. l. c. 19 and T. l. c.

155. A treatise with the same title by 陳敬 Ch'en King. Sung dyn.—S. K. K. XII. 20.

156. 孝經按神契 Hao king yüan shen k'i. This is a section of the 孝經緯 Hao king wei, an investigation of the Hao king, or Classic on Filial Piety. Written about our era.—P. 33.—S. Y.


158. 陷虜記 Hien lu ki, by 胡.CreateIndex Hu Kiao. Sung dyn. This record refers to the Wu tai period.—P. 33.—Sung lit.

159. 軒轅本紀 Hien Yüan pen ki (Hien Yüan is one of the names of the Emperor Huang Ti, see p. 41), by 王瓘 Wang Kuan. T'ang dyn.—P. 24.—T'ang lit.

160. 行營雜記 Hsing ying tsa ki, by 趙倉 Chao Ts'ai. Biography, Sung shi 417.—P. 33.

161. 學園雜疏 Hio pu tsa shu, by Wang Shi mou (see No. 185). Ming dyn.—Ch. descr. part II. 148.

162. 河圖括地象 Ho t'u kua ti shiang. This seems to be a production of the Han period. It is quoted in the Po wu chi (see No. 637).—P. 33.—Mayers 177.

163. 河圖玉版 Ho t'u yü pan. Seems to be likewise a production of the Han. It is quoted in the Po wu chi.—P. 33.—Mayers 177.

164. 河洛記 Ho lo ki. T'ang dyn.—W. H. CXCIII. 6.

165. Ho nan t'ung chi. See p. 89.

166. 何仲默集 Ho Chung mo ts'i. Collection of the writings of Ho Chung mo. Ming dyn.—P. 39.—S. Y.
167. 何首烏傳 Ho shou wu ch'uan. A treatise on the medical virtues of the plant Ho shou wu (Polygonum multiflorum), by 李翱 Li Ao, of the 10th cent. Biogr., T'ang shu 211.—P. med. 15.—W. H. CCXVIII. 11.—Reprinted in the T. CLXXII.

168. 鳳冠子 Ho Kuan ts'ei, a philosophical treatise of the 4th cent. B. C.—P. 34.—Han lit.—Wylie 126.


170. 後漢書 Hou Han shu. History of the After Han (A.D. 25—221), by 范曄 Fan Ye.—P. 23.—Wylie 13.


173. 後燕錄 Hou Yen lu. Sung dyn.—T.


175. Hu k'uang t'ung chi. See p. 89.

176. Hu nan t'ung chi. See p. 90.

177. Hu pei t'ung chi. See p. 90.

178. 許真君書 Hü chen k'un shu.—Chen k'un (the Immortalized) is an epithet applied to 許遙 Hui Sun, one of the Taoist patriarchs who lived in the 3rd cent.—P. 36.—Mayer 203.

179. 花鏡 Hua king. Mirror of Flowers, a botanical work by 陳誤子 Ch'ien Hao ts'ei', published in 1688.—Wylie 120.

180. 花經 Hua king. An enumeration of Chinese flowers, by 張翎 Chang I. Sung dyn.—Reprinted in the T. X.

181. 花曆 Hua li. Calendar of flowers, by 程羽女 Ch'eng Yu wen. 17th cent.—Reprinted in the T. XI.


183. A work of the same name by 檀萃 Tan Ts'ui, pseudonym 悲默齋 Yu mo chai. Present dyn.—Ch. descr. part VIII. 30.—T. CXIX. 1.—C. T.


185. 花疏 Hua shu. A treatise on Garden flowers, by 王世懋 Wang Shi mou, died 1591. His biogr., Ming shi 287. He was
a younger brother of Wang Shi chen (see No. 207), and has left many treatises on plants. The Hua shu is reprinted in the T. XI.

186. 花小名 Hua siao ming. On popular names of plants. Author Ch'eng Yu ren (see No. 181). 17th cent.—Reprinted in the T. XI.

187. 化書 Hua shu, written by 朱齊邱 Sung Ts'i k'iu, and completed by 諸謁 T'an Ts'iao. Wu tai period.—P. 27.—S. K. K. XIII. 4.—S. Y.

188. 華山記 Hua shan hi. Account of the Hua mountain (see "Appendix 10").—P. 25.—W. H. CCVI. 1. Author unknown.

189. 華陀方 Hua To fang. Medical prescriptions of the celebrated physician Hua To (see note 12 [6]).—P. med. 13.—According to the Sui lit. these prescriptions were collected by his pupil Wu P'iu (see p. 40).

190. 華陽國志 Hua yang kuo chi. Ancient records relating to Pa and Shu (the present Sz'ch'uan), by 常璩 Ch'ang K'iü of the Tsin dyn.—P. 31.—Reprinted in the H. W.—S. K. K. VI. 23.


192. 淮南八公相韓經 Huai nan pa kung shiang ho king—P. 28.—This work existed during the Liang period and is probably of earlier origin.—Sui lit.


194. 淮南王萬畢術 Huai nan wang wan pi shu, by Liu An (see No. 193).—P. 32.

195. 寳宇志 Huan yü ch'i, by Lo Shi (see p. 86). 10th cent.—S. Y.

196. 灵中記 Huan chung hi, by 郭氏 Kuo (shi). 5th cent. or earlier.—P. 24.—S. Y.—Quoted in the Ts' i min yao shu (q. v.).

197. 灵覽 Huan lan, or 元覽 Yuan lan.—T'ang lit.

198. 灵寳 Huan mi, by Wang Ping (see No. 204). 8th cent.

199. 灵明粉方 Huan ming fen fang. Medical prescriptions.—P. med. 16.—Sung lit.

200. 灵晏春秋 Huan Yen ch'un ts'iu, by Huang fu Mi (see No. 271) of the Tsin dyn.—S. Y.


203. 黃帝書 Huang Ti shu. The book of the Emperor Huang Ti. — P. med. 15. — This work is mentioned in the W. H. CCXX. 14 (sub divination). It seems to be of an early date.

204. 黃帝素問 Huang Ti Su wen. A medical treatise attributed to the Emperor Huang Ti. It has been commented upon by 王冰 Wang Ping, a celebrated physician of the 8th cent. — P. med. 13. — Wylie 78.


206. 皇極經世 Huang ki king shí, by Shao Yung (see No. 686). Sung dyn. — P. 34. — S. K. XI. 12.

207. 彙苑詳注 Hui yuan shiang chu, by 王師貞 Wang Shi chen, liter. appellation 元美 Yuan mei, a native of T'ai ts'ang (Kiang su). Biogr., Ming shi 287. — He lived A. D. 1529—1594, and seems to be the same who wrote the preface to the Pen ts'ao kang mu (see p. 55). — S. K. CXXXVII. 39. — S. Y.

208. 會稽典錄 Hui ki tien lu, a work of the Tsin period. — S. Y.


A work of the same name is noticed in the P. 36. Author 王性之 Wang Sing chi (not found elsewhere). Another work with the same title is mentioned in the S. Y. Author Yang Wan li (see No. 41). Sung dyn.


212. 洪武正韻 Hung Wu cheng yün. A dictionary published during the period Hung Wu (1368—99).—P. 27.—Wylie 9.

213. 鴻烈解 Hung lie kie, by Liu An (see No. 193), second cent. B. C.—P. 23.—Wylie 126.—Reprinted in the H. W.

214. 活法機要 Huo fa ki yao.—P. med. 16 (without author's name).—There are two works with this title, both of the Mongol period. One of them was compiled by Tung Yüan (see p. 48), the other by Chu Chen heng (see p. 49).—H. K. VI. 30, 37.

215. 活人心統 Huo jen sin t'ung, by 呉球 Wu K'iu.—P. med. 18.—Mentioned in Ming lit.—This seems to be the author Wu K'iu tse' of the Sung dyn. (see No. 556).

216. 活套 Huo t'ao, by Tan K'i (see p. 49). Yüan dyn.—P. med. 17.

217. 醫案 I an. A medical work by Tan K'i (see p. 49). Yüan dyn.—P. med. 17.

218. A work with the same title by Pin hu (see No. 916). Ming dyn.—P. med. 19.

219. 醫方選要 I fang süan yao, by 周文采 Chou Wen ts'ai, styled also 周良采 Chou Liang ts'ai. Ming dyn.—P. med. 18.—S. K. CV. 16.

220. 醫方大成 I fang ta ch'eng, by 孫允賢 Sun Yün hien. Yüan dyn.—P. med. 18.—S. K. CV. 14.

221. 醫學正傳 I hio cheng ch'uan, by 虞撼 Yü Tuan. Ming dyn.—P. med. 18.—S. K. CV. 20.

222. 醫學登明 I hio fu ming, by Tung Yüan (see p. 48). Yüan dyn.—P. med. 16.

223. 醫學綱目 I hio kang mu. Ming dyn.—P. med. 18.—Tung i pao kien 7.

224. 醫學啓源 I hio k'i yüan, by Chang Kie hu (see p. 48). Kin dyn.—P. med. 16.

225. 醫家大法 I hia ta fa, by Wang Hai ts'ang (see p. 48).—P. med. 16.—Tung i pao kien 6.

226. 醫鑑 I kien. Mirror of Medicine, by 龔信 Kung Sin.—P. med. 16.—Tung i pao kien 8.

227. 醫經小學 I king siao hio, by Liu Shun (see No. 1105). Yüan dyn.—P. med. 18.
228. 醫壇元戎 *I lei yüan jung*, by Wang Hai ts'ang (see p. 48).—P. med. 16.—Wylie 79 states that the author wrote previous to the year 1241, but according to the P. and the Tung i pao kien he lived during the Mongol period.


230. 醫史 *I shi*. A history of Medicine, apparently by Li Lien. Ming dyn.—P. med. 15.—S. K. CV. 19.


232. 江山 *I jan fu*. See No. 409.

233. 異林 *I lin*. Ming period.—S. K. CXXVIII. 7.—There existed a work with the same title much earlier. It is noticed in the T. P. (10th cent.).

234. 異說 *I shuo*.—P. 38.—Quoted in the Po wu chi (No. 637); thus a work of the Tsin period or earlier.

235. 異聞記 *I wen ki*, by 何先 Ho Sien. Sung dyn.—P. 34.—Reprinted in the W. P.

236. 異物志 *I wu chi*, by 楊孚 Yang Fu.—P. 25.—An author Yang fu is mentioned in the Sui lit.

237. A work with the same title by 曹叔雅 Ts'ao Shu ya.—P. 30.—The same is noticed in the list of the T. P. (10th cent.), but seems to belong to an earlier period. A work I wu chi (without author's name) is quoted in the Ts'í min yao shu (q. v.). The S. Y. mentions two works of this name, one by 謹周 Tsiao Chou of the period of the three kingdoms, the other by 王逸 Wang I of the Han.

238. 異魚圖贊 *I yü t'u tsan*, by Yang Shen (see No. 703).—P. 26.—S. K. K. XII. 25.


242. 易經注疏 I king chu shu. The Book of Changes (one of the Classics), commented upon by 汪弼 Wang Pi of the 3rd cent.—P. 23.—Mayers 812.


244. 益州記 I chou ki. Records relating to I chou (Sz' ch'uan), by 任愚 Jen Yü of the Tsin dyn.—P. 30.—Sui lit.

245. 益都方物略記 I pu fang wu lio ki. This treats of the productions of the present Sz' ch'uan and contains interesting accounts of plants. The author is 朱祁 Sung Ki. A. D. 998—1061.—Mayers 639.—S. K. K. VII. 23.—Reprinted in the T. II.

246. 益都耆舊傳 I tu k'i hui ch'uan (I tu is a district in Shan tung). Author 陳壽 Ch'ên Shou of the Tsin dyn.—T'ang lit.

247. 逸周書 I Chou shu. Record of the Chou dynasty, also known under the name of 汲冢周書 Ki chung Chou shu. It is said to have been found in the tomb of one of the Wei princes, together with the Bamboo Annals (see No. 70).—P. 29.—Wylie 23.

248. 逸史 I shi, by 盧藏用 Lu Ts'ang yung. T'ang dyn.—P. 30.—S. Y.

249. 養菊 I hü. A treatise on the cultivation of the Chrysanthemum, by 黃省曾 Huang Sheng ts'eng. 16th cent.—Wylie 121.—Reprinted in the Ch. descr. part VII. 4.


251. 夷堅志 I kien chi, by Hung Mai (see No. 1145), 12th cent.—P. 32.—S. K. K. XIV. 34.

252. 遺書 I shu, by 莊澄 Ch'ü Ch'eng. End of the 5th cent.—P. med. 15.—S. K. K. X. 6.—See also No. 43.

253. 宜都山川記 I tu shan ch'uan ki. Description of the hills and rivers of the district of I tu (King chou fu in Hupeh).—T'ang lit.

254. 伊尹書 I Yin shu. The Book of I. Yin, who was a minister of T'ang, the founder of the Shang dynasty. B. C. 1766.—Mayers 233.—Han lit.

256. 日詳手記 *Ji sün shou ki,* by 王濬 Wang Tsi of the Tsin dyn.—P. 37.—S. Y.


258. 人参傳 *Jen shen ch'uan.* A treatise on Ginseng, by 李言聞 Li Yen wen, also styled 月池 Yüe ch'i, a medical writer of the Ming period.—P. med. 16.—Ming lit.—K. XCV. 31.

259. 汝南先賢傳 *Ju nan sien hien ch'uan,* by 周斐 Chou Fei of the Tsin dyn.—Sui lit.—Reprinted in the W. P.


261. 儒醫精要 *Ju i ts'ing yao,* by 趙繼宗 Chao Ki tsung. Ming dyn.—P. med. 19.

262. 儒門事親 *Ju men shi ts'ing,* by 張從正 Chang Ts'ung cheng, liter. name 子和 Tz' ho, a celebrated physician during the Kin period (12th cent.). Biogr., Kin shi 131.—P. med. 16.—Tung i pao kien 6.—The P. generally quotes this author by his cognomen Ts'ung cheng.

263. 詹聞錄 *K'ai wen lu,* by 李敞 Li T'ien. Sung dyn.—P. 26.—S. Y.—Reprinted in the W. P.


265. 甘諸錄 *Kan shu lu.* A treatise on the Sweet Potato (Batatas edulis), by 陸耀 Lu Yao. End of the 18th cent.—Reprinted in the C. T.

266. 甘諸疏 *Kan shu shu.* A treatise on the Sweet Potato. 陸匡 k'i (see p. 82) of the Ming dyn. wrote a preface to it.—T. LIV.

267. 感應經 *Kan ying king.* Sung dyn.—Reprinted in the W. P.

268. 森應類從志 *Kan ying lei ts'ung chi,* by Chang Hua (see No. 637). Tsin dyn.—P. 28.—S. K. CXXX. 1.
260. Kan su t'ung chi. See p. 89.
261. 刻製正俗 K'an miu cheng su, by 風師古 Yen Shi ku. 7th cent.—P. 32.—Mayers 912.
271. 高士傳 Kao shi ch'uan. Biographies of celebrated scholars, by 皇甫謐 Huang fu Mi. A.D. 215—282.—Wylie 28.—Mayers 216.—Reprinted in the H. W.
272. 唐日聞 Keng ki pien, by 姚福 Yao Fu. Ming dyn.—P. 35.—Ming lit.
273. Keng sin yü t'ie. See p. 53.
274. 急救良方 Ki kiu liang fang, by Chang Shi ch'e (see No. 687). Ming dyn.—P. med. 19.—S. K. CV. 22.
275. 急就篇 Ki tsiu pien (the third character is sometimes changed for 章 chang or 章 ts'ao). An ancient dictionary, by 史游 Shi Yu, who lived under the reign of Han Yuan Ti. B. C. 48—32.—P. 27.—Han lit.—S. K. K. IV. 18.
278. Ki chung chu shu. See No. 70.
279. Ki chung Chou shu. See No. 247.
280. 劇談錄 Ki t'an lu. T'ang dyn.—S. K. K. XIV. 32.
282. 續異錄 Ki i lu. T'ang dyn.—T.
283. 記事珠 Ki shi chu. T'ang dyn.—Reprinted in the W. P.
284. Ki fu t'ung chi. See p. 87.
285. Ki kiu ch'uan. See Nos. 33, 246.
286. 稽神錄 Ki shen lu, by 徐鉉 Sii Huan of the Southern T'ang (10th cent.).—P. 24.—S. K. K. XIV. 33.
The W. P. reprints a treatise with the same title by 雍陶 Yung Tao. T'ang dyn.
287. 啟蒙記 Ki meng ki, by 順漢之 Ku K'ai chi of the Tsin dyn.—Sui lit.—S. Y.—Reprinted in the W. P.
288. 溪蠻叢笑 Ki Man ts'ung xiao, a work which seems to treat of some Southern aborigines, by 朱輔 Chu Fu. Sung dyn.—P. 31.—H. K. II. 27.
289. 奇疾方 K’i tsi fang. Medical prescriptions, by 夏德 Hia Te (liter. name 子益 Tse’ i). Sung dyn.—P. med. 20.—S. K. CIII. 42.


291. 家珍 Ka chen, by Chang Kie ku (see p. 48).—P. med. 16.

292. 家傳方 Ka ch’uan fang. Medical prescriptions, by 徐氏 Sii (shi).—P. med. 19.—Sui lit.

293. 家訓 Ka hün, by 顏之推 Yen Chi t’ui. 6th cent.—P. 27.—Wylie 127.—Reprinted in the H. W.


296. 嘉祐雜志 Ka yu tsa chi, by 江休復 Kiang Hiu fu. A. D. 1062.—P. 37.—Wylie 156.

296a. K’ia yu Pu chu Pen ts’ao. See p. 46.

297. 甲乙經 Ka i king, by Huang fu Mi (see No. 271).—P. med. 15.—S. K. K. X. 5.

298. 賈氏談錄 K’ia shi Tan lu. End of the 10th cent.—S. K. K. XIV. 17.

299. 江隴幾雜志 Kiang lin hi tsa chi. The same as No. 296.—P. 37.

300. 江陵記 Kiang ling hi. Records of Kiang ling (the present King chou fu in Hu kuang). Frequently quoted in Chinese botanical works. This title appears in the list of the T. (10th cent.), but the work is probably of earlier date.


302. Kiang nan t’ung chi. See p. 89.

303. 江表傳 Kiang piao ch’uan.—T’ang lit.

304. Kiang si t’ung chi. See p. 90.

305. 江淹集 Kiang Yen ts’i. Collection of the writings of Kiang Yen (see No. 513a). 6th cent.—P. 27.—Wylie 182.

306. 交州異物志 Kiao chou i mu chi. Account of remarkable objects in Kiao chou (Northern part of the present Annam), by Yang Fu (see No. 236).—Sui lit.
306a. 交州記 Kiao chou ki.  Records of Kiao chou (see No. 306), by 劉欣期 Liu Hin k'ı.  Probably 4th or 5th cent.—P. 30.—Quoted in the Ts'i min yao shu (q. v.).


308. 解醒語 Kie sing yü. Yüan dyn.—K. and T.

309. 菜茶彙抄 Kie ch' a hui ch' ao. Treatise on the Teas produced on the Kie hills near Hu chou (Che kiang), by 胡燕 Mao Siang. 17th cent.—Wylie 119.—Reproduced in the C. T.

310. 戒異漫筆 Kie an man pi. Ming dyn.—S. K. CXXVIII. 22.

311. 簋中方 Kie chung fang, by 許孝宗 Hú Hiao tsung. P. med. 13.—T'ang lit.

The P. 13 notices a treatise with the same title by Ts'ien I (see No. 782). Sung dyn.

312. 建康記 Kien k' ang ki. Records of Kien k'ang, which in the 5th cent. was the name for the present Nan king. The work must therefore be a production of that period.


314. 劍南方物略 Kien nan fang wu lio. A treatise on the productions of Kien nan (the present Sz' ch' uan), by Ch' en Li (see No. 133). Sung dyn.—S. K. K. VII. 23.

315. 劍南方物賞性 Kien nan fang wu tsan (see the preceding), by Sung K'i (see No. 245).—P. 28.—S. K. K. VII. 23.


317. 簡要濟衆方 Kien yao t'ai chung fang. Medical prescriptions, by 周應 Chou Ying, a physician of the 11th cent.—P. med. 14.—W. H. CCXXIII. 1.

318. 乾坤秘籖 Kien k'un pi yün, by K'ü sien (see p. 53). Ming.—P. med. 18.

319. 乾坤生意 Kien k'un sheng i, by K'ü sien (see p. 53). Ming.—P. med. 18.

320. 乾象占 Kien siang chan.—P. 35.—Sung lit. (Astronomy).


323. 金匱鉤玄 *Kin kui kou huan*. The original work was written by *Chu Chen heng* (see p. 49), and an enlarged edition was issued by Tai Yüan li (see No. 37).—P. med. 18.—S. K. K. X. 15.

324. 金匱要畧 *Kin kui yao lio*. A medical treatise, by Chang Chung king (see note 12 [5]).—P. med. 15.—Wylie 82.

325. 金匱玉函方 *Kin kui yu han fang*. Medical prescriptions, by Chung Chung king (see note 12 [5]).—P. med. 13.

326. 金陵地記 *Kin ling ti ke*. Records of Kin ling, which in the T'ang period was the name for the present Nan king.—Sung lit. (Geography). Probably of earlier date.

327. 金棲子 *Kin lou ts'e*. A historical treatise, by the Emperor 梁元帝 *Liang Yuan Ti* (A. D. 552—555), previously called 綸 I.—P. 35.—Wylie 127.

328. 金鑲密記 *Kin luan mi ke*. T'ang dyn.—W. H. CXCVI. 5.—Reprinted in the W. P.

329. 金門記 *Kin men ki*. T'ang dyn.—P. 32.—S. Y.


330. 舍繡萬花谷 *Kin siu wan hua ku*. End of the 12th cent.—Quoted sometimes under the name of *Wan hua ku*.—P. 32.—S. K. CXXXV. 35.

331. 鳥蟲述 *K'in ch'ung shu*. A treatise on Birds and Insects, by 袁達德 *Yuan Ta te*. Beginning of the 16th cent.—P. 28.—S. K. CXVI. 43.

332. 鳥經 *K'in king*. A treatise on Chinese Birds, by 師曄 *Shi K'uang*, an author of the Chou dyn.—Commented upon by Chang Hua (see No. 637) in the 3rd cent.—P. 28.—Han lit.—Wylie 123.—Reprinted in the H. W.
333. 荊州記 *King chou hi.* Account of King chou (the present Hupeh), by *Ch'eng Hung chi.* 5th cent.—P. 25.—Sui lit.

This is probably the same work which is quoted in the Ts'î min yao shu (q. v.) as 荊州土地記 *King chou t'u ti ki.*

334. 荊川集 *King ch'uan tsi,* by 唐順之 *T'ang Shun chi.* Ming dyn.—P. 39.—S. K. K. XVIII. 34.

335. 荊湖近事 *King hu hin shi.* Sung dyn.—T.

336. 荊楚歲時記 *King T's'u sui shi ki.* A calendar of the popular customs throughout the year in King and Ts'û (Hu kuang), by 宗愷 *Tsung Lin.* 6th cent.—P. 25.—Wylie 45.—Reprinted in the H. W.

337. 荊揚異物志 *King yang i wu chi.* On remarkable productions of King and Yang (Hu nan and the regions south of the lower Yang tsz' kiang), by 薛壅 *Sie Yung.*—P. 30.—According to the W. P. Sie Yung was an author of the T'ang.

338. 經詰方 *King yen fang.* Medical prescriptions, by *Ch'en Ji hua* (see No. 795). Sung dyn.—P. med. 18.

A collection with the same title is noticed P. med. 14. Author 陳恆 *Ch'en Pien.* Sung dyn.—W. H. CCXXIII. 12.

339. 經詰藥方 *King yen liang fang,* by 鄭福 *Tsou Fu.* Ming dyn.—P. med. 19.—Tung i pao kien 7.

340. 經心録 *King sin lu,* by 宋俠 *Sung Kia,* a celebrated physician of the T'ang dyn. (7th cent.). See biography, T'ang shu 252.—P. med. 16.

341. 腳氣論 *Kio k'i lun,* by 深師 *Shen shi,* styled also 梅師 *Mei shi.*—P. med. 14.—P. XIII. 58 Shen shi is mentioned as an author of the Tung Tsin (4th cent.).

A work with the same title, belonging to the T'ang period, is noticed in the T'ang lit.

342. 九州記 *Kiu chou hi.* An account of the ancient nine provinces of China, apparently by 何晏 *Ho Yen.*—P. 25.—In the San kuo chi 9 is the biography of an author *Ho Yen,* 3rd cent.

343. 九華山錄 *Kiu hua shan lu.* An account of the mountain Kiu hua (see Appendix 17), by *Chou Pi ta* (see No. 61).—Reprinted in the Yu ming shan ki (q. v.).
344. 九鼎神丹秘訣 Kiu ting shen tan pi kue.—P. 29.—Sung lit.—H. K. X. 51 (Taoist works).—Mayers p. 346.

345. 九域志 Kiu yü chi, or 元豐九域志 Yuan feng Kiu yü chi, a Description of China, by 王存 Wang Ts'un. Published A. D. 1080.—W. H. CCIV. 4.

346. Kiu huang pen ts'ao. See p. 49.

347. 格致鏡原 Ko chi k'ing yuen. Inquiry into the origin of affairs and things, by 陳元龍 Ch'en Yuan lung. 1652—1736.—S. K. K. XIV. 12.—Mayers 106.

348. 格致餘論 Ko chi yü lun, by 田氏 (see p. 49).—P. med. 17.

349. 格古要論 Ko ku yao lun, by 曹昭 Ts'ao Chao. Beginning of the 15th cent.—S. K. CXXIII. 4.—The Ming lit. states that an enlarged edition of the work was published by 王均 Wang Kun in the middle of the 15th cent.—The P. 29 gives 王佐 Wang Ts'ao as the author of a work of a similar name (Ko ku lun), which is identical with the above, as I have proved by comparing the quotations of the P. and the T.

350. 格物總論 Ko wu tsung lun. T'ang or earlier.

351. 客話 K'o hua, by 晏說 Chao Yü, liter. name 以道 I tao. Sung dyn.—P. 38.—S. K. K. XIII. 18.

352. 鈞玄 Kou huan, by 鮮于摠 Sien Yu ch'iu, who according to Wylie 133 was an author of the latter part of the 13th cent.

353. 咸鏡神書 Kou lou shen shu, by 南宮從 Nan kung Ts'ung.—P. 34.—Kou lou is the name of one of the twelve peaks of the Heng shan (Appendix 6), where Emperor Yu is said to have left an inscription.—Legge's Shu king, proI. 68.

354. 口訣 K'ou kue, by 孫兆 Sun Chao.—P. med. 14.—Ming lit.

355. 356. 古今注 Ku kin chu. An examination of historical antiquities, by 翟豹 Ts'ui Pao, a native of Yen (Peking). Middle of the 4th cent. The work treats also of plants.—P. 26.—Wylie 128 states that an amplification and elucidation of it was compiled by 马経 Ma Kao of the Wu tai period, with the title 中華古今注 Chung hua ku kin chu.—P. 32 notices a work with the latter title and gives 伏侯 Fu Hou as the author. The same author and work appear also in the T. P. (40th cent.). In the Sui lit. the
author is styled 伏无忌 Fu Wu ki. The K. writes his name 伏虔 Fu K'ien. Compare also No. 1002.

357. 古今錄验方 Ku kin lu yen fang. Medical prescriptions, by Ch'e Yu shi (see No. 1066).—P. med. 13.

358. 古今詩話 Ku kin shi hua. Sung dyn.—P. 39.—S. Y.


360. 古今韻會 Ku kin yun hui, by 熊忠 Hiung Chung. Yüan dyn.—The S. K. K. IV. 27 states that the authorship has been erroneously ascribed to 黃公紹 Huang Kung shao. The P. 27 writes the author's name 黃公武 Huang Kung wu.

361. 古樂府 Ku lo fu. Yüan dyn.—S. K. K. XIX. 16.—There existed two earlier works with the same title; one is mentioned in the Sui lit., the other as a production of the T'ang in the S. Y.

362. 順澄山茶記 Ku chu shan ch'a hi. On the Tea of the mountain Ku chu (see Appendix 21), by Lu Yü (see No. 4).—W. H. CCVI. 2.

363. 菊譜 K'u pu. A treatise on the Chrysanthemum, by 劉蒙 Liu Meng. Beginning of the 12th cent.—P. 28.—Wylie 121.—Reprinted in the Ch. descr. part VII. 7.—K. XLVIII.—T. LXXXVII.

364. A treatise with the same title by Fan Ch'eng ta (see No. 388).—P. 28.—Reprinted in the Ch. l. c. 22; K. l. c., T. l. c.

365. The same title. Author 史正志 Shi Cheng chi. Middle of the 12th cent.—P. 28.—Wylie 121.—Reprinted in the Ch. l. c. 22; K. l. c., T. l. c.

366. 橘錄 K'u lu. A treatise on Oranges, by 韓彥直 Han Ch'ian chi, styled also 韓彥直 Han Yen chi. A.D. 1178.—P. 28.—Wylie 122.—Reprinted in the Ch. descr. part XV. 22; XVII. 42.

367. 居家必用 K'u hia pi yung. Ming dyn.—P. 33.—S. K. CXXX. 3.

368. 居山雜志 K'u shan tsa chi. Ming. dyn.

369. 局方發揮 K'u fang fa hui, by Tun K'i (see p. 49).—P. med. 17.

370. 祛疑說 K'u i shuo, by 储泳 Ch'u Yung. 13th cent.—P. 37.—Wylie 133.

372. 括地志 Kua ti chi, by 王泰 Wang Tai of Wei. Period of the three kingdoms.—T'ang lit.

373. 欣多花赋 K'uan tung hua fu. A poem on the k'uan tung flower (Petasites), by 傅咸 Fu Hien of the Tsin dyn.—K. XCVI. 22.—T. CXIX.

374. 管子 Kuan ts'e. Writings of the philosopher 管仲 Kuan Chung, died 645 B. C.—P. 34.—Mayers 293.

375. 倦游錄 K'uan yu lu, by 張師正 Chang Shi cheng. Sung dyn.—P. 33.—Reprinted in the W. P.


377. 廣州記 Kuo chou ki. Account of Kung tung. The P. 25 quotes two treatises with this title. One is by 顧微 Ku Wei of the Tsin dyn. and is found reprinted in the W. P. The other, by 裴濤 P'ei Yüan, seems to date from the same period. Both are quoted in the Ts' i min yao shu (q. v.).

378. 廣異記 Kuo i ki, by Lo Shi (see p. 86).—P. 24.

379. Kuo tung jang pu. See p. 70.


381. Kuo tung tung chi. See p. 91.

382. 廣五行記 Kuo tung hing ki.—P. 26.—Sung lit.

383. 廣雅 Kuo ya. An ancient dictionary, by 張揖 Chang I (about A. D. 227—240), who enlarged the Rh ya by adding extracts from writers of the Han dyn. In the reign of Sui Yang ti (A. D. 605—617), whose cognomen was 廣 Kuang, the title of the book was changed into 博雅 Po ya, by which the work is sometimes known. Chang I's title was 博士 po shi (Professor). 曹志 Ts'ao Hien of the Sui dyn. added the pronunciation and commentaries.—P. 28.—S. K. K. IV. 16.—Reprinted in the H. W.—The section on plants is reprinted in the T. III. V.

384a. 光福山記 Kuang fu shan ji. Account of the mountain Kuang fu (see Appendix 23). Ming dyn.—Yu min shan ki.
386. 桂海果志 Kui hai kuo chi. A treatise on the fruits of Southern China, by Fan Ch'eng ta (see No. 388).—Reprinted in the T. XV.
387. 桂海草志 Kui hai ts'ao chi. On the plants of Southern China, by Fan Ch'eng ta (see No. 388).—Reprinted in the T., books I. and X.
388. 桂海虞衡志 Kui hai yu heng chi. A treatise on the geographical features, natural history, etc. of the Southern provinces of China, by 范成大 Fan Ch'eng ta. Latter part of the 12th cent. Biography, Sung shi 386. He was a native of Wu hien (Che kiang). His literary productions are frequently quoted in Chinese botanical works.—P. 30.—Wylie 45.
390. 貴耳録 Kui rh lu, by 張端義 Chang Tuan i. Sung dyn.—S. K. K. XIII. 23.
391. 禀辛雜志 Kui sin tsa chi, by Chou Mi (see No. 48).—P. 32.—Wylie 159.
392. 龜經 Kui king. On divination by means of the tortoise. T'ang dyn.—P. 28.—Wylie 106.
393. 養田錄 Kui t'ien lu, by Ou yang Siu (see No. 867).—P. 26.—Wylie 156.—The W. H. CCXVI. 7 notices a work with the same title by Li Tien, Sung dyn.
395. 坤元録 K'un yüan lu.—Sung lit. (Geography).
396. 嶽山縣志 K'un shan hien chi. Description of the district of K'un shan (Su chou fu, Che kiang). Seems to date from the Sung dyn.
397. 菌譜 K'un pu. A treatise on Mushrooms, by 陳仁玉 Ch'en Jen yü. A. D. 1245. It treats of 27 species of mushrooms produced at T'ai chou in Che kiang.—P. 29.—Wylie 122.—Reprinted in the Ch. descr. part III.
398. 郡國志 Kün kuo chi.—P. 32.—This is a Geography of China, by 童懷 Chang Huai of the T'ang dyn., according to the S. Y.—The T. P. has a work Yüan ho Kün kuo chi (reign of Yüan ho, 806—21), probably the same.

399. Kün fang pu. See p. 70.

400. 群書日抄 Kün shu ji ch'ao, by 丘瓊山 K'iu K'üng shan. Ming dyn.?—P. med. 20.—Ming shi 181.

401. 群書續抄 Kün shu sù ch'ao, by 何子元 Ho Tz' yüan, properly 何孟春 Ho Meng ch'un. Ming dyn. Biogr., Ming shi 191.—P. med. 20.

402. Kün shu tsi shi yüan hai. See No. 917.

403. 羣碎録 Kün sui lu, by Ch'en Ki ju (see No. 28).—S.K. CXXXII. 26.

404. 孔帖 K'ung t'ie. Quoted in the K. and the T. Probably a work by K'ung Ch'uan (see No. 626) is meant.

405. 孔子家語 K'ung ts' i ka yü. Traditional words of Confucius, commented upon by 王肅 Wang Su, about A.D. 240.—P. 23.—Wylie 66.


408. 國語 Kuo yü. Remarks concerning the States of ancient China, by Tso K'iu ming, the author of the Tso ch'üan (see No. 89).—P. 30.—Wylie 6.

409. 果然賦 Kuo jan fu.—P. 28 (in some editions of the P. we read 異然賦 I jan fu), by 鍾毓 Chung Yu. 3rd cent. See his biography, San kuo chi (Wei shu) 13.

410. 果疏 Kuo shu. A treatise on Garden fruits, by Wang Shi mou (see No. 185).—Reprinted in the T. XV.

411. 蘭譜 Lan pu. A treatise on the lan flower (Cymbidium and other orchidaceous plants), by Ch'en Jen yü (see No. 397).—H. K. III. 6.

412. A treatise with the same title by 王貴學 Wang Kui hio. Sung dyn.—S. K. CXVI. 33.—Reprinted in the K. XLIV.

413. Same title. Author Kuo Lien (see No. 908).—Wylie 121.
414. 蘭室秘藏 Lan shi pi ts'ang, by Tung Yüan (see p. 48).—P. med. 16.


418. 老學啚筆記 Lao hio an pi ki, by Lu Yu (see No. 553).—Wylie 132.

419. 老子 Lao tsé. The writings of 老君 Lao Kün, the reputed founder of the Taoist system. Close of the 6th cent. B. C.—P. 34.—Mayers 336.

420. 劳察方 Lao chai fang. Medical prescriptions, by 崔知悌 Ts'ui Chi ti. 7th cent.—P. med. 14.—Biogr., T'ang shu 239.

421. Lei kung P'ao chi lun. See p. 41.

422. Lei kung Yao tui. See p. 40.


426. 冷齋夜話 Leng chai ye hua. Close of the 11th cent.—Wylie 131.


428. 荔枝譜 Li chi pu. A treatise on the Lichi fruit (Nephelium Litchi), by 蔡襄 Ts'ai Siang. A. D. 1059.—P. 28.—Reprinted in the Ch. descr. part XVII. 49 and T. CCLXXIII.

429. Same title. Author 朱珤 Sung Kio. Ming dyn.—Reprinted in the Ch. 1. c. 56 and T. L. c.

430. Same title. Author 曹繡 Ts'ao Fan. Ming dyn.—Reprinted in the Ch. 1. c. 69 and T. L. c.

431. Same title. Author 徐煥 Su Po. Ming dyn.—Biogr., Ming shi 286.—Reprinted in the Ch. 1. c. 73 and T. CCLXXIV.
432. Same title. Author 邓 慕 T'eng K'ing t's'ai, liter. name 道 協 Tao hie. Ming dyn.—S. K. CXVI. 36.—Reprinted in the Ch. l. c. 86 and T. l. c.

433. Same title. Author 居 本 嘉 Tu Pen tsün. Ming dyn.

434. Same title. Author 黄 履 幡 Huang Li heng. Ming dyn.

435. 荔 枝 話 Li chi hua. Miscellaneous observations on the Lichih fruit, by 林 闕 璞 Lin Sz' huan. Present dyn.—Wylie 122.

436. 李 孝 伯 傳 Li Hiao po ch'uan.—P. 24.—Li Hiao po's biography is found in the Hou Wei shu (see No. 172) book 53.

437. 李 官 臣 傳 Li Pao ch'en ch'uan.—P. 24.—See T'ang shu 211, Biography of Li Pao ch'en.

438. 李 義 山 集 Li I shan tsi. Writings of Li I shan. T'ang dyn.—P. 39.—S. K. CLI. 10.

439. 李 義 文 集 Li Shen wen tsi. Writings of Li Shen. T'ang dyn.—P. 39.—S. K. K. XV. 18.

440. Li shi Yao lu. See p. 40.

441. 李 太 白 集 Li Tai po tsi. Writings of Li Tai po. 8th cent.—P. 38.—Wylie 183.

442. Li ki. See p. 33.

443. 禮 斗 威 儀 Li tou wei i. 4th or 5th cent.—P. 33.

444. Li sao pien cheng. See No. 74.

445. 離 鐘 草 木 疏 Li sao ts'ao mu shu. Commentary on the plants mentioned in K'ü Yuan's celebrated poem Li sao (see No. 74), by 吳 仁 傑 Wu Jen kie. Sung dyn. About 50 plants are spoken of there.—S. K. K. XV. 1.—Reprinted in the collection Chi pu tsu chai (Wylie p. 214).

A treatise with the same name is mentioned in the Sui lit. Author 劉 道 Liu Yao of the Liang dyn.

446. Li tai ti li chi yün pien k'ün shi. See p. 69.

447. 雙 京 記 Liang k'ung ki. Description of the two metropolitan cities of the T'ang dyn., by 韋 述 Wei Shu. 8th cent.—P. 29.—Wylie 45.

448. 雙 山 墨 談 Liang shan mo t'an, by 劉 燕 Ch'en Ting. Ming dyn.—P. 35.—S. K. CXXVI. 7.

449. 梁 简 文 帝 勤 聿 文 Liang Kien Wen Ti kiu'an i wen.—P. 27.—By the Emperor Kien Wen Ti (550—52).


452. 凉州異物志 Liang chou i wu chi. Remarkable objects in the (ancient) province of Liang (the present Kan su), by 萬震 Wan Chen. — P. 30. — Sui lit. — The author lived in the 3rd cent.

453. 凉州記 Liang chou ki. Description of the province of Liang chou (the present Kan su). 4th or 5th cent. — S. Y.


457. 列星圖 Lie sing t'u. — P. 35. — Mentioned in the T. P. (10th cent.). Probably of earlier date.


459. 錄粉圖 Lien fen t'u, by 孤剛子 Hu Kang tsz'. — P. 26. — The work and the author are mentioned in the Sung lit. — The name of Hu Kang tsz', apparently a Taoist author, occurs already in the Sui lit.

460. 臨川記 Lin ch'uan ki (Lin ch'uan in Kiang si), by 荀伯子 Sün Po tsz' of the Liu Sung dyn. (5th cent.). See biography, Sung shu 60. — P. 33. — T. P.


462. 臨海異物志 Lin hai i wu chi. An account of remarkable objects in the department of Lin hai (in Che kiang), by
Ch'en Yung. 5th cent., perhaps earlier.—P. 30.—S. Y.—This treatise is quoted in the Ts'i min yao shu (q. v.).

463. 临海水土記 Lin hai shui t'u ki, by Ch'en Yung (see No. 462).—P. 29.—Sui lit.

464. 林邑記 Lin i ki. An account of Lin (Cochinchina), by 東方朔 Tung fang So. 2nd cent. B. C.—P. 30.—Mayers 689.

465. 嵐南異物志 Ling nan i mu chi. Account of remarkable objects in the Southern provinces of China, by 孟珙 Meng Kuan. Beginning of the 9th cent.—P. 25.—Sh. Y.

466. 嵐南方 Ling nan fang, by 王方慶 Wang Fang king. T'ang dyn.—P. med. 17.—T'ang lit.


468. 嵐南雜記 Ling nan ts'ai ki. Record of the geography, natural productions, etc. of Southern China, by 吳霞方 Wu Chen fang. Present dyn.—Wylie 50.


470. 嵐外代答 Ling wai tai ta. Geographical and other accounts of Southern China and foreign countries, by 周去非 Chou K'i fei. 12th cent.—Wylie 45.

471. 麟樞經 Ling ch'u king. A work on internal maladies and the practice of acupuncture, ascribed to the Emperor Huang Ti (see p. 27), but really for the greater part the production of Wang Ping (see No. 204).—P. med. 15.—Wylie 78.

472. 麟苑方 Ling yuen fang. Medical prescriptions, by Ch'en Ts'un chung (see No. 510).—P. med. 14.


474. 六書正譌 Liu shu cheng o, by 周弼 Chou Pi, according to the P. 27.—But the S. K. K. IV. 22 ascribes this work to Chou Po k'i of the Yüan, whilst Chou Pi is mentioned there, XVI. 42, in connection with another work, as an author of the Sung.


477. Liu t'ie. See No. 626.

478. 柳宗元傳 Liu Tsung yüan ch'uan. Biography of Liu Tsung yüan, a celebrated poet of the 8th cent. Liter. name 子厚 Tze' hou.—P. 24.—Mayers 419.

479. 柳子厚文集 Liu Tze' hou wen tsi. Poems of Liu Tsung yüan (see No. 478).—P. 38.—Mayers 419.

480. 劉根別傳 Liu Ken pie ch'uan. Biography of Liu Ken, who according to the Sh. Y. lived about B. C. 30.—P. 37.

481. Liu kiu kuo chi lio. See p. 92.

482. 洛陽花木記 Lo yang hua mu ki. Flowers and trees of Lo yang, the ancient Chinese metropolis in Ho nan, by 周氏 or 周敘 Chou Sü. Second half of the 11th cent.—P. 29.—Reprinted in the T. X.

483. 洛陽伽藍記 Lo yang kia lan ki. Description of the Buddhist establishments in Lo yang, the metropolis during the Northern Wei, by 楊衙之 Yang Huan chi, an officer of that dynasty. 5th cent.—Reprinted in the H. W.—P. 35.—Wylie 44.

484. 洛陽名園記 Lo yang ming yüan ki. On the Gardens of Lo yang (see No. 482), by 李格非 Li Ko fei. Sung dyn.—P. 29.—S. K. K. VII. 20.

485. 洛陽牡丹記 Lo yang mu tan ki. A treatise on the mu tan flower (Paeonia Moutan) of Lo yang (see No. 482), by Ou yang Siu (see No. 867).—Reprinted in the Ch. descr. part XI. 55 and T. CCLXXXVII.

486. Same title. Author Chou Sü (see No. 482).—Reprinted in the T. I. c.

487. 羅浮山記 Lo fou shan ki. Record of the Lo fou mountain (see Appendix 29), by 郭之美 Kuo Chi mei. A. D. 1051.—W. H. CCVI. 4.—A work with the same name is mentioned already in the T. P. (10th cent.).
488. 羅浮山疏 Lo fou shan shu (see the preceding), by 竹法真 Chu Fu chen.—P. 31.—This work and the author are mentioned in the T. P., but may be of earlier date.

488a. Lo hie ch'a ki. See No. 995.

489. 樂休園菊譜 Lo hiu yu'an k'u pu. On the Chrysanthemum in the garden Lo hiu (?). Reprinted in the Ch. descr. part VII. 34. Apparently a production of the present dynasty.

490. 魯定公傳 Lu Ting kung ch'uan. An ancient narrative of 宋 Sung, prince of Lu (about B. C. 500), whose posthumous title was Ting kung.—P. 24.—Legge's Confucian Anal. p. 25.

491. 路史 Lu shi, by 羅泌 Lo Pi. Sung dyn.—Wylie 24.

492. 錄異記 Lu i ki. A fabulous record by the Taoist priest 杜光庭 Tu Kuang t'ing. 10th cent.—P. 34.—Wylie 160.

But a work with the same title must have been extant in the 6th cent., as it is quoted in the King ts'ù sui shi ki (see No. 336).


494. 廬陵記 Lü ling ki. Records of Lü ling (the present Ki shui hien, Kiang si). 5th or 6th cent.

495. 廬山記 Lü shan ki. An account of the mountain Lü (Appendix 30), by 陳令舉 Ch'en ling k'u, liter. appellation 舜侶 Shun yü. 11th cent.—Wylie 44.

There are several treatises bearing the same title. One of them is quoted in the Ts'ai ming yao shu (q. v.); two are quoted in the T. P.

496. 呂氏春秋 Lü shi ch'un ts'iu. A collection of historical notices of the early history of China, by 呂不韋 Lü Pu wei, died B. C. 237, the father of Emperor Shi Huang Ti.—P. 23.—Han lit.—Wylie 126.


498. 龍城録 Lung ch'eng lu. Historical records referring to the earlier part of the T'ang, by Liu Tsung yüan (see No. 478).

499. 龍江録 Lung kiang lu.—P. 38.—This is apparently the same work as that quoted in the Ming lit. with the title 龍江夢餘録 Lung kiang meng yü lu, by 唐錦 T'ang Kin.
500. 龙鱼河图 Lung yü ho t'u.—P. 27.—Quoted in the Ts'ı min yao shu (q. v.).

501. 马经 Ma king. A treatise on horses, apparently.—P. 28.—Sung lit.

502. Ma ch'u t'u pu. See p. 81.

503. 茅山志 Mao shan chi. Description of the Mao mountain (see Appendix 19), by 劉大彬 Liu Ta pin, a Taoist priest of the Yüan dyn.—S. K. LXXVI. 1.

504. 茅山記 Mao shan ki (see No. 503), published A. D. 1062.—P. 31.—W. H. CCVI. 2.

505. 茅亭客話 Mao t'ing k'ıo hua, by 黃休復 Huang Hsiu fu. Sung dyn.—P. 27.—S. K. K. XIV. 33.

506. Mao shi niao shou ts'ao mu ch'ung yü shu. See p. 33.

507. 梅譜 Mei pu. Treatise on the mei (Prunus, var. species), by Fan Ch'eng ta (see No. 388).—P. 28.—S. K. K. XII. 22.

508. 梅堯臣詩 Mei Yao ch'en shi. Poems of Mei Yao ch'en. 11th cent.—P. 38.—Sh. Y. (Sung period).

509. 撫蠻新話 Men shi sin hua, by 陳善 Ch'en Shan. Sung dyn.—S. K. CXXVII. 3.

510. 夢溪筆談 Meng k'i pi t'an, by 沈括 Ch'en Kua. Liter. appellation 存中 Ts'un chung. Middle of the 11th cent.—See biogr., Sung shi 331.

There is an appendix 補筆談 Pu Pi t'an, and a supplementary book besides, entitled 續筆談 Sù Pi t'an.

511. 夢餘錄 Meng yü lu, by T'ang Kin (see No. 499).

512. 棉花圖 Mien hua t'u. A treatise on the cultivation of Cotton, with 16 engravings, published in 1765 by the Viceroy of Chihli.

513. 閩中記 Min chung ki, by 林譜 Ling Sū. T'ang dyn.—W. H. CCV. 10.

513a. 閩中草木頌 Min chung ts'ao mu kung. Eulogy of the plants of Min (Fu kien), by Kiang Yen (see No. 305).—Reprinted in the T. II.

514. 閩部疏 Min pu shu. A geographical description of Fu kien, detailing also the natural productions of that province, by Wang Shi mou (see No. 185).—S. K. LXXVII. 17.
515. 閱書 Min shu. A description of the province of Fu kien, by 何齋遠 Ho K'iao yüan. End of the 16th cent.—S. K. LXXIV. 19.—Accounts of plants found in this work are reprinted in the T. CLXXXII.

516. 名醫錄 Ming i lu. History of celebrated physicians.—P. med. 16.—Sung lit.

517. Ming i pie lu. See p. 42.

518. 名山記 Ming shan ki. A work on celebrated mountains, by 王子年 Wang Tsz' nien (see No. 736).—W. H. CCXV. 4.
A work with the same title, published in the Ming period, is noticed in the S. K. LXXVIII. 6.

519. 名山游記 Ming shan yu ki. An account of the celebrated mountains of China, by Wang Shu mow (see No. 185).

520. 名苑 Ming yuán, by Sz' ma Kuang (see No. 424).—P. 28.

521. 明皇雜錄 Ming huang tsa lu, by 鄭處誨 Cheng Ch' u hui. T'ang dyn.—P. 26.—S. K. K. XIV. 14.

522. 明醫雜著 Ming i tsa chu, by 王節齋 Wang Tsie chai. Ming dyn.(?)—P. med. 20.—H. K. VI. 32.


523. 明道雜著 Ming tao tsa chi, by 張未 Chang Lei. Sung dyn.—See biogr., Sung shi 414.—P. 37.—S. Y.

524. 墨莊漫錄 Mo chuang man lu, by 張邦基 Chang Pang ki. Middle of the 12th cent.—Wylie 132.

525. 墨客揮犀 Mo k'o hui si, by 彭乘 P'eng Ch'eng, a native of Shu (Sz' ch'uan). First half of the 11th cent.—P. 36.—Sh. Y.—S. K. K. XIV. 22.

526. 墨譜 Mo pu. A treatise on Ink, by Su I kien (see No. 53).—P. 29.—S. K. K. XII. 18.

527. 墨子 Mo tse'. Writings of 墨翟 Mo Ti, a celebrated philosopher between the 4th and 5th centuries B. C.—P. 34.—Wylie 125.

528. 脈經 Mo king. A treatise on the Pulse, by Wang Shu ho (see note 12 [7]).—P. med. 15.—Wylie 78.

529. 勝訣判譜 Mo kue k'ian wu, by 戴啓宗 Tai K'i tsung. Yüan dyn.—P. med. 16.—S. K. K. X. 15.
530. 牡丹八書 Mu tan pa shu. Eight epistles on the mu tan flower (Paeonia Moutan), by 薛鳳翔 Siu Feng siang. Ming dyn.—S. K. CXVI. 32.—Reprinted in the Ch. descr. part XI. 81 and T. CCLXXXVIII.

531. 牡丹譜 Mu tan pu. A treatise on Paeonia Moutan, by Ou yang Siu (see No. 867).—P. 28.—T. CCLXXXVIII.—See also No. 887.

532. 牡丹榮辱志 Mu tan yung ju chi. A classified arrangement of the many varieties of Paeonia Moutan, by 丘繽 K'iu Si'an. Sung and Yüan period.—S. K. CXLIV. 17.—Wylie 121.—Reprinted in the T. CCLXXXVII.

533. 木棉譜 Mu mien pu. A treatise on Cotton, published during the Ming period, with a preface by Wang Siang tsin (see p. 70).—Reprinted in the T. CCCIII.

534. Same title. Author 褚華 Ch'ü Hua. Towards the close of the last cent.—Wylie 77.—Reprinted in the C. T.

535. Mu mien t'ü pu. See p. 81.

536. 牧堅關談 Mu shu hien t'an, by 景煥 King Huan. Sung dyn.—P. 35.—S. Y.

537. 幕府燕閒錄 Mu fu yen hien lu, by 程仲誼 Pi Chung sun. Sung dyn.—P. 38.—S. Y.—Reprinted in the W. P.

538. 穆天子傳 Mu t'ien ts'ch'üan. A narrative of the adventures of the Emperor Mu Wang (1000 B.C.) on his journey to the West. Said to have been found in a tomb of one of the Wei princes, in 281 A. D.—P. 24.—Wylie 153.

539. 南州異物志 Nan chou i mu chi. A work on remarkable objects in the Southern provinces, by Wan Chen (see No. 452).—P. 25.—Quoted in the Ts'i min yao shu (q. v.).

A work of the same title by Sui Piao (see No. 540) is quoted in the Hai yao pen ts'ao (see p. 45).

540. 南州記 Nan chou ki. Account of the Southern provinces, by 徐表 Sui Piao.—P. 25.—Work and author quoted in the Ts'i min yao shu (q. v.).

541. 南南方言 Nan ch'uang ki t'an. Early part of the 12th cent.—P. 31.—Wylie 157.
542. 南中志 Nan chung chi (erroneously sometimes quoted as 中南志 Chung nan chi), apparently a description of Southern China, by Ch'ang K'ü (see No. 190).—S. K. LXXVIII. 10.

543. 南中八郡志 Nan chung pa kūn chi. This, frequently quoted in the T., is apparently a production of the 4th or 5th cent. It is probably the same as the 南州八郡志 Nan chou pa chung chi, quoted in the Ts'i min yao shu (q. v.).

544. 南方异物志 Nan fang i wu chi. An account of remarkable productions of the provinces of Southern China, by 房千里 Fang Ts'ien li. 5th cent. or earlier.—P. 25.—Quoted in the Ts'i min yao shu (q. v.).

545. 南方記 Nan fang ki. Account of the Southern provinces of China, by Sū Piao (see No. 540). Quoted in the Wei wang hua mu chi and the Ts'i min yao shu (q. v.).

546. Nan fang ts'ao mu ch'uan. See p. 38.

547. 南海古跡記 Nan hai ku tsi ki, by Wu Lai (see No. 1125).

548. 南方行方 Nan hing fang. Medical prescriptions, by 楊炎 Yang Yen, died A. D. 781.—P. med. 20.—Mayers 898.

549. 南康記 Nan k'ang ki. Records of Nan k'ang (in Kiang si), by 鄧顯明 Teng Hien ming (sometimes written 鄧德明 Teng Te ming) of the 4th or 5th cent.—P. 32.—S. Y.—T. P.

The T. P. mentions a work with the same title by 王欽之 Wang Hin chi.


551. 南部新書 Nan pu sin shu. Published about A. D. 975.—S. K. K. XIV. 18.

552. 南徐州記 Nan Sū chou ki, by Shan K'ien chi (see No. 1041).—Sui lit.—Nan Sū comprised the Northern part of the present Kiang su.


554. 南齊書 Nan Ts'i shu. History of the Southern Ts'i dynasty. A. D. 479—501, by 蕭子顯 Siao Ts'z' hien. 5th cent.—P. 30.—Wylie 13.
555. 南都賦 Nan tu fu, by 張衡 Chang Heng of the After Han dyn.—S. Y.

556. 南陽活人書 Nan yang huo jen shu, by 朱眞 Chu Kung, pseudonym 無求子 Wu k'iu ts'ei. Sung dyn.—P. med. 21.—Tung i pao kien 5.—W. H. CCXXII. 8.

557. 南陽詩注 Nan yang shi chu. Sung dyn. (?)—T.

558. 南岳魏夫人傳 Nan yo Wei fu jen ch'uan. Narrative of a lady Wei of Nan yo (Heng mountain in Hu nan). Seems to be a Taoist tale referring to the Tsin dynasty.—P. 24.—Sui lit.—W. H. CCXXIV. 8.

559. 南越志 Nan Yue ch'i. A description of Nan Yue (South-China), by 沈懷遠 Ch'en Huai yüan. Liu Sung dyn. (5th cent.).—W. H. CCV. 12.—Reprinted in the W. P.—Quoted in the Ts'i min yao shu (q. v.), which refers also to a treatise 南越經 Nan Yue king.

Two treatises bearing the title Nan Yue ch'i, by different authors of the T'ang and Sung periods, are mentioned in the S. Y.

560. 南越行紀 Nan Yue heng ki, by 陸賈 Lu Kia. B. C. 200.—Quoted in the Nan fang ts'ao mu ch'üan (q. v.).—Mayers 437.

561. Nan Yue pi hi. See p. 92.

562. 難經 Nan king. A work on doubtful medical questions, by 交通嶽 Wen ch'üan. 6th cent. B. C. (see note 12 [3]).—P. med. 15.—Mayers 553.

563. 能改齋漫錄 Neng kai chai man lu. Middle of the 12th cent.—Wylie 128.


565. Nung cheng ts'üan shu. See p. 82.

566. Nung sang i shi tso yao. See p. 82.

567. Nung sang tsi yao. See p. 82.

568. Nung sang t'ung kue. See p. 81.

569. Nung shu. See No. 35 and p. 81.

570. 峨眉山志 O mei shan chi. A description of the O mei mountain (see Appendix 36). Sung dyn.—W. H. CCVI. 1.—The S. K. LXXVI. 25, 28 mentions two works with the same title, both published during the present dyn. in the middle of the 17th cent.
571. 歐陽公文集 Ou yang kung wen tsai. Writings of Ou yang Siu (see No. 867).—Wylie 185.
572. Pa Min t’ung chi. See p. 90.
573. 祴史 Pai shi, by 仇遠 Ch‘ou Yüan. Yüan dyn.—P. 37.—S. Y.

A work with the same title by 徐克昭 Sū K‘o chao, Ming dyn., is noticed in the H. K. III. 60.


574. 保慶集 Pao k‘ing tsai. Sung dyn.—P. med. 20.—W. H. CCXXXIII. 9.

575. 保生要錄 Pao sheng yao lu. T‘ang dyn.—P. med. 20.—S. Y.


577. 寶貨辨疑 Pao huo pien i. 12th or 13th cent.—P. 29.—H. K. II. 34.


579. 抱朴子 Pao p‘o ts‘. A work on Taoist philosophy, alchemy, etc., giving also some accounts of medicinal plants, by Ko Hung (see note 12 [8]) of the 3rd and 4th cent.—P. 23.—Wylie 175.—Reprinted in the H. W.


581. 北征錄 Pei cheng lu, by 金幼孜 Kin Yu ts‘. Ming dyn.—P. 33.—S. K. LIII. 38.

582. 北戶錄 Pei hu lu. A geographical account of Southern China, by 桃公路 Tuan Kung lu. T‘ang dyn.—P. 33.—S. K. K. VII. 23.—Reprinted in the W. P.

583. 北夢瑣言 Pei meng so yen, by 孫光憲 Sun Kuang hien. Middle of the 10th cent.—P. 26.—Wylie 135.

584. 北遊備對 Pei pien pei t'ai. Sung dyn.—S. K. LXXV. 27.


587. Pen k'ing. See p. 29.


589. 本事詩 Pen shi shi, by 孟棨 Meng K'i. T'ang dyn.—P. 23.—Reprinted in the W. P.

590. Pen ts'ao fu hui. See p. 49.

591. Pen ts'ao hui pien. See p. 54.

592. Pen ts'ao kung mu. See p. 54.


594. Pen ts'ao meng ts'üan. See p. 54.

595. Pen ts'ao pie shuo. See p. 47.

596. Pen ts'ao shi i. See p. 45.

597. Pen ts'ao sing shi lei. See p. 46.

598. Pen ts'ao ts'i yao. See p. 53.

599. Pen ts'ao yen i. See p. 48.

600. Pen ts'ao yen i pu i. See p. 49.

601. Pen ts'ao yin i. See p. 45.

602. 彭祖服食經 P'eng Tsu fu shi king. A treatise on garments and food, by P'eng Tsu.—P. med. 15.—Sui lit.—I am not aware whether the mythical P'eng Tsu is meant who is reputed to have attained a fabulous longevity.—Mayers 561.

603. 豫窻日錄 P'eng ch'uang ji lu. Ming dyn.—S. K. CXXVIII. 20.—Reprinted in the W. P.

604. 筆記 Pi ki, by Sung K'i (see No. 245). Sung dyn.—S. K. K. XIII. 16.

A work with the same title by Ch'en Ki ju. Ming dyn. (see No. 28).—S. K. CXXXII. 25.—See also S. K. CXLIII. 30.

605. 筆譜 Pi pu. A treatise on Pencils, by Su I kien (see No. 53).—P. 29.—S. K. K. XIII. 18.


607. 秘訣 Pi hüe. A treatise on the art of magic, by 左慈 Tso Ts'z'. 2nd cent.—P. 26.—Mayers 745.

609. 碧雞漫志 Pi hi man chi. Sung dyn.—Wylie 203.


611. 埤雅廣要 Pi ya kung yao. An enlargement of the Pi ya, published in the Ming period.—S. K. CXLIV. 33.—The P. 28 quotes a work of a similar name, perhaps the same, 埤雅廣義 Pi ya kung i.

612. 腩胃論 Pi wei lun. A treatise on the stomach, by Tung Yüan (see p. 48).—P. med. 16.


614. 變化論 Pien hua lun, by Yu Pao (see No. 790).—P. 37.—Quoted in the King ts’u sui shi ki (q. v.).

615. 便民圖纂 Pien min t’u tsuan. Ming dyn.—P. 34.—Ming lit. (Agriculture).—S. K. CXXX. 5.

616. 辨惑論 Pien huo lun, by Tung Yüan (see p. 48).—P. med. 16.

617. 扁鵲方 Pien Ts’iao fang. Medical prescriptions of Pien Ts’iao (see note 12 [3]).—P. med. 13.


620. 兵部手集成方 Ping pu shou ts’i fang, by 李綽 Li Kiang. 9th cent.—Biogr., T’ang shu 215.—P. med. 14.

621. 瓶花譜 Pien hua pu. On plants growing in pots, by 張謙德 Chang Kien te. Ming dyn.—S. K. CXVI. 36.—Reprinted in the T. X.

622. 瓶史 Ping shi. On the cultivation of garden flowers, by 袁宏道 Yuan Hung tao. Ming dyn.—Biogr., Ming shi 288.—Reprinted in the T. X.

623. 瓶史月表 Ping shi yue piao. Calendar of garden flowers, by T’u Pen tsun (see No. 433).—Reprinted in the T. X.

624. 平泉草木記 Ping ts‘uan ts‘ao mu ki. Account of the vegetable productions of Ping ts‘uan (Kien chou in Sz’ ch’uan), by 李德裕 Li Te yü. A. D. 787—849.—P. 29.—W. H. CCV. 9.—Mayers 370.—Reprinted in the T. II.
625. 白虎通 Po hu t'ung. A system of Confucian dogmatics, by Pan hu (see No. 941), died A. D. 92.—P. 32.—Wylie 127.—Reprinted in the H. W.

626. 白孔六帖 Po K'ung liu tie.—P. 31.—There is a collection of extracts, Liu tie, by 白居易 Po Kù i of the T'ang dyn. It was enlarged by 孔傳 K'ung Ch'uan of the Sung dyn.—S. K. K. XIV. 2.


628. 白猿録 Po t'ao sui. Sung dyn.—P. 38.—S. Y.

629. 白澤圖 Po tse t'u.—P. 25.—Sui lit.—Po tse is the name of a fabulous animal.

630. 百川學海 Po ch'uan kuo hai. A collection of the productions of authors of note, made during the Sung dyn.—P. 36.—H. K. III. 1.


632. 百感錄 Po kan lu, by 陳相 Ch'en Siang, a Taoist priest. Ming dyn.—P. 37.—S. K. CXXIV. 23.


634. 治宅編 Po tse pien, by 方勺 Fang Cho. Early part of the 12th cent.—P. 32.—Wylie 157.

635. 毫州牡丹史 Po cho mu tan shi. A treatise on the Mu tan flower (Paeonia Moutan) of Po chou (An hui), by Sie Feng siang (see No. 530).—S. K. CXVI. 32.—Reprinted in the Ch. descr. part XI. 86 and T. CCLXXXVIII.


639. Po ya. See No. 333.
640. 構藤織 Po lo kien. An article on wild Silk produced from Oak trees. Last cent.—Reprinted in the Ch'eng te fu chi (see p. 88). See my article on Chinese silkworm trees, p. 7.

641. Pu Pi t'an. See No. 510.

642. 普濟方 P'u ts'i fang, by Chu Siao or Chou ting wang (see p. 49).—P. med. 17.—Wylie 80.

643. Rh ya. See p. 34.

644. Rh ya cheng i. See p. 37.

645. Rh ya i. S. p. 37.

646. 塞上方 Sai shang fang.—P. med. 14.—Sung lit.

647. 氏輔黃圖 San fu huang t'u. A description of the public buildings in Ch'ang an, the ancient metropolis during the Han. Author unknown.—P. 30.—Wylie 35.—It is reprinted in the H. W. collection and is quoted in the Nan fang ts'aiao mu ch'uang (q. v.).

648. 氏輔故事 San fu ku shi. Historical memoranda relating to the capital of the Han, written during the Tsin dyn.—P. 30.—Reprinted in the H. W.

649. 三峽記 San Hua ki. Account of the three great River Defiles. See Mayers p. 296.—Quoted in the T'ai p'ing kuang ki (q. v.).—A work with the same title was compiled in the Ming period (see Yu ming shan ki).


651. 三柳軒雜識 San liu hien ts'a shi. Sung dyn.—S.Y.—Reprinted in the W. P.

651a. 三茅真君傳 San Miao ch'en hün ch'uan. The story of San Miao, a Taoist Saint, who attained immortality, in the 3rd cent. B. C., according to the Shen sien ch'uan (No. 694). The reputed Kou kū mountain (see note 12a), called also Mao shan, derives its name from this Saint.—P. 24.

652. 三蘇文集 San Su wen ts'i. Writings of the three Su.—P. 38.—Mayers p. 301 (55).—The three Su are 蘇洵 Su Sun, and his sons 蘇軾 Su Shi (died 1101), and 蘇轍 Su Chi (died 1112).
653. 三才圖會 San ts‘ui t‘u hui. A comprehensive cyclopaedia, illustrated by numerous wood-cuts, by 王圻 Wang K‘i. Published in 1607.—Wylie 149.—The botanical section of the work has little value, the accounts and drawings given of the various plants being generally incorrect.

654. 三齋畵記 San ts‘i lio hâ. Tsin dyn.—Reprinted in the W. P.

655. 三秦記 San Ts‘in hâ. On the three divisions of the State of Ts‘in (Mayers p. 303), by 辛氏 Sin (shi). 5th cent.—P. 32.—S. Y.—Quoted in the Ts‘i min yao shu (q. v.).

656. 三都賦 San tu fu. A panegyric on the three capitals of the three kingdoms, 吴 Wu, 蜀 Shu, and 魏 Wei, by 左思 Tso Sz‘. 3rd cent.—Biogr., Tsin shu 92.—P. 36.—S. Y.

657. 三洞珠囊 San tung chu nang. A Taoist work, by 王懸河 Wang Huan ho.—P. 35.—T. P.

658. 三因方 San yin fang, by 陳言 Ch‘en Yen, or 陳無择 Ch‘en Wu tse. Sung dyn.—P. med. 17.—Tung i pao kien 5.—S. K. K. X. 11.

659. 三餘嘗筆 San yü chui pi. Ming dyn.—S. K. CXXVII. 14.

660. 三餘帖 San yü tien. Sung dyn. (?)—T.

661. 三元延壽書 San yüan yen shou shu, by 李鵬飛 Li P‘eng fei, or 李廷飛 Li Ting fei. Yuan dyn.—Biogr., Yuan shi 197.—P. med. 20.—H. K II. 30.

662. 沙州記 Sha chou ki. Records of Sha chou (Kan su), by 湯國 Tuan Kuo.—Quoted in the T. P. (10th cent.).

663. Shan hai king. See p. 37.

664. 山家清供 Shan kia ts‘ing kung, by 林洪 Lin Hung. Sung dyn.—P. 34.—S. Y.

665. 山谷刀筆 Shan ku tao pi. Writings of Huang T‘ing kien (see No. 202).—P. 38.—S. K. CLXXIV. 33.

666. 山居錄 Shan k’u lu, by 王晏 Wang Min.—P. 33.—W. H. CCXVIII. 3.—12th cent. or earlier.

667. 山居四要 Shan k‘u sz‘ yao. Apparently a work on agriculture, by 蔡汝懋 Ts‘ai Ju mou. Ming dyn.—P. 33.—H. K. II. 35.

668. Shan si t‘ung chi. See p. 88.
669. 山堂考索 Shan t'ang k'ao su, by 章俊卿 Chang Tsun k'ing. Sung dyn.—P. 36.—S. K. K. XIV. 6.
670. 山堂肆考 Shan t'ang sâ' k'ao. A.D. 1595.—Wylie 150.
671. Shan tung t'ung châ. See p. 88.
672. 割繁方 Shan fan fang, by 謝士泰 Sie Shi t'ai.—P. med. 14.—Sui lit.
673. Shan fan pen ts'ao. See p. 45.
675. 傷寒直格 Shang han chi ho, by Liu Ho kien (see No. 812).—P. med. 21.—Tung i pao kien 6.
676. 傷寒類要 Shang han lei yao, by 平堯卿 Ping Yao k'ing. Sung dyn.—P. med. 14.—W. H. CCXXIII. 13.
677. 傷寒六書 Shang han liu shu, by 陶華 Tao hua. Ming dyn.—P. med. 21.—Tung i pao kien 6.
678. 傷寒論 Shang han lun. A medical work on Fever, by Chang Chung k'ing. Han dyn.—See note 12 (5).—P. med. 13.
679. 傷寒明理論 Shang han ming li lun, by 成無已 Ch'eng Wu ki. Kin dyn.—P. med. 21.—Tung i pao kien 6.
682. 傷寒總病論 Shang han tsung ping lun, by 龕安時 Pi'ang An shu, a celebrated physician of the Sung period.—Biogr., Sung shi 462.—P. med. 21.—S. K. K. X. 8.
683. 傷寒薈要 Shang han yün yao, by 吳綏 Wu Shou. Ming dyn.—P. med. 21.
684. 尚書注疏 Shang shu chu shu. The Shang shu (the same as the Shu king, see p. 33), commented upon by 孔安國 K'ung An kuo. 2nd cent. B. C.—P. 23.—Mayers 323.
685. 薪薬譜 Shao yao pu. A treatise on the Shao yao flower (Paeonia albiflora), by 劉榮 Liu Pin, liter. name 貢父 Kung fu. First half of the 11th cent.—Biogr., Sung shi 319.—P. 28.—Reprinted in the T. CXV.—See also below No. 1067.
687. 撮生妙用方 She sheng miao yung fang. Hygienic prescriptions, by 張時徹 Chang Shi ch'e. Ming dyn.—P. med. 21.—S. K. CV. 21.

688. 神異記 Shen i hi, by 王浮 Wang Fou.—P. 34.—Mentioned in the T. P. (10th cent.), but probably of earlier date.

689. 神異經 Shen i king. A narrative treating of marvellous things and countries, by Tung fang So (see No. 464).—P. 25.—Wylie 153.—Reprinted in the H. W.

690. 神醫普救方 Shen i pu kiu fang.—P. med. 20.—S. Y. (Sung authors).

691. Shen nung Pen ts'ao king. See p. 27.

692. 神農食忌 Shen nung shi hi. Dietetics of the Emperor Shen nung (noxious food).—P. med. 15.—Sui lit.

693. 神農食經 Shen nung shi king. Emperor Shen nung's rules regarding food. See No. 710.

694. 神仙傳 Shen sien ch'uan. Biographies of Taoist Immortals, by Ko Hung (see No. 579).—P. 24.—Wylie 175.—Reprinted in the H. W.

695. 神仙服食方 Shen sien fu shi fang. Taoist dietetic prescriptions, by Ko Hung (see No. 579).—P. med. 15.—Sui lit.

696. 神仙服食經 Shen sien fu shi king. Taoist dietetics.—P. med. 15.—Sui lit.—Quoted in the Ts'i min yao shu (q. v.).


698. Shen ni t'ung chi. See p. 89.


700. 聖祖御製幾暇格物編 Sheng Tsu yü chi hi hia ko zu pien. Observations of the Emperor K'ang hi (1662—1723) relating to natural history. Frequently quoted in modern Chinese works on botany. It is comprised in the Collection of K'ang hi's Memoirs 聖祖御製文集 Sheng Tsu yü chi wen tai (S. K. K. XVIII. 45.—Wylie 189), and has been translated into French by Father Cibot. See Mémoires conc. les Chinois IV. p. 450.

701. 勝金方 Sheng kin fang.—P. med. 14.—Sui lit.

702. 灑水燕談錄 Sheng shui yen t'an lu. Close of the 11th cent.—Wylie 156.
704. Sheng king fu. See No. 1117.
705. Sheng king t’ung chi. See p. 88.
707. 食医心镜 Shi i sin king, by Tsean Yin (see No. 12). T’ang dyn.—P. med. 15.
708. 食忌 Shi ki. On dietetics (noxious food), by Sun Sz’mo (see p. 43).—P. med. 13.
709. Shi kien pen ts’ao. See p. 54.
710. 食經 Shi king. There are several works treating of food and bearing this title. One is attributed to the Emperor Shen nung. See No. 693.
Another is by Huai nan wang (see No. 193).—P. sub Shi sing pen ts’ao (see p. 46).
Another by 崔浩 Ts‘ui Hao.—P. l. c.—Sui lit.
Another by 竺賢 Chu Hsüan.—P. l. c.
Another by 李氏 Li (shi).—P. med. 16.
The Shi king (I am not aware which of the above) is frequently quoted in the Ts‘i min yao shu (q. v.).
711. Shi liao pen ts’ao. See p. 45.
712. Shi sing pen ts’ao. See p. 46.
713. Shi wu pen ts’ao. See p. 53.
714. 詩學大成 Shi hio ta ch‘eng, by 毛直方 Mao Chi fang. End of the 13th cent.—P. 32.—Sh. Y.—H. K. VII. 36.
715. 詩話 Shi hua, by 王直方 Wang Chi fang. End of the 11th cent.—W. H. CCXCIX. 22.—See also No. 902.
717. Shi king. See p. 33.
718. 事類賦 Shi lei fu, by 吳淑 Wu Shu. Close of the 10th cent.—P. 36.—Wylie 146.
719. 事林廣記 Shi lin huang ki, by 陳元凱 Ch‘en Yuan tsing. Sung dyn.—P. 34.—Wylie 34.
720. 事類奇 Shi ts‘z lei k‘i. Ming dyn.—S. K. CXXXVIII. 10.
721. 事文類聚 Shi wen lei tsū, by 諧惟 Chu Mu. Sung
dyn.—P. 31.—S. K. CXXXV. 36.

722. 事物紀原 Shi mu ki yūan. A record of the origin of
affairs and things, by 高承 Kao Ch'eng. Sung dyn.—P. 32.—
S. K. K. XIV. 3.

723. Shi yen yao yūan. See p. 135.

724. 十洲記 Shi chou ki, or 海內十洲記 Hai nei shi
chou ki. A fabulous description of ten insular kingdoms, by Tung
fang So (see No. 464).—P. 30.—Wylie 153.—Reprinted in the
W. P.

725. 十道志 Shi tao chi. Topography of the ten provinces
(tao) into which China was divided in the 7th cent. Author
梁載言 Liang Tai yén. Close of the 9th cent.—W. H. CCIV. 3.

726. 十全博救方 Shi ts'üan po kiu fang, by 劉甫 Liu
Fu.—P. med. 15.—Sung lit.

727. 毒藥神書 Shi yao shen shu, by 葛可久 Ko K'ou kiu.
Ming dyn.—His biography is given in the I lin (No. 233).—P.
med. 21.—H. K. VI. 47.

728. 世本 Shi pen. Ancient historical records from the Emperor
Huang Ti down to Nan Wang, written towards the end of the
Chou dynasty. Sze ma Ts'ien, the author of the Shi ki (2nd cent.
B. C.), made use of this work.—P. 30.—Han lit.

729. 世説 Shi shuo. A collection of minor incidents from the
Han to the Tsin, by 劉義慶 Liu I k'ing. 5th cent.—P. 30.—
Wylie 151.

730. 使西域記 Shi Si yü ki. Journal of an Embassy to
Western Asia in 1258 A. D., by 劉郁 Liu Yu.—P. 31.—See my
Notes on Chin. mediaev. travellers, p. 57.

731. 使西域記 Shi Si yü ki. Account of an Embassy to
Western Asia, by 陳誠 Ch'en Ch'eng, in 1415.—S. K. LXIV. 5.—
H. K. V. 21.—See my notes on this journey in “China Review”
IV. 314.

732. 石湖集 Shi hu tsi, by Fan Ch'eng ta (see No. 388).—
P. 39.—Wylie 202.

733. 石林燕語 Shi lin yen yü, by Ye Meng te (see No. 608).—

735. 子 Shi ts'e. Writings of 子俊 Shi Xiao, a philosopher about 280 B. C.

736. 拾遗记 Shi i hi. A record of matters omitted in the annals of the empire, by 王嘉 Wang Kia, liter. name 子年 Ts'ai nien. 4th cent.—Biogr., Tsin shu 95.—P. 24.—Wylie 154.—Reprinted in the H. W.

737. 試效 Shi hiao, by Tung Yuan (see p. 48).—P. med. 16.


739. 士農必用 Shi nung pi yung. A treatise on Agriculture. Ming dyn., perhaps Yuan dyn.—Frequently quoted in the Nung cheng ts'uan shu (q. v.).

740. 史記 Shi ki. Historical Record by the celebrated historiographer 司馬遷 Sze ma Ts'ien. B. C. 163—85.—P. 23.—Wylie 14.—Mayers 660.

741. 壽親養老書 Shou ts'in yang lao shu (the first character is sometimes replaced by 奉 Feng), by 陳直 Ch'en Chi. Sung dyn.—P. med. 20.—S. K. K. X. 7.

742. 壽域神方 Shou yü shen fang, by K'ü sien (see p. 53).—P. med. 20.

743. Shou shi t'ung k'ao. See p. 84.

744. 獸經 Shou king. A treatise on Quadrupeds, by 黃省曾 Huang Sheng ts'eng. Ming dyn.—P. 28.—Wylie 121.

745. 蜀志記 Shu chi hi. A description of Shu (the present Sz' ch'uan).—Quoted in the Ts'i min yao shu (q. v.).

746. 蜀中廣記 Shu chung kuang ki. This seems to be an account of the province of Sz' ch'uan. Author 曹學 Ts'ao Hio. Ming dyn.—S. K. K. VII. 26.

747. 蜀記 Shu ki.—Quoted in the Ts'i min yao shu (q. v.).

747a. Shu Pen ts'ao. See p. 46.

748. 蜀地志 Shu ti chi.—P. 31.—Perhaps the same as the 蜀志 Shu chi mentioned in the Sui lit.

749. Shu tu fu. See No. 656.
750. 竭王本紀 *Shu wang pen tsi.* Ancient historical records of Shu (Sz' ch'üan), by Yang Hsiung (see No. 106), who was a native of Shu.—S. Y.—T. P.

751. 遠征記 *Shu cheng ki,* by 郭線生 *Kuo Lü sheng* of the Liu Sung dyn. (5th cent.).—P. 34.—S. Y.—Sui lit.

752. 遠異記 *Shu i ki.* A collection of notes on the Wonderful, by 任昉 *Jen Fang.* Beginning of the 6th cent.—P. 34.—But the work now extant with this title has additions of later date and is not the original.—Wylie 154.

The P. l. c. quotes another work with the same title, which is the production of 祖沖之 *Tso Ch'ung chi,* who lived in the 5th cent.—His biogr. Nan Ts'i shu 52.—S. K. CXLIII. 43.

753. *Shu king.* See p. 33.

754. 森園雜記 *Shu yüan ts'ao ki,* by 陸文量 *Lu Wen liang,* or 陸容 *Lu, Yung.* Ming dyn.—P. 36.—S. Y.—Reprinted in the W. P.

755. 雙槐歲鈔 *Shuang huai sui ch'ao.* Ming dyn.—S. K. CXLIII. 16.

756. 水經 *Shui king.* The Water Classic, a work on the rivers of China, by 桑欽 *Sung K'ün.* Beginning of the Christian era.—Reprinted in the H. W.—It has been commented upon by 麟道元 *Li T'ao yüan* in the 5th cent.—Biogr. Wei shu 89.—P. 29.—Wylie 43.

757. 水南暇記 *Shui nan han ki,* by 李贛 *Li Kuan.* Ming dyn.—H. K. V. 18.

758. 水東日記 *Shui tung ji ki,* by 葉盛 *Ye Sheng.* 15th cent.—P. 32.—Wylie 159.

759. 水雲錄 *Shui yün lu,* by 雒英 *Ye Meng te* (see No. 608). Sung dyn.—P. 33.—A work with the same title by Yang P'u of the Ming is noticed in the S. K. CXXX. 4.

760. 瑞竹堂經驗方 *Shui chu t'ang king yen fang.* A collection of medical prescriptions, by 蕭謙齋 *Sa k'iu Jen* ts'i.—P. med. 18.—In the S. K. K. X. 14 the name of the author reads 蕭理彌實 *Sa li mi shi* (probably a Mongol name). First half of the 14th cent.

761. 瑞應圖記 *Shui ying t'u ki,* by 孫桑之 *Sun Jou chi.* Liang dyn.—P. 33.—Sui lit.—W. H. CCXIV. 4.
A work with the title Shui ying t'u, by 温 Yu Wen, published towards the end of the 5th cent., is noticed in the S. Y.

762. 論郭 Shuo fu, by 陶宗儀 Tao Tsung i, liter. name 尹成 Kiu ch'eng. Yuan dyn., or early in the Ming.—P. 31.—Wylie 136.—Mayers 712.

763. 言文解字 Shuo wen k'ie ts'ê'. An ancient dictionary of the Chinese characters, by 許慎 Hui Shen. Close of the first cent. The work was laid before the Emperor An Ti A. D. 121. A commentary upon it was written by 徐锴 Ssu K'ai of the T'ang.—P. 27.—Wylie 8.—Mayers XXIII.—S. K. K. IV. 19.

764. 講文解字原 Shuo wen ts'ê' yüan. On the origin of the Chinese characters, by Chou Pi (see No. 474).—P. 27.—But the S. K. K. IV. 22 attributes the work to Chou Po h'i (see No. 474).

765. 講文 Shuo yüan. A collection of anecdotes from ancient Chinese History, by Liu Huang (see No. 211).—P. 35.—S. K. K. IX. 2.—Reprinted in the H. W.

766. 西河舊事 Si ho hsiu shi. Records relating to Si ho (Fen chou fu, Shan si).—Mentioned in the T'ang lit., but seems to date from an earlier period.


768. 西溪叢語 Si k'i ts'ung yü, by 姚寬 Yao K'uan. Middle of the 12th cent.—P. 36.—Wylie 128.

769. 西京雜記 Si king ts'a ki. A record of incidents at Ch'ang an, the Chinese metropolis during the Han, by 劉歆 Liu Hin, who lived about our era.—Reprinted in the H. W.—Others believe that Ko Hung (see note 12 [8]) was the author of it.—The S. K. K. ascribes the authorship of the work to Wu K'un (see No. 806).—Quoted in the Ts'i min yao shu (q. v.).—P. 31.—Wylie 151.


771. 西域諸國志 Si yü chu huo chi. Account of Western countries. 5th cent., perhaps earlier.—Quoted in the Ts'i min yao shu (q. v.).—T. P.
772. 西域記 Si yü ki. Account of the countries of the West, by the Buddhist monk 元識 Yüan Chuang (or 玄奘 Hūan Ts'ang). First half of the 7th cent.—Translated by Stan. Julien.

773. Si yü t'ü chi. See p. 95.


775. 席延賞方 Si Yen shang fang. Medical prescriptions, by Si Yen shan.—P. med. 13.—Sung lit.

776. 湘中記 Siang chung ki. (Ancient Siang in the present Hunan). Tsin dyn.—W. H. CCVI. 2.—Reprinted in the W. P.


778. 相應經 Siang pei king, by 朱仲 Chu Chung. Han dyn.—P. 28.—H. K. III. 45.—Mayers 82 (?).—Reprinted in the H. W.


780. 襲逃記 Siang Mien ki.—P. 32.—T'ang lit.

781. 小品方 Siao p'in fang, by 陳延之 Ch'en Yen chi.—P. med.—Sui lit.

782. 小兒真訣 Siao rh' ch'en hüe, by 錢乙 Ts'ien I, liter. appellation 仲陽 Chung yang, Court physician. Close of the 11th cent.—Biogr. Sung shi 462.—P. med. 21.—Wylie 84.—Tung i piao kien 5.

783. 小兒方 Siao rh' fang. Medical prescriptions against infantile complaints, by 張煥 Chang Huan.—P. med. 22.—Sung lit.

784. 小爾雅 Siao Rh ya. A dictionary similar to the Rh ya (q. v.), by 孔頤 K'ung Fu, a descendant of Confucius, known also under the name of 孔叢子 K'ung ts'ung tz'u. He lived about B. C. 212.—P. 28.—Han. lit.—S. K. XLIII. 1.—The Siao rh ya, reprinted in the H. W., was commented upon by 李軌 Li Kui of the Han.

785. 仙傳方 Siien ch'huang fang. Taoist medical prescriptions, by 張三丰 Chang San feng. Beginning of the 15th cent.—P. med. 19.—Ming lit.
There are several works bearing the same title. The S. Y. notices a Sin lun by 恒譚 Huan T'ao. First cent. A. D.—The H. W. reproduces besides Lu Kia’s work a Sin lun by 劉顯 Liu Hie. Liang dyn.


788. 心法 Sin fa. A medical (Taoist) work, by 田姬 (see p. 49).—P. med. 17.—Tung i pao kien 6.
The P. quotes ibidem a discussion on Tan Ki’s Sin fa by 程充 Ch‘eng Ch‘ung, and another by 楊珣 Yang Sun. Both probably of the Ming.

789. 星槎勝覽 Sing ch‘a sheng lan. An account of peregrinations at sea, by 費信 Fei Sin. A. D. 1436.—P. 30.—Ming lit.

790. 性理大全 Sing li ta ts‘uan. A collection of philosophical works. A. D. 1415.—P. 34.—Wylie 69.

791. 修真秘旨 Siu chen pi chi. A Taoist work. Sung dyn.—P. 26.—T. P.

792. 修真秘訣 Siu chen pi hie. A Taoist work, by 順陽子 Ying Yang tzu.—P. 26.—Sung lit.

793. 神珍方 Siu chen fang, by Chou ting wang (see p. 49).—P. med. 18.

794. 神珍小兒方 Siu chen siao rh fang, by 徐用宣 Su Yung s‘ian. Ming dyn.—P. med. 22.—S. K. CV. 16.

795. 瑣碎錄 So sui lu.—P. 37.—Author 温革 Wen K‘o. Sung dyn.—W. H.—The S. Y. gives as author of the work 陣日華 Ch‘en Ji hua of the Sung.

796. 搜神記 Sou shen ki. A collection of legends, by 子寶 Yi Pao, who wrote about A. D. 320.—P. 24.—Wylie 154.—Reprinted in the H. W.
The 搜神後記 Sou shen hou ki is a continuation of the preceding by 随潛 Tao T‘ien. A. D. 365—427.—Wylie 1. c.—Mayers 713.
797. 蕃沈良方 Su Ch'en liang fang. Collection of famous recipes, by Ch'en Kua (see No. 510), with additional matters by Su Tung p'o (see No. 991).—P. med. 15.—Wylie 78.

798. Su chou fu chi. See p. 89.

799. 蘇黃手稿 Su Huang shou kien. Writings of Su Shi (see No. 991) and Huang Ting kien (see No. 202).—P. 38.—Mayers 620.

800. 淮洞集 Su hui tai, by 王履 Wang Li. Second half of the 14th cent.—P. med. 18.—Wylie 80.

801. 續漢書 Su Han shu. Appendix to the Han histories, by 謝承 Sie Ch'eng. Period of the three kingdoms.—P. 30.—S. Y.

802. Su Pi t'an. See No. 510.

803. 續博物志 Su Po wu chi. A supplement to the Po wu chi (see No. 637), by 李石 Li Shi. Middle of the 12th cent.—P. 28.—Wylie 154.

804. 續水經 Su Shui kung. A supplement to the Shui kung (see No. 756), by 陸頋 Lu Yin. T'ang dyn.—P. 30.—S. Y.

805. 續搜神記 Su Sou shen ki, by 陶 Tao. P. 35.—I think this is the same as the Sou shen hou ki (see No. 796). The S. Y. quotes a Su Sou shen ki of the Wu tai period.

806. 續齊譜記 Su Ts'i hiai ki. A supplement to the Ts'i hiai ki (see No. 927), by 吳均 Wu K'un of the Liang dyn.—Reprinted in the H. W.—P. 24.—Wylie 154.

807. 續韻府群玉 Sui Yun fu k'üen yü. Supplement to the dictionary Yun fu k'üen yü (see No. 1141), by 包瑜 Pao Yu. Ming dyn.—P. 27.—S. K. CXXXVII. 29.

808. 徐文伯方 Su Wen po fang. Medical prescriptions of Su Wen po, a celebrated physician in the middle of the 5th cent.—P. med. 13.—Sui lit.—Biogr. Nan shi 52.


810. Suan hua kien chi. See p. 88.

812. 宣明方 Suan ming fang, by 刘完素 Liu Huan su, a celebrated physician of the Kin.—Biogr. Kin shi 131.—He was a native of Ho kien.—P. med. 16 styles him 刘河闕 Liu Ho kien.—Tung i pao kien 6.

813. 隋煬帝開河記 Sui Yang Ti K'ai ho hi.—P. 33.—Sung lit.—Probably a memoir on the Yellow River, referring to the time of the Emperor Yang Ti of the Sui (A. D. 605—617).


815. 隨身備急方 Sui shen pei hi fang, by 張文仲 Chang Wen chung.—Biogr. T'ang shu 204.—P. med. 13.—T'ang lit.


817. 篆譜 Sun pu. Treatise on Bamboo sprouts, by the Buddhist priest T'ao ning (see No. 67).—Wylie 122.—Reprinted in the T. CLXXXVII.

818. 荀子 Sün tzu'. A philosophical work, by 荀況 Sün K'uang. 3rd cent. B. C. Commented upon by 楊倞 Yang Liang. T'ang dyn.—P. 23.—Wylie 66.—S. K. K. IX. 1.

819. 朱史 Sung shi. History of the Sung dynasty, A. D. 950—1280, by T'o t'o (see No. 455).—P. 30.—Wylie 18.


822. 朱嶽宗詩 Sung Hui Tsung shi.—P. 38.—Poems by the same Emperor.

823. 嵩高山記 Sung hao shan ki. Account of the Sung kao mountain (see No. 824). 5th or 6th cent.—P. 32.—T. P.

824. 嵩山記 Sung shan li. Account of the Sung mountain (see Appendix 43), by 盧搢 Lu Hiu. T'ang dyn.—P. 25.—T'ang lit.

But a treatise with this title existed at an earlier date, as I find it quoted in the Kuang chou ki (q. v.).—The Yu ming shan ki reproduces a Sung shan li of the Ming period.
825. 松窓雜記 Sung ch’uangan tsa hi, by 李濁 Li Sün, styled also 李濁 Li P’o, or 李濁 Wei Sün. First half of the 9th cent.—Biogr. T’ang shu 222.—P. 32.—S. K. K. XIV. 15.

The W. P. reprints an article with the above title. Author 杜荀鶯 Tu Sün ho. T’ang dyn.

826. 松漠紀聞 Sung mo hi wen. Historical memoranda regarding the Kin dynasty, by 洪皓 Hung Hao, A. D. 1090—1155, who was sent on an embassy to the Kin.—Wylie 26.—Mayers 198.—In the P. 33 the name of the author of this narrative reads 洪邁 Hung Mai. But this was the son of Hung Hao.

827. Sz’ ch’uangan t’ung chi. See p. 91.
828. Sz’ i kuan. See p. 95.
829. Sz’ k’u ts’uian shu kien ming mu lu. See p. 134.
830. Sz’ k’u ts’uian shu tsung mu. See p. 134.

831. 四民月令 Sz’ min yüe ling (the second character of the title reads 時 shi in some quotations), by 翟遷 Ts’ui Shi. After Han.—P. 33.—S. Y.—Apparently a work on agriculture, as can be judged from the quotations in the Ts’i min yao shu.

832. Sz’ sheng pen ts’ao. See p. 45.
833. 四時類要 Sz’ shi lei yao. A work on agriculture, quoted in the Nung cheng ts’uian shu (q. v.). Yuan or Ming period.
834. 四時寶鏡 Sz’ shi pao king. T’ang dyn.—S. Y.
836. Sz’ t’i ts’ing wen kien. See p. 105.
837. 大康地記 Ta k’ang ti ki. Tsin dyn.—S. Y.
838. Ta Kuan Pen ts’ao. See p. 47.
839. 大明會典 Ta Ming hui tien. Description of the Chinese government during the Ming, published in 1509.—P. 31.—Wylie 56.
840. Ta Ming I t’ung chi. See p. 87.
841. Ta Ts’ing I t’ung chi. See p. 87.
842. 大業拾遺錄 Ta Ye shi i lu (apparently referring to the reign of Ta Ye, 605—607), by 杜寳 Tu Pao. T’ang dyn.

The S. K. CXLIII. 4 mentions a work 大業拾遺記 Ta Ye shi i hi, by 貞子 Shi lu (see No. 270).

843. 打棗譜 Tu tsao pu. A treatise on Jujubes, by 柳貫 Lin Kuan. Yuan dyn.—Biogr. Yuan shi 181.—This treatise is reprinted in the Ch. descr. part XV. 5 and T. CCXXIII.
844. 太和山志 Tai ho shan chi. Description of the Tai ho mountain (see Appendix 48), by 田玉 Tien Yu. Close of the 16th cent.—P. 31.—S. K. LXXVI. 11.—Wylie 44.

845. Tai p'ing Huan yü ki. See p. 86.

846. 太平廣記 Tai p'ing huan ki. An Encyclopaedia similar in character to the next, containing minor articles by the same author (Lo Shih).—P. 24.—S. K. K. XIV. 33.

847. 太平御覽 Tai p'ing yü lan. A great Encyclopaedia, published by 李昉 Li Fang. A. D. 983.—P. 31.—Wylie 146.—See also p. 135.

848. 太白陰經 Tai po yin king. A treatise on military tactics, by 李筌 Li Ts'uan. Middle of the 8th cent.—P. 36.—Wylie 73.


850. 太清石室記 Tai ts'ing shi pi ki. A Taoist work.—P. 26.—T'ang lit.

851. 太清草木記 Tai ts'ing ts'ao mu ki.—P. 25.—A treatise of a similar title by T'ao yin küh (see p. 43) is noticed in the Sui lit.

852. Tai no wan fu chi. See p. 90.

853. 泰山記 Tai shan ki. Account of the celebrated Tai mountain (see Appendix 51). This is occasionally quoted in Chinese botanical works. But there are several records with the above title by authors of the Han, Sung, Ming, etc. See Yu ming shan ki.

854. 丹房鑑源 Tan fang kien yüan. An alchemistic work, by 獨孤滔 Tu Ku t'ao.—P. 25.—Sung lit.

855. 丹溪心法 Tan k'i sin fa, by Yang Sun (see No.783).—P. med. 17.

856. 丹溪心法附錄 Tan k'i sin fa fu lu, by 方廣 Fang Kuang. Ming dyn.—P. 17.—S. K. CV. 24.

857. 丹溪纂要 Tan k'i tsuan yao, by 盧和 Lu Ho. Ming dyn. See p. 54.—P. med. 17.

858. 丹砂秘訣 Tan sha pi küh, by 張杲 Chang Kao. Sung dyn.—P. 29.—The author is noticed S. K. X. 10.

859. 丹臺錄 Tan t'ai lu, by 青霞子 Ts'ing Hua ts'ü, a Taoist scholar of the Sung.—P. 25.—W. H. CCXXII. 7.—Sung lit.
860. "丹鉛録" *Tan yüan lu*, by Yang Shen (No. 703).—P. 33.—Wylie 130.

861. 談圖 *T`an pu*, by 孫升 *Sun Sheng*. Sung dyn.—P. 35.—S. Y.

862. 談 数 *T`an sou*, by 龔元英 *P`ang Yüan ying*. Sung dyn.—P. 35.—S. K. CXLIII. 8.—There are several works with the same title by different authors.

863. 談苑 *T`an yüan*, by 楊億 *Yang I*. Beginning of the 11th cent.—P. 26.—Wylie 147.

864. 唐 膳 養 *T`an chai pi heng*, by 邢 *Hing*.—P. 38.—This is apparently the author 邢凱 *Hing K'ài* of the Sung, mentioned by Wylie 130 sub *T`an chai t`üng pien*.

865. 唐會要 *T`ang hui yao*. Compilation of State matters during the T`ang, by 王溥 *Wang Pu*. 10th cent.—P. 30.—Wylie 56.


868. 唐 小 說 *T`ang siao shuo*. Miscellaneous narratives referring to the T`ang period.—P. 37.—W. H. CXC. 1. (?)

869. 唐 武 侯 別 傳 *T`ang Wu Hou pien ch`uan*. Narrative of the Empress Wu of the T`ang, in the latter half of the 7th cent.—P. 24.—Mayers 862.


872. 得 效 方 *Te hiao fang*, by 危 色 林 *Wei I lin*. A. D. 1337.—P. med. 19.—Wylie 80.

873. 登 具 隱 訣 *Teng chen yin hüe*. A Taoist work, by *Tao yin k yü* (see p. 43).—P. 26.

874. 帝 京 壽 物 畫 *Ti k`ing k`ing wu h`io*. A description of Peking. A. D. 1635.—S. K. LXXVII. 23.

875. 帝 王 世 紀 *Ti wang shi ki*. History of the ancient Emperors, by 黃 寶 *Mi* (see No. 271).

876. 地 鏡 圖 *Ti k`ing t`u*. Liang dyn., or earlier.—P. 35.—Sui lit.
877. 吕溪漁隱叢話 Tiao h'ëi Yü yÎn ts'ung hua, by 胡仔 Hu Tse'. Sung dyn.—P. 37.—S. K. CXCV. 37.
878. 鐵圍山叢談 T'ie wei shan ts'ung t'an, by 蔡條 Ts'ai T'iao. First half of the 12th cent.—P. 36.—Wylie 157.
880. 濱中茶花記 Tien chung ch'a hua ki. A treatise on the Camellia flower of the province of Yün nan, by 馮時可 Feng Shi k'o. Ming dyn.—See Yu ming shan ki.
880a. 濱海廣衡志 Tien hai yü heng chi. An account of the geographical features, natural productions, etc. of Southern China, especially Yün nan, by 潘萃 Tan Ts'ui (see No. 183). Present dyn., second half of the last cent.—Tan Ts'ui appears as the author of a treatise on the Chinese aborigines in the C. T. The Tien hai yü heng chi is frequently quoted in the Ch. with reference to Southern Chinese plants.
881. Tien hi. See p. 92.
882. Tien nan Pen ts'ao. See p. 75.
883a. 濱太華山記 Tien T'ai hua shan ki. An account of the T'ai hua mountain in Yün nan (see Appendix 49). Ming dyn.—Yu ming shan ki.
884. 天香傳 Tien hiang ch'üan, by 丁謂 Ting Wei, who, according to the W. H. CCXXV. 12, was a Taoist author in the beginning of the 11th cent.—P. 26.
885. 天工開物 Tien kung k'ai wu. A treatise on Technology, by 朱應星 Sung Ying sing. Second edition in 1637.—Stan. Julien has translated many articles from this work.
885a. 天目山志 Tien mu shan chi. Description of the Tien mu mountain (see Appendix 55), by 徐嘉泰 Su Kia t'ai. Beginning of the 17th cent.—S. K. LXXVI. 17.
886. 天寶單方圖 Tien Pao tan fang t'u.—P. med. 13.—I understand that the book was published during the period Tien Pao. A. D. 742—56.
887. 天彭牡丹譜 Tien p'eng Mu tan pu. A treatise on Peonia Moutan, by 陸游 Lu Yu. A. D. 1125—1210.—Mayers
446.—S. K. CXVI, 31.—Reprinted in the Ch. descr. part XI. 73 and T. CCLXXXVII.

888. 天台縣志 Tien t'ai hien chi. Description of the district of T'ien t'ai (Che kiang). Ming dyn.—S. K. LXXIV. 24.

889. 天台山記 Tien t'ai shan chi. An account of the T'ien t'ai mountain (Che kiang, see Appendix 56), celebrated in Chinese Buddhism and Taoism. Author 徐靈府 Su Ling fu, a Taoist priest of the T'ang dyn.—W. H. CCVI. 2.

There are several works with the same title compiled by authors of the Ming. There is also a 天台山志 Tien t'ai shan chi by a Taoist priest of the Yüan.—S. K. LXXVI. 2.

890. T'ien tsin hien chi. See p. 88.

891. 田家五行 Tien hua wu hing. Ming dyn.—H. K. II. 35.


893. 多能鄙事 To neng pi shi, by 劉伯溫 Liu Po wen, or 劉基 Liu Ki. A. D. 1311—1375.—P. 34.—Mayers 409.—S. K. CXXX. 2.

894. 疫疹證治 Tou chen cheng chi, by Li Yen wen (see No. 258).—P. med. 22.

895. 疫疹管見 Tou chen huan hien, by 高武 Kao Wu. Ming dyn.—P. med. 22.—S. K. CV. 30.


897. 殖荒錄 Tou huang lu.—T'ang dyn.—S. Y.

898. 雜錄 Tsa lu, by Tao yin khi (see p. 43).—P. 35.

899. 雜史 Tsa shu. Ming dyn.—S. K. CXXXVII. 40.—But a treatise with this title existed much earlier.

900. Tsa mu hing shu. See No. 1049.

901. 雜陰陽書 Tsa yin yang shu.—Mentioned in the Han lit.

902. 蔡氏詩話 Ts'ai shi shi hua.—P. 39.—The name of the author is 蔡寬夫 Ts'ai Kuan fu, or 蔡居厚 Ts'ai Kiu hou.—Biogr. Sung shi 366.—K. XVIII. 18.

903. Ts'ai yao lu. See p. 40.

904. 參同契 Ts'an t'ung k'i. A commentary on the I king, giving information on Chinese Alchemy, by 魏伯陽 Wei Po yang, a celebrated Taoist philosopher and alchemist, about the middle
of the second cent.—P. 36.—Wylie 175.—Reprinted in the H. W.

905. 倉頡解詁 Ts'ang Hie kie hu.—P. 27.—Several treatises with a similar title are noticed in the Han lit.—Ts'ang Hie is reputed as the inventor of the art of writing, in the mythical period of antiquity.—Mayers 756.

906. 造化指南 Tsao hua chi nan. A Taoist work on Alchemy, by 土斯真君 Tu Su chen kün.—P. med. 16.—Sung dyn.?—See also No. 980.

907. 造化權舆 Tsao hua kuan yü, by 趙巨石 Chao Ts'ien. T'ang dyn.—P. 37.—W. H. CCXIV. 7.

908. 草花譜 Ts'ao hua pu. A treatise on herbaceous garden plants, by 高淵 Kao Lien. Ming dyn. Seems to belong to the 17th cent.—Ming lit.—Reprinted in the T. CXXI. and CLXXXIII.

909. 草廬集 Ts'ao lü ts'ai. Writings of 吳澄 Wu Chi'eng. A. D. 1249—1333. Pseudonym Ts'ao lü.—P. 38.—Mayers 859.

910. 草木子 Ts'ao mutsz', by 業世傑 Ye Shi chie, or 葉子奇 Ye Ts'zi k'i. A. D. 1378.—P. 35.—Wylie 184.

911. 草薬圖 Ts'ao yao t'u. Drawings of medicinal plants, by 羅思拏 Lo Sz' hü. Present dyn.—Quoted in the Ch.

912. 曹議傳 Ts'ao Man ch'uan. Biography of Ts'ao Ts'ao, the founder of the Wei dynasty, died A. D. 220. Written during the San kuo period.—Mayers 3.—T. P.

913. 曹子建集 Ts'ao tz' kien ts'ai. Writings of 曹植 Ts'ao Chi, A. D. 192—232, third son of the great usurper Ts'ao Ts'ao (see No. 1024).—P. 37.—Mayers 759.—S. K. K. XV. 3.

914. 集效方 Ts'i hiao fang, by 閻孝忠 Yen Hiao chung. Beginning of the 12th cent.—P. med. 19.—Wylie 84.

915. 集異記 Ts'i i ki. A historical work, by 薛用弱 Sie Yung yo. Early part of the 9th cent.—P. 34.—Wylie 156.

916. 集簡方 Ts'ai kien fang. Medical prescriptions, by 瀋湖 Pin hu, or Li Shi chen (see p. 54).—P. med. 19.—S. K. K. X. 18.

917. 集事淵海 Ts'i shih yuan hai.—P. 31.—This is probably the same as the 羣書集事淵海 K'ün shu ts'ai shi yuan hai of the 15th cent.—See S. K. CXXXVII. 30.

918. 集駮方 Ts'ai yen fang. Medical prescriptions, by 梅師 Mei shi (see No. 341).—P. med. 14.
919. Same title. Author 姚曾垣 Yao Seng t' an. Middle of the 10th cent.—Biogr. Chou shu 47.—P. med. 14.—Tung i pao kien 4.

920. Same title. Author 董炳 Tung Ping. 11th cent.—P. med. 19.—Wylie 79.

921. Same title. Author 朱端章 Chu Tuan chang.—P. med.—Sung lit.

922. 集韻 Ts'i yün. A dictionary, by 丁度 Ting Tu. Middle of the 11th cent.—P. 27.—Wylie 8, 9.


924. 濟生拔萃方 Ts'i sheng pan ts'ui fang. A collection of medical treatises and recipes of famous physicians of the Kin and Yüan periods, by 杜思敬 Tu S' king of the Yüan or Ming.—P. med. 17.—H. K. VI. 37.

925. 積善堂經驗方 Ts'i shan t'ang k'ing yen fang, by 萬表 Wan Piao, an author of the Ming.—P. med. 18.—S. K. CV. 21.

926. 祭法 Ts'i fa. A work on Sacrifices, by 盧謙 Lu Shen. Tsin dyn.—Biogr. Tsin shu 44.—P. 35.—Sui lit.

927. 齊譜記 Ts'i hiu li. A record of marvels, by Ch'en Yo (see No. 820), reproduced in the H. W.—P. 24.—Wylie 154.—See also No. 806.

928. Ts'i min yao shu. See p. 77.

929. 齊地記 Ts'i ti li. An account of ancient Ts' i (in Western Shan tung), by 伏琛 Fu Ch'en. 5th cent. or earlier.—P. 32.—S. Y.

930. 齊東野語 Ts'i tung yo yü, by Chow Mi (see No. 48).—P. 31.—Wylie 133.

931. 七錄 Ts'i lu, by 阮孝緒 Yuan Hiao su, died 537.—Biogr. Liang shu 51.—Sui lit.

932. 焦希程集 Tsiao Hi ch'eng ts'i. Writings of Tsiao Hi ch'eng. 16th cent.—P. 39.—S. K. LI. 35.


934. 千金翼方 Ts' ien kin i fang. Medical prescriptions, by Sun S' mo (see p. 43).—P. med. 13.

935. 千金備急方 Ts' ien kin pei ki fang. Same author.—P. l.c.
936. 千金方 Ts'ien hsin sui fang. Same author.—P. 1. c.
937. 千金月令方 Ts'ien hsin yue ling fang. Same author.—P. 1. c.
938. Ts'ien hsin shi chi. See p. 43.
939. 錢起詩集 Ts'ien K'i shi ts'i. Poems of Ts'ien K'i. Middle of the 8th cent.—P. 38.—Sh. Y.
940. 錢神論 Ts'ien shen lun, by 魯褒 Lu Pao. Tsin dyn.—Biogr. Tsin shu 94.—P. 37.
941. 前漢書 Ts'ien Han shu. History of the Former Han, 202 B. C.—25 A. D. Author Dansun Pan ku; died A. D. 92.—P. 23.—Wylie 13.
942. 前涼錄 Ts'ien liang lu. Tsin dyn., according to T.
943. 潛溪集 Ts'ien k'i ts'i, by 朱景晤 Sung K'ing lien, styled also Sung Lien. A. D. 1310—1381.—P. 38.—Mayers 639a.—H. K. III. 74.
944. 晉中興書 Ts'ien chung kung shu, by 河法盛 Ho Fa ch'eng. 5th or 6th cent.—P. 25.—S. Y.
945. 晉宮閨名 Ts'ien hung ho ming. Description of the palaces of the Tsin, written during that dynasty.—S. Y.
946. 晉書 Ts'ien shu. History of the Tsin dynasty, A. D. 265—420, by 王 習 Wang Yin of the same dyn.—P. 23.—S. Y.
   The Tsin shu in its present form was compiled in the 7th cent. by 房 信 Fang K'iao.—Wylie 15.
947. 秦承祖藥方 Ts'ien Ch'eng tsu yao fang. Medical prescriptions of Ts'ien Ch'eng tsu. Tsin dyn.—P. med. 13.—Sui lit.—T. P.
   The Sui lit. notices also a work 秦承祖本草 Ts'ien Ch'eng tsu Pen ts'ao, and several other medical works by the same author.
949. 秦子 Ts'ien ts'ai. Writings of 秦子 Ts'ien Ts'ing of the Kingdom of Wu. Period of the three Kingdoms.—Sui lit.
950. 清異錄 Ts'ing i lu, by 陶 謝 T'ao Ku. Wu tai and Sung periods.—S. K. K. XIV. 35.
952. 清城山記 Ts'ing ch'eng shan ki (see Appendix 58), by the Taoist priest Tu Kuang t'ing (see No. 942).—W. H. CCVI. 1.

952n. 青囊雜纂 Ts'ing nang tsa tsuan, by 邵真人 Shao (chen jen), a Taoist priest.—P. med. 20.—H. K. VI. 41.—I have not been able to find out when this author lived.—Compare, also, Meyers 785青囊書 Ts'ing nang shu, the medical treatises of the Azure satchel, by Kuo P'o of the Tsin dyn.

953. 青囊雜記 Ts'ing shiang tsu ki. Sung dyn.—S. K. K. XIV. 11.

954. 青囊集 Ts'ing t'ang tsi. Ming dyn.—S. K. CLXXIX. 32.

955. 左貴婦集 Ts'o kui pin tsi.—P. 39.—T. P.—The Sui lit. notices a work 左九婦集 Ts'o kiu pin tsi, which is probably the same.

956. 昨夢錄 Ts'o meng lu, by 康譽之 K'ang Yu chi. Sung dyn.—P. 38.—S. K. CXLIII. 8.

957. 楚國先賢傳 Ts'iu kuo xian hien ch'uan, by 張方賢 Chang Fang hien. Tsin dyn.—P. 31.—S. Y.

958. 楚贔 Ts'iu sz'. Elegies of Ts'iu, the poetical production of 屈原 K'iü Yin. 4th cent. B. C.—P. 27.—Wylie 181.

959. 楚贔芳草譜 Ts'iu sz' fang ts'ao pu. An account of the plants mentioned in the Elegies of Ts'iu (see No. 958), by 謝翱 Sie Ao, an author of the Sung, according to the S. K. K. XVI. 46.—Reprinted in the T. III.

960. 桑文 Tsuan wen, by 何承天 Ho Ch'eng tien of the (Liu) Sung dyn. (5th cent.).—P. 25.—S. Y.

961. 桑要方 Tsuan yao fang, by 崔行功 Ts'ui Hsing kung. Middle of the 7th cent.—Biogr. T'ang shu 249.—P. med. 14.

962. 泉南志 Ts'iu'an nan chi and 泉南雜志 Ts'iu'an nan tsa chi. Both are quoted in the T. and are perhaps the same. The last mentioned, according to S. K. LXXVII. 20, is of the Ming period.

963. 運生八風 Ts'un sheng pa ts'ien. A discourse on Hygiene, by 高潔深 Kao Lien shen. A. D. 1591.—Frequently quoted in the T. and Ch.—Wylie 85.

964. 宇林 Ts'ü lin, by 呂忱 Lü Shen of the Tsin dyn.—P. 27.—W. H. CLXXXIX. 20.—The S. Y. notices a work with the same title by Liu Shan king of the Sui dyn.
965. 字說 Tsz' shuo, by 王安石 Wang An shi (see No. 461).—P. 27.

966. 子母秘錄 Tsz' mu pi lu, by 張傑 Chang kie. T'ang dyn.—P. med. 15.—Sung lit.—T'ang lit. (author).


968. 慈谿日鈔 Tsz' k'i ji ch'ao, by 黃震 Huang Chen. 13th cent.—P. 36.—Wylie 70.

969. 此事難知 Tsz' shi nan chi, by Wang Hai ts'ang (see p. 48).—P. med. 16.—Wylie 79.

970. 獨行方 Tu hing fang, by 韋宙 Wei Chen. T'ang dyn.—Biogr. T'ang shu 240.—P. med. 14.—T'ang lit.

971. 獨異志 Tu i chi, by 李可 Li Yu, or 李元 Li Yuan. T'ang dyn.—P. 34.—S. K. CXLIV. 3.—S. Y.

972. 獨醒雜志 Tu xing tsu ki. A. D. 1185.—Wylie 158.


974. 杜子美集 Tu Ts' mei ts'ai. Writings of the celebrated poet 杜甫 Tu Fu, liter. appellation Ts' mei. A. D. 712—770.—P. 38.—Mayers 680.

975. 杜陽編 Tu yang pien. An account of rare and curious objects brought to China from foreign countries from A. D. 763—872, by 蘇稩 Su O. Latter part of the 9th cent.—P. 32.—Wylie 155.

976. 篇論 Tu lun, by 杜恕 Tu Shu. Tsin dyn.—P. 35.—S. Y.

977. 論繪寶鑑 Tu hui pao kien. Middle of the 14th cent.—Wylie 110.

978. Tu k'ing pen ts'ao. See p. 47.

979. Tu shu ts'ei ch'eng. See p. 71.

980. 土宿真君本草 Tu Su (chen k'un) Pen ts'ao. Materia medica of Tu Su (see No. 906).—Mentioned in the P. XV. 38.

981. 呼納經 Tu na king. A Taoist work on the curing of diseases by various modes of breathing—P. 35.—T. P.—Apparently a production of the 4th or 5th cent.

982. 退齋譜覽 Tui chai hien lan, by 侯延賞 Hou Yen shang, or 侯延慶 Hou Yen k'ing. Sung dyn.—P. 36.—S. Y.
983. 遁甲開山圖 Tun hia k'ai shan t'u. 5th cent.—P. 34.—Sui lit.—S. Y.

984. 遁甲書 Tun hia shu. An ancient Taoist work on divination.—P. 26.—Sui lit.

985. 遁甲圖 K'un ch'i hien lan, by 陳正敏 Ch'en Ch'eng min. Beginning of the 12th cent.—P. 36.—W. H. CCXVIII. 1.

986. 燦煌新錄 K'un huang sin lu. About A.D. 929.—W. H. CXC. 10.—T. P. K'un huang is the present An si in Kuan su.


988. Tung i pao kien. See p. 102 and p. 136.

989. 東溪試茶錄 Tung k'i shih ch'a lu. A treatise on the Tea of Tung k'i (an ancient name for a district in Fu kien), by 朱子安 Sung Tse'an. Sung dyn.—S. K. K. XII. 21.

990. 東觀秘記 Tung kuan pi li. P. 30.—This is I suppose the same as the 東觀漢記 Tung kuan Han ki, frequently quoted in the T. and according to the S. K. K. V. 21 completed about A. D. 170. Tung kuan was the name of a pavillion in the palace of the Han at Lo yang.

There is also a 東觀奏記 Tung kuan tsou ki of the T'ang dyn.—W. H. CXCVI. 22.

991. 東坡詩集 Tung p'o shi ts'i. Poems of Tung p'o, which is the pseudonym of 蘇軾 Su Shih, a celebrated statesman, poet, and commentator. A.D. 1036—1101.—P. 38.—Mayers 623.

992. 東陽方 Tung yang fang. Medical prescriptions, by 范汪 Fan Wang of the Eastern Tsin.—P. med. 13.—Tung i pao kien 4.—Biogr. Tsin shu 75.

993. 東垣十書 Tung Yüan shih shu. The ten books of Tung yüan (see p. 48).—Tung i pao kien 6.—H. K. VI. 37.

994. 洞冥記 Tung ming ki. A work attributed to 郭憲 Kuo Hien of the Han and relating to the time of Wu Ti. B. C. 140—86.—P. 24.—Wylie 153.—Reprinted in the H. W.

995. 洞山芥茶系 Tung shan kie ch'a ki, by 周高起 Chou K'ao k'i. Present dyn.—According to Wylie 119 this is an account of the Teas of the Tung hill, one of the Kie (芥) range (in Hu chou, Che kiang). I do not find these mountains marked on Chinese maps, nor are they noticed in the great geography of
China (see p. 87). But according to the latter work Tea is produced on the 羅幹 Lo kie (kiao) mountains (Chang hing hien in Hu chou fu).—The Yu ming shan ki reprints an article entitled 羅幹茶記 Lo kie ch'a ki.

996. 洞天清錄 Tung t'ien ts'ien lu. 13th cent.—Wylie 134.
997. 洞微志 Tung we'i chi. Sung dyn.—P. 24.—W. H.—Reprinted in the W. P.
998. 童子 Tung ts'z. Writings of 童無心 Tung Wu sin, a philosopher between the 5th and 3rd cent. B. C.—P. 35.—Hau lit.—Sui lit.

999. 通志 Tung chi, by 鄭樵 Cheng Tsiao. A. D. 1108—1162.—P. 31.—Mayers 61.—S. K. K. V. 21.—There is a section on Chinese plants in the work.

1000. 通鑑綱目 Tung kien kung mu. The well-known Chinese Annals drawn up by the celebrated Chu Hi (see No. 75).—Wylie 20.—P. 34.

1001. 通鑑外紀 Tung kien wai ki. 11th cent.—Wylie 20.
1002. 通俗文 Tung su wen, by 服虔 Fu K'ien of the After Han.—P. 32.—S. Y.

1003. 通典 Tung tien, the work which formed the basis of the Wen hien t'ung k'ao (q. v.), by 杜佑 Tu Yu, in the 9th cent.—P. 24.—Wylie 55.


1005. 梧桐山志 Tung po shan chi. Description of the T'ung po mountain (see Appendix 64), by 薛應煒 Sie Ying k'i. Ming dyn.—Reprinted in the Yu ming shan ki.

1005a. 梧譜 Tung pu. Treatise on the t'ung trees (Sterculia, Elseococca, and other trees), by 陳霆 Ch'en Chu. Sung dyn.—P. 29.—Reprinted in the Ch. descr. part XX. 33.—H. K. III. 15.

1006. 童子秘訣 Tung ts'z pi kie, by 姚和衆 Yao Ho chung. T'ang dyn.—P. med. 22.—T'ang lit.

1007. 外科發揮 Wai k'o fa hui.
外科經騐方 Wai k'o king yen fang.
外科心法 Wai k'o sin fa.
外科通玄論 Wai k'o t'ung huan lun.

These four treatises on external complaints, enumerated P. 22, are by 薛己 Sie Xi, a celebrated physician of the Ming.—Tung i pao
kien 8.—The H. K. VI. 32 enumerates all his works contained in the 薛氏全書 Sie shi ts'üan shu.

1008. 外科集録方 Wai k'ō tsi yen fang, by Chou Liang ts'ai (see No. 219).—P. med. 22.

1009. 外科精義 Wai k'ō tseng i, by 董德之 Ts'ai To chi. Yüan dyn.—P. med. 22.—Wylie 80.

1010. 外科精要 Wai k'ō tseng yao, by Ch'en Tsz' ming (see No. 117).—P. med. 22.

1011. 外國志 Wai kuo chi. Account of foreign countries. Quoted in the K. and T.—Seems to date from the 4th cent.

1012. 外國記 Wai kuo ki. A treatise on foreign countries. Commencement of the present dyn.—Reprinted in the C. T.


1015. 王梅溪集 Wang mei k'i tsi.—P. 39.—This is the literary production of 王十朋 Wang Shi p'eng, liter. appellation 龜齡 Kui ling. 12th cent.—W. H. CCXLVII. 10.


1017. 王微謚 Wang Wei tsan. Commendations of Wang Wei of the (Liu) Sung dyn. 5th cent.—P. 27.—Sui lit.


1019. 魏晉 Wei liu, by 魏叢 Yü Huan. Period of the three Kingdoms.—P. 25.—S. Y.

1019a. Wei shu. See No. 172.

1020. Wei tu fu. See No. 656.

1021. Wei wang Hua mu chi. See p. 39.

1022. 魏文帝集 Wei Wen Ti tsi. Writings of the Emperor Wen Ti of the Wei dyn. A.D. 221—227.—P. 37.

1023. 魏武帝食制 Wei Wu Ti shi chi. Emperor Wu Ti's (see the next) Regulations for food.—P. med. 16.—T. P.

1024. 魏武帝集 Wei Wu Ti tsi. Writings of the Emperor Wu Ti or Ts'ao Ts'ao, died 220, the founder of the Wei dynasty.—P. 37.—Mayers 768.
1025. 衛生易簡方 Wei sheng i kien fang, by 胡淵 Hu Yung. Beginning of the 15th cent.—P. med. 17.—Ming lit.
1026. 衛生家寶方 Wei sheng kia pao fang, by Chu Tuan chang (see No. 921).—P. med. 17.—Sung lit.
1027. 衛生譜 Wei sheng ko, by 裏德秀 Chen Te sin, pseudonym 西山 Si shan. A.D. 1178—1235.—P. med. 17.—Mayers 58.
1029. 荟航紀談 Wei hang ki t'an. Sung dyn.—P. 35.—S. Y.—Reprinted in the W. P.
1030. 威靈仙傳 Wei ling sien ch'uan. A memoir on the medical virtues of the plant Wei ling sien, by 蘭陽子 Sung Yang tsz'. Close of the 8th cent.—P. 15.—T. CLXXII.
1031. 文系 Wen hi.—P. 36.—Seems to belong to the T'ang period.
1032. Wen kien t'ung k'ao. See p. 134.
1033. 文選 Wen suan, by 蕭統 Siuo T'ung. A.D. 530.—P. 27.—Wylie 192.—This work has been commented upon by 李善 Li Shan, A.D. 658.
1034. 文字指歸 Wen tze' chi kui, by Ts'ao Hien (see No. 383).—P. 37.—T'ang lit.
1035. 文苑英華 Wen yuan ying hua, by 李昉 Li Fang. A.D. 987.—P. 32.—Wylie 193.
1036. 聞奇録 Wen k'i lu. Towards the close of the T'ang dyn.—W. H. CCXV. 13.—Reprinted in the W. P.
A work with the same title appeared in the Ming period.—S. K. CXLIV. 21.
1039. 吳誌 Wu ch'uan lu. A journal kept during a journey from Sz' ch'uan to Hang chow, A.D. 1177, by Fun Ch'eng ta (see No. 388).—Wylie 29.
1040. 吳下恩家志 Wu hia sz' kia chi. Sung dyn.—S. Y.
1041. 呉記 Wu hing ki. Records of the department of Wu hing (Che kiang), by 山謙之 Shan K'ien chi. —Sui lit.
1042. 吳紀 Wu ki. Records of the Kingdom of Wu (Kiang su, Che kiang), by 環濟 Huan Ts'e. Tsin dyn. —P. 30. —Sui lit.
1043. 呉錄地理志 Wu lu ti li chi. A description of the Kingdom of Wu (see the preceding), by 張勃 Chang Pu. Period of the three Kingdoms, 3rd cent. —P. 30. —S. Y. —Quoted in the Ts'i min yao shu. —Sometimes the title is written simply Wu lu.
1045. Wu tu fu. See No. 656.
1047. 吳越春秋 Wu Yü ch'un ts'iu. Ancient history of the small States of Wu and Yüe, extending from the 12th to the 5th cent. B. C., by 趙壹 Chao I, a Taoist recluse, who lived towards the end of the first cent. of our era. —Wylie 32. —Legge's Shu king, prol. 67.
1048. 五行記 Wu hing ki. —T'ang lit.
1049. 五行書 Wu hing shu. —P. 26. —This is probably the same as the 雜五行書 Tza wu hing shu of the list in the T. P. and which is already quoted in the Ts'i min yao shu.
1050. 五溪記 Wu k'i ki. —P. 25. —T. P. (10th cent.)
1053. 五臺山記 Wu t'ai shan ki. Account of the Wu t'ai mountain (see Appendix 69). Ming dyn. —There is also a 五臺山志 Wu t'ai shan chi of the Ming period. —Quoted in the K. and T.
1054. 五雜祖 Wu tea tsu. Ming dyn. —Quoted in the K. and T.
1055. 物類相感志 Wu lei siang kan chi. A series of memoranda regarding natural productions, medicines, food, etc., by Su Tung p'o (see No. 991). —Wylie 133. —But the P. 28 gives as the author of a work with the same title Tsan hing (see No. 67). —S. K. CXXX. 1.
1056. 物理論 Wu li lun, by 楊泉 or 楊全 Yang Ts'üan. Tsin dyn.—P. 28.—Sui lit.—S. Y.


1058. 武夷山志 Wu i shan chi. Description of the Wu i mountain (see Appendix 67), famed for its Tea, by 裴仲孺 K'iu Ch'ung ju. Beginning of the 15th cent.—A work with the same title was written in the middle of the 16th cent. by 徐衷然 Su Piao jan.—S. K. LXXVI. 2, 9.—Wylie 43.

1058a. 武夷山記 Wu i shan ki (see the preceding), by the Taoist priest Tu Kuang t'ing (see No. 492).

1058b. 武林奮事 Wu lin kiu shih, by Chou Mi (see No. 48).—Wylie 45.

1059. 務本新書 Wu pen sin shu. Frequently quoted in the Nung cheng ts'üan shu. Apparently a production of the Ming period which deals with agriculture.—P. 34.

1060. 梵澤雜佩 Wu Sin ts'a pei. Memoranda regarding Wu chou fu and Sin chou fu (Kuang si). Ming dyn.—Quoted in the K. and T.

1061. 雅述 Ya shu, by 王廷相 Wang T'ing siang, literary appellation 楊川 Sun ch'uan. Middle of the 16th cent.—P. 35.—S. K. CXXIV. 19; CLXXXVI. 13.

1062. Yang lao shu. See No. 741.


1064. 養生主論 Yang sheng chu lun, by 王晉君 Wang yin k'un.—P. med. 17.—The Tung i pao kien 7 styles the author 王匡 Wang K'uang. Yuan dyn.

1065. 養生論 Yang sheng lun, by 蕭康 Ki K'ang, a celebrated alchemist. A. D. 223—262.—P. 37.—Mayers 243.

1066. 養生必用方 Yang sheng pi yang fang, by 蕭虞世 Ch'ü Yu shi. Sung dyn.—P. med. 17.—W. H. CCXXIII. 3.

1067. 揚州釀藥譜 Yang chou Shao yao pu. A treatise on the Shao yao flower (Paeonia albiflora) of Yang chou (Kiang su), by 王觀 Wang Kuan. Second half of the 11th cent.—Wylie 121.—Reprinted in the T. CXV.

1069. 藥譜Yao pu. Frequently quoted in the T.—A treatise with this title is reprinted in the W. P. It is a collection of synonyms of drugs, dating from the T'ang dyn.

1070. Yao sing lun. See p. 44.
1071. Yao sing pen ts'ao. See p. 44.
1072. Yao tsung kue. See p. 43.
1074. 要覽Yao lan, by Lu Ki (see p. 33) of the 3rd cent.—S. Y.—Reprinted in the W. P.

In the Sui lit. we find several works with the above title by different authors, all of the 5th or 6th cent.

1075. 野人聞話Ye jen hien hua, by King Huan (see No. 536).—P. 27.—S. Y.—Reprinted in the W. P.

1076. 野史Ye shih.—P. 34.—The Ye shi is noticed in the list of the T'ang lit. and in the T. P.—The S. Y. mentions a work of this name published during the Sung period.

1077. 野菜譜Ye ts'ai pu. A treatise on wild growing plants used as vegetables, by 王盤Wang P'an, liter. appellation 鴻漸Hung tsien, pseudonym 西樓Si lou, a native of Kao yu (Yang chou fu, Kiang su). First half of the 16th cent. He is not to be confounded with Wang P'an of the Yüan (see p. 82).—P 29.—S. K. CH. 14.—H. K. VI. 22.

The Ye ts'ai pu is found reprinted at the end of the Nung cheng ts'ian shu (see p. 82). It gives accounts of 60 wild growing edible plants (of the province of Kiang su), accompanied with miserable drawings.

1078. 野菜譜Ye ts'ai tsan. A small treatise on wild growing plants used as vegetables, by 顧景星Ku King sing. Present dyn.—Frequently quoted in the Ch.—Reproduced in the C. T.

1079. 鄭中記Ye chung ki, by 陸淵Lu Hui. Tsin dyn.—P. 32.—S. K. K. VI. 23.—Quoted in the Ts'i min yao shu.

The T. P. notices besides Lu Hui's work a Ye chung ki by 石虎Shi Hu.

1080. 燕翼贻謀錄Yen i i mou lu. Sung dyn.—S. K. K. V. 27.
1081. 燕山叢錄 Yen shan ts'ung lu. Ming dyn.—S. K. CXLIV. 19.


1083. 延齡至寶方 Yen ling chi pao fang, by Yao Ho chung (see No. 1006). T'ang dyn.—P. med. 13.—T'ang lit.

1084. 延年秘錄 Yen nien pi lu.—P. med. 14.—T'ang lit.

1085. 煙花記 Yen hua ki.—Quoted in the T.—The W. P. reprints a memoir of the T'ang period entitled 南部煙花記 Nan pu yen hua ki, which is perhaps the same.

1086. 煙譜 Yen pu. A treatise on Tobacco, by 陸耀 Lu Yao. End of the 18th cent. (see No. 265).—Reprinted in the C. T.

1087. 彦周詩話 Yen chou shi hua. A.D. 1128.—Wylie 197.

1088. 演繁露 Yen fan lu. A. D. 1175.—Wylie 129.


1090. 契山園記 Yen shan yian ki, by Wang Shi chen (see No. 207).—Quoted in the K. and T.—Yu ming shan ki.

There is a mountain Yen shan in Shan tung (Tung ch'ang fu, Sin hien). But the pseudonym of Wang Shi chen was also Yen shan.

1091. 鹽鐵論 Yen t'ie lun. The title means "Salt and Iron," but it treats mostly of State questions. The P. 29 gives 桓譚 Huan Tan as the name of the author (see No. 786), but in the S. Y. as well as in the H. W., where this disquisition is reprinted, and also in the Han lit., the name of the author reads 桓寬 Huan K'uan. He wrote during the reign of Chao Ti, B. C. 86—73.

1092. 晏子春秋 Yen ts' ch'iu ts'iu. A personal narrative regarding 晏嬰 Yen Ying, a celebrated statesman; died 493 B.C. It is the production of an anonymous writer some centuries B.C.—P. 35.—Wylie 28.


1094. 隱德錄 Yin te lu, by Chou Pi ta (see No. 61).—P. 37.

1095. 因話錄 Yin hua lu. A record of matters relating to the 8th cent.—Wylie 152.
1096. 餐膳正要 Yin shan cheng yao, by 和斯輝 Ho Sz' hui. Yuan dyn.—P. med. 16.—S. K. CXVI. 27.


1098. 濟涯勝覽 Ying yai sheng lan. Account of the shores of the Ocean, by 馬觀 Ma Kuan. A. D. 1416.—S. K. LXXVIII. 15.

1099. 應銘方 Ying yen fang, by 包會 Pao Hui.—P. med. 20.—T'ang lit.

1100. 游宦紀聞 Yu huan hsi wen, by 張世南 Chang Shih nan. Early in the 13th cent.—P. 38.—Wylie 132.

1101. 游名山志 Yu ming shan chi. Visits to the celebrated mountains of China, by 謝靈運 Sie Ling yün, a celebrated poet of the 5th cent.—Sui lit.—S. Y.

1101a. 游名山記 Yu ming shan ji. A collection of the descriptive accounts and memoirs regarding the hills of note in China, by Wang Shi chen (see No. 207). I have frequently consulted this work, in which the matter is arranged according to the hills of each province.

1102. Yu yang tsa tsu. See p. 95.

1103. 隨明錄 Yu ming lu, by Liu I k'ing (see No. 729).—P. 37.


1105. 玉機微義 Yu ki wei i, by 劉純 Liu Shun, liter. appellation 宗厚 Tsung hou. Yuan and Ming dyn.—P. med. 18.—Tung i pao kien 6.—S. K. CV. 15.


1107. 玉堂開話 Yu t'ang kien hua. Wu tai period.—S. Y.

1108. 玉堂雜記 Yu t'ang tsu ki, by Chou Pi tu (see No. 61).

1109. 玉策記 Yu ts'e ki, by Ko Hung (see note 12 [8]).—P. 34.—T. P.

1110. 玉蜀寶典 Yu tu pao tien, by 杜臺卿 Tu Tai k'ing. Sui dyn.—P. 33.—S. Y.

1111. 玉洞要訣 Yu tung yao kue, by Chang Kao (see No. 858).—P. 29.
1112. 餘冬序錄 Yu t'ung sù lu', by 何孟春 Ho Meng ch'un. Ming dyn.—P. 36.—S. Y.

1112a. 餘話 Yu hua. This is the third section of the Hui chu lu (see No. 209).

1113. 寓簡 Yu kien. A. D. 1174.—Wylie 132.

1114. 唐肩吾集 Yu Kien wu ts'i. Writings of Yu Kien wu of the Liang dyn.—P. 27.—Sui lit.

1115. Yu yin ts'ung hua. See No. 877.


1117. 御製盛京賦 Yu chi Sheng king fu. A poetical production of the Emperor K'ien lung (1736—1796) praising Shen king (Mukden, Southern Manchuria). Father P. Amiot in 1770 published a translation of it from the Manchu version (Éloge de la ville de Moukden et de ses environs, par l'Empereur Kien long). There exists also a translation by Klaproth from the same text. It forms part of his Chrestomathie Mandchoue, 1828.—The Chinese text of the poem is found in the last edition of the Shen king t'sung chi (see p. 88). It contains some particulars regarding the natural productions of Manchuria.

1118. 元真子 Yuan ch'en ts'ei. 8th cent.—Wylie 176.

1119. Yuan feng Kiu yü chi. See No. 345.


1121. Yuan I t'ung chi. See p. 86.

1122. Yuan-lan. See No. 197.

1123. 元史 Yuan shi. History of the Yuan or Mongol dynasty, A. D. 1260—1368, by 朱綸 Sung Lien and others.—P. 30.—Wylie 19.

1124. 淵明別傳 Yuan ming pie ch'üan. Narrative regarding Yuan ming, who is the same as T'ao T'sien (see No. 796).—S. K. K. XV. 3.—Mayers 713, 715.

1125. 淵譚集 Yuan ying ts'i. Writings of 吳萊 Wu Lai, styled also Yuan ying. Yuan dyn.—P. 38.—S. K. K. XVII. 16.

1126. 原機啓微集 Yuan ki k'i wei ts'i, by 倪維德 I Wei te, a celebrated physician; died 1377.—Biogr. Ming shi 299.—P. med. 23.—H. K. VI. 39.
1127. 原病式 Yüan p'ing shi, by Liu Ho kien (see No. 812).—P. med. 16.

1128. 圖覺經 Yüan hio k'ing. Taoist work. T'ang dyn.—P. 37.—T'ang lit.

1129. 園林草木疏 Yüan lin ts'ao mu shu, by Wang Fang k'ing (see No. 466).—T. CLXXV. CCCXIII.

1130. 袁子正書 Yüan tsz' cheng shu, by 袁凖 Yüan Chun. Period of the three Kingdoms.—S. Y.


1134. 雲林遺事 Yüan lin i shi, by Ku Yüan k'ing (see No. 7).—Reprinted in the W. P.


1136. 雲南行記 Yüan nan hing ki.—T'ang lit.

1137. 雲南記 Yüan nan ki. Memoranda regarding Yüan nan, by 袁滋 Yüan Tsz'. Beginning of the 9th cent.—Biogr. T'ang shu 240.—P. 31.—T'ang lit.

1138. Yüan nan t'ung chi. See p. 91.

1139. 雲仙散錄 Yüan sien san lu. T'ang dyn.—W. H. CCXV. 17.

1140. 雲仙雜記 Yüan sien ts'a ki. Beginning of the 10th cent.—Wylie 152.


1142. 韻語陽秋 Yün yü yang ts'iu, by 葛立方 Ko Li fang. Sung dyn.—P. 39.—S. K. XX. 5.

1143. 永嘉記 Yung kia ki. Account of the district of Yung kia (Che kiaa). 5th cent or earlier.—Quoted in the Ts'i min yao shu.—P. 25.—T. P.
1144. 永類鈐方 Yung lei kin fang, by 李仲南 Li Chung nan, liter appellation 棲季 Si ki. Yüan dyn.—P. med. 18.—Tung i pao kien 7.

1145. 容齋隨筆 Yung chai sui pi, by 洪邁 Hung Mai. A. D. 1123—1203.—P. 36.—Mayers 198.—Wylie 128.

1146. 漢幢小品 Yung ch'uang siao p'in. Ming dyn.—S. K. CXXVIII. 10.

1147. 瘡疽方論 Yung tsu fang lun, by 李暹 Li Sin. Sung dyn.—P. med. 22.—S. K. K. X. 11.

INDEX
OF CHINESE AUTHORS.

N.B.—The figures refer to the numbers of the Alphabetical List of Chinese Works, unless the page be indicated.

Ai Yüan ying. 260.

Chao Ts'ai. 160.
   — Ts'in. 1063.
   — Ts'i men. 907.
   — Yü shi. 618.
   — Yüe. 851.
Ch'ao Yüan fang. 619.

Chen Kuan. p. 44.
   — Si shan. 1927.
   — Te sin. 1027.

Chen Ao. 57.
   — Cheng min. 985.
   — Cheng. 731. p. 47.
   — Chi. 741.
   — Chu. 1065a.
   — Fu liang. 51.
   — Hao ts'ai. 179.
   — Hien chang. 627.
   — Huai yüan. 559.
   — Jen yü. 397. 411.
   — Ji hua. 338. 795.
   — Ki. 9.
   — Ki ju. 28. 403. 604.
   — Ki. 21.
   — Kia mo. p. 54.
   — King. 155.
   — Kua. 510. 797.
   — Li. 133. 314.
   — Ling kii. 495.
   — Peng nien. 501.
   — Pien. 338.
   — Shan. 509.
   — Shen. 55a.
   — (shii). 35.
   — Shi liang. p. 46.
   — Shou. 246. 650.
   — Shun yü. 495.
   — Siang. 632.
   — Sz. 194.
   — Ting. 60.
   — Ting. 448.
   — Ting ts'ai. p. 54.
   — Tsang kii. p. 45.
   — Ts'un chung. 472. 510.
   — Ts'ai ang. 34.
   — Ts'ai ming. 117. 1010.
   — Wu tse. 658.
   — Yen. 658.
   — Yen chi. 781.
   — Yo. 829. 927.

Ch'ên Yüan lung. 347.
   — Yüan ts'ing. 719.
   — Yung. 462. 463.
Cheng Ch'ü hui. 521.
   — Hsiao. 453.
   — Hsiao. p. 45.
   — Ts'ao. 999. p. 37.
   — Wang chi. 674.
Ch'êng ch'ai. p. 49.
   — Cheng. 788.
   — Hung chi. 333.
   — (shii). 43.
   — Wu. 679.
   — Yü wen. 181. 186.
Chi. p. 46.
   — Ts'ai. p. 40.
Chou Ch'iu. 113.
   — Fei. 259.
   — hien weng. p. 49.
   — Kao k'i. 995.
   — K'ii fei. 470.
   — kung. p. 34.
   — Liang ts'ai. 219. 1008.
   — Mi. 42. 48. 148. 391.
   — 930. 1038.
   — Pi. 474. 764.
   — Pi ta. 61. 343. 1094.
   — 1108.
   — Po k'i. 474. 764.
   — (shii). 482.
   — Sh. 482. 486.
   — Ta kuan. 27.
   — ting weng. 642. 793. p. 49.
   — Ts'ai chii. 65.
   — Wen ts'ai. 219.
   — Ying. 317.
Ch'ou Yüan. 573.
Chu. p. 76.
   — Chuang. 778.
   — Fa chen. 488.
   — Fu. 288.
   — Hsi. 74. 75. 1000.
   — Hsiao. 710.
   — Ko k'ao. 73.
   — Kung. 556.
BOTANICON SINICUM.

Chu Mu. 107. 721.
— Siao. 642.— p. 49.
— Tuan chang. 921.
— Yen sii. p. 49.
— Ying. 119.
Ch'u Cheng. 252.
— Hu. 534.
— Yü shi. 357. 1066.
— Yung. 370.
Chung Chou. 83.
Ch'un Yü i. p. 41.
Chung king. p. 41.
— Yü. 409.

Fa yün. p. 94.
Fan Ch'eng tsu. 364. 386.
— 387. 388. 507. 732.
— 1039.
— Kuang. p. 35.
— Li. 104.
— Sheng chi. p. 76.
— Wang. 992.
— Ye. 170.
Fang Cho. 634.
— Hiao ju. 816.
— Hû ku. 105.
— Hû. 105.
— Kiao. 946.
— Kuang. 856.
— Tsien li. 544.
Fei Sin. 789.
Feng Shi k'o. 880.
Fu Ch'en. 629.
— Iien. 873.
— Hou. 355.
— Kien. 356. 1002.
— Kung. 157.
— Wu. 138.
Han Ch'ien chi. 366.
— Chi ho. 681.
— Fei. 140.
— kwan. p. 45.
— O. p. 81.
— Pao sheng. p. 46.
— wen kung. 143.
— Yen chi. 366.
— Ying. 142.
— Yü. 143.
Hao ku. p. 48.
Hia Te. 288.
— Ts'ai l. 289.
Hiao. p. 41.
Hien Yien. p. 41.
— Yüan shu. 378.
Hing K'ai. 864.
— Ping. p. 37.
Huang Chung. 360.
— Fan. 81.
— K'i yüe. 281.
— Ts'ai ku. 281.
— Tsung li. 118.

Ho Cheng ti'en. 960.
— Chung mo. 166.
— Fa ch'eng. 944.
— Kiao yüan. 515.
— Kuan tsa'. 168.
— Meng ch'un. 401. 1112.
— Sien. 235.
— Sê hui. 1096.
— Tsâ' yüan. 401.
— Yen. 342.
— Yüan. 85.
Hou Tien. 770.
— ts'ai. p. 76.
— Yen k'iing. 982.
— Yen shang. 982.
Hu Hia (k'i shi). 633.
— Kung tsa'. 459.
— Kiao. 158.
— Shi. p. 48.
— Tsâ'. 877.
— Wen huan. p. 54.
— Yung. 1025.
Hû chen k'un. 178.
— Hiao tsung. 311.
— Shan sin. 120.
— Shen. 763.
— Shu wei. 588.
— Sun. 178.
Hua To. 99. 189.— p. 41.
— yang chen jen. p. 43.
— yüan hua. p. 41.
Hui nan wang. 193. 710.
Huan K'uan. 1091.
— Tun. 786. 1091.
— Ts'ai. 1042.
Hüan Ts'ang. 772.
Huang Chen. 968.
— Fu. p. 42.
— fu Mi. 200. 271. 297.
— 875.— p. 42.
— Hiu fu. 105.
— Kung shao. 360.
— Kung wu. 360.
— Li keng. 434.
— Sheng ts'eng. 96. 249.
— 744.
— Ti. 471.— p. 27. 41.
— 799.
Hui Tsung. 821. 822.
Huang Ch'ü. 154.
— Hs'o. 826.
— king. p. 42.
— K'a fu. 154.
— Ma. 251. 826. 1145.
— nung k'un shou. p. 35.
— Wu. 102.
I. 327.
— Wei te. 1126.

Jen Fang. 752.
— Yü. 244.
— ji hua. p. 46.

Kung hi. 700.
— Yü chi. 956.
— Ch'eng. 722.
— Lien. 415. 908.
— Lien shen. 963.
— Wen ku. 494.
— Wu. 893.
— Yü. 10.

Ki Chung king. p. 41.
— Han. p. 38.
— K'ang. 1065.
— Yüe. 281.

Kî. p. 77.
— Po. p. 41.
Kia I. 787.
— Sa' niu. p. 77.
— Sa' tao. 1122.
Kiang Hsü fu. 296.
— Kuan. p. 34.
— Wan li. 809.
— Yen. 305. 513a.
Kie ku. p. 48.
Kien Wen ti. 449.
Kien lung. 1117.
K'i ng Yü tsa'. 581.
King Fang. 240.
— Huan. 336. 1075.
— shun. p. 33.
Kiu Chung ju. 1058.
— K'iung shan. 409.
— K'iung t'ing. 316.
— Sian. 902.
Ko Hung. 63. 150. 579.
— 694. 695. 727. 769.
— 1109. 1142.— p. 42.
— K'o kiu. 737.
— Lî fang. 1142.
K'ou Tsung shi. p. 48.
Ku K'ai chi. 287.
— Kie. 125.
— King shing. 1078.
— Wei. 377.
— Wen tsien. 121.
— Wen yen. 82.
— Ye. 1106.
— Yüan kung. 7. 1134.
Kü sien. 318. 319. 697.
— 742.— p. 53.
— Yüan. 445. 908.
Kuan. p. 44.
— Chung. 374.
— Kung Ming chi. 100.
— Sin. 226.
Kung An kuo. 684.
— Ch'un. 404. 626.
— Fu. 784.
— ts'ung tsa'. 784.
Kuo Chi mei. 487.
BOTANICON SINICUM. 219

Kuo Hien. 994.
— I kung. 376.
— Ki chung. 116.
— King shun. p. 35.
— Li sheng. 751.
— Po. 952a—p. 35.
— (shih). 196.
— Siang. 83.
— To ro. p. 79.

Lao kiu. 419.
— tas'. 419.

Lei Hao. p. 41.
— kung. p. 40, 41.

Li Ao. 57, 167.
— Chao. 407.
— Chung nan. 1144.
— Fang. 847, 1035.
— Han kung. p. 45.
— Hiao po. 486.
— Hien. p. 87.
— Hung cheng. p. 69.
— I shan. 438.
— Kao. 63.
— Kao. p. 48.
— Ki fu. 1120.
— Kiang. 620.
— Kien yian. p. 55.
— Ko fei. 484.
— Kuan. 757.
— Kui. 784.
— Ku. 94.
— Lien. 230.
— Pao ch'ien. 437.
— Peng fei. 661.
— Po. 825.
— Shan. 1033.
— Shen. 439.
— (shih). 710.
— Shi chen. 916—p. 42, 54.
— Sh k. 1144.
— Sin. 1147.
— Suen. 825—p. 35, 45.
— Tai po. 441.
— Tao. p. 77.
— Tao yian. 766.
— Te yu. 205, 624.
— Tiao yian. p. 92.
— Tien. 263, 393.
— Ting fei. 661.
— Tso. 3.
— Tai. p. 44.
— Ta'yian. 848.
— Tung pi. p. 54.
— Tung yian. p. 48.
— Yen shou. 589.
— Yen wen. 1. 258, 894.
— Yu. 971.
— Yulan. 971.
— Liang Tai yen. 725.

Lie Yü k'ou. 454.
— Lin Hung. 664.
— L. p. 47.
— Sa' huan. 456.

Ling Shu. 518.
— Liu An. 193, 194, 213.
— Fang. 1104.
— Fu. 726.
— Han. p. 46.
— H. 784.
— Hiang. 211, 456, 765.
— H. 786.
— H. 769—p. 35.
— Hk'. 356a.
— Ho kien. 675, 812, 1127.
— Huan su. 812.
— I k'ing. 729, 1103.
— Ken. 480.
— Ki. 833.
— KI. 151.
— King shu. 239.
— Kuan. 843.
— Kian ts' ai. 394.
— Kung fu. 685.
— Meng. 363.
— Meng hi. 111.
— Pin. 683.
— Pin k'o. 295.
— Po wen. 893.
— Shan king. 964.
— Shun. 227, 1105.
— Shun. 469.
— Sung shi. 576.
— Ta pin. 503.
— Tai. 111.
— Tsung hou. 1105.
— Tsung yian. 478, 498.
— Ts'ai hou. 478, 479.
— Yao. 445.
— Ying. 141.
— Yu. 780.
— Yu sh. 80, 295.

Lo L. 18.
— I chih. 1028.
— Kien fu. 1028.
— Pi. 491.
— Shi. 193, 378, 846—
— p. 86.
— Su' kia. 911.
— Ta king. 163.
— Tien l. 1028.
— Tsien hou. p. 37.
— Yulan. p. 37.
— Lou Hou. p. 28.
— Kui chung. 706.

Lu Chih. 144.
— Hien. 824.
— Ho. 857—p. 54.
— Hui. 1079.
— i. p. 41.
— Ki. 1074—p. 33.
— Kia. 560, 786.

Lu Kuang wei. 1044.
— Kui meng. 493.
— Kuo kung. 1068.
— ming shan. p. 82.
— Pao. 940.
— Shen. 926.
— Shi heng. p. 33.
— Tien. p. 37.
— Tsung yung. 248.
— Tung. p. 50.
— Wen heng. 754.
— Yao. 265, 1086.
— Yin. 864.
— Ying ku. p. 74.
— Yu. 109, 418, 533, 887.
— Yi. 4, 562.
— Li Pu wei. 496.
— Shen. 964.

Ma Chi. p. 46.
— Kuo. 555.
— Kuan. 1098.
— Tsan lin. 1082.

Mao Ch'ang. p. 33.
— Chi fang. 714.
— Siang. 599, 415.
— Wen sh. 6.

Mei shi. 341, 918.
— Yao ch'en. 598.

Meng Ch'ang. p. 45.
— Ki. 589.
— Kuan. 465.
— Shen. 695—p. 45.

Ming chi ts'ai. p. 48.

Mo Ti. 527.

Nan kung Ts'ung. 555.

Ning hien weng. p. 53.
— Yüan. p. 54.

Ou yang Sin. 116a, 393.
485, 531, 571, 867.
— yang Suen. 250.

Pan ku. 138, 139, 625, 941.

Pan Huan. 77.

Pang An shih. 682.
— Yüan ying. 862.

Pao Hui. 1099.
— po ts'ai. 579—p. 42.
— sheng. p. 46.
— Yu. 807.

Pei Yüan. 377.

Peng Ch'eng. 595.
— Tsu. 602.

Pi Chung Sun. 537.

Pien Ts'ai. 617—p. 41.

Pin hu. 218, 916.

Ping. p. 45.

Ping Yao k'ing. 676.

Po Kii L. 17, 636.
— Lo tien. 17.
Sui Piao jan. 1058.
- Po. 431.
- (shi). 292.
- Wen po. 808.
- Yen shun. p. 49.
- Yung ch'eng. p. 49.
- Yung shan. 794.
Sun Chao. 354.
- chen jen. p. 44.
- chi. p. 45.
- Jeng chi. 761.
- Kuang hien. 583.
- Kung. p. 77.
- Mien. 870.
- Sheng. 881.
- Shu jen. p. 37.
- Su' moy. 31. 122. 768.
- 934. 937.-p. 42, 43.
- Yen hien. 229.
- Yung ho. 79.
Sun. p. 45.
- Kuang. 818.
- Po ts'ai. 460.
Sung. p. 47.
- Kiu. 340.
- Ku. 245. 315. 604.
- Kuang hien. 943.
- Ku. 429.
- Lien. 943. 1123.
- Tai k'u. 187.
- Ts'ai an. 989.
- Yang ts'ai. 1030.
- Yang sing. 885.
- ma Kuang. 424. 520.
- ma Ts'aien. 740.
Ta Ming. p. 46.
Tai K'ai chi. 66.
- Ku ts'ang. 529.
- Ts'ai. 30.
- Yilan li. 37. 323.
- Tai ts'ang kung. 849.-p. 41.
- Tan k'i. 216. 348. 369.
- 778.-p. 49.
- Tan Ts'ao. 157.
- Ts'ai. 183. 880a.
- Heng. 1097.
- Kin. 499. 511.
- Meng. 638.
- Shen wei. p. 47.
- Shun chi. 334.
- Tao Hua. 677.
- Kiu ch'eng. 59. 762.
- Ku. 950.
- Ta'sien. 796. 805. 1124.
- Tsung i. 762.
- Yin kiu. 851. 873. 898.-p. 43.
- Tao Yuan ming. 1124.
- Teng Hien ming. 549.
- K'ing ts'ai. 432.
- Te ming. 549.
- Tien Ju ch'eng. 767.
- Yu. 844.
- Ting Tu. 922.
- Wei. 884.
- Tu bo. 455. 819.
- Ts'ao Ju mou. 667.
- Kiu hou. 902.
- K'un fu. 902.
- Shang. 5. 428.
- Tsao. 878.
- Tsung yen. 8.
- Yung. 978.
- Tsan ming. 817. 1055.
- Yin. 12. 707.
- Ts'ang Hie. 905.
- k'i. p. 45.
- Ts'ao Chao. 349.
- Chi. 915.
- Fan. 430.
- Hie. 383. 1034.
- Hio. 746.
- Shu ya. 237.
- Ts'ao. 912.
- Ts'ai kien. 913.
- Ts'eng Ts'ao. 425.
- Ts'ei Te chi. 1009.
- Tsiao Hi cheng. 932.
- Kan. 243.
- Tsiao Chou. 237.
- Ts'ai ch'ai. p. 53.
- Ts'ien Ch'ung yang. 782.
- I. 311. 782.
- K'i. 939.
- Ts'in Ch'eng ts'ai. 947.
- Ts'ang. 949.
- Yie jen. 562.-p. 41.
- Ts'ing Hia ts'ai. 859.
- Tao K'in ming. 408.
- Sa'. 656.
- Ts'ao. 607.
- Tsou Fu. 339.
- Tsou Ch'ung chi. 752.
- Tai chi. 47.
- Ts'ul Chi ti. 420.
- Hae. 710.
- Heng kung. 961.
- Piao. 355.
- Shi. 831.
- Yilan liang. 132.
- Tsan chung. 510.
- tui. p. 37.
- Taung Lin. 336.
- Taung cheng. 262.
- Ts'ai Hia. p. 84.
- Lung. p. 83.
- Tu Fu. 974.
- Ki yang. 1135.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- si. p. 47.</td>
<td>- Chuang, 772.</td>
<td>- ti. 327.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Tsung pen. 95.</td>
<td>- Hiao sil. 331.</td>
<td>- Tsz'. 1137.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Tuan. 221.</td>
<td>- hu. p. 82.</td>
<td>Yüe chî. 258.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX.

CELEBRATED MOUNTAINS OF CHINA.

We frequently meet in Chinese botanical works with names of Chinese mountains, the situation of which is generally difficult to ascertain for European readers. I have therefore thought it serviceable to subjoin a list of about 70 of the more conspicuous hills and mountains of China proper, adding some particulars about their position, etc. My information has principally been derived from the Kuang yü ki and from the Ta Ts'ing I t'ung chi (see p. 69 and 87). I have also consulted the 道藏 Tuo ts'ang, or Great Repository of Taoist literature, in which a list of the mountains venerated by Taoists and of the haunted grottoes situated on them is given. This compilation dates from the 3rd cent. B. C. The Taoists distinguish first the 十大洞天 shi ta tung t'ien, the 10 Great haunted Grottoes, and besides these enumerate 36 other haunted Grottoes, 三十六洞天 san shi liu tung t'ien, situated on various mountains of the Empire.

From early times the Chinese have revered the 五岳 wu yo, or five sacred mountains: one in the middle, the others in the Northern, Southern, Eastern and Western parts of the ancient Empire. Annual sacrifices were made on them by the ancient Emperors, and on a rock of the Southern mountain the Emperor Yü is believed to have engraved an inscription (see Legge's Shu king).

Chinese literature abounds in descriptions of these various mountains. Many of these accounts are of very early date. Several works have been published collecting the greater part of the records relating to famous mountains, or giving extracts of them. See Alphabet. List of Works, Nos. 519 and 1101a.
1. 茶山 *Ch'a shan*. Yün nan. Tsu hiung fu, 7 li south of Nan an chou. Tea is produced on this hill.

2. 長白山 *Ch'ang po shan*. Shan tung. Tsi nan fu, 20 li south of Tsou p'ing hien.

3. 赤城山 *Ch'i ch'eng shan*, with the 6th of the ten great haunted grottoes. It forms part of the Tien t'ai shan (see 56) in Che kiang.

4. 錐山 *Chung shan*. Kiang su, north-east of Kiang ning fu. The 32nd haunted grotto.

5. 浮槎山 *Fou ch'a shan*. An hui. 80 li east of Lü chou fu.

6. 衡山 *Heng shan*. Hu nan. Heng chou fu, west of Heng shan hien. The Southern of the five sacred mountains, with the 3rd of the haunted grottoes.

7. 恒山 *Heng shan*. Shan si. Ta t'ung fu, 20 li south-east of Hun yüan chou. The Northern of the five sacred mountains, with the 5th haunted grotto.

8. 霍山 *Ho shan*. Kuang tung. Hui chou fu, 100 li north-east of Lung ch'uan hien.

9. 霍音山 *Ho t'ung shan*. Fu kien. Fu ning fu, 70 li north of Ning te hien. With the first of the 36 haunted grottoes.

10. 輝山 *Hua shan*. Shen si. T'ung chou fu, south of Hua yin hien. The Western of the five sacred mountains, with the 4th haunted grotto.

11. 霞盖山 *Hua kai shan*. Che kiang. 1 li east of Wen chou fu. The 17th haunted grotto.

12. 黃山 *Huang shan*. An hui. North-west of Hui chou fu. See also 44.

13. 會稽山 *Hui ki shan*. Che kiang. 30 li south-east of Shao hing fu. The 10th haunted grotto.


17. 九華山 *Kiu hua shan*. An hui. Ch'i chou fu, south-west of Ts'ing yang hien.
18. 九疑山 Kiu i shan. Hu nan. Yung chou fu, Ning yün hien. The 23rd haunted grotto. The Emperor Shun was buried on this hill, 2206 B. C.

19. 勾曲山 Kou k'ü shan, called also 茅山 Mao shan. Kiang su (see note 12a and Alph. List of Works No. 651a). The 8th great haunted grotto (see p. 43).


22. 括蒼山 Kua ts'ang shan. Che kiang. Ch'ü chou fu, 70 li east of Tsin yün hien. The 10th great haunted grotto.


25. 琅邪山 Lang ye shan. Shan tung. Ts'ing chou fu, 150 li south-east of Chu ch'eng hien. The Emperor Shi Huang ti spent three months on this mountain in 219 B. C.

26. 歷山 Li shan. Shan si. 60 li south-east of P'u chou fu. Here the Emperor Shun, 2250 B. C., is said to have devoted himself to agriculture.

27. 禾常山 Liang ch'ang shan. It forms part of the Mao shan (see 19). The 33rd haunted grotto.

28. 六茶山 Liu ch'a shan. Yün nan. Southern border of the department of P'u rh fu. Tea is produced on this hill.

29. 羅浮山 Lo fou shan. Kuang tung. Hui chou fu, 28 li north-west of Po lo hien. The 7th of the ten great haunted grottoes.


32. Mao shan. See 19.

33. 蒙山 Meng shan. Sz' ch'uan. East of Ya chou fu. This hill is famed for its Tea.
34. 孟通山 Meng t'ung shan. Yün nan. South of Yung ch'ang fu. Tea is produced on this hill.


36. 峨嵋山 O mei shan. Sz' ch'uan. Kia ting fu, south-west of O mei hien. The 7th haunted grotto.

37. 磬山 P'ian shan. Chih li. Shun t'ien fu, north-west of K'i chou.

38. 白石山 Po shi shan. Kuang si. 60 li south of Sün chou fu. The 21st haunted grotto.


40. 首禅山 Shou pei shan, called also 大圍山 Ta wei shan. Hu nan. Ch'ang sha fu, 150 li north-east of Liu yang hien. The 13th haunted grotto.

41. 西山 Si shan. Kiang si. 30 li west of Nan ch'ang fu. The 12th haunted grotto.

42. 仙都山 Sien tu shan. Che kiang. Ch'u chou fu, 23 li east of Tsin yün hien. The 29th haunted grotto.

43. 嵩山 Sung shan, also called 嵩高山 Sung hao shan. Ho nan. Ho nan fu, north of Teng feng hien. The central of the five sacred mountains, with the 6th of the 36 haunted grottoes.

44. 松羅山 Sung lo shan. An hui. Hui chou fu, 13 li north of Hui ning hien. Famed for its Tea. This hill seems to form part of the Huang shan. See 12.


46. Ta wei shan. See 40.

47. 大百山 Ta yu shan. Hu nan. 40 li north-west of Chen chou fu. The 26th haunted grotto.

48. 太和山 Tai ho shan, also 武當山 Wu tang shan. Hu pei. Siang yang fu, 100 li south of Kün chou.


50. 太白山 Tai po shan. Shen si. South-western corner of the prefecture of Sian fu. The 11th haunted grotto.
51. 泰山 Tai shan, written also 太山 Tai shan. Shan tung. 5 li north of T'ai an fu. This is the Eastern of the five sacred mountains, with the 2nd of the 36 haunted grottoes.

52. 丹池山 Tan chi shan, also 金庭山 Kin ting shan and 桐柏山 Tung po shan. Che kiang. Shao hing fu, 70 li east of Sheng hien. The 27th haunted grotto.


54. 天柱山 Tien chu shan. Che kiang. Hang chou fu, south-west of Yu hang hien. The 31st haunted grotto. See also 57.


56. 天台山 Tien t'ai shan. Che kiang. T'ai chou fu, north of T'ien t'ai hien. See also 3. The T'ien t'ai mountain was the earliest seat of Buddhism in China. See Dr. Edkins' Chin. Buddhism, p. 137.

57. 潜山 Ts'ien shan, also 天柱山 Tien chu shan (see 54). An hui. An k'ing fu, Ts'ien shan hien. The 14th haunted grotto.

58. 青城山 Ts'ing ch'eng shan. Sz' ch'uan. Ch'eng tu fu, south-west of Kuan hien. The 5th of the ten great haunted grottoes.

59. 青田山 Ts'ing t'ien shan. Che kiang. Ch'u chou fu, 1 li north-west of Ts'ing t'ien hien. The 30th haunted grotto.

60. 紫菱山 Ts'ei hui shan. Hu pei. King men chou, 50 li south of Tang yang hien. The last of the 36 haunted grottoes.


63. 洞陽山 Tung yang shan. Hu nan. Ch'ang sha fu, 60 li north-west of Liu yang hien. The 24th haunted grotto.

64. 桐柏山 Tung po shan. Che kiang. T'ai chou fu, 25 li north-west of T'ien t'ai hien. See also 52.
65. 王屋山 *Wang wu shan.* Ho-nan. Huai k'ing fu, 80 li west of Tsi yüan hien. The first of the 10 great haunted grottoes.

66. 委羽山 *Wei yü shan.* Che kiang. T'ai chou fu, 5 li south of Huang yen hien. The 2nd of the 10 great haunted grottoes.

67. 武夷山 *Wu i shan.* Fu kien. Kien ning fu, 30 li south of Ch'ung an hien. The 15th haunted grotto. This mountain is famed for its Tea.


69. 五臺山 *Wu t'ai shan.* Shan si. T'ai yüan fu, Wu t'ai hien.

70. 玉笥山 *Yu sz' shan.* Kiang si. Lin kiang fu, 40 li south-east of Hia kiang hien. The 18th haunted grotto.
## CONTENTS

Preliminary Notices... ... ... ... ... ... ... 18

**CHAPTER I.** Contribution towards a History of the Development of Botanical Knowledge among Eastern Asiatic Nations ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 23

1. Chinese Literature on Materia medica and Botany ... ... ... ... 96
2. Chinese Works on Agriculture ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 75
3. Chinese Geographical Works containing Botanical Information ... 86
4. Early Acquaintance of the Chinese with Indian and Western Asiatic Planta ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 92
5. History of Materia medica and Botany in Japan ... ... ... ... ... 22
6. On the Botanical Knowledge of Coreans, Manchus, Mongols, and Tibetans ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 101

**CHAPTER II.** On the Scientific Determination of the Plants mentioned in Chinese books ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 105

**CHAPTER III.** Alphabetical List of Chinese Works ... ... 131

Index of Chinese Authors ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 217

**APPENDIX.** Celebrated Mountains of China... ... ... ... 223
ERRATA.

Page 28 Line 8 for Ts'i read Ts'i.

" 30 " 13 from below add a comma after Veratum.

" 33 last Line for Cheng huan read Cheng Huan.

" 35 Line 16 from below for ch'un read shun.

" 37 " 12 for yen read jan.

" 53 " 6 from below for jen read yen.

" 60 " 8 " " " 間 " 間.

" 62 " 8 " " " t'ao " sso.

" 63 " 14 for 車 (second time) read 甘.

" 65 " 12 for 粟 read 粟.

" 95 " 15 add a comma after Persian.

" 169 No. 452 for 物 read 物.

" 183 " 660 " tien " t'ieh.

" 197 " 865 " 濃 " 濃.
ARTICLE IV.

THE CLIMATE OF SHANGHAI,¹
ITS METEOROLOGICAL CONDITION.²

BY

THE REV. FATHER M. DECHEVRENS, S.J.
Director of the Zi-hu-wel Observatory.

The ever growing importance of the study of climates cannot be called in question nowadays, and all serious minds, though sometimes apprehensive of the difficulties of such a study, are led to admit that the modifications brought about in the human organism under the influence of climate are as important as those we seek for in the practice of public and private hygiene.

Prevention is better than cure: the knowledge of the various climates will effect that object, and it has been said with reason that whenever the science of hygiene shall have advanced so far as to point out to every one what country he must prefer, the power of medicine may be said to be doubled. Ages of observation go to prove that for any disease recovery is difficult in the medium where it originated; whereas it is possible to prevent the formation, or at least to stop the progress of chronic diseases by keeping off the external causes on which they depend, or by sparing to patients the impressions they would receive from such causes. But to that end one must needs be well acquainted with the characteristics of the various climates that divide the

1 Latitude 31° 14' 32" North.
2 Longitude 121° 29' 8" East of Greenwich.
Height 0 ft.

* Read before the Society on the 28th October, 1881.
immense surface of our globe; otherwise the remedy sought for in a change of air or in emigration might be worse than the evil. This is one of the reasons why Meteorology has lately assumed so great an importance.

What is the true meaning of the word Climate and what is understood by Climatology?

Ancient astronomers employed the word κλίμα or region to designate the space comprised between two circles parallel to the earth’s equator; such belts or climates were used to indicate the duration of days and nights from the equator to the pole. That ill-defined division of the earth into thirty climates of unequal breadth has been superseded by the system of latitudes. Hence the word Climate, in its most natural acceptation, designates a certain extent of the surface of the globe offering all over the same conditions of existence. In a word, climate is the positive influence of air, water and places on man as a unit and on men congregated in numbers and dwelling on a limited spot of the globe. Such was already the conception of climate in Hippocrates’ mind, when he treated of the influence of places (τόπων), of water (ὕδατος), and of air (ἀέρα) for maintaining health and generating disease.

Climatology is a science devoted to the study of climates; it borrows largely from Physical Geography, Geology, Hydrology, Meteorology, Medicine, and Statistics.

These then are the various sciences we must have recourse to for a complete study of the Climate of Shanghai. The importance acquired by this great mart, the trade of which has taken such a wonderful increase, would call for a serious and complete inquiry. But unable to grasp all sides of the question, I shall only bring in my share of the work and limit myself to the meteorological point of view, which after all is the most important as meteorological phenomena are those that most affect public health.

I.—TEMPERATURE.

Of all the elements that go to make up a climate, temperature is by far the most important. Its variations are the cause of
nearly all the other meteorological phenomena by which climates differ. It therefore always ranks first in the study of a climate.

The increase of temperature with the depth within the crust of the globe, the existence of hot springs and volcanic eruptions, all concur to prove that the heat stored up in the earth does not all proceed from the Sun. Yet, strictly speaking, it can be said that the variations of temperature at the surface are solely due to solar heat.

The mean temperature of a place, as observed by means of thermometers placed in more or less favourable situations, is dependent, more than is generally supposed, upon the nature of the soil and of everything that happens to be in the vicinity of the instruments. Generally speaking, the better all external influence be warded of, the more precautions be taken to get the thermometer in equilibrium of temperature with the air that freely scours over the country, the nearer to the truth will the results be.

The annual mean temperature of the Shanghai district, as given by eight years' uninterrupted observations made under favourable conditions at the Zi-ka-wei Observatory  is:

\[59.2^\circ \text{Fahr.}\]

According to Arago the isothermal line of 59°, or the line all the points of which enjoy this mean temperature, passes 0° 30' North of Chapel-Hill (U. S.), through Montpellier (France), 0° 20' North of Florence (Italy), 0° 40' North of Athens (Greece), 1° South of Baku (Caspian Sea), 1° 5' North of Nagasaki (Japan). This line is far from corresponding to the parallel of Shanghai (31°), which crosses Texas, passes through Morocco, Alexandria and Lahore, countries and towns which all have a much higher mean temperature than Shanghai. The isothermal line of 59° is considerably deflected to the South on reaching the Eastern coast of Asia.

All the points of an isothermal line do not enjoy the same climate, since a climate with regard to temperature may either be extreme or temperate according as the mean temperatures of

---

2 The Zi-ka-wei Observatory (French Jesuit missionaries), 3.5 miles S.W. of Shanghai.
Winter and Summer differ more or less. Thus at Yakutsk (Siberia) the annual range of mean monthly temperature, or the difference between the mean temperatures of January and of July, is 104.07, an enormous variation if compared with Bangkok (Siam) where it does not exceed 5.04. At Shanghai the annual variation of monthly temperature is 45.03, indicating a rather severe climate.

The mean temperatures of the four seasons, from eight years' observations, are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Season</th>
<th>Temperature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Winter</td>
<td>39.0 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spring</td>
<td>56.0 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summer</td>
<td>78.0 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autumn</td>
<td>62.0 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The mean temperature for each month is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Month</th>
<th>Temperature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>January</td>
<td>35.0 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>February</td>
<td>39.0 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March</td>
<td>46.0 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April</td>
<td>57.0 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May</td>
<td>66.0 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>June</td>
<td>73.0 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>July</td>
<td>81.0 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>August</td>
<td>80.0 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September</td>
<td>73.0 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>October</td>
<td>63.0 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>November</td>
<td>51.0 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December</td>
<td>41.0 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It may be both interesting and useful to know the mean temperature of all the days of the year to be enabled to foretell changes of weather with some degree of probability. The following table gives the mean temperatures of each five days, as deduced from all the observations of the last 8 years (1873-1880). One may notice the coldest day on January 5th (30.0 6) and the hottest on July 6th (83.0 7), giving a range of 53.0 1.

**Mean temperature at Shanghai for each five days.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Days</th>
<th>Temperature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6 — 10</td>
<td>36.0 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 — 15</td>
<td>36.0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 — 20</td>
<td>36.4 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 — 25</td>
<td>36.6 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 — 30</td>
<td>35.1 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 — 4</td>
<td>37.8 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 — 9</td>
<td>38.1 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 — 14</td>
<td>37.6 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 — 19</td>
<td>39.2 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 — 24</td>
<td>42.4 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 — 1</td>
<td>42.0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 — 11</td>
<td>45.6 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 — 16</td>
<td>46.3 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 — 21</td>
<td>47.8 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 — 26</td>
<td>49.4 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27 — 31</td>
<td>51.2 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 — 5</td>
<td>54.1 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 — 10</td>
<td>55.0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 — 15</td>
<td>54.0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 — 20</td>
<td>56.6 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 — 25</td>
<td>60.4 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 — 30</td>
<td>62.9 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
from 1 — 5 May 63° 7 from 3 — 7 September 77° 1
   " 6 — 10 " 65. 4 " 8 — 12 " 74. 8
   " 11 — 15 " 65. 6 " 13 — 17 " 71. 8
   " 16 — 20 " 66. 6 " 18 — 22 " 72. 5
   " 21 — 25 " 70. 0 " 23 — 27 " 70. 7
   " 26 — 30 " 70. 3 " 28 — 2 October 69. 4
   " 31 — 4 June " 70. 6 " 3 — 7 " 67. 6
   " 5 — 9 " 71. 7 " 8 — 12 " 64. 8
   " 10 — 14 " 72. 4 " 13 — 17 " 63. 4
   " 15 — 19 " 74. 4 " 18 — 22 " 62. 9
   " 20 — 24 " 73. 8 " 23 — 27 " 60. 2
   " 25 — 29 " 75. 7 " 28 — 1 November 57. 0
   " 30 to 4 July " 79. 0 " 2 — 6 " 55. 4
   " 5 — 9 " 82. 8 " 7 — 11 " 52. 6
   " 10 — 14 " 80. 1 " 12 — 16 " 51. 7
   " 15 — 19 " 80. 3 " 17 — 21 " 51. 2
   " 20 — 24 " 81. 5 " 22 — 26 " 48. 1
   " 25 — 29 " 81. 9 " 27 — 1 December 46. 2
   " 30 — 3 August " 81. 9 " 2 — 6 " 45. 3
   " 4 — 8 " 81. 6 " 7 — 11 " 42. 4
   " 9 — 13 " 82. 1 " 12 — 16 " 44. 1
   " 14 — 18 " 80. 9 " 17 — 21 " 40. 7
   " 19 — 23 " 79. 3 " 22 — 26 " 39. 6
   " 24 — 28 " 77. 7 " 27 — 31 " 37. 7
   " 29 — 2 September 77. 7

To give a fair idea of the variations of temperature at Shanghai, I subjoin the means of the maxima and minima for the same 8 years:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Month</th>
<th>Minima</th>
<th>Maxima</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>January</td>
<td>17.0° 8</td>
<td>57.0° 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>February</td>
<td>24. 3</td>
<td>61. 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March</td>
<td>30. 2</td>
<td>75. 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April</td>
<td>36. 7</td>
<td>84. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May</td>
<td>46. 9</td>
<td>89. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>June</td>
<td>57. 7</td>
<td>92. 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>July</td>
<td>67. 8</td>
<td>97. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>August</td>
<td>65. 3</td>
<td>95. 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September</td>
<td>55. 8</td>
<td>90. 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>October</td>
<td>40. 1</td>
<td>82. 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>November</td>
<td>28. 9</td>
<td>72. 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December</td>
<td>21. 2</td>
<td>65. 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mean of the absolute minima: 16.0° 5
Mean of the absolute maximum: 97. 7

January 1878, absolute minimum: 12.0° 2
July 1875, absolute maximum: 102. 0
In this period of 8 years (1873-1880) there were on an average 14 days, each year, whose mean temperature was lower than freezing point, or 32° Fahr. (0° centigrade). In 1878, from the 3rd to the 22nd of January, there were 17 days on which the temperature kept under 32°. For the sake of comparison, let us mention that in Paris, from 1820 to 1872, there were no more than 21 days on which the temperature kept below 32° the annual average being only 0.4 day.

**Mean temperature of a few towns as a term for comparison:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Town</th>
<th>Winter (D.J.F.)</th>
<th>Summer (J.J.A.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>59.° 2</td>
<td>78.° 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>London</td>
<td>49. 6</td>
<td>61. 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paris</td>
<td>51. 3</td>
<td>64. 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peking</td>
<td>53. 2</td>
<td>77. 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York</td>
<td>53. 8</td>
<td>79. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Madrid</td>
<td>57. 7</td>
<td>74. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rome</td>
<td>59. 7</td>
<td>73. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hongkong</td>
<td>72. 5</td>
<td>82. 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We will see, when treating of moisture, how such variations of temperature can influence public health. For the manner in which the human body is affected is quite different with dry or moist air, whether warm or cold; and on such actions the salubrity of a country depends for a great part, together with the advantages or inconveniences it may offer with regard to public and private hygiene.

The variation of the temperature of the air in the course of a day is mostly dependent upon the relative length of days and nights and the clearness of the atmosphere, especially at night. The following table shows this variation at Shanghai for the four seasons of the year: it will be seen that the daily range is not invariable, being smallest in summer and greatest in spring. The greater length of days and the less obliquity of the sun's rays, in summer, are amply compensated by the mantle of vapour in the air which covers the country and prevents the cooling through radiation at night.
Daily variation of temperature for the four seasons at Shanghai 
(5 years, 1876-1880):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hours</th>
<th>Winter</th>
<th>Spring</th>
<th>Summer</th>
<th>Autumn</th>
<th>Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36.0°</td>
<td>52.0°</td>
<td>73.0°</td>
<td>58.0°</td>
<td>55.0°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>35.2</td>
<td>51.2</td>
<td>72.9</td>
<td>57.7</td>
<td>54.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>34.7</td>
<td>53.4</td>
<td>75.9</td>
<td>59.2</td>
<td>55.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>41.2</td>
<td>60.4</td>
<td>81.7</td>
<td>67.8</td>
<td>62.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 p.m.</td>
<td>44.2</td>
<td>63.3</td>
<td>83.7</td>
<td>69.6</td>
<td>65.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>43.1</td>
<td>62.0</td>
<td>82.0</td>
<td>67.7</td>
<td>63.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>38.7</td>
<td>56.4</td>
<td>77.0</td>
<td>61.7</td>
<td>58.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36.9</td>
<td>53.9</td>
<td>74.7</td>
<td>59.7</td>
<td>56.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Minimum | 0.53 a.m. 34.9 | 0.45 a.m. 34.9 | 4.33 a.m. 72.8 | 5.0 a.m. 57.0 | 5.30 a.m. 34.9 |
Maximum | 1.30 p.m. 68.8 | 1.00 p.m. 68.8 | 1.10 a.m. 68.8 | 1.45 p.m. 68.8 |

II.—SOLAR RADIATION.

Though light and heat are intimately connected as radiated by the Sun, yet the causes of diminution for each are not the same. The interposition of a cloud between the Sun and the soil suffices to extinguish a great part of the solar light without materially diminishing the amount of heat absorbed by the air in a short interval. However exceptional a year may be in regard to variations of temperature, never will January or February be found warmer than July or August; but the amount of light received by the surface of the soil can easily be greater in Winter than in Summer. Let the Winter be very cold and dry with a very clear sky and the Summer be warm and wet with a great deal of rain and clouds, and there will be a similar contrast in the general lightening of the air. Thus, in July 1880, we did not receive, at Zi-ka-wei, more than .33 of the light which the Sun can send us under the most favourable conditions, whilst in January 1881, we were exceptionally favoured and received .49 of that light. Thus again, January and July 1880 both received the same proportion of light.

Now it is well known that every living being requires, not only the Sun's heat, but also and almost in the same degree his light. Valuable information about the Climate of a place may thus be supplied by Actinometry, or that department of Meteorology which deals with solar radiation comprising the heat and light available at the surface of the soil.
Herewith are the results of the last 6 years, calculated from only the three principal observations of 10h. a.m., 1h. p.m. and 4h. p.m.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1875</td>
<td>.25</td>
<td>.33</td>
<td>.36</td>
<td>.44</td>
<td>.45</td>
<td>.31</td>
<td>.47</td>
<td>.48</td>
<td>.37</td>
<td>.47</td>
<td>.37</td>
<td>.36</td>
<td>.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1876</td>
<td>.35</td>
<td>.35</td>
<td>.36</td>
<td>.37</td>
<td>.47</td>
<td>.37</td>
<td>.46</td>
<td>.47</td>
<td>.35</td>
<td>.44</td>
<td>.37</td>
<td>.35</td>
<td>.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1877</td>
<td>.35</td>
<td>.41</td>
<td>.43</td>
<td>.46</td>
<td>.41</td>
<td>.33</td>
<td>.50</td>
<td>.48</td>
<td>.44</td>
<td>.40</td>
<td>.35</td>
<td>.34</td>
<td>.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1878</td>
<td>.43</td>
<td>.43</td>
<td>.38</td>
<td>.46</td>
<td>.44</td>
<td>.41</td>
<td>.54</td>
<td>.38</td>
<td>.42</td>
<td>.49</td>
<td>.41</td>
<td>.41</td>
<td>.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1879</td>
<td>.55</td>
<td>.43</td>
<td>.39</td>
<td>.46</td>
<td>.33</td>
<td>.44</td>
<td>.55</td>
<td>.44</td>
<td>.42</td>
<td>.44</td>
<td>.41</td>
<td>.46</td>
<td>.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1880</td>
<td>.22</td>
<td>.29</td>
<td>.22</td>
<td>.49</td>
<td>.44</td>
<td>.41</td>
<td>.44</td>
<td>.48</td>
<td>.41</td>
<td>.41</td>
<td>.41</td>
<td>.25</td>
<td>.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean</td>
<td>.35</td>
<td>.32</td>
<td>.42</td>
<td>.49</td>
<td>.44</td>
<td>.41</td>
<td>.44</td>
<td>.48</td>
<td>.41</td>
<td>.41</td>
<td>.41</td>
<td>.25</td>
<td>.37</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These results, which I have purposely given in full, may be greatly useful to Shanghai physicians if compared with the sanitary state of the Settlements. For comparison's sake, I may add that, at Paris, the mean proportion of light for the period 1872-1878, observed in the same manner as at Zi-ka-wei, was .28 in December (minimum) and .65 in July (maximum), the annual mean being under .49. It must be remarked however that in the calculations the observations of 6 a.m. and 6 p.m. were taken into account.3

III.—MOISTURE.

The determination of this element is of great importance. Moisture has been considered by climatologists as one of the physical properties of the air most injurious to human life. A moist atmosphere checks the spontaneous evaporation of the surface of the skin and exercises a debilitating action on all organic functions: a dry air, on the contrary, favours evaporation; it is vivifying and bracing. Whoever has resided at Shanghai for a few years knows by experience how in Summer the strongest man feels oppressed and sluggish, whilst in Winter he has a sense of exalted vitality and excessive muscular energy. It is because in the hottest months, June, July, and August, the air is loaded with moisture, whilst in the cold season, December, January, and February, it is very dry. I shall hereafter, when speaking of the winds, give the reason of this remarkable difference between Summer and Winter in this country.

But first, what is properly moisture? It is easier to feel it than to give a definition of it. One often hears of the air being more or less moist, more or less saturated with humidity: what is the precise meaning of these expressions?

3 Annuaire de l'Observatoire de Montsouris, 1879.
Physicists easily prove that a volume of air cannot, at a given temperature, contain more than a certain quantity of vapour: it is then said to be *saturated*; any water in excess of that quantity will remain in the liquid state. Thus a cubic foot of dry air, at a pressure of 30 inches and at 32° Fahrenheit, weighs 563 grains; under these conditions it cannot take up more than 2.11 gr. of water as vapour; at 90° it could hold 13.47 gr.

Knowing the maximum weight for each temperature and degree of atmospheric pressure, and possessing instruments whose indications give the means to calculate the actual weight of vapour in a cubic foot of air, it will be easy to ascertain the exact degree of moisture of that air and consequently of the mass of air to which it belongs; for the degree of moisture is nothing else than the ratio of the actual weight of vapour contained in the air to the maximum weight it could hold at the same temperature and pressure. The instruments most in use for that purpose are the Psychrometer or better still Regnault's condensation hygrometer.

The following tables will help to form an idea of the hygrometric conditions of this place.

**Weight of vapour in a cubic foot of air at Shanghai (8 years).**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Month</th>
<th>Jan</th>
<th>Feb</th>
<th>Mar</th>
<th>Apr</th>
<th>May</th>
<th>June</th>
<th>July</th>
<th>Aug</th>
<th>Sept</th>
<th>Oct</th>
<th>Nov</th>
<th>Dec</th>
<th>Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ST.</td>
<td>2.08</td>
<td>2.26</td>
<td>2.66</td>
<td>4.11</td>
<td>5.39</td>
<td>7.42</td>
<td>9.33</td>
<td>9.06</td>
<td>7.37</td>
<td>5.01</td>
<td>3.37</td>
<td>2.43</td>
<td>2.19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Degree of moisture of air for each month (8 years).**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Month</th>
<th>Jan</th>
<th>Feb</th>
<th>Mar</th>
<th>Apr</th>
<th>May</th>
<th>June</th>
<th>July</th>
<th>Aug</th>
<th>Sept</th>
<th>Oct</th>
<th>Nov</th>
<th>Dec</th>
<th>Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Degree of moisture of air at different periods of the day for the four seasons (5 years).**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Period</th>
<th>Winter</th>
<th>Spring</th>
<th>Summer</th>
<th>Autumn</th>
<th>Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 a.m.</td>
<td>88.7</td>
<td>89.4</td>
<td>93.6</td>
<td>91.1</td>
<td>90.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 a.m.</td>
<td>89.7</td>
<td>90.8</td>
<td>94.6</td>
<td>91.9</td>
<td>91.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 a.m.</td>
<td>90.3</td>
<td>87.6</td>
<td>89.0</td>
<td>89.9</td>
<td>89.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 a.m.</td>
<td>74.5</td>
<td>69.9</td>
<td>73.4</td>
<td>67.3</td>
<td>71.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 p.m.</td>
<td>65.8</td>
<td>63.4</td>
<td>70.6</td>
<td>60.6</td>
<td>66.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 p.m.</td>
<td>68.1</td>
<td>66.4</td>
<td>73.9</td>
<td>64.6</td>
<td>68.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 p.m.</td>
<td>81.0</td>
<td>80.5</td>
<td>86.5</td>
<td>82.4</td>
<td>82.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 p.m.</td>
<td>86.4</td>
<td>86.6</td>
<td>92.0</td>
<td>88.2</td>
<td>88.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean</td>
<td>80.6</td>
<td>79.3</td>
<td>84.2</td>
<td>79.5</td>
<td>80.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Continents naturally supply less vapour to the atmosphere than the sea; the degree of moisture is therefore generally lower in the interior than on the coast. If then we have a coast where the wind in the course of the year blows alternately from the interior of the continent and from the open sea, the moisture will increase or diminish as the wind blows from the sea or from the land. The absolute quantity of water in the air will generally reach its maximum during the warm season, but the relative moisture will mostly depend upon the prevailing winds. At Shanghai, E. and S. E. winds from the sea are the prevailing winds during the six months of the warm season, N. E. and N. W. winds being the most common during the cold months. There is then a double reason for Summer being the moist season, as the capacity of air for vapour rapidly rises with the temperature; and the air blown from the sea is always near its point of saturation. In winter, on the contrary, the vapour in the air is far from saturating it, notwithstanding the low temperature; and the winter at Shanghai is often very dry.

The passage from one system to the other is slow as it appears from the foregoing tables, and this gradual transition is far better for the body than the rapid change that generally takes place in the interior of the continent, at Peking for instance.

We will review in a few words the advantages and drawbacks of those two mediums in which residents in this country live by turns in the course of the year.

Winter—Cold and dry air:


Summer—Warm and moist air (containing, for the same volume, less oxygen):

Quick and laborious breathing: hence incomplete hematosis.—The peripherical vessels receive an abundance of liquids, but capillary circulation is sluggish—Moisture checks the evaporation of the perspiration—Appetite blunted, digestion laborious—The relaxation of tissues by warmth and moisture creates a predisposition
to congestions—Increase in the weight of the body—Weakness of the muscular system.

It is evident that, were it not for the benefit of its cold and dry winter, the climate of Shanghai would be most detestable.

IV.—ATMOSPHERIC PRESSURE.

This element is of no great importance for a station situated, as Shanghai, at the level of the sea. It would be otherwise at a great altitude, as is the case with numbers of towns in mountainous countries or on high plateaux: the conditions of life are quite different and the phenomena of organic life are intimately connected with the density and pressure of the air.

I shall therefore confine myself to giving the daily variation of the barometer at Shanghai and its monthly variation, since it is the cause of the opposite regular winds (monsoons) which blow by turns through the course of the year.

*Daily variation of atmospheric pressure at Shanghai (1876-1880).*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Pressure (in)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 a.m.</td>
<td>30.034</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 &quot;</td>
<td>30.017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 &quot;</td>
<td>30.043</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 &quot;</td>
<td>30.062</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 p.m.</td>
<td>30.018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 &quot;</td>
<td>30.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 &quot;</td>
<td>30.024</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 &quot;</td>
<td>30.047</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean</td>
<td>30.031</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Monthly mean atmospheric pressure at Shanghai (1873-1880).*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Month</th>
<th>Pressure (in)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>January</td>
<td>30.388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>February</td>
<td>30.296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March</td>
<td>30.198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April</td>
<td>30.037</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May</td>
<td>29.876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>June</td>
<td>29.778</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>July</td>
<td>29.711</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>August</td>
<td>29.766</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September</td>
<td>29.920</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>October</td>
<td>30.144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>November</td>
<td>30.265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December</td>
<td>30.315</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Annual mean 30.058.
Mean atmospheric pressure for each period of 5 days (1873-1880).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Period</th>
<th>Pressure</th>
<th>Period</th>
<th>Pressure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>from 1 to 5 Jan</td>
<td>30.341</td>
<td>from 5 to 9 Jan</td>
<td>3.687</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 - 10</td>
<td>.391</td>
<td>10 - 14</td>
<td>.713</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 - 15</td>
<td>.443</td>
<td>15 - 19</td>
<td>.709</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 - 20</td>
<td>.414</td>
<td>20 - 24</td>
<td>.717</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 - 25</td>
<td>.376</td>
<td>25 - 29</td>
<td>.735</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 - 30</td>
<td>.379</td>
<td>30 - 3 Aug.</td>
<td>.720</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 - 4 February</td>
<td>.322</td>
<td>3 Aug.</td>
<td>.728</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 - 9</td>
<td>.321</td>
<td>9 - 13</td>
<td>.709</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 - 19</td>
<td>.330</td>
<td>19 - 23</td>
<td>.800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 - 1 March</td>
<td>.275</td>
<td>28 - 2 Sept.</td>
<td>.901</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 - 6</td>
<td>.278</td>
<td>2 Sept.</td>
<td>.863</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 - 11</td>
<td>.231</td>
<td>3 - 7</td>
<td>.866</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 - 16</td>
<td>.201</td>
<td>8 - 12</td>
<td>.953</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 - 21</td>
<td>.192</td>
<td>13 - 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 - 26</td>
<td>.163</td>
<td>18 - 22</td>
<td>.917</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27 - 31</td>
<td>.119</td>
<td>23 - 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 - 5 April</td>
<td>.116</td>
<td>28 - 2 Oct.</td>
<td>.906</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 - 10</td>
<td>.042</td>
<td>3 - 7</td>
<td>.108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 - 15</td>
<td>.110</td>
<td>8 - 12</td>
<td>.145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 - 20</td>
<td>.084</td>
<td>13 - 17</td>
<td>.179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 - 25</td>
<td>.947</td>
<td>18 - 22</td>
<td>.103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 - 30</td>
<td>.956</td>
<td>23 - 27</td>
<td>.171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 - 5 May</td>
<td>.974</td>
<td>28 - 1 Nov.</td>
<td>.226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 - 10</td>
<td>.898</td>
<td>2 - 6</td>
<td>.216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 - 15</td>
<td>.888</td>
<td>7 - 11</td>
<td>.260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 - 20</td>
<td>.884</td>
<td>12 - 16</td>
<td>.311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 - 25</td>
<td>.844</td>
<td>17 - 21</td>
<td>.263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 - 30</td>
<td>.792</td>
<td>22 - 26</td>
<td>.270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 - 4 June</td>
<td>.858</td>
<td>27 - 1 Dec.</td>
<td>.275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 - 9</td>
<td>.839</td>
<td>2 - 6</td>
<td>.293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 - 14</td>
<td>.771</td>
<td>7 - 11</td>
<td>.307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 - 19</td>
<td>.736</td>
<td>12 - 16</td>
<td>.286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 - 24</td>
<td>.758</td>
<td>17 - 21</td>
<td>.320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 - 29</td>
<td>.779</td>
<td>22 - 26</td>
<td>.348</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>27 - 31</td>
<td>.344</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The two last tables show that atmospheric pressure, at Shanghai, undergoes a perfectly perceptible oscillation during the
course of the year; at its maximum in January (the 13th: 30.\textsuperscript{19} 476), it sinks gradually till July (the 6th: 29.\textsuperscript{19} 674) to rise again. This variation is not peculiar to our station; it is observed all over Asia; its cause and consequences we must briefly explain.

V.—WINDS—MONSOONS.

On the whole Southern and Eastern slope of Asia we see a mutual reaction of continental and oceanic influences, the great Monsoons. In our Winter the continental regions of Asia are cooler than the surrounding seas and pressure is higher; the air consequently, actuated by gravity, flows from the continent towards the ocean: hence we have steady Northerly (N. E., N. and N. W.) winds which blow through the Winter and are naturally cold and dry. This is the Winter Monsoon and the dry Season on the Eastern coast of China. In our Summer, pressure is very low over a great part of the Asiatic continent, owing to the heat and the ascending current produced by it: therefore the air of the ocean will flow towards Asia. Hence the winds from E., S. E. and S. which prevail at Shanghai and bring the well-known excess of moisture. This is the Summer Monsoon and the wet Season.

Herewith we give the mean direction of the wind at Shanghai, determined from hourly observations made during eight years at Zi-ka-wei by means of self-registering anemometers giving each moment the direction and velocity of the wind.

*Mean direction of the wind at Shanghai (1873-1880) and mean velocity per hour (1875-1880).*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Month</th>
<th>Direction</th>
<th>Monthly Mean Vel. (M.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jan.</td>
<td>N. 4° W.</td>
<td>8.2 miles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feb.</td>
<td>N. 11 E.</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March</td>
<td>N. 51 E.</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April</td>
<td>S. 79 E.</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May</td>
<td>S. 54 E.</td>
<td>9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>June</td>
<td>S. 66 E.</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>July</td>
<td>S. 41° E.</td>
<td>8.8 miles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aug.</td>
<td>S. 70 E.</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sept.</td>
<td>N. 54 E.</td>
<td>6.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oct.</td>
<td>N. 32 E.</td>
<td>6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nov.</td>
<td>N. 6 W.</td>
<td>6.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dec.</td>
<td>N. 11 W.</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Annual Mean: N. 62° E.—7.9 miles.
Thus the wind which blows from N. in January, veers to N. E. between February and March, to E., between March and April, to S. E. in May; it turns a little to E. again in June, whilst July enjoys the most Southerly wind. From that month to the end of the year it turns to E. and N., getting in December as far as N. 11° W. The oscillation is then perfectly definite. The alternation of the two Monsoons is equally a constant fact not subject to any exception.

Squalls or gales, though not violent, are frequent enough at Shanghai, as this port is about equally distant from the most common track of two kinds of storms that come now and then to break the sameness of the settled Monsoons. In Winter, there are frequent atmospheric depressions issuing from Central Asia; they run from West to East, crossing with great velocity Siberia, Mongolia and Japan; they rush towards the area of minimum pressure that exists in the middle of the North-Pacific Ocean. In Summer, there are Typhoons in the South, between 15° and 25° latitude North, following the opposite direction, from East to West, and proceeding from the Equatorial Pacific towards the Philippines and Southern China or Tonquin; sometimes, chiefly in July and August, they take a run northward, approach Shanghai and carry havoc over Japan.

During the passage of those Northerly storms that usually rage with violence along their path, the winds at Shanghai are convergent to the centre of the depression: they consequently begin by blowing feebly from E. or E. S. E., then they turn slowly as the depression approaches, as shown by the progressive sinking of the barometer. While the storm is raging North of Shanghai, the barometer is at its lowest point; the wind comes from S. or S. W., bringing a high temperature and a great amount of moisture; when at last the depression moves, there is generally a strong gale from N. W. which, in Winter, brings very cold weather.

The Typhoons are much smaller in diameter than the Northern atmospheric depressions, and whenever they keep in Southern regions, they are not perceived at Shanghai except by a slight fall of the barometer, the winds being E. or N. E.
THE CLIMATE OF SHANGHAI

These two kinds of storms, with regard to the amount of rain they bring on, both partake of the nature of the seasons during which they usually form: the Winter depressions, coming from the interior of the continent with the great dry air current that issues from it, raise enormous masses of dust which they carry far and wide, increasing the barrenness of the countries they pass over. The Typhoons, on the contrary, originating in the warm and moist maritime regions of the Equator, are invariably characterized by diluvial rains.

VI.—RAIN.

This peculiar system of rain in the Monsoon regions appears clearly from the following tables calculated from the observations taken at Zi-ka-wei.

*Frequency and amount of rain fallen at Shanghai (1873-1880).*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Month</th>
<th>Days</th>
<th>Inches</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>January</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>2.269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>February</td>
<td>11.7</td>
<td>2.887</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>2.871</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>3.588</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May</td>
<td>11.1</td>
<td>2.871</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>June</td>
<td>13.0</td>
<td>7.857</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>July</td>
<td>11.2</td>
<td>3.560</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>August</td>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>4.665</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September</td>
<td>10.9</td>
<td>5.714</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>October</td>
<td>8.7</td>
<td>2.849</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>November</td>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>1.963</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>1.390</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Annual Sum: 124 days. 42.464 inches.

Of these 124 rainy days we have:

- in Winter 54.8 days giving 14.219" of water.
- in Summer 69.2 " " 28.245 "

The heaviest shower was that of October 24th 1875, during which there fell 7.088" of water in 3½ hours, equal to 2.024" per hour.

*Snow* is frequent in Winter, particularly in January, the coldest but not the driest month of the year.

VII.—NEBULOSITY, OR CLOUDS.

The state of the sky, its clearness or nebulosity, is evidently closely connected with the moisture of the air. Yet, with the exception of November and December, usually the finest months:
of the year, the mean co-efficient of nebulosity varies little from one season to another: the reason is that the upper regions of the atmosphere are swept by a huge current which for 9 or 10 months always runs from West to East, carrying along clouds (cirri) that have nothing to do with the moisture or dryness of the lower strata of air. Those clouds (alto-cumuli, cirri, cirrostrati), of a thousand shapes and varieties, are always of a graceful aspect; they may truly be said to make up two-thirds of the nebulosity of our sky.

These indications with regard to the meteorological conditions of the Climate of Shanghai, though brief, are yet sufficient to enable physicians to form an opinion upon the salubrity of the port. To complete the study of this climate, the water and soil should be inquired into, and the knowledge thus acquired would throw light on the causes of the prevailing diseases, and would also explain how residence in Shanghai might be beneficial to some patients. I must however leave this to others more versed in these questions.
Daily variation of the Barometer at Shanghai.

Daily variation of the Thermometer at Shanghai.

Daily variation of the moisture at Shanghai.

Monthly weight of vapour in a cubic foot of air at Shanghai.
Miscellaneous.

List of Ferns found in the Valley of the River Min, Foochow.

**ADIANUM cuneatum.** (Banker's glen only.)

**ASPIDIUM aculeatum.**

**"** aristatum.

**"** falcatum.

**"** laserpitiifolium.

**ASPLENIUM lanceum.**

**BLECHNUM longifolium?**

**CERATOPTERIS thalictroides.**

**DAVALLIA elegans.** (Yuen-foo.)

**"** immersa.

**"** strigosa. (Said to be found at Yuen-foo.)

**LINDSEY**

**NEPHRODIUM (LASTREA) decursivo-pinnatum.**

**"** Filix-mas.

**"** sophoroides.

**"** subtriphyllum.

**OSMUNDA regalis.**

**POLYPODIUM (NIPROBOLUS) Lingua.**

**"** normale.

**"** quercifolium.

**PTERIS aquilina.**

**"** serrulata.

**SCOLOPENDRIUM vulgare.**

**WOODWARDIA japonica.**

G. C. ANDERSON,

*S.S. Appia, 1881.*

---

* Genera and Subgenera in CAPITALS; accepted Species in Roman text, according to Hooker's *Synopsis Filicum*, 2nd Ed. London, 1874.—*Ed. Journ.*
REPORT OF THE COUNCIL
OF THE
NORTH-CHINA BRANCH
OF THE
ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY,
FOR THE YEAR 1881.

JOURNAL, NEW SERIES, Vol. XVI. PART 2,
(concluding the volume).

SHANGHAI:
Printed by Noronha & Sons, No. 12, Canton Road.
1882.
CONTENTS.

Report of the Council for the year 1881 ........................................... i
List of Members ........................................................................ iv
Accounts ....................................................................................... viii
Report of the Curator of the Shanghai Museum ............................. x
Librarian’s Report ........................................................................ xvi
List of Societies, etc. exchanging Publications with the Society ......... xviii
List of Works added to the Library during the year 1881 A-U
REPORT
OF THE
COUNCIL OF THE NORTH-CHINA BRANCH
OF THE
ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY,
FOR THE YEAR 1881.

At the Annual Meeting, held on the 16th of March, 1881, the following gentlemen were elected Office Bearers for the year:

G. J. MORRISON, Esq., President.
A. E. HIPPSLEY, Esq., } Vice-Presidents.
REV. W. MUIRHEAD,
JAMES ACHESON, Esq., Secretary.
G. H. J. KLEINWÄCHTER, Esq., Treasurer.
MAX SLEVOGT, Esq., Librarian.
T. W. KINGSMILL, Esq., Curator.
Very REV. DEAN BUTCHER, D.D., } Councillors.
JOSEPH HAAS, Esq.,
JOHN FRYER, Esq.,
ALEX. HOSIE, Esq.,
C. SCHMIDT, Esq.,
A. B. STRIPLING, Esq.,

Six General Meetings of the Society were held during the year.

Owing to the departure of Mr. G. H. J. Kleinwächter from Shanghai the post of Treasurer became vacant and Mr. T. S.
Southey at the request of the Council consented to act. Mr. T. W. Kingsmill on his return from Europe being unable to undertake the duties of Curator, Mr. D. C. Jansen kindly consented to remain in office.

The following papers were read at the Meetings of the Society:

1. — 16th March, "Fresh Water in the Sand Banks of the Formosa Channel." By F. W. Schulze, Esq.
2. — "Notes of a Trip to the Island of Saghalin." By Geo. C. Anderson, Esq.
5. — 26th September, "Botanicon Sinicum. Notes on Chinese Botany from Native and Western Sources." By E. Bretschneider, Esq., M.D., Physician to the Imperial Russian Legation, Peking.
6. — "Notes on Saghalin, Aniva Bay, and the Coast of Russian Tartary."
7. — 28th October, "The Climate of Shanghai. Its Meteorological Condition." By the Rev. Father Marc Dechevrens, S.J., Director of the Zi-ka-wei Observatory.

The Society was represented at the Third International Geographical Congress at Venice, in September, 1881, by Lieut. G. Kreitner; who has furnished a valuable and interesting report on the work of the Congress referring to Central and Eastern Asia.

Two Corresponding Members, Dr. H. Fritsche of Peking and Lieut. G. Kreitner of the I. R. Austrian Army, and fifteen Ordinary Members were elected during the year.
Three Ordinary Members resigned. There were on the list of the Society on the 31st December, 1881, fourteen Honorary, twenty-six Corresponding, and one hundred and twenty-three Ordinary Members.

The Society has to deplore the death of one Honorary Member, Mr. A. F. Marques Pereira, who died at Bombay on September 11th, 1881.*

The Meetings have continued to be fairly well attended, and the Public generally taken a greater interest in the work of the Society. Probably from want of knowledge of the facilities now afforded to readers the Library of the Society is not so largely availed of as might be expected. It is now placed in communication with the Shanghai Library, and permission to make use of it can be obtained on application to the Librarian of that institution.

The first part of the Society's Journal for 1881 was issued in March, 1882.

Some of the older volumes of the Society's Proceedings being out of print the Council propose to issue a new edition, should a sufficient number of subscribers to justify the venture be forthcoming. Some of these volumes at present command a high price.

The usual reports of the Treasurer, Librarian, and Curator of the Museum are appended.

---

* Mr. A. F. Marques Pereira had been an Honorary Member of the Society since 1865. He was born at Lisbon, and entered, while young, the Consular Service of his country. After having received his preliminary training in Portugal, he was sent out to China, and ultimately served for eight or nine years at Bangkok, whence, early in the past year, he was transferred as Consul-General to Bombay. He was a man of considerable literary attainments and the author of several works on the history of the Portuguese Colony at Macao and the relations of the Portuguese with China since their arrival in the 16th century. During his residence in the East he was always a true and earnest friend to our Society, taking great interest in Oriental matters, and more particularly in Numismatics. While in Bangkok, he made a fine collection of Siamese coins, a portion of which was presented to the King of Portugal; and his pamphlet: Moedas de Siom. Lisboa: 1879, contains much valuable information on the little-known subject of Siamese Coinage. Mr. Marques Pereira was an Honorary Member of several learned Societies of Europe and Asia.
LIST OF MEMBERS.

APRIL, 1882.

HONORARY.

His Majesty Leopold II., King of the Belgians.

Alcock, Sir Rutherford, k.c.e., London.
Hart, Robert, Esq., c.m.g., Peking.
Medhurst, Sir Walter H., k.c.b., London.
Parkes, Sir Harry S., k.c.b., k.c.m.g., Tokio.
Prejevalsky, Col. N., St. Petersburg.
Richtofen, Baron Ferdinand von, Bonn.
Seward, The Hon. George F., U.S.
Wade, Sir Thomas F., k.c.b., Peking.
Williams, Rev. S. Wells, l.l.d., New Haven, U.S.
Wylie, Alex., Esq., London.
Yule, Col. H., c.b., London.
CORRESPONDING.

Bastian, Prof. Dr. A., Berlin.
Cox, Rev. Josiah.
Delaplace, Mgr. L. G., Peking.
Fritsche, H., Esq., PH. D., Peking.
Fryer, John, Esq.
Giles, Herbert A., Esq.
Hance, H. F., Esq., PH. D., Whampoa.
Happer, Rev. A. P., D.D., Canton.
Hepburn, J. C., Esq., M.D., Yokohama.
John, Rev. Griffith, Hankow.
Keischke, Dr. Ito, Tokio.
Kreitner, Lieut. G., Vienna.
Lindau, wirkl. Leg.-Rath Dr. R., Berlin.
Lockhart, W., Esq., M.D., London.
Macgowan, D. J., Esq., M.D., Wenchow.
McCartee, D. B., Esq., M.D., Tokio.
McClatchie, Rev. Thos., M.A., Shanghai.
Moule, Right Rev. G. E., D.D.
Muirhead, Rev. W., Shanghai.
Rondot, Natalis, Esq., Lyons.
Schereschewsky, Right Rev. S. I. J., D.D.
Széchényi, Count Bela, Zinkendorf, Hungary.
Williamson, Rev. A., L.L.D., Chefoo.
MEMBERS.

Acheson, James, Esq.
Agar, Luis de, Esq.
Alford, R. G., Esq.
Allen, E. L. B., Esq.
Allen, H. J., Esq.
Amelunxen, E. A. von, Esq.
Anderson, G. C., Esq.
Ayrton, W. S., Esq.
Baber, E. C., Esq.
Baesler, Jos., Esq.
Bamford, Rev. A. J.
Brenan, B., Esq.
Bretschneider, E., Esq., m.d.
Bristow, H. B., Esq.
Brosche, H., Esq.
Brown, J. McLeavy, Esq.
Bryner, J., Esq.
Bushell, S. W., Esq., m.d.
Butcher, Very Rev. C. H., d.d.
Buttles, Prof. E. K.
Callado, His Ex., E.
Coignet, F., Esq.
Cooper, W. M., Esq.
Cooverjee, P., Esq.
Cordes, August C., Esq.
Coughtrie, J. B., Esq.
Davenport, A., Esq.
Deighton-Braysher, C., Esq.
Dennys, H. L., Esq.
Dodd, J., Esq.
Dowdall, C., Esq.
Dülberg, F. W. E., Esq.
Eitel, Rev. E. J., Ph. D.
Farago, E., Esq.
Fauvel, A. A., Esq.
Ferguson, His Ex., J. H.
Fergusson, T. T., Esq.
Fisher, H. J., Esq.
Forbes, F. B., Esq.
Frater, Alex., Esq.
Gardner, C. T., Esq.
Gil de Uribarri, Ramiro, Esq.
Giquel, P., Esq.
Glover, G. B., Esq.
Goldsmith, B., Esq.
Grant, P. V., Esq.
Gubbay, R. A., Esq.
Guppy, H. B., Esq., m.b.
Haas, J., Esq.
Hague, E. P., Esq.
Hanbury, T., Esq.
Henderson, Ed., Esq., m.d.
Henderson, J., Esq.
Henry, A., Esq., m.d.
Hippisley, A. E., Esq.
Hirth, F., Esq., Ph. D.
Hjoulsbery, E., Esq.
Hobson, H. E., Esq.
Holt, Rev. W. S.
Hosie, Alex., Esq., M.A.
How, A. J., Esq.
Hübbe, P. G., Esq.
Imbault-Huart, C., Esq.
Jamieson, G., Esq.
Jansen, D. C., Esq.
Johnson, F. B., Esq.
Johnston, J., Esq., m.d.
Kingsmill, T. W., Esq.
Kleinwächter, F., Esq.
Kleinwächter, G. H. J., Esq.
Kopsch, H., Esq.
Krauss, A., Esq.
Krey, W., Esq.
Little, A. J., Esq.
Little, L. S., Esq., M.D.
Low, E. G., Esq.
Macintyre, Rev. John.
Macleay, R. H., Esq.
Maignan, H., Esq.
Mann, James, Esq., M.D.
McClatchie, H. P., Esq.
Möllendorff, O. F. von, Esq., Ph. D.
Möllendorff, P. G. von, Esq.
Morris, Herbert S., Esq.
Morrison, G. J., Esq.
Owen, Rev. G. S.
Paasch, C., Esq.
Parker, E. H., Esq.
Pichon, L., Esq., M.D.
Pitman, J., Esq.
Planey, V. Collin de, Esq.
Pollock, John, Esq., M.D.
Reeks, A. J., Esq.
Reid, David, Esq.
Rhein, J., Esq.
Rivington, Charles, Esq.
Rocher, E., Esq.
Ruegg, E., Esq., L.L.D.
Sampson, T., Esq.
Samson, J., Esq.
Saunders, W., Esq.
Scherzer, F., Esq.
Schmidt, C., Esq.
Schultz, Capt. C. A.
Schulze, F. W., Esq.
Seckendorff, Baron Edm. von.
Shinagawa, E., Esq.
Sim, Alexander, Esq.
Slevogt, M., Esq.
Smith, The Hon. Cecil C.
Southey, T. S., Esq.
Starkey, Reg. D., Esq.
Stent, G. C., Esq.
Streich, K. I., Esq.
Stripling, A. B., Esq.
Sutherland, H., Esq.
Tanner, P., Esq.
Tata, D. B., Esq.
Toda, E., Esq.
Vissière, A., Esq.
Warburg, C. G., Esq.
Washbrook, W. A., Esq.
Watters, T., Esq.
Wetmore, W. S., Esq.
White, F. W., Esq.
Wicking, H., Esq.
Wilcox, R. C., Esq.
Wood, A. G., Esq.
Youd, F., Esq.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Balance from last Account</td>
<td>408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sale of Journals</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sale of Catalogues</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subscription to Library from Shanghai Library</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By Taxes to Municipal Council</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By Municipal Council</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By Chinesee Government</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By Chinese Journal</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By Chinese Journal</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By Chinese Journal</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By Chinese Journal</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By Chinese Journal</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By Chinese Journal</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By Chinese Journal</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By Chinese Journal</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By Chinese Journal</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By Insurances, Building and Contents</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By Mrs. Gale, Assistant Librarian</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By Advertising</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By Advertisements</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By Freight on Journals and Postages</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By Printing and Stationery</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By Book-binding</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By Balance with H. &amp; S. Bank</td>
<td>1235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;  &quot;</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In hands of Hon. Treasurer</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal</td>
<td>1298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Statement of Receipts and Expenditure for the Year 1881**

**Receipts:**

- $408.81
- $95.50
- $4.32
- $27.02
- $265.94
- $30.72
- $1298.14

**Expenditures:**

- $93.30
- $56.00
- $34.30
- $27.75
- $4.14
- $30.72

---

G. H. J. Kleinwachtner, Hon. Treasurer.

T. W. Kingsmill.

A. B. Strickling.
**SHANGHAI MUSEUM.**

**STATEMENT OF RECEIPTS AND EXPENDITURE FOR THE YEAR 1881.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Receipts</th>
<th>$</th>
<th>cts.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Balance from last Account</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grant from English Municipal Council Tls. 500</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td>160</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interest on Current Account with H. &amp; S. Bank</td>
<td>817</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| $968 | 58 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expenditure</th>
<th>$</th>
<th>cts.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>By Shanghai Library, Rent to Dec. 31 Tls. 150</td>
<td>204</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recreation Fund, 2 years' interest on loan</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taxidermist's wages, 12 months, at $20</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insurance on Contents, Tls. 1000 Tls. 8</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stationery</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book-binding</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coolie and Sundries</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show-case and Glass Jars</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Municipal Taxes Tls. 666</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balance lodged in H. &amp; S. Bank</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$968 58

**E. & O. E.**

**G. H. J. KLEINWÄCHTER,**

Hon. Treasurer.

*Audited and found correct.*

T. W. Kingsmill,
A. B. Stripling.

*The usual Report was sent in by the Hon. Treasurer, but, owing to his transfer to Takow, it arrived too late for publication.—Ed. Journal.*
Curator's Report.

To the President, Council, and Members of the
North-China Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society.

Gentlemen,

The additions to our Museum during the past year are enumerated in the annexed list.

The falling off in the number of specimens presented, as compared with the previous year, must not be attributed to any decrease of interest in the institution on the part of its hitherto liberal supporters. Formerly contributions consisted mostly of the fauna of this neighbourhood, or such as were brought here from the coast ports, requiring no further trouble from the person presenting them than sending to the curator or taxidermist to mount and place on the shelves of the Museum; but now that it is generally known that such specimens are, to a large extent, well represented in our collection, and as few persons possess sufficient knowledge of taxidermy, or care to perform the tedious labour of preparing the specimens themselves, contributions come in much slower than when they were to be obtained with so little trouble.

Of the 800 species of birds found in China our Museum contains but 313 specimens, 214 of which belong to this province or are common throughout China; and to give an idea how slowly this number has been increased, it may be mentioned that not more than twenty species have been added during the last four years.

From this it will be seen that we can no longer rely on voluntary contributions to increase our collections. If we wish to obtain specimens of the natural history of the southern, interior, or
more remote localities we must either purchase where best we can, or employ some one to collect for us. In the meantime however let us hope that former contributors and others will not withhold their contributions under the mistaken impression that they will not be acceptable.

We want everything—mammals, birds, reptiles, fishes, in fact every description of the Natural History of this country, and more especially those descriptions most commonly met with; as a good collection of these once made would help to fill our shelves and present such an interesting exhibit that the rarer or more expensive kinds would soon follow.

In exchange for a number of duplicate specimens of birds, Dr. Dale, U.S.N.—collecting for the National Museum, Washington—sent us 66 kinds of fishes found in the Hongkong waters; to these have been added, mostly by purchase, some 40 or 50 more inhabiting the waters about Shanghai and the Chusan Archipelago. Duplicates of this small collection are being packed for transhipment to England to have them identified and classed, and thus form a nucleus which no doubt will soon develop into a valuable, and it is to be hoped, comprehensive collection of the fishes inhabiting the waters of China,—a section of ichthyology presenting a most interesting field of research, as it has been hitherto but little studied.

As making a collection of fishes calls forth no special knowledge of taxidermy and requires but little labour beyond gathering the specimens, small tanks are being constructed to be filled with suitable preserving liquid and supplied to persons at the coast and riverine ports with the view of obtaining specimens of the fishes peculiar to such places.

A list of the articles in the Museum has been made, and will be sent in for publication as soon as the scientific names of the fishes and other specimens sent home for identification arrive.

A communication from Dr. Guppy, R.N., adds the following
corrections and additions to his valuable contributions of geological specimens as given in the Curator's report of last year.

D. C. JANSEN.

ALTERATIONS IN THE NAMES OF SPECIMENS OF ROCKS.

527 Fine-grained decomposing granite, from Amoy.
525
898 Probably "Quartzite" rather than "felsite," from Namoa Island.
897
876 Black "chert" (not hornblendic rock), from Kiukiang.
855 "Mica schist" rather than "talcose schist," from ditto.
860 Black "chert" (not hornblendic slate), from ditto.
816
820 Of these specimens (from a range of hills on the bank of the Yung river, below Ningpo) the porphyritic may be termed "felstone porphyry," and the non-porphyritic merely "felstone."
824
796 "Greisen," highly micaceous, from Mackan Island, Corean Archipelago.
798
770 More correctly mica schist (quartz and mica), from Chefoo.
775
777 Better named "Quartz schist," from Chefoo.
781
767 "Greisen" (a granular crystalline mixture of mica and quartz), from Chefoo; though as this rock is associated with typical mica schist the name "compact mica schist" can be hardly a misnomer.
746
445 "Felsites," not quartzites, from Tien-dong, near Ningpo.
446
407 "Porphyrite," from the Snowy Valley, near Ningpo. (Hornblendic rock is too general a term.
413
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Scientific Name</th>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Place Obtained</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lavina and Scorina</td>
<td>Fur Seal</td>
<td>Mt. Yensius</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Eumalopterus</td>
<td>Fur Seal</td>
<td>Straits of Tungur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Buteo buteo</td>
<td>Eagle</td>
<td>Wenchow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Buteo buteo</td>
<td>Eagle</td>
<td>Amos of Japan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dendrocygna</td>
<td>Grebe</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Callimyrtus</td>
<td>Oyster Catcher</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acherontia Atropos</td>
<td>Death’s head Moth</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pericus Haroldus</td>
<td>Death’s head Moth</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Falco peregrinus</td>
<td>Black-crested Mon-key</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acanthis nigroplagiata</td>
<td>Snake</td>
<td>On board s.s. “Pe”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Zenaidoceus</td>
<td>Pheasant</td>
<td>Ningpo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Centropus rufipennis</td>
<td>Wood Pheasant</td>
<td>Ningpo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pliusianus</td>
<td>Wood Pheasant</td>
<td>Ningpo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Arctocensis cucullatus</td>
<td>Wood Pheasant</td>
<td>Ningpo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Arctocensis cucullatus</td>
<td>Wood Pheasant</td>
<td>Ningpo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Zibetha</td>
<td>Zibetha</td>
<td>Bought</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**List of Contributions Received at the Shanghai Museum During the Year 1881**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPECIFIC NAME</th>
<th>SCIENTIFIC NAME</th>
<th>DATE</th>
<th>PLACE OBTAINED</th>
<th>REMARKS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Great Grey Shrike</td>
<td>Lanius excubitor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short-eared Owl</td>
<td>Otus brachyurus</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarus Crane</td>
<td>Grus antigone</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Velvet Scoter</td>
<td>Oidemia fusca</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Octopus</td>
<td>Octopus vulgaris</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Woodpecker</td>
<td>Dryocopus martius</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scolopax rusticola</td>
<td>Phasianus versicolor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandarin Duck</td>
<td>Anas galerita (Linn.)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specimens of Fishes</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pallas's Squirrel</td>
<td>Saginus mystax</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parrot</td>
<td>Psittacus cuneatus</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Mountain Sparrows</td>
<td>Passer montanus</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Chinese Myzomela</td>
<td>Myzomela albilora</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canton</td>
<td>Purchased</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinkiang</td>
<td>Presented</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>Purchased</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hangchow</td>
<td>Purchased</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATE</td>
<td>CONVENTIONAL NAME</td>
<td>SCIENTIFIC NAME</td>
<td>SEX</td>
<td>WHERE OBTAINED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Hen Harrier</td>
<td>Circus cyaneus (Yarrell)</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>Soochow fu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Grey Woodpecker</td>
<td>Gecinus guerini</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>Nee Shing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Black-faced Laughing Thrushes (Malherbe)</td>
<td>Garrulax perspicillatus</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>Soochow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Masked Jay Thrushes</td>
<td>Accipiter Nius (Pallas)</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Sparrow Hawk</td>
<td>Cyanopolius cyanus</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Azure-winged Magpies</td>
<td>Columba palumbus (Linn.)</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Common Ring Dove</td>
<td>Ixops sinensis</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Chinese Bulbul</td>
<td>Hematopus ostra-legus</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Oyster Catcher</td>
<td>Nereids</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>North Bank</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Librarian's Report.

If the welfare of a Public Library were alone dependent upon the number of volumes annually added to its shelves, it might safely be said that the year 1881 has been one of the most prosperous in the history of our Library. During the year no less than 363 volumes have been entered in the Register of Accessions, not including Chinese works and publications on Natural History, a Catalogue of which is in preparation.

As the purchasing power of the Library is necessarily limited, it has been the chief aim of the Librarian to extend the relations of exchange with kindred Societies and Public Departments, and he is glad to announce that his applications in this direction have been very liberally responded to. The appended list shows the names of 66 Societies, Public Institutions, etc. which now regularly forward their publications to the Library, and a number of other Societies have since been addressed with a view to obtaining their transactions.

The Library is especially indebted for valuable support to the Superintendent of the Geological Survey of India, to the Director of the Imperial Botanical Garden at St. Petersburg, and to the Imperial Academy of Sciences at Vienna, the number of volumes presented by these three Institutions alone amounting to 162. Among the more important accessions may also be mentioned a complete set of the Journal of the Bombay Asiatic Society, the numerous publications of the Bataviasch Genootschap van Kunsten en Wetenschappen, and the Bulletin and Memoirs of the Zi-ka-wei Observatory.

On the other hand, it is a matter of regret that the Library receives but scanty support from authors and private indivi-
duals in the East and elsewhere. Although our list of members includes not a few whose names are familiar to readers of Trübner's Literary Record, their publications will in most cases be looked for in vain on the shelves of the only special Library at Shanghai. Of individual contributors Dr. Legge, M. C. Imbault-Huart, and Mr. K. I. Streich, who presented a Chinese mappemonde, published in 1674 by Father Verbiest, deserve especial thanks for their donations.

By kind permission of the Shanghai Library arrangements have been made with the London Agent of that Institution, the latter undertaking to forward all publications addressed to the Society with the monthly parcels sent out to the Shanghai Library. The various transactions of Learned Societies are thus received with as little delay as possible, an arrangement which cannot fail to enhance the value of the Library as a repository of periodical scientific literature.

The number of readers has slightly increased since the circulation of the books has been placed under the efficient control of the Committee of the Shanghai Library, but it can hardly be said that the capabilities of the Library are utilised in proportion to its development. It is true that the collection will be found deficient in works of light literature, but considering the number of residents who are led by profession, if not by predilection, to take a more than cursory interest in the land they live in, it seems strange that no greater demands are made upon the splendid resources of the Library.

In conclusion I have to thank the Librarians of the Shanghai Library, Mr. and Mrs. Gale, for the able assistance they have given me throughout the year.

Shanghai, March, 1882.

M. SLEVOGT,
Hon. Librarian.
List of Societies, Public Institutions, etc. exchanging Publications with the Society.

ASIA.

BATAVIA. Bataviansch Genootschap van Kunsten en Wetenschappen.
BOMBAY. Bombay Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society.
CALCUTTA. Agricultural and Horticultural Society of India.
    " Asiatic Society of Bengal.
    " Geological Survey of India.
COLOMBO. Ceylon Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society.
HONGKONG. China Review.
SHANGHAI. Statistical Department, Imperial Maritime Customs.
    " Observatoire Magnétique et Météorologique de Zi-Ku-Wei.
    " Chinese Recorder and Missionary Journal.
SINGAPORE. Straits Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society.
YOKOHAMA. Asiatic Society of Japan.
    " Deutsche Gesellschaft für Natur- und Völkerkunde Ostasiens.

EUROPE.

Great Britain and Ireland.

DUBLIN. Royal Dublin Society.
EDINBURGH. Royal Society.
LONDON. Academy.
    " Anthropological Institute of Great Britain and Ireland.
    " Geological Society.
    " London and China Express.
    " Royal Asiatic Society of Great Britain and Ireland.
    " Royal Geographical Society.
    " Royal Society.
    " Society of Biblical Archaeology.
    " Statistical Society.
    " Trübner’s American, European, and Oriental Record.
    " Zoological Society.

Germany and Austria.

BERLIN. K. Preussische Akademie der Wissenschaften.
    " Gesellschaft für Erdkunde.
DRESDEN. Verein für Erdkunde.
GOTHA. Justus Perthes' Geographische Anstalt.
HALLE. Verein für Erdkunde.
HAMBURG. Geographische Gesellschaft.
KÖNIGSBERG. K. Physikalisch-Ökonomische Gesellschaft.
REPORT OF THE N.-C. E. OF THE R. A. S.

LEIPZIG. Deutsche Morgenländische Gesellschaft.
   " Magazin für die Literatur des In- und Auslandes.
MUNICH. K. Bayerische Akademie der Wissenschaften.
VIENNA. Deutsche Rundschau für Geographie und Statistik.
   " K. Akademie der Wissenschaften.
   " K. K. Geographische Gesellschaft.
   " K. K. Geologische Reichsanstalt.
   " K. K. Zoologisch-Botanische Gesellschaft.
   " Orientalisches Museum.

France.

LYONS. Musée Guimet.
PARIS. Revue Critique d'Histoire et de Littérature.
   " Société Académique Indo-Chinoise.
   " Société Asiatique.
   " Société d'Accrétion.
   " Société de Géographie.
   " Société des Études Japonaises, Chinoises, Tartares et Indo-
     Chinoises.

Italy.

FLORENCE. R. Istituto di Studi Superiori (Accademia Orientale).
ROME. R. Accademia dei Lincei.
TURIN. Cosmos.

Netherlands.

S' GRAVENHAGE. K. Instituut voor de Taal-, Land- en Volkenkunde van
   Nederlandsch Indië.

Russia.

MOSCOW. Société Impériale des Naturalistes.
ST. PETERSBURG. Imperial Botanical Garden.
   " Imperatorskoye Rousskoye Gheographitcheskoye Obst-
     chestvo.

AMERICA.

CAMBRIDGE. Museum of Comparative Zoölogy at Harvard College.
MEXICO. Ministerio de Fomento.
NEW HAVEN. American Oriental Society.
NEW YORK. American Geographical Society.
PHILADELPHIA. American Philosophical Society.
SALEM. Essex Institute.
WASHINGTON. Smithsonian Institution.
   " United States Coast Survey.
   " United States Department of Agriculture.
   " United States Geogr. Survey W. of the 100th Meridian.
LIST OF WORKS ADDED TO THE LIBRARY OF THE
NORTH–CHINA BRANCH OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC
SOCIETY DURING THE YEAR 1881.

I. TRANSACTIONS OF LEARNED SOCIETIES AND PERIODICAL
PUBLICATIONS.

839.—STATISTICAL SOCIETY (LONDON).

840.—ROYAL GEOGRAPHICAL SOCIETY (LONDON).
Proceedings, 8vo. Vol. XXI, 1876-77.

p. 258. Allen, Herbert J.—Notes of a Journey through Formosa from Tamsui to Taiwanfu.
p. 266. Bullock, T. L.—Trip into the Interior of Formosa.
p. 325. Trotter, H.—The Pundit's Journey from Leh to Lhásá and Return to India via Assam.


p. 444. Explorations in Western Tibet, by the Trans-Himalayan Parties of the Indian Trigonometrical Survey.
p. 701. Morgan, E. Delmar—Pértsof's Expedition in North-Western Mongolia.

845A.—THE LONDON AND CHINA EXPRESS.
Vol. XX.—September to December, 1878.
Vol. XXI.—January to June, 1879.

846.—SOCIÉTÉ DE GÉOGRAPHIE (PARIS).
Bulletin, 8vo. VI. Series, Vol. XIX., 1880,
B

LIBRARIAN’S REPORT, 1881.


p. 331. Dutreuil de Rhins—Notes de géographie historique sur le Fleuve Rouge.


851.—Deutsche Morgenländische Gesellschaft (Leipzig).


p. 672. Himly—Das japanische Schachspiel.

852.—Verein für Erdkunde zu Dresden.

870.—K. Preussische Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Berlin.
Monatsberichte, 8vo. 1874.
do. do. 1880.


p. 452. Schott—Beiträge zur chinesischen Bücherkunde.


873.—Orientalisches Museum (Vienna).
Oesterreichische Monatschrift für den Orient, 4to.
Vol. V., 1879.

p. 113. Haas, Joseph—Die Kuldeja Frage.


p. 189. Ratzka, F.—Korea, die Linkin-Inseln und die zwei ostasiatischen Grossmächte.

Vol. VI., 1880.


p. 189. Ratzel, Dr. F.—Die Chinesen in Nordamerika seit 1876.


879.—R. Accademia dei Lincei (Rome).


879A.—Justus Perthes' Geographische Anstalt (Gotha).

Dr. A. Petermann's Mittheilungen, 4to. Vol. XXVI., 1880.


p. 205. Regel—Turfan.


p. 422. Oberstleutnant M. Pjewzow's Expedition nach Kukuchoto.


Ergänzungsband XIV., 1880-81.

Contents:

No. 61. Rivoli: die Serra da Estrella.

" 63. Mohr: die Norwegische Nordmeer-Expedition.

" 64. Fischer: die Dattelpalme.


No. 62 see 70 A.

879B.—Frankfurter Verein für Geographie und Statistik.


(1872-74) p. 87. Aus Briefen Dr. J. Rein's an seine Frau.


(1875-78) p. 67. Rein—Reis und Mais, eine pflanzengeographische und culturgeschichtliche Studie.

879C.—Verein für Erdkunde zu Metz.


879D.—Deutsche Rundschau für Geographie und Statistik.

Herausgegeben von Prof. Dr. Carl Arends.


880.—American Oriental Society (New Haven).


889.—Essex Institute (Salem).

891.—Bombay Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society.

Vol. II., p. 415. Desiderata relative to Thibet and Central Asia.
Vol. XIII., p. 152. Rehatsk—Christianity among the Mongols til their expulsion from China in 1368.

892.—Bataviasch Genootschap van Kunsten en Wetenschappen.
1.—Verhandelingen.

Vols. XVIII. (1842); XX. (1845). 8vo.
Vols. XXII-XXXVIII. (1849-75); XL. (1879). 4to.

Vol. XXV. (VI). Bleekr—Nalezingen op de Ichthyologie van Japan.

Schlegel—De Prostitutie in China.

Vol. XXXVI. Schlegel—Sinico-Aryaca ou recherches sur les racines primitives dans les langues Chinoises et Aryennes.

2.—Tijdschrift voor Indische Taal-, Land- en Volkenkunde. 8vo.

Vols. III-XXIV., 1853-77.
Vol. XXVI., 1881.

— p. 569. SCHLEGEL—Chinesische monches.
— p. 9. SCHLEGEL—Betrekkingen der Chinezen met Java voor de komst der Europeanen aldaar.
— p. 33. SCHALJJE—De kleine voeten der vrouwen in China.
Vol. XXVI. p. 413. FABER—Drie Chinesische Kaartspelen.

3.—Notulen van de Algemeene en Bestuursvergaderingen. Svo.
Vols. I-XVI., 1863-78.
Vols. XVIII., 1880.

Catalogus der Bibliothek, door J. A. VAN DER CHIJS. 1864, Svo.

Eerste Vervolg-Catalogus der Bibliothek en Catalogus der Maleische, Javaansche en Kawi Handschriften. 1872, Svo.

Tweede Vervolg-Catalogus der Bibliothek. 1877, Svo.

Alphabetische Lijst van Land-, Zee—en andere Kaarten. 1873, Svo.

Codicum Arabicorum in Bibliotheca Societatis Artium et Scientiarum quae Bataviae floret asservatorum Catalogum inchoatum a Doct. R. FRIEDERICH absolvit indicibusque instruxit L. W. C. VAN DEN BERG. 1873, Svo.

Kawi Oorkonden. Inleiding en Transcriptie van Dr. A. B. COHEN STUART. Leiden : 1875, 4to.

Het Maleisch der Molukken, door F. S. A. DE CLERQ. 1876, 4to.

Catalogus der Numismatische Afdeeling van het Museum. Tweede Druk. 1877, Svo.


893.—CEYLON BRANCH OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY (COLombo).
Do. "IV., 1865-70 "
Do. "VI., 1879-80 "

899.—Asiatic Society of Japan (Yokohama).
p. 156. Edkins—On the Japanese Letters “Chi” and “Tsu.”
p. 164. Satow—Reply to Dr. Edkins on “Chi” and “Tsu.”

899A.—Straits Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society (Singapore).

909.—The Chinese Recorder and Missionary Journal.
Shanghai, 8vo. Vols. VII-XL, 1876-80.

914.—Statistical Department, I. Maritime Customs (Shanghai).
Returns of Trade at the Treaty Ports for the year 1880: Part II. Statistics of the Trade at each Port. Shanghai: 1881, 4to.

918.—Statistical Department, I. Maritime Customs (Shanghai).

919.—Statistical Department, I. Maritime Customs (Shanghai).
II.—Special Series.

920A.—The China Review: or, Notes and Queries on the Far East.
Hongkong, 8vo. Vols. IV-IX, 1875-81.

LIBRARIAN'S REPORT, 1881.


II. Miscellaneous Works.


By the Author.

43A.—The works of Confucius: Containing the original text with a translation. Vol. I., to which is prefixed a dissertation on the Chinese language and character, by J. Marshman. Serampore: Mission Press, 1809, 4to. 1 Vol. (the only one published) bound in 2.

By D. C. Jansen, Esq.


By the Author.


By the Publishers.


By the Publisher.
128.—Report of the Superintendent of the United States Coast Survey, showing the progress of the work for the fiscal year ending with June, 1877. Washington: 1880, 4to.

By the U. S. Coast Survey Office.


By the Ministerio de Fomento.


By D. C. Jansen, Esq.


By the Author.


By the Author.

287A.—The Hiragana, or Japanese Running-hand Writing. A Review of its most usual forms with addition of the Chinese Characters from which they are derived. By J. Hoffmann. 2nd Ed. Leyden: Sythoff, 1861, (1 Sheet).

By Joseph Haas, Esq.


Presented.


By the Geographical Society of Hamburg.


By G. C. Anderson, Esq.

By Thomas Hanbury, Esq.


By the Author.


By the Public Works Dept., Br. Burma.

741A.—A Retrospect of Political and Commercial Affairs in China during the five years 1873 to 1877. Edited by R. S. Gundry. Shanghai: N.-C. Herald Office, 1878, 8vo.

Presented.


By the Author.


Presented.

764B.—The Great Famine: Report of the China Famine Relief Committee Shanghai: 1879. 8vo.

Presented.


Presented.

By M. Slavogt, Esq.


By the Author.

776B.—Six Essays on the Trade of Shanghai; reprinted from the "Celestial Empire." Shanghai: 1874, 8vo.

By the Publishers.


By Dr. S. M. Tagore, Calcutta.

830.—TRÜBNER'S AMERICAN, EUROPEAN, AND ORIENTAL LITERARY RECORD (LONDON).

Vols. XI-XII., 1877-79, 4to, bd. in 1.

By the Publishers.

832.—A General Catalogue of Books, arranged in classes, offered for sale by BERNARD QUARITCH. London: 1868, 8vo.

By E. Toda, Esq.

The same: Pages 1 to 206, bound separately.


Vols. I-III., 1876-78 (including also Geography).

" IV-V., 1879-80,

Purchased.


Presented.
I. Transactions of Learned Societies and Periodical Publications.

837.—Royal Society of London.
Proceedings, 8vo. Vols. XXIX.—XXXI. (1879-81).

Müller, F. Max.—On Sanskrit Texts discovered in Japan. XII. 153.
Bushell, S. W.—The Early History of Tibet. From Chinese Sources. XII. 435.
Edkins, J.—The Nirvana of the Northern Buddhists. XIII. 59.
Howorth, H. H.—The Northern Frontagers of China Part V., The Khitai or Khitans. XIII. 121.
Beal, Rev. S.—Two Chinese-Buddhist Inscriptions found at Buddha Gayā. XIII. 552.

839.—Statistical Society (London).

840.—Royal Geographical Society (London).
Birch, Fr.—The word "Typhoon." Its History and Origin. L. 260.
Morgan, E. Delmar.—A Journey through Semiretchia to Kuldja in 1880. III. 150.
Temple, Sir Richard.—The Lake Region of Sikkim, on the Frontier of Tibet. Map. III. 321.
Morgan, E. Delmar.—Dr. Regel's Expedition from Kuldja to Turfan in 1879-80. III. 340.

841.—Royal Society of Edinburgh.

845A.—The London and China Express.
Vols. XXII.—XXIII. (1880-81).
848.—Société de Géographie (Paris).

Desgodins—De Yerkalo à Tsé-kou Map. XIII. 170.
Kostenko, Col. L.—L’Expédition aux monts Alai. XIII. 275.
Paquier, J. B.—Pamir et Kachgarié. XIII. 605; XIV. 581.
Rocher—Itinéraire de Ch’ung-Ch’ing à Yün-nan-fu. XIV. 602; XV. 247.
Ujfalvy, Ch. de—Voyage au Zarafcháné, au Ferghanah et à Kouldja. Map. XV. 481.

849.—Société des Études Japonaises, Chinoises, etc. (Paris).
Annuaire, 1881, 12mo.


850B.—Société Académique Indo-Chinoise (Paris).

Desgodins—Vocabulaire de plusieurs tribus du Thibet Oriental. 42.
Bouillevaux—Le Ciampa. 77. 99. 303.
Millot, E.—L’Expédition Dupuis du Fleuve Rouge. 193.
Albrecht, J. E.—L’instruction primaire chez les Chinois dans l’île de Java.

851.—Deutsche Morgenländische Gesellschaft (Leipzig).
Zeitschrift, 8vo.
Vols. XVII.—XXV. (1863-71).
Vol. XXVI. (1872), Parts 3-4.
Vols. XXVIII.—XXIX. (1874-75).
Vols. XXXIV.—XXXV. (1880-81).

Vámyéry, H.—Ein chinesisch-tatarischer Originalbrief. XIX. 297.
GARELLENTZ, H. C. VON DER.— Uber die Sprache der Ha-
zaras und Aimaus. XX. 396.

BASTIAN, A.— Zur buddhistischen Psychologie. XX. 419.

PLATH, J. H.— Die Unsterblichkeitslehre der alten Chi-
nesen. XX. 471.

STRAUSS, VICTOR VON.— Das vierzehnte Kapitel des Ta-
tê-king von Laô-tsê. XXIII. 473.

JÄSCHKE, H. A.— Proben aus dem tibetischen Legenden-
buch: die hunderttausend Gesänge des Milaraspa.
XXIII. 543.

— Erläuternde Bemerkungen zu den in Huc's Souvenirs
d'un voyage dans la Tartarie vorkommenden tibeti-
schen Wörtern und Namen. XXIV. 628.

HIMLY, K.— Das Schachspiel der Chinesen. XXIV. 172.

BASTIAN, A.— Die Verkettungstheorien der Buddhisten.
XXIX. 58.

XXXV. 75.

Wissenschaftliche Jahresberichte über die morgenländischen
Studien, 8vo.
1859-61; 1862-67; 1876-77.

867.— PHYSICALISCH-ÖKONOMISCHE GESELLSCHAFT ZU KÖNIGSBERG.
Schriften, 4to. Vols. XVII.— XX. (1876-79).

870.— K. PREUSSISCHE AKADEMIE DER WISSENSCHAFTEN ZU BERLIN.
Monatsberichte, 8vo. 1881.

871.— KÖNIGL. BAYER. AKADEMIE DER WISSENSCHAFTEN ZU MÜNCHEN.
1.— Philosophisch-philologisch und historische Classe. Sitzungs-
berichte, 8vo.
1879. Vols. I.— II.
1880 and Supplement.
1881. Vol. I.
Gedächtnissrede auf Leonhard von Spengel. Gehalten von
2.— Mathematisch-physikalische Classe. Sitzungsberichte, 8vo.
Vols. IX.— X. (1879-80).

873.— ORIENTALISCHES MUSEUM (VIENNA).
Oesterreichische Monatsschrift für den Orient, 4to. Vol. VII.
(1881).

SIEBOLD, H. VON.— Neueres über Präparation und Verwen-
dung der Chinagrassfaser. 179.

HIRTH, F.— Das Zeitungswesen in China. 7.
— Die Verwaltung der chinesischen Seezölle. 75. 96.
LIBRARIAN'S REPORT.

BLUMENTRITT, F.—Die einstigen Beziehungen zwischen Japan und dem spanischen Central-Capitanat der Philippinen. 10. 29. 45.
ENNER, PROF. W. F.—Japans Holz-Industrie. 55. 82. 118.
NEUMANN, PROF. W.—Ueber orientalische Seide im Mittelalter. 92.
RÜDEL, ALWIN.—Abris s der Culturgeschichte Japans vom Gesichtspunkte der Papierbereitung. 126.

879.—R. Accademia dei Linchei (Rome).

879A.—Justus Perthes' Geographische Anstalt (Gotha).
Dr. A. Petermann's Mittheilungen, 4to. Vol. XXVII. (1881).
G. N. Potanin's Forschungen in der westlichen Mongolei, 1876-77. Map. 182.
Der Iravaddy oberhalb Bamo. Map. 297.

879E.—Verein für Erdkunde zu Halle a/S.
Mittheilungen 1880-81, 8vo.

Braun, David.—Meine ersten Streifzüge in Japan. (1880). 46.

879F.—Kaiserliche Akademie der Wissenschaften (Vienna).
Philosophisch-Historische Classe. Sitzungsberichte, 8vo.
Vol. I. (1848); Vol. II. (1849), Parts 2, 4, 5; Vols. III.—XXXII. (1849-1859); Vol. XXXIII. (1860), Part 2; Vols. XXXIV.—XXXVII. (1860-1861); Vol. XXXVIII. (1861), Parts 2-3; Vols. XXXIX.—XCVII. (1862-1880).

— Beitrag zur Kenntniss der ältesten japanischen Poesie. III. 315. 386.
— Bemerkungen über die von La Peyrouse gelieferte Wörteransammlung der Sprache von Sagalien. IV. 151.
— Beitrag zur Kenntniss der Aino-Poesie. IV. 189. 321; V. 100.
— Ueber den Bau der Aino-Sprache. VII. 382.
— Kritische Durchsicht der von Daidow verfassten Wörteransammlung aus der Sprache der Aino's. VII. 844.
— Erläuterungen und Verbesserungen zu den Élémens de la grammaire japonaise von P. Rodrigues. XI. 499; XII. 338.
— Die Zeiten des Fürsten Yin von Lu. XIII. 292.
— Die Zeiten der Fürsten Hoan, Tschuang und Min von Lu. XIII. 430.
— Die Zeiten des Fürsten Sien von Lu. XVII. 12.
— Notizen aus der Geschichte der chinesischen Reiche vom Jahre 590 bis 468 vor Christo. XVII. 233; XVIII. 115; XX. 486; XXI. 156; XXV. 61; XXVII. 113.
— Die Feldherren des Reiches Tschao. XXVIII. 55.
— Das Leben des Prinzen Wu-ki von Wei. XXVIII. 171.
— Der Landesherr von Schäng. XXIX. 98.
— Wei-jién, Fürst von Jäng. XXX. 155.
— Das Leben des Redners Fén-hoei. XXX. 227.
— Bemerkungen und Berichtigungen zu einem in St. Petersburg erschienenen russisch-japanischen Wörterbuch. XXX. 228.
— Zur Geschichte des Entsatzes von Han-tan. XXXI. 65.
— Li-sse, der Minister des ersten Kaisers. XXX. 311.
— Die Gewaltherrschaft Hiang-yü’s. XXXII. 7.
— Das Ende Mung-tien’s. XXXII. 134.
— Die Anfänge der Aufstände gegen das Herrscherhaus Tsin. XXXII. 273.
— Die Genossen des Königs Tschin-sching. XXXII. 332.
— Die Nachkommen der Könige von Wei, Tsé und Han. XXXII. 599.
— Das Rednergeschlecht Su. XXXII. 641.
— Die Feldherren Han-sin, Peng-yün und King-pu. XXXIV. 371.
— Worte des Tadels in dem Reiche der Han. XXXV. 297.
— Der Abfall des Königs Pi von U. XXXVI. 17.
— Bericht über einige chinesische und japanische Münzen. XXXVII. 45.
— Die Menschenschädel der wandernden Schirmgewaltigen. XXXVII. 103.
— Zwei Statthalter der Landschaft Kuei-ki. XXXVII. 304.
PFIZMAIER, A.—Sse-ma-ki-tschi, der Wahrsager von Tschang-nga. XXXVII. 408.
— Das Ereigniss des Wurmfrasses der Beschwörer. XXXIX. 50.
— Die Antworten Tung-tsung-schi’s auf die Umfragen des Himmelsohnes. XXXIX. 345.
— Die Könige von Hoai-nan aus dem Hause Han. XXXIX. 575.
— Die Geschichte des Hauses Thai-kung. XL. 645.
— Die Geschichte des Hauses Tscheu-kung. XLI. 90.
— Die Geschichte des Fürstenlandes Tsin. XLIII. 74.
— Die Geschichte des Königslandes Tsu. XLIV. 68.
— Ken-taien, König von Yue, und dessen Haus. XLIV. 197.
— Die Heerführer Li-khuang und Li-ling. XLIV. 511.
— Die Heerführer Wei-tsing und Ho-khiu-ping. XLV. 139.
— Die Unternehmungen der früheren Han gegen die südwestlichen Fremdgebiete. XLV. 293.
— Die Eroberung der beiden Yue und des Landes Tschao-sien durch Han. XLVI. 481.
— Die Theogonie der Japaner. XLVII. 392; XLVIII. 439.
— Die Auslegungen Taira-no Owo-fira’s. XLVIII. 3.
— Die Beherrscher Japans in dem Sagenzeitalter. XLIX. 220; L. 8.
— Die Erklärung einer alten chinesischen Semiotik. LI. 5.
— Die Erklärung der SonnenNachfolge in Japan. LI. 173.
— Die Toxicologie der chinesischen Nahrungsmittel. LI. 257.
— Die Sprache in den botanischen Werken der Japaner. LI. 513.
— Die Pulslehre Tschang-ki’s. LII. 207.
— Bericht über zwei Taiping-Münzen. LII. 424.
— Nachrichten von einigen alterthümlichen Gegenständen Japans. LII. 471.
PFIZMAIER, A.—Analecta aus der chinesischen Pathologie.
LIII. 565.
—— Zu der Sage von Owo-kuni-nusi. LIV. 5.
—— Zu der Sage von Fo-wo-de-mi-no-mikoto. LV. 57.
—— Die chinesische Lehre von den regelmässigen Pulsen. LV. 553.
—— Nachrichten von den alten Bewohnern des heutigen Corea. LVII. 461.
—— Beiträge zur Geschichte der Perlen. LVII. 617.
—— Reichthum und Armuth in dem alten China. LVIII. 61.
—— Beiträge zur Geschichte der Edelsteine und des Goldes. LVIII. 181.
—— Geschichtliches über einige Seelenzustände und Leidenschaften. LIX. 247.
—— Zur Geschichte der alten Metalle. LX. 7.
—— Zur Geschichte des Zwischenreiches von Han. LXI. 275.
—— Die Aufstände Wei-ningao’s und Kung-sün-schō’s. LXII. 159.
—— Aus dem Traumleben der Chinesen. LXV. 697.
—— Die Lebensverlängerungen der Männer des Weges. LXV. 311.
—— Die Anwendung und die Zufälligkeiten des Feuers in dem alten China. LXV. 767.
—— Alte Nachrichten und Denkwürdigkeiten von einigen Lebensmitteln China’s. LXVII. 413.
—— Ueber die Sammlung der aufgelesenen Blätter des Funsang. LXVII. 725.
—— Die Wanderung eines japanischen Bonzen. LXVIII. 7.
—— Der Geisterglaube in dem alten China. LXVIII. 641.
—— Zur Geschichte der Wunder in dem alten China. LXVIII. 809.
—— Kunstfertigkeiten und Künste der alten Chinesen. LXIX. 147.
—— Ueber einige Kleidertrachten des chinesischen Alterthums. LXXI. 567.
—— Denkwürdigkeiten von chinesischen Werkzeugen und Geräthen. LXXII. 247.
—— Ueber die Schriften des Kaisers des Wen-tschang. LXXIII. 329.
—— Die Lehre von dem Te-nsi-wa-fa. LXXIV. 333.
PFIZMAIER, A.—Zur Geschichte Japans in dem Zeitraume Bun-jei. LXXXV. 133.
— Die Geschichte der Mongolenangriffe auf Japan. LXXXVI. 105.
— Darlegungen aus der Geschichte und Geographie Corea's. LXXVIII. 89.
— Denkwürdigkeiten von den Früchten Chinas. LXXVIII. 195.
— Denkwürdigkeiten von den Insekten Chinas. LXXVIII. 345.
— Ueber einige Gegenstände des Taoglaubens. LXXIX. 5.
— Ungewöhnliche Erscheinungen und Zufälle in China um die Zeiten der südlichen Sung. LXXIX. 361.
— Denkwürdigkeiten aus dem Thierreiche Chinas. LXXX. 5.
— Denkwürdigkeiten von den Bäumen Chinas. LXXX. 191.
— Japanische Etymologien. LXXX. 439.
— Ueber japanische geographische Namen. LXXX. 769; LXXXII. 7.
— Die Aufzeichnungen der japanischen Dichterin Sei Seö-na-gon. LXXXI. 7.
— Ergänzungen zu der Abhandlung von den Bäumen Chinas. LXXXI. 143.
— Aus der Geschichte des Hofes von Tsin. LXXXII. 533.
— Aufzeichnungen aus dem Reiche I-se. LXXXIII. 7.
— Die Einkehr in der Strasse von Kanzaki. LXXXIII. 453.
— Ueber japanische Dialecte. LXXXIV. 11; XC. 9; XCI. 7.
— Das Haus eines Statthalters von Fari-ma. LXXXIV. 301; LXXXVII. 263.
— Ueber einige Wundermänner Chinas. LXXXV. 37.
— Die Machthaber Hoan-wen und Hoan-hiuen. LXXXV. 601.
— Ein Donnerthier Japans. LXXXVI. 295.
— Die Zeichnung der zwei Pa. Ein japanisches Werk in Firanaka. LXXXVIII. 19; XCI. 615.
— Zur Geschichte der Aufstände gegen das Haus Sui. LXXXVIII. 729.
Pfizmaier, A.—Der Palast Josi-teru's. XC. 461.
— Nachrichten von Gelehrten China's. XCI. 693.
— Ueber einige chinesische Schriftwerke des siebenten und achten Jahrhunderts n. Chr. XCIII. 127.
— Seltsamkeiten aus den Zeiten der Thang. XCV. 7; XCVI. 293.
— Der Schauplatz von Fudzi-no-mori. XCV. 429.
— Begebenheiten neuerer Zeit in Japan. XCV. 249.
— Die Sammelhäuser der Lehenkönige China's. XCV. 919.
— Der Kesselsprung Isi-kawa's. XCVI. 163.
— Die Reise zu dem Berge Fu-zi. XCVI. 557.
— Die fremdländischen Reiche zu den Zeiten der Sui. XCVII. 411.
— Darlegungen aus der Geschichte des Hauses Sui. XCVII. 627.

Boller.—Nachweis dass das Japanische zum ural-altaischen Stamme gehört. XXIII. 393.


Archäologische Analecten von Joseph Arnet. XX. Plates squ. folio.

Register zu den Bänden 1 bis 90 der Sitzungsberichte der Philosophisch-Historischen Classe. 1879. 8vo.

890.—Asiatic Society of Bengal (Calcutta).
Proceedings, 8vo. 1881.

892.—Bataviaasch Genootschap van Kunsten en Wetenschappen.
Verhandelingen, 4to. Vol. XLI. (1881).
Notulen, 8vo. Vol. XIX. (1881).
Tabel van Oud- en Nieuw-Indische Alphabetten.
Bijdrage tot de Palaeographie van Nederlandsch-Indië door K. F. Holle. 1882, 4to.

895.—North-China Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society (Shanghai).

898.—Deutsche Gesellschaft für Natur- und Völkerkunde Ostasiens (Yokohama).
LIBRARIAN'S REPORT.


914.—Statistical Department, I. Maritime Customs (Shanghai). Customs Gazette (1881), 4to.


919.—Statistical Department, I. Maritime Customs (Shanghai). II. Special Series. No. 3. Silk. Shanghai: 1881, 4to.


II. MISCELLANEOUS WORKS.


139F.—The adoption of a Prime Meridian to be common to all nations. The establishment of Standard Meridians for the Regulation of Time. By Sandford Fleming. London: Waterloo, 1881, 8vo.


By Dr. D. J. Macgowan.

By the Author.

526C.—Catalogus Patrum ac Fratrum e Societate Jesu qui a morte S. Fr. Xaverii ad annum MDCCCLXXII. Evangelio Xti propagando in Sinis ad laboraverunt. Shanghai: Carvalho, 1873, 8vo.

By the Missions Catholiques, Zi-Ka-Wei.


By M. Slevogt, Esq.

836D.—Catalogus Librorum Venalium in Orphanotrophio Ton-Sai-Vai, prope Chang-Hai. Ex Typographia Missionis Catholicae, 1876, 8vo.

By the Missions Catholiques, Zi-Ka-Wei.


By the Publishers.